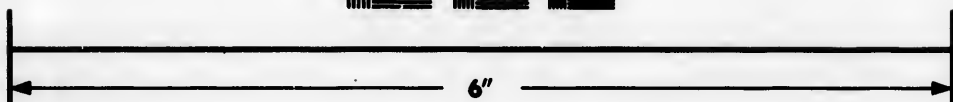
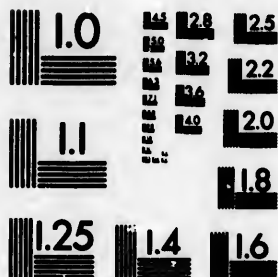


IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1984**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming.  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/  
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

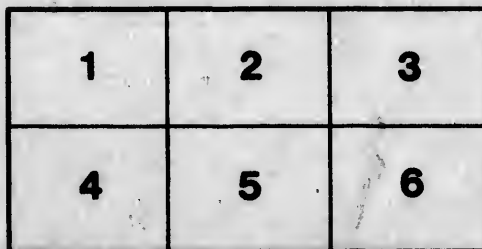
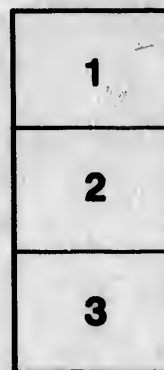
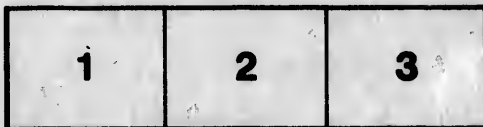
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

re  
détails  
des du  
modifier  
per une  
filmage

ées

errata  
d to  
t  
e pelure.  
on à



JOHN ARAM



SAMUEL JOHNSON



THOMAS JOHNSON



ANDREW JACKSON

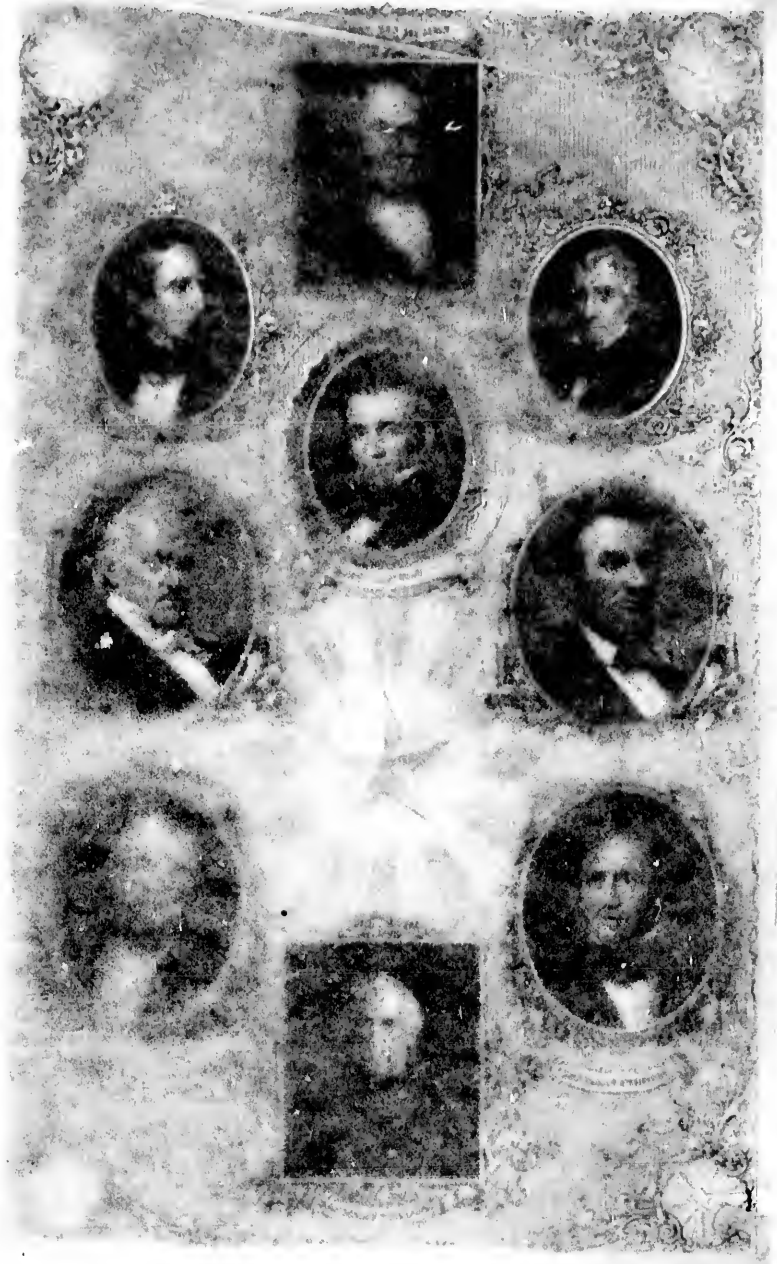


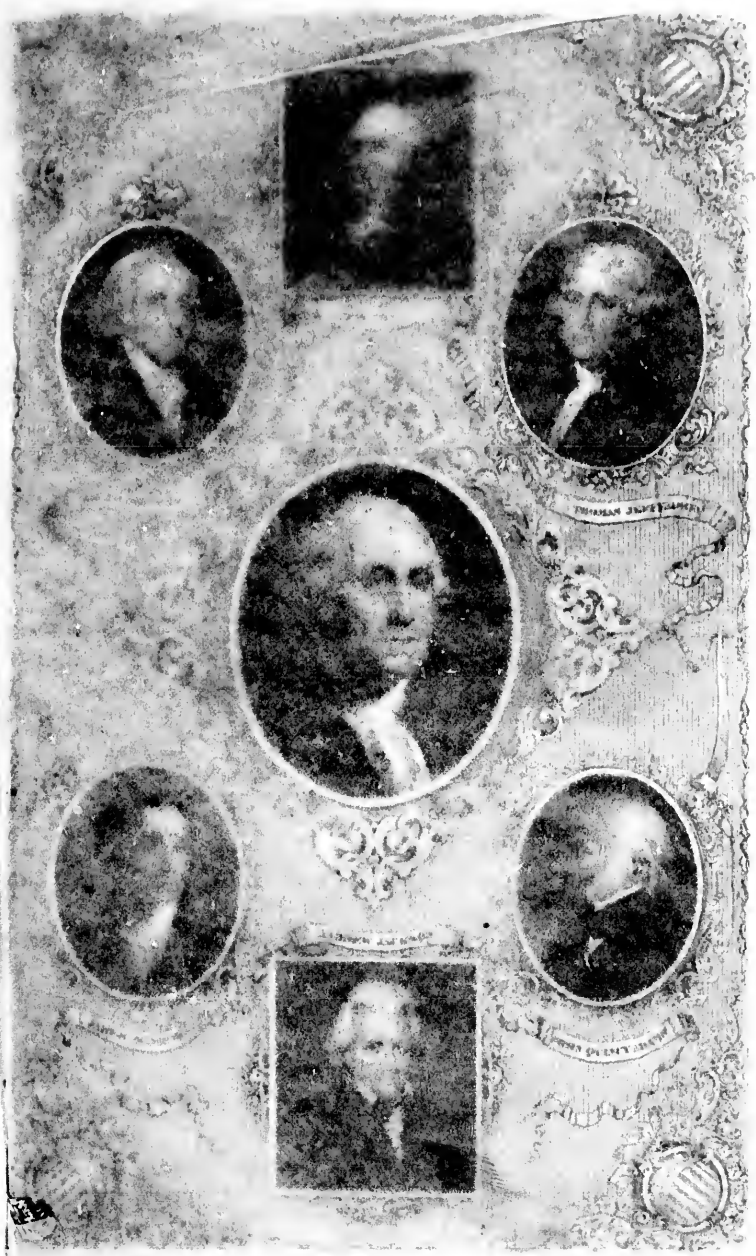
JOHN DEWEY



JOHN DEWEY





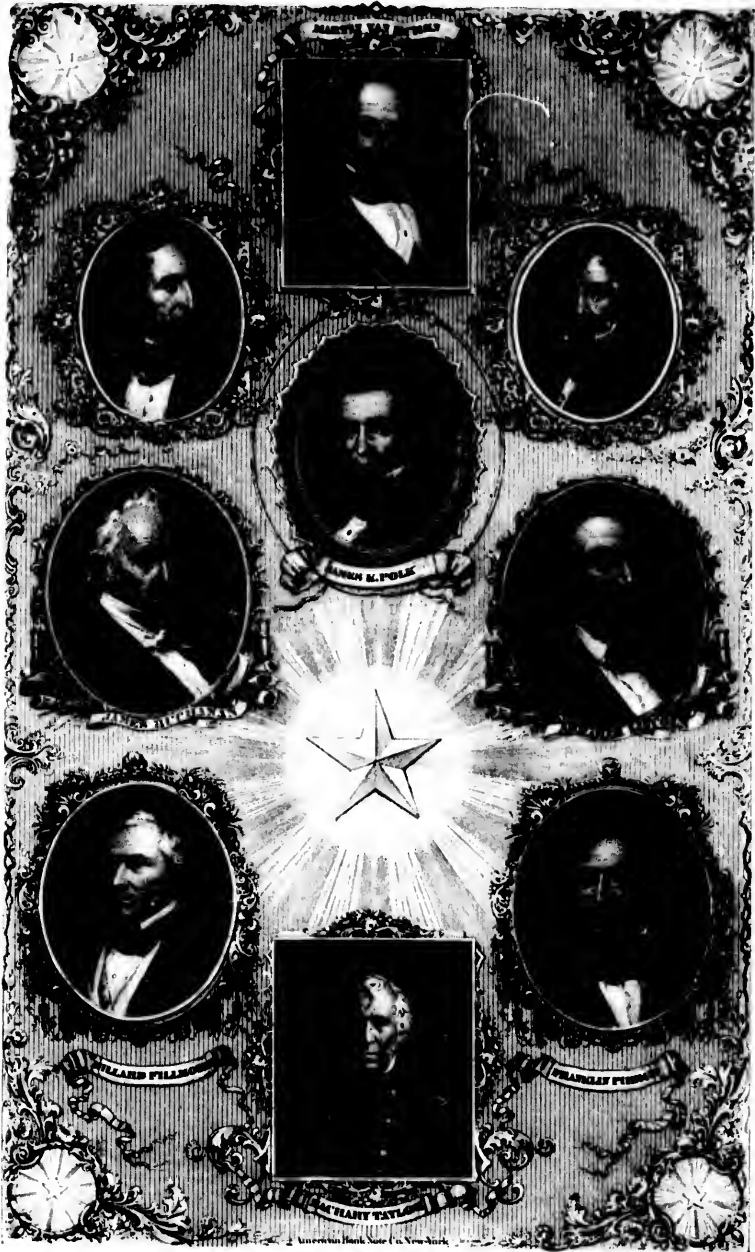


THOMAS JEFFERSON

THOMAS JEFFERSON

THOMAS JEFFERSON







I

FI

THE BR  
IND

THE  
**ENGLISH**  
IN  
**AMERICA;**  
FROM THE  
**FIRST ENGLISH DISCOVERIES**  
TO THE  
**PRESENT DAY.**

BY  
**HENRY HOWARD BROWNELL, A. M.**

INCLUDING

THE BRAVE DEEDS, STRUGGLES, AND SUFFERINGS OF THE COLONIES; THE FRENCH AND  
INDIAN WARS OF THE UNITED STATES AND THE PROVINCES; THE AMERICAN  
REVOLUTION; THE RECENT GROWTH OF THE PROVINCS AND STATES;  
THEIR PRESENT CONDITION, FUTURE PROSPECTS, ETC. ETC.;

WITH

**NUMEROUS SPLENDID STEEL PLATE ENGRAVINGS,**

INCLUDING

**PORTRAITS, SCENERY, CITIES, PUBLIC EDIFICES, ETC.**

PUBLISHED BY SUBSCRIPTION ONLY BY  
**HURLBUT, WILLIAMS & COMPANY,**  
AMERICAN SUBSCRIPTION PUBLISHING HOUSE,  
HARTFORD, CONN., 1862.

E 184

E 5

B 7

1862

~~~~~  
ENTERED ACCORDING TO ACT OF CONGRESS IN THE YEAR 1860,  
BY HURLBUT, KELLOGG, CO.  
~~~~~

T  
est  
the  
pris  
ener  
race  
plan  
half  
best  
Unit  
of th  
T  
they  
exist  
has  
perit  
afflic  
rily  
ests,  
and  
and  
best  
A  
tory,  
peop

## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE present volume contains a view of one of the grandest demonstrations of human energy which has ever marked the history of any people. This is, the long series of enterprises, hardships, and labors, carried on with unflagging energy for more than two hundred years by the Anglo-Saxon race of England, and which has resulted in the transplantation of their laws, civilization and polity, into a new half of the world; and the erection upon the fairest and best territory of North America, of two vast empires, the United States and the North American Colonial dominions of the crown of Great Britain.

The progress of these two commonwealths—for such they may be called, notwithstanding the subdivisions which exist more especially in the British portion of the continent—has hitherto been in the main an unbroken career of prosperity. The early days of all the separate colonies were afflicted with the evils and hardships which must necessarily vex the pioneers of a civilized race, thrown amidst forests, wild beasts, savages and foemen; but the sufferings and struggles of a hardy youth have given them a strength and solidity of character, which have ever since been their best reliance.

A phenomenon hitherto never seen in the world's history, has marked that of the Anglo-Americans. The new people brought learning and religion with them, and founded

their state, not merely as a trading post or a farm, but with all the fair and full lineaments of an empire ; with church, schools, laws, morals, and society, all matured and adjusted with a wisdom far greater than its possessors were conscious of. As the material growth of their community went on, therefore, its mind and morals kept pace ; and its internal health, and the strength of its contexture, maintains a right proportion to the rapid growth of its territory, population, and wealth.

There is every reason to hope that the same Divine power which has thus far watched over the progress of the Anglo-American race, will continue to grant its protection ; and that the career, of which the following pages present a history, is to continue until they shall reach a far loftier station among the nations of the earth, than even that high one to which they have already ascended.

Beha-  
age  
Ex-  
lon

The "  
Pro  
Dis  
test

Engle  
Wa  
age

The P  
nam  
at R  
Ret

Small  
Rale  
Mid

Memor  
vent  
Turk  
Econ

Virgini  
tion  
the I  
Virgi

Yrat  
the C

arm, but with  
with church,  
and adjusted  
ere conscious  
ity went on,  
l its internal  
ntains a right  
; population,

Divine power  
of the Anglo-  
tection; and  
present a his-  
loftier station  
t high one to

# CONTENTS.

## THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA.

### EARLY VOYAGES AND ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION.

CHAPTER I.	PAGE
Sebastian Cabot—His Youth—His First Voyage, and Discovery of North America; His Second Voyage, and Fails Attempt at Colonization; Obscure Interval in his Life; he serves in Spain; His Expedition under Henry VIII.; Appointed Grand Pilot of Spain; His Expedition to South America; His Return to England, Services, Old Age, and Death;.....	17
CHAPTER II.	
The "Dominus Vobiscum"—Failure and Misfortune; Improvement of the English Marine; Martin Frobisher—His Voyage in Search of a North-west Passage; Diminutive Equipments of the Early Discoverers; Supposed Discovery of Gold Ore; Second Expedition of Frobisher; Surveys; Contest with the Esquimaux; His Third Expedition; its Failure;.....	28
CHAPTER III.	
English Enterprise; Drake; Sir Humphrey Gilbert; His First Attempt to Colonize America; Sir Walter Raleigh; Sir Humphrey sails for America; Shipwrecks and Misfortunes; the Return Voyage; Tempests; Loss of Sir Humphrey and his Crew;.....	36
CHAPTER IV.	
The Patent of Raleigh; he Dispatches Amidas and Barlow to Carolina—their Report; the Country named Virginia; Voyages of Davis, &c.; Second Expedition of Raleigh, under Lane; Settlement at Roanoke; Folly and Cruelty of the English; the Indians; Massacre by the English; Failure and Return of the Expedition;.....	50
CHAPTER V.	
Small Settlement planted by Grenville at Roanoke Destroyed by the Indians; Third Expedition of Raleigh; First English Child in America; Loss and Supposed Destruction of the Roanoke Colony; Misfortunes of Raleigh; Tardiness and ill-fortune of English Enterprise; Reflections;.....	58

### THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA.

CHAPTER I.	
Memoir of Captain John Smith; His Youthful Adventures and Services; he turns Hermit; His Adventures in France; he is Stung Overboard; Sea-fight; Travels in Italy; His Campaign against the Turks; Siege of Regall; the Three Turks' Heads; Smith sent a Slave to Tartary—his Wonderful Escape; Subsequent Adventures; Returns to England;.....	68
CHAPTER II.	
Virginian Colonization Revived; Patent of James I.; Ill-assorted Company of Settlers; the Expedition sails for America; Accidentally enters James River; ill-treatment of Smith; Intercourse with the Indians; Jamestown Founded; Excursion of Smith and Newport; Powhatan; the Indians of Virginia;.....	68
CHAPTER III.	
Trial and Vindication of Smith; Famine and Terrible Mortality; Smith, by his Exertions, supports the Colony; Treachery of his Associates; Dealings with the Indians; Idle and Miserable Colonists;.....	68

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
CHAPTER IV.	
Expedition and Capture of Smith—his Strange Adventures among the Indians; Conjurations performed over him; he is Carried to Powhatan; His Life Saved by Pocahontas; Strange Masquerade of Powhatan; Release and Return of Smith,.....	40
CHAPTER V.	
Privations of the Colonists; Relieved by Pocahontas; Arrival of Newport from England; Intercourse and Traffic with Powhatan; Blue Beads for Crown Jewels; Imaginary Gold Mine; Smith's Voyage in the Chesapeake; Interviews with numerous Native Tribes; Sting-ray Point; His Return,.....	52
CHAPTER VI.	
Smith made President; he Resumes the Survey; the Susquehanna; Adventures with the Indians; Remarkable Feat of Survey; Return to Jamestown; Arrival of Newport; Absurd Instructions of the English Company; the Coronation of Powhatan; Unsuccessful Attempt of Newport to find the South Sea,.....	53
CHAPTER VII.	
Plot against Smith; His Letter to the Company; His Efforts to Support the Colony; Expedition to Surprise Powhatan; Artful Speeches, and Mutual Treachery; the English again Saved by Pocahontas, 59	59
CHAPTER VIII.	
The Plot at Pamunkey—Defeated by the Daring and Energy of Smith; the Colony Supplied; Smith Poisoned; His Unscrupulous Policy; His Fight with the King of Paspahegh: "Pretty Accidents" among the Indians,.....	61
CHAPTER IX.	
Idleness of the Settlers; Eloquent Speech and Vigorous Policy of Smith; the New Virginia Company; Unjust Assumption of Power; Smith Deposed; Great Expedition dispatched from England—Ill-fortune; Arrival of Numerous Immigrants; Anarchy; Smith Resumes the Presidency,.....	64
CHAPTER X.	
Futile Attempts at Founding New Settlements; Folly and Obstinacy of the Colonists; Smith terribly Injured; He Returns to England; His Services to the Colony; Awful Suffering and Mortality after his Departure,.....	67
CHAPTER XI.	
Memoir of Smith, continued and concluded; His Voyage to New England, and Surveys; His Second Expedition; His Adventures among the Pirates—his Escape; His Great Exortions for the Settlement of New England; Interesting Interview between Smith and Pocahontas in England; Last Years of Smith; His Death; His Character and Achievements,.....	69
CHAPTER XII.	
Arrival of Gates; Miserable Condition of the Colony; Jamestown Deserted; Arrival of Lord Delaware—of Sir Thomas Dale; Exertions of the Company; Increased Immigration; the Culture of Tobacco Introduced, and Eagerly Pursued; Tyranny of Argall—his Displacement; Great Accession of Immigrants; Wives purchased with Tobacco; Liberal Concessions to the Colonists,.....	77
CHAPTER XIII.	
Wyatt Governor; Negro Slavery introduced; Death of Powhatan and Succession of Opechancanough; Plot Devised by the Latter; Terrible Massacre of the English; Depression of the Colony; Usurpation of the Patent by James I.; Prudent Policy toward the Colonists,.....	80
THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.	
CHAPTER I.	
Unsuccessful Attempts of the Plymouth Company to Settle New England; Persecution of the Non-conformists; Retreat of Robinson's Congregation to Holland—their High Character—their Resolution to Plant a Colony—their Loyalty and Courage—Departure from Delft Haven,.....	83
CHAPTER II.	
Stormy Voyage of the Pilgrims to America; they Arrive at Cape Cod—are Compelled to Disembark—Institute a Republic; their Simple Constitution; Carver elected Governor; Absence of Personal Ambition among the Puritan Settlers,.....	86
CHAPTER III.	
Dreary Appearance of New England; Exploring Party; Strange Injustices to the Indians; The Voyage to Plymouth Harbour; Skirmish with the Savages; Settlement of Plymouth Founded; Great Suffering and Mortality among the Pilgrims,.....	86

CONTENTS.

7

PAGE  
 Operations performed  
 Masquerade of  
 ..... 46  
 England; Intercourse  
 Smith's Voyage  
 His Return,..... 52  
 with the Indians;  
 and Instructions of  
 Newport to find the  
 ..... 53  
 ny; Expedition to  
 saved by Pocahontas, 59  
 y Supplied; Smith  
 "Pretty Accidents" 61  
 Virginia Company;  
 from England—Il-  
 Presidency,..... 64  
 ists; Smith terribly  
 and Mortality after  
 ..... 67  
 surveys; His Second  
 tions for the Settle-  
 in England; Last  
 ..... 69  
 ival of Lord Dela-  
 ion; the Culture of  
 t; Great Accession  
 onists,..... 77  
 of Opechancanough;  
 the Colony; Unrup-  
 ..... 80  
 ection of the Non-  
 acter—their Resolu-  
 on,..... 83  
 pelled to Disembark  
 Absence of Personal  
 ..... 86  
 ndians; The Voyage  
 Founded; Great Suf-  
 ..... 86

CHAPTER IV. PAGE  
 The Indians of New England—thinned by Pestilence; the Pequot, Narragansett, and other Tribes;  
 Extraordinary Opinions of the English concerning them; Bigoted Accounts of the Ancient Historians, etc.,..... 91

CHAPTER V.  
 Samoset—"Welcome, Englishmen;" the Visit of Massachusetts; Treaty and Alliance; Mortality among  
 the Colonists; Death of Governor Carver; Duel, and its Punishment; Visit to Massachusetts—to Iyan-  
 ough; Affecting Incident,..... 95

CHAPTER VI.  
 Arrival of the Fortune; Challenge from Canonicut—his Superstitious Dread; Plymouth Fortified;  
 Weston's Colony at Weymouth—its Miserable Condition; Massachusetts III—cured by the English;  
 Dangerous Plot Revealed,..... 96

CHAPTER VII.  
 Expedition of Standish to Weymouth; Daring Policy; Slaughter of the Conspiring Indians; the Col-  
 ony of Weston Broken up; Privations and Sufferings at Plymouth—Drought—Seasonable Supply of  
 Rain; Additional Arrival,..... 101

CHAPTER VIII.  
 New Settlements Founded; New Hampshire and Maine; Endicot's Company; the Revellers of  
 Merry Mount—Broken up by the Puritans; Settlement of Massachusetts; Foundation of Boston;  
 Great Emigration; Mortality and Suffering,..... 104

CHAPTER IX.  
 Character of the Founders of Massachusetts; Regulations for Public Morality—for Apparel, etc.;  
 Amusing Penalties; Intolerance in Religion; Commencement of Persecution,..... 107

CHAPTER X.  
 Rev. Roger Williams; His Liberal Opinions; he is Persecuted by the Authorities of Massachusetts;  
 Expelled from that Province; takes Refuge in the Wilderness; Founda Providence Plantations and  
 the State of Rhode Island,..... 109

CHAPTER XI.  
 Settlement of Connecticut by Plymouth—by Massachusetts; Hardships of the Colonists; Foundation  
 of Hartford, etc; Emigration under Hooker—New Haven Founded; Commencement of the Pequot  
 War; Influence of Roger Williams,..... 113

CHAPTER XII.  
 The Pequot War, continued; the Attack on Weathersfield; Expedition under Mason; Surprise and  
 Storming of the Pequot Fort—Terrible Slaughter and Conflagration; Final Defeat and Destruction  
 of the Tribe; Barbarous Exultation of the Early Historians; Reflections,..... 116

THE SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.

CHAPTER I.  
 Sir George Calvert—his Schemes for Settlements in America—he Obtains the Grant of Maryland—  
 Finds a Colony there; Settlement of St. Mary's; Relations with the Indians; Expulsion of Clay-  
 borne; Discontent and Insurrection; Protestant Settlers; Act for the Toleration of all Christian Sects, 118

CHAPTER II.  
 Arbitrary System of Lord Baltimore; Disaffection of the Protestant Settlers; Interference of the Vir-  
 ginia Commissioners; Affairs in England; Triumph of the Protestants; Repeal of Toleration;  
 Civil War; Victory of the Protestants; Fendall's Insurrection—his Success and Final Ruin; Tolera-  
 tion Restored,..... 121

VIRGINIA—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER I.  
 Reign of Charles I.—his Views of Virginia; Yearley, Governr—West—Harvey—his Deposition by  
 the People—he is Supported by the Crown; Wyatt; Sir William Berkeley, Governor; Loyalty of  
 the Colony; Persecution of Dissenters; Second Indian Conspiracy and Massacre; Opechancanough  
 a Prisoner—his Speech—Murdered by a Soldier; Reduction of the Indians; Triumph of the Puritans  
 in England; Royalist Emigration to Virginia; Loyalty of the Province,..... 124



	PAGE
CHAPTER II.	
Act for the Reduction of Virginia; the Navigation Act; Moderation of the Parliament; Submission of the Province; Bennett, Governor—Diggs—Mathews; Jealousy of the Assembly against Foreign Interference; Freedom and Prosperity of Virginia under the Commonwealth; Death of Cromwell; Berkeley, Governor; Restoration of Charles II.; its ill Effect on the Province,.....	197
NEW ENGLAND—CONTINUED.	
CHAPTER I.	
Infinitesimal Measures adopted in England; Spirit of Massachusetts—Threat of Revolt; the English Revolution; Industry and Prosperity of New England—Its Independence; New Hampshire Annexed to Massachusetts; Formation of the New England Confederacy,.....	130
CHAPTER II.	
Uncas and Miantonimo; Defeat and Death of the latter; Discredit to the English; Rhode Island—its Liberties Guaranteed by the Parliament; Letter to Sir Henry Vane; Remarkable Freedom Enjoyed there; Maine Annexed by Massachusetts,.....	133
CHAPTER III.	
Opposition to the Massachusetts Authorities; Parliamentary Encroachment Resisted and Relinquished; New England Favoured by Cromwell; Bigoted and Intolerant Laws of Massachusetts; Persecution of Baptists; the Quakers—Persecution of them—Four Executed—their Courage and Fortitude; Apologists for the Hangings; Reflections,.....	136
CHAPTER IV.	
Education in Massachusetts; Harvard College; Restoration of Charles II.; Oppressive Enactments concerning Commerce; Attitude of the Colonies; Winthrop, the Younger; Connecticut obtains a Charter—her Freedom and Prosperity,.....	141
CHAPTER V.	
The Charter of Rhode Island; Civil and Religious Liberty; Careless and Extensive Grants of Charles II.; the Attitude of Massachusetts—Distrust of the Restoration; Requisitions of Charles II.; Appointment of a Commission; Alarm of the Colony,.....	143
CHAPTER VI.	
Remonstrance of Massachusetts; Doings of the Commissioners—their Disputes with the Authorities—their Discomfiture and Return to England; Successful Resistance of Massachusetts; Inertness of the Crown; Prosperity and Trade of the Province,.....	145
CHAPTER VII.	
Condition of the New England Indians—Conversion of some of them—their Numbers and Strength; the Pokanokets; Metacomet, or King Philip—his Grievances—Disimulation—Scheme for the Destruction of the English; Captain Church—his Character, etc.—his Discoveries an Intrigue of Philip, 147	147
CHAPTER VIII.	
Commencement of Philip's War; Exploit of Church; Retreat of the Indians; Philip Rouses the Tribes; Destruction of Towns, etc.; the Attack on Hadley—Repulsed by Coffin; Great Losses of the English; Springfield Burned,.....	150
CHAPTER IX.	
Philip's War, continued; Destruction of the Narragansett Fort—Terrible Massacre; Malignant Exultation of the Early Historians; Indian Successes; Capture and Death of Canonchet—his Heroism and Magnanimity; Diplomacy of Church,.....	153
CHAPTER X.	
Philip's War, continued; Successful Campaign of Church; Defeat and Capture of the Savages; Philip's Despair—he Retreats to Mount Hope—is Defeated and Slain—Barbarous Exposure of his Remains—his Character,.....	158
CHAPTER XI.	
Philip's War, concluded; Capture of Annawon and his Warriors, by Church; Romantic Incidents; Summary of the War; Philip's Son; Barbarous Policy of the Victors; Murderous Advice; the Character of the Puritans; Reflections,.....	138
CHAPTER XII.	
Renewed Interference of the Crown in Massachusetts; Severance of New Hampshire—Attempt to Tyrannize there—its Failure; Action of Massachusetts; Proceedings against its Charter; Vain Opposition and Remonstrance; the Charter Annulled,.....	161

SETTLEMENT OF THE CAROLINAS.

Failure to Plant Colonies in the South; Emigration from Virginia to North Carolina—from Barbadoes to South Carolina; the Patent of Charles II.; Legislation of Locke and Shaftesbury; Cumbrous System of Government; Discontent of the Settlers; Insurrection in North Carolina; Southal deposed by the People; Charleston Founded; Constitution of Locke Relinquished,.....	164
--	-----

VIRGINIA—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER I.

Retrograde Movements in Virginia; Revival of Intolerance and Oppression; Grant of Virginia to Culpepper and Arlington; Popular Discontent; Indian War; Murder of the Chiefs; Insurrection under Bacon; Triumph of the People,.....	100
--	-----

CHAPTER II.

The Popular Assembly; Measures of Reform; Opposition and Treachery of Berkeley; Civil War; Triumph of the Insurgents; Jamestown Burned; Death of Bacon—his Character; Ruin of the Popular Cause; Numerous Executions; Death of Berkeley; Administration of Culpepper, etc.,.....	170
--	-----

THE SETTLEMENT OF DELAWARE.

The First Dutch Colony in Delaware—its Destruction; Swedes and Finns under Minuit; Conquest of the Swedish Settlements by the Dutch, under Stuyvesant; Delaware under the Duke of York—under Penn; Disputes with Maryland concerning Boundaries; Separation of Delaware from Pennsylvania,.....	174
---	-----

THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY

Conquest by the English; Nichols, Berkeley, and Carteret; Emigration from New England; Sale of West New Jersey to the Quakers; Fenwick, Byllinge, and Penn; Quaker Settlements; Remarkably Free Constitution; Friendly Dealings with the Indians; Usurpation of Andros—its Defeat; East New Jersey,.....	176
--	-----

THE SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.

CHAPTER I.

William Penn—his Youth—he turns Quaker—is Expelled from College and Home—Imprisoned for his Opinions—Severity of his Father—Fresh Imprisonment—Exertions in behalf of his Sect—he Engages in the Settlement of New Jersey,.....	178
---	-----

CHAPTER II.

Penn obtains from Charles II. the Grant of Pennsylvania—his Admirable Proclamation to the Settlers—he Repairs to America—Gains Possession of Delaware—Honourable Dealings with the Indians—their Attachment to him; the Grant Treaty,.....	181
--	-----

CHAPTER III.

Liberal Legislation of Pennsylvania; Penn Founds Philadelphia—its Rapid Increase; Formation of a Constitution; Great Emigration from Europe; Growth of the Province; Penn returns to England; His Subsequent Career,.....	184
---	-----

THE NORTHERN COLONIES—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER I.

Sir Edmund Andros Commissioned by the Duke of York—his Attempts to Extend his Authority over Connecticut; Thomas Dongan; Union of the Colonies under a Royal Governor; Andros appointed Governor-general; Oppression in the Colonies; Proceedings against Connecticut and Rhode Island; Andros's Visit to Connecticut; Preservation of the Charter; the Northern Provinces forced to Submission; Doling in New England upon the Occurrence of the Revolution of 1688,.....	187
--	-----

CHAPTER II.

New York Subsequent to the Revolution of 1688; Assumption of Authority by Jacob Leisler—Opposition by the Council; Indian Incursions; Arrival of Slaughter as Governor; Trial and Execution of Leisler and Milbourne; Colonel Fletcher—his Futile Attempt to Enforce Authority in Connecticut; Church Difficulties; Bellamont's Peaceable Administration; Captain Kidd, the Pirate,.....	191
--	-----

PAGE

Submission against Foreign of Cromwell; ..... 137

English Revolt Annexed ..... 130

Madagascar—Freedom En- ..... 133

Relinquished; Persecution and Fortitude; ..... 136

Enactments which obtains ..... 141

ents of Charles II.; Ap- ..... 143

Authorities—; Inertness of ..... 145

and Strength; ne for the De- guo of Phillip, 147

p Rouses the Losses of the ..... 150

alignant Exul—his Heroism ..... 153

avages; Phil- arn of his Ro- ..... 153

atic Incidents; Advice; the ..... 156

Attempt to ter; Vain Op- ..... 161

CHAPTER III. PAGE  
 New Charter of Massachusetts; Trials for Witchcraft in Salem; First Execution; Parris and his Family; Court of Examination at Salem; Cotton Mather; Arrival of Phipps; Numerous Executions; Confessions; Cruelties Inflicted; Change in Public Opinion,..... 194

CHAPTER IV.  
 Controversy Concerning Revenue; Suspected Negro Revolt in New York—Mock-trials of the Accused—Barbarous Punishments; Connecticut—the Saybrook Platform; Massachusetts—Burning of Deerfield—Difficulties between the Governors and Assemblies; New Hampshire—Attack on Cocoono—Eastern Indian War; Rhode Island—its Commercial Prosperity; New Jersey—Opposition to Arbitrary Taxation—Scottish Immigration—Prosperity of the Colony—its Union with New York,..... 197

THE SOUTHERN COLONIES—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER I.  
 Charter of the Colony of Georgia; First Arrival of Colonists; Settlement of Savannah; Indian Negotiations; Mary Musgrove; Cession of Indian Claims; Character of Immigrants to Georgia; Traffic in Negroes Prohibited; Frederica Founded; War with Spain,..... 203

CHAPTER II.  
 Oglethorpe's Expedition against St. Augustine—Siege of the Town—Failure and Return of the Expedition; Spanish Invasion in 1732; Defence of Frederica; Stratagem of Oglethorpe; Thomas Bosomworth—his Intrigues with the Indians—Litigation with the Colony; Georgia a Royal Province, 209

CHAPTER III.  
 South Carolina—Religious Controversies—Archdale's Administration—Moore's Expedition against St. Augustine—Invasion of Indian Territory—French Fleet on the Coast—Culture of Rice—Indian Conspiracy—Revolt against the Proprietors—the Charter declared Forfeit—South Carolina a Royal Province; North Carolina—Political Disturbances—a Prosperous Anarchy—Separation from South Carolina,..... 209

CHAPTER IV.  
 Virginia under Royal Governors—State of the Colony—Church Controversies; Pennsylvania a Royal Province—the Proprietor Reinstated—Policy of Penn; Delaware—Death of Penn—his Successors; Maryland—its Catholic Population—Government of the Association—Oppressive Enactments—the Proprietors Restored,..... 211

INDIAN WARS, ETC.

CHAPTER I.  
 Commencement of the Cherokee War—Treaty at Fort St. George—Siege of that Fort—Murder of Hostages—Montgomery's Campaign—Destruction of the Lower Cherokee Settlements—Retreat—Massacre of the Garrison of Fort Loudon—the Towns of the Middle Cherokees destroyed by the Forces under Grant,..... 215

CHAPTER II.  
 English Occupation of the Western Trading Posts; Conspiracy of the North-western Tribes, under Pontiac; Destruction of the English Forts; Taking of Michillimackinac; Siege of Detroit; Loss at Bloody-run; Close of the War; Massacre of the Canastota Indians,..... 219

EUROPEAN COLONIAL POLICY.

Spanish and English Restrictions upon Trade and Commerce; Contraband Traffic; the "Asiento" Treaty; the Slave-trade—its General Popularity—Causes which lead to the Abolition of Slavery—Manner of Procuring Negroes from Africa—Profit of the Trade—Numbers brought over—English Law upon the Subject of Slavery; Introduction of White Apprentices, or "Redemptians,"..... 223

THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

CHAPTER I.  
 General Rights of Colonies; Early Causes of Complaint in America; Arbitrary Custom Laws; Illegal Conduct of English Officials; Acts in Regulation of Trade; Expenses of the Late Wars in America; the "Sugar-act;" Opposition and Remonstrance in the Colonies,..... 227

CONTENTS.

11

PAGE  
 Harris and his  
 merous Exoc-  
 ..... 184  
 of the Accused  
 urning of Deer-  
 on Coeneco-  
 sition to Arbi-  
 York,..... 197  
 ; Indian Nego-  
 Georgia; Traffic  
 ..... 203  
 urn of the Ex-  
 orpe; Thomas  
 Royal Province, 206  
 edition against  
 of Rice—Indian  
 Carolina a Royal  
 ation from South  
 ..... 208  
 edition against  
 of Rice—Indian  
 Carolina a Royal  
 ation from South  
 ..... 208  
 Pennsylvania a Royal  
 his Successors;  
 Enactments—the  
 ..... 212  
 Fort—Murder of  
 ents—Retreat—  
 destroyed by the  
 ..... 214  
 n Tribes, under  
 of Detroit; Loss  
 ..... 219  
 the "Asiento"  
 on of Slavery—  
 nt over—English  
 mptioners,..... 222  
 m Laws; Illegal  
 Wars in Amer-  
 ..... 227

PAGE

CHAPTER II.  
 The Stamp Act—Argument in the House of Commons—Passage of the Bill—its Effect in the Colonies;  
 Resolutions in the Virginia Assembly; Patrick Henry; Proceedings in Massachusetts—Popular  
 Tumults—Resignation of the Stamp Officers,..... 200

CHAPTER III.  
 Session of the First American Congress—Moderate Tone of its Proceedings—Concurrence of the Sep-  
 arate Colonies; the Stamp Act Nugatory; the English Ministry; Debate in Parliament; Speech  
 of Pitt Examination of Franklin; Repeal of the Stamp Act,..... 204

CHAPTER IV.  
 Interval of Quiet; New Taxes on Importations; Non-importation Agreement; Circular of Massachu-  
 setts; Riots at Boston; Assemblies Dissolved; Troops Ordered to Boston; Measures of the British  
 Government; Fatal Encounter between the Troops and Populace at Boston; Concessions of  
 Parliament,..... 232

CHAPTER V.  
 Party Spirit in the Colonies; Whig and Tory; the Regulators of North Carolina; Hutchinson, Gov-  
 ernor of Massachusetts; Destruction of the Gaspee; System of Political Communication between  
 the Colonies; Tea dispatched to America by the East India Company; Refusal of the Colonists to  
 Receive it; Violent Proceedings at Boston—Closure of the Port; Extension of Canada,..... 248

CHAPTER VI.  
 Gage, Governor of Massachusetts—Military Preparations—Minute-men; Distress in Boston—Sym-  
 pathy of other Towns; Convention Proposed by Virginia—Delegates Chosen by the Colonies; the  
 Continental Congress—Resolutions and Declaration Adopted; Violent Measures of Parliament, 246

CHAPTER VII.  
 Warlike Preparations in Massachusetts; Troops dispatched to Seize Military Stores; First Blood  
 Shed at Lexington; Disastrous Retreat of the British to Boston; Proceedings in the Neighbouring  
 Colonies; Boston Besieged by the Provincials; Concurrence of the Southern Colonies; Second  
 Session of Congress; Appointment of Officers; Seizure of Crown Point and Ticonderoga,..... 248

CHAPTER VIII.  
 Condition of the British Army in Boston; Battle of Bunker Hill; Washington at the Camp; Con-  
 gressional Proceedings; the Indian Tribes; Joseph Brant; Military Preparations in the Separate  
 Colonies,..... 253

CHAPTER IX.  
 Vacillating Policy of England; Provisions by Congress for Carrying on the War; Naval Operations;  
 Expedition against Canada; Siege of Fort St. John; Allen's Attempt upon Montreal; the City Oc-  
 cupied by Montgomery; March towards Quebec,..... 257

CHAPTER X.  
 Arnold's Expedition against Quebec—Passage of the Wilderness—Failure of Provisions—Defection  
 of Enos, with his Command—Arrival at the Canadian Settlements—Proclamations—Arnold at the  
 Heights of Abraham—Union with Montgomery—Attack on Quebec—Death of Montgomery—Mor-  
 gan's Rifle Corps—American Forces drawn off,..... 300

CHAPTER XI.  
 Warlike Preparations in England; German Mercenaries; Proceedings of Congress—Enlistments—  
 Issue of Bills—Defences in New York; Condition of the British in Boston; Occupation of Dor-  
 chester Heights; Evacuation of the City; Hopkins' Cruise among the Bahamas; Affairs at the  
 South; Attack upon Charleston; Retreat of the American Troops from Canada,..... 263

CHAPTER XII.  
 State of Feeling in the Colonies; Paine's Writings; Debates in Congress; the Declaration of In-  
 dependence—its Effect upon the People; the British at Staten Island; Proclamation of General and  
 of Admiral Howe,..... 267

CHAPTER XIII.  
 Landing of the British on Long Island; Battle of Brooklyn; the American Forces Driven from Long  
 Island; Occupation of New York by the British; Washington's Encampment at Harlem Heights—  
 at White Plains, Storming of Fort Mifflin; the Retreat through New Jersey; Capture of  
 General Lee; Condition of Prisoners; Lake Champlain—Destruction of the American Vessels;  
 Generosity of Carleton; Rhode Island Seized by the British,..... 279

	PAGE
<b>CHAPTER XIV.</b>	
Congress at Baltimore; Army Organization; Powers conferred upon Washington; Passage of the Delaware, and Recovery of Trenton; Battle of Princeton; End of the Campaign; Marauding Parties; Negotiation with European Powers; Foreign Officers in the American Service,.....	274
<b>CHAPTER XV.</b>	
Expeditions against Peekskill and Danbury; British Plan of Campaign; Howe's Departure from New York; Burgoyne's Army—his Proclamation; Siege of Fort Mifflin; Retreat of St. Clair; Burgoyne on the Hudson; Siege of Fort Schuyler; Battle of Red Bank; Indian Warfare,.....	278
<b>CHAPTER XVI.</b>	
Battles at Red Bank; Burgoyne's Retreat to Saratoga—his Surrender; Detention of Prisoners; Expedition from New York up the Hudson; Howe's March upon Philadelphia; Battle at Brandywine Creek; British Occupation of Philadelphia; Battle of Germantown; Reduction of Forts Mifflin and Mercer; Winter-quarters at Valley Forge,.....	281
<b>CHAPTER XVII.</b>	
Difficulties of Congress; Articles of Confederation; Recommendations to the States; Intrigues against Washington; Treaties with France; British Commissioners in America; Evacuation of Philadelphia; Battle of Monmouth; Arrival of a French Fleet; Attempt on Newport; Winter-quarters; Marauding Expeditions; Destruction of Wyoming,.....	285
<b>CHAPTER XVIII.</b>	
Invasion of Georgia; Occupation of Savannah; British Division under Prevost; Lincoln in Command at the South; Defeat of Ashe at Briar Creek; Attack on Charleston; Sullivan's Campaign against the Iroquois; Naval Operations of France and England; Attempt at a Recovery of Savannah; Further Naval Proceedings—Paul Jones; Condition of the American Army,.....	290
<b>CHAPTER XIX.</b>	
Siege of Charleston—Surrender of the City; South Carolina Occupied by the British; Tarleton's Legion—his Victory at Waxhaws; Cornwallis in Command; Defeat of the Americans at Camden; Guerrilla Operations of Sumpter and Marion; Invasion of North Carolina; Ferguson's Defeat at King's Mountain,.....	294
<b>CHAPTER XX.</b>	
Northern Operations; Springfield Burned; Arrival of the French Fleet and Forces—Blockade at Newport; Treason of Arnold; Trial and Execution of Major André; Causes of Arnold's Defection; Indian Ravages—Invasion of the Mohawk Valley by Johnson and Brant,.....	298
<b>CHAPTER XXI.</b>	
Revolt of the Pennsylvania Troops; Arnold's Expedition into Virginia; Greene in Command of the Southern Army; Morgan's Detachment—Battle of Cowpens—Pursuit of Morgan by Cornwallis—Passage of the Catawba—Retreat into Virginia—Battle of Guilford Court-house; Greene's March into South Carolina; Cornwallis in Virginia; Battle at Hobkirk's Hill; Seizure of British Forts by Marion and Lee,.....	301
<b>CHAPTER XXII.</b>	
War between England and Holland; Seizure and Plunder of St. Eustatius; the Armed Neutrality; Recovery of West Florida by Spain; Continental Currency; Plan for the Recovery of New York; Virginia Ravaged by Phillips and Cornwallis; Encampments at Yorktown and Gloucester Point; Washington's March Southward; Attack on New London and Groton; Campaign in South Carolina; Battle near Eutaw Springs,.....	305
<b>CHAPTER XXIII.</b>	
French Fleet in the Chesapeake; Siege of Yorktown; Surrender of Cornwallis; Winter-quarters; Proceedings in the English Parliament; Negotiations for Peace; Terms of Treaty; Cessation of Hostilities; Disaffection in the Continental Army; Evacuation of New York; Position of the United States,.....	309
<b>THE UNITED STATES.</b>	
<b>CHAPTER I.</b>	
Position of the Union at the Conclusion of Peace; Existing Difficulties with Great Britain; Weakness of Congress; Local Disturbances—Shay's Rebellion; Convention for Enlarging Congressional Powers—Opposing Interests of the States; the Present Constitution—Federal Legislature—Powers of Congress—Restrictions—Limit of State-Powers—the Executive—the Judiciary—Mutual Guarantees—Amendments, .....	313

CONTENTS.

13

PAGE  
 ... of the  
 ... rauding Par-  
 ..... 274  
 ... re from New  
 ... ir; Burgoyne  
 ..... 278  
 ... of Prisoners;  
 ... le at Brandy-  
 ... of Forts Mif-  
 ..... 281  
 ... rrigues against  
 ... n of Philadel-  
 ... inter-quarters;  
 ..... 285  
 ... n in Command  
 ... mpaign against  
 ... avannah; Fur-  
 ..... 290  
 ... Tarleton's Le-  
 ... us at Camden;  
 ... son's Defeat at  
 ..... 294  
 ... lockade at New-  
 ... Defection; In-  
 ..... 298  
 ... mmand of the  
 ... y Cornwallis—  
 ... Greene's March  
 ... British Forts by  
 ..... 301  
 ... ned Neutrality;  
 ... of New York;  
 ... oucster Point;  
 ... in South Caro-  
 ..... 305  
 ... /inter-quarters;  
 ... y; Cessation of  
 ... Position of the  
 ..... 308  
 ... ain; Weakness  
 ... gressional Pow-  
 ... ure—Powers of  
 ... tual Guarantees  
 ..... 313

CHAPTER II. PAGE  
 Ratification of the Constitution by the States; Washington Elected President; the First Congress—  
 Provisions for Revenue—Formation of a Cabinet—Power of Removal from Office; Washington's  
 Tour through New England; Second Session of Congress—Debate respecting the Public Debt—  
 Foreign Liabilities—Public Certificates—Assumption of State Debts—the Public Debt Funded—  
 Miscellaneous Enactments; Constitution Ratified by Rhode Island,..... 319

CHAPTER III.  
 Indian Negotiations—the Creeks—the North-western Tribes; Harmer's Unsuccessful Campaign; Third  
 Session of Congress—the Excise Law—a National Bank; Settlement of Kentucky—its Admission  
 to the Union; Admission of Vermont; Site of the Federal Capitol; the North-western Indians—St.  
 Clair's Expedition—his Disastrous Defeat; Political Parties; the Census,..... 323

CHAPTER IV.  
 Washington's Second Term—his Disinclination to Office; the French Revolution—its Political In-  
 fluence in the United States; Arrival of Genet, as Minister of the French Republic—his Proceedings  
 at Charleston; Neutral Position of the United States; Commercial Restrictions by France and Eng-  
 land; Impresment of American Seamen; Retirement of Jefferson; Algerine Depredations,..... 327

CHAPTER V.  
 American Politics; Debate in Congress upon Foreign Relations; Further Aggressions of England;  
 Commission of Jay as Ambassador Extraordinary to Great Britain; Relief of Immigrants from St.  
 Domingo; the Neutrality Laws; Resistance to the Excise—Rebellion in Western Pennsylvania—  
 its forcible Suppression—Opinions of the Republican Party,..... 331

CHAPTER VI.  
 General Wayne's Campaign against the North-western Indians; Defeat of the Confederate Tribes at  
 the Miami Rapids; Naturalization Laws; the Democratic Clubs; Hamilton's Resignation; the  
 British Treaty—its Ratification—Popular Indignation; Randolph's Resignation,..... 335

CHAPTER VII.  
 Indian Treaty at Fort Greenville; Treaties with Agiers and Spain—the Mississippi Opened to Amer-  
 ican Trade; Debate in Congress upon Jay's British Treaty; Tennessee Admitted into the Union;  
 French Proceedings in Respect to the Treaty; American Ministers to France; Washington's Re-  
 tirement from Office—Slanders upon his Character; John Adams Elected President,..... 339

CHAPTER VIII.  
 Treatment of United States' Ambassadors in France; Hostile Preparations in America; New Em-  
 bassy—Refusal of the Directory to Receive the American Ministers; Negotiations with Talleyrand;  
 Extravagant Demands and Injurious Decrees of the Directory; Return of the Ambassadors; Action  
 of Congress—Military Preparations—Alien and Seditious Laws—Land-tax, etc.,..... 341

CHAPTER IX.  
 Pacific Movements in France; Mission of Murray; Naval Engagements; Death of Washington; Na-  
 poleon First Consul; Treaty with France; First Session of Congress at Washington; Presidential  
 Election—Jefferson President, and Burr Vice-president; Party Removal from Office; Economical  
 Reforms; Ohio Admitted into the Union; Transfer of Louisiana to the United States,..... 345

CHAPTER X.  
 American Fleet in the Mediterranean; Expedition of Eaton and Hamet against Tripoli; Treaty con-  
 cluded; Jefferson's Re-election; Burr's Duel with Hamilton—his Western Enterprise—his Trial, ... 349

CHAPTER XI.  
 English Aggressions; Failure of Negotiation; Attack on the Frigate Chesapeake; Embargo; Non-  
 Intercourse Act; Abolition of the Slave-trade; John Randolph; West Florida; Concessions of  
 Napoleon; British Cruisers—the Little Belt; Tecumseh—Elskwatowa—Battle of Tippecanoe; East  
 Florida; Declaration of War,..... 353

CHAPTER XII.  
 Riots at Baltimore; Hull's Invasion of Canada; Repeal of the Orders in Council—Impresment; Na-  
 val Operations; Madison's Re-election; North-western Campaign—Defeat of Winchester; Attack  
 on York; the British on Lake Champlain,..... 359

CHAPTER XIII.  
 Naval Affairs—Perry's Victory on Lake Erie; Harrison's Canadian Campaign; the Niagara Frontier;  
 the Creek War—Jackson's Campaign; Negotiations for Peace; Brown's Invasion of Canada—Battle  
 of Bridge-water; Occupation of the Chesapeake—Battle of Bladensburg—Seizure of Washington  
 --Destruction of Public Buildings—Attack on Baltimore,..... 368

	PAGE.
CHAPTER XIV.	
Operations on the Coast of Maine; Attack on Plattsburgh—Battle of Lake Champlain; Naval Affairs—Lafitte; Negotiation at Ghent; the Hartford Convention; Treaty of Peace; Jackson's Defence of New Orleans—Battle of January 8; Naval Engagements,.....	374
CHAPTER XV.	
War with Algiers; Tariff—National Bank; Monroe, President; Jackson's Seminole Campaign; Cession of Florida by Spain; Admission of Missouri—the Compromise; Monroe's Second Term; Administration of John Quincy Adams; Election of Andrew Jackson; the Tariff; Nullification in South Carolina; the United States' Bank; Indian Removals; Black Hawk; the Cherokees,.....	381
CHAPTER XVI.	
The Seminole War; Early History of the Florida Indians; War of 1818; Indian Treaty of 1823—of 1832; Refusal of the Seminoles to Remove; Destruction of Dado's Detachment; Military Operations of Generals Scott and Jessup; Unsatisfactory Results of Negotiation; Expeditions of Colonels Taylor and Harney; Gradual Cessation of Hostilities; Recent Difficulties,.....	390
CHAPTER XVII.	
Administration of Van Buren—Financial Pressure—the Sub-treasury—Canadian Revolt—the North-eastern Boundary—the Affair of the Amistad; Harrison and Tyler—Bankrupt Law—Pre-emption—the Veto Power—Tariff; Admission of Texas,.....	395
CHAPTER XVIII.	
Texas as a Spanish Province—Grant to Moses Austin—Colonization—Difficulties of the Settlers; Revolution in Mexico—Bustamante—First Revolutionary Movements in Texas—Santa Anna's Presidency—his Usurpation; Second Texan Campaign—Success of the Patriots—Invasion by Santa Anna—Battle of San Jacinto—Independence Established,.....	400
CHAPTER XIX.	
Administration of James K. Polk; Annexation of Texas; the North-western Boundary; Discovery and History of the Territory of Oregon; Voyage of Junn de Fuca—Discovery of the Columbia—Trading Establishments—Journey of Lewis and Clarke—Astoria—Destruction of the Tonquin; War with Great Britain—Boundary Treaties—Settlement of the Country,.....	408
CHAPTER XX.	
Alteration in the Tariff; Acquisition of California—Early History of that Province—the Jesuit Missions in the Peninsula—the Dominicans; Upper California—the Franciscan Missionary Establishment—the Mexican Revolution—Attempts at Colonization,.....	413
CHAPTER XXI.	
Exploration of New California—Colonel Fremont's Survey of the South Pass—Overland Expedition of 1843-4—the Great Salt Lake—Return Route—Terrible Passage of the Sierra Nevada—Captain Butte's Settlement—Subsequent Expeditions of Fremont; the Gold Discoveries in California,.....	418
CHAPTER XXII.	
The Mormons; Administrations of Zachary Taylor and Millard Fillmore—Admission of California into the Union—Debate upon the Slavery Question—the Compromise—Expeditions of Narciso Lopez; Statistics; Franklin Pierce President—Japan—the Nebraska Question,.....	425
CHAPTER XXIII.	
Administration of James Buchanan—Republican Party—Know Nothings—Growth of Slavery question—Dred Scott decision—Kansas troubles—Utah War—William Walker's invasions of California and Nicaragua—Walker shot—Financial Panic of 1857—California Overland Mail—Revival of 1858—Treaty with Paraguay—Cuba—San Juan—Prince of Wales in America—Japanese embassy—John Brown—Nominating Conventions, 1860—Election of Lincoln and Hamlin—Secession; Confederate States of America—Growth of the Union,.....	433
CHAPTER XXIV.	
Canada—Statistical description of,.....	441
NEW BRUNSWICK.	
CHAPTER I.	
Area—English Settlement—French Discovery—Grant to Alexander—De La Tour and Charnisse—Bay Chaleurs settled—Ennui at Bay Chaleurs—Pirates—Spread of French settlements—Davidson at Miramichi—St. John settled—Attack on Miramichi—Micmacs—Attack the Viper—Feroicity of Martin—Gov. Carleton, 449	449
CHAPTER II.	
Progress after the American War—Colonial System of 1806-7—Duties on timber—Great Fire of 1825—Low	

at N  
Final

Surface  
—St.  
—Inte  
Geolo

Forest  
—Ray  
Iron C

Fisherie  
Mode  
Anim

Religio  
Negro  
stituti  
Statist

Nova So  
De Mo  
the Inc  
tion—

Growth  
bon at  
French  
vasion—  
Norrid,

War of  
victory  
with In  
dians—  
Nova S

Taking o  
colonies  
tions in  
—Sir J  
—Jour

Halifax—  
Amusem  
Shelbur  
Island.

Geograph  
tive An  
tural on  
Railroa

PAGE.

Naval Affairs—  
Defence of New  
..... 370

Spain; Cession  
; Administra-  
South Carolina;  
..... 381

1823—of 1832;  
erations of Gen-  
nels Taylor and  
..... 390

olt—the North-  
Pre-emption—the  
..... 303

ettlers; Revolu-  
Presidency—his  
a—Battle of San  
..... 400

; Discovery and  
hia—Trading Es-  
War with Great  
..... 408

Jesuit Missions  
Establishment—the  
..... 413

d Expedition of  
Captain Sutter's  
..... 418

California into the  
Lopez; Statis-  
..... 425

every question—  
ifornia and Nie-  
of 1838—Treaty  
—John Brown—  
derate States of  
..... 433

..... 441

Charnisse—Bay Chal-  
on at Miramichi—St.  
—Gov. Carleton. 449

at Fire of 1825—Loss

at Newcastle and Douglastown—Disputed American Boundary—Reference to the King of Netherlands—Final settlement—Prince of Wales' visit in 1800—Received at St. John—Journey to Fredericton—Return. 454

CHAPTER III.

Surface—Coast of Bay of Fundy—Mountains—St. John River—Grand Falls—Lower Valley—Winter Floods—St. Croix River—Petitcodiac—Miramichi—Restigouche—Lakes—Grand Lakes—Chepuctuicook Lakes—Internal Navigation—Southern Harbors—Northeastern Coast—Islands—Bay of Fundy—High tides—Geology—Coal strata..... 459

CHAPTER IV.

Forest Trees—Lumbering business—Camping out—Forking—River-Driving—Climate—Severity lessening—Rapid Growth of Vegetation—Agricultural value of Land—Crops—Fruit—Berries—Bituminous Coal—Iron Ore—Plumbago—Grindstones—Other Minerals—Commerce and Shipping Manufactures. .... 463

CHAPTER V.

Fisheries—First use by Europeans—English Acquisition—American Interference—Fishing in Bay of Fundy—Mode of Fishing—Coddish—Herring—Fishery in Gulf of St. Lawrence—Salmon—Fresh Water Fish—Animals—Roads—Fredericton described—St. John—Settlement—Public buildings—Trade—Other Towns. 471

CHAPTER VI.

Religious Denominations—Schools and Colleges—Population—Acadian French—Micmas—Malicetes—Negroes—Character of People—Hospitality—Social Pleasures—Population—Government—Courts; their Constitution and Session—List of Governors and their accession—Summary of Condition of Provinces—Final Statistics..... 478

NOVA SCOTIA.

CHAPTER I.

Nova Scotia discovered—First occupied by the French—Colony of De La Roche—Convicts on Sable Island—De Monte, Governor of Acadia—Confiscates Rossignol's goods—Poutrineourt settles Port Royal—Membertinn, the Indian Sachem—Poutrineourt and the Jesuits—Argill invades Acadia—Sir William Alexander's settle-ments—Kirk's conquest of Canada—Baillai—Charnisse—De La Tour..... 483

CHAPTER II.

Growth of Nova Scotia under the French—King William's War—Sir William Phips takes Port Royal—Villan on at Gemsec—Nova Scotia separated from Massachusetts—Peace of Ryswick—Queen Anne's War—French Negotiations with Pintec—Church's invasion of Nova Scotia—Repulse of th... Massachusetts in-vasion—A fourth one takes Port Royal—Peace of Utrecht—Reluctance of English to settle—Destruction of Norridgwock..... 488

CHAPTER III.

War of 1744—Du Vivier's Expedition—Duke D'Anville's Fleet—Wrecks, and its failure—Anson and Warren's victory over De La Jonquiere—Slow Increase of English colonists—Settlement of Halifax—French tamper with Indians—War of 1755—Col. Winslow's expedition from Massachusetts—Perplexities as to the Acadians—Resolved to remove them—Dispersed among the colonies—First House of Assembly—"Charter of Nova Scotia."..... 499

CHAPTER IV.

Taking of Quebec—Treaty with Mognuash Tribe—Cape Breton a separate Government for a time—American colonies try to detach Nova Scotia from England—Loyalist refugees—American privateers—Land speculations in 1781—Maroons from Jamaica—Gov. Wentworth—Gov. Sherbrooke—War of 1812—Lord Dalhousie—Sir James Kempt—Earl of Mulgrave—Visit of Prince of Wales—Rejoicings at Halifax—Enthusiasm—Journey to Windsor..... 498

CHAPTER V.

Halifax—Public Buildings—Royal Dockyard—Excellence of Harbor—Business advantages—Society and Amusements—Commerce and Shipping—Pictou; its commerce—Pictou College—Liverpool—Fishes—Shelburne—Singular History—Annapolis—Windsor—Digby; "Digby Chickens"—Lunenburg—Sable Island..... 509

CHAPTER VI.

Geography of Nova Scotia—Scenery—Lakes—Mountains—Geology—Primitive rocks—Secondary rocks—Native Animals—Healthiness of Climate—Character of Seasons—Soil; its distribution—Fruits—Agricul-tural capacity—Crops—Statistics—Board of Agriculture—Manufactures—Commerce—Mining—Fishes—Railroads..... 506



CHAPTER VII.

Nationality of the People—English—Americans—French—Indians—Characteristic traits—Excellence not appreciated—Intelligence and talent—Judge Haliburton and Sir W. F. Williams—Constitution of government—Governor—List of Governors—Legislature—Religious Denominations—Education and Schools—General prosperity—Population..... 519

NEWFOUNDLAND.

Area—Discovery—First Settlement—Cairart's settlement—Settlers driven off—First Local Government—Recent prosperity—St. John—Its Harbor—Buildings, etc.—Visit of Prince of Wales—Interior—Character of people—Red Indians—Animals—Plants—Minerals—Fisheries—Sealing—Statistics of trade—Grand Bank—Miquelots—Magdalen Islands..... 516

CAPE BRETON.

Topography—Discovery—Louisbourg Established—Shirley Plans its Reduction—Account of the Siege—Second Siege—Destruction of the Place—Cape Breton a Separate Government—English Settlements—The Bras d'Or—Sydney—Its Coal Mines—Isthmus at St. Peter's—Other Towns—Character of People—Animals—Land—Geology—Fisheries—Shipping—Visit of the Prince of Wales..... 527

PRINCE EDWARD'S ISLAND.

Discovery—Grant to Doublet—French Possession—English Seizure—Egmont's Fudal Scheme—Island given away by Lottery—Government Organized—List of Governors—Population—Topography—Geology—Native Trees and Animals—Fisheries, why not Developed—Agriculture—Climate—Commercé—Charlotte Town—Character of People—Religion—Education—Government—Wealth and Good Prospects—Prince of Wales' Visit in 1800..... 536

Ca

SEBAS  
ERY  
AT

En  
strang  
tween  
feble  
was d  
of tor  
resour  
coverd  
of Inc  
attemp  
partic  
mover  
pass, v

excellence not ap-  
-tion of government  
Schools—General  
..... 518

ernment—Recent  
-acter of people  
nd Bank—Mique-  
..... 516

the Siego—Second  
-ts—The Bras d'Or  
-Animals—Land—  
..... 527

eme—Island given  
-Genology—Native  
Charlotte Town--  
-Prince of Wales'  
..... 533

## THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA.

### Early Voyages and Attempts at Colonization.

#### CHAPTER I.

SEBASTIAN CABOT: HIS YOUTH: HIS FIRST VOYAGE, AND DISCOVERY OF NORTH AMERICA.—HIS SECOND VOYAGE, AND FUTILE ATTEMPT AT COLONIZATION.—OBSCURE INTERVAL IN HIS LIFE.—HE SERVES IN SPAIN.—HIS EXPEDITION UNDER HENRY VIII.—APPOINTED GRAND PILOT OF SPAIN.—HIS EXPEDITION TO SOUTH AMERICA.—HIS RETURN TO ENGLAND, SERVICES, OLD AGE, AND DEATH.

ENGLAND, the first to discover the American continent, was, strangely enough, the last to plant her colonies on its shores. Between a solitary brilliant effort of early enterprise and those late and feeble endeavours destined to eventuate in such mighty results, there was destined to intervene the barren *interregnum* of nearly a century of torpidity and ignorance, of imprudence and disaster. The scanty resources of her marine, and the lives of her most enterprising discoverers, for ages, were lavished in futile efforts to reach the shores of India by passing to the north of Asia, or in yet more hopeless attempts at the North-west Passage. After briefly describing the particulars of her first memorable achievement, and the unimportant movements in the same direction by which it was succeeded, we may pass, with little interruption, to the tardy and unprosperous beginning

of an empire, whose rise and progress are utterly without a parallel in the history of the world.

That achievement, indeed, as in the more remarkable instance of Columbus, and in that of Magellan, of Vespuceius, of Verrazano, and of Hudson, was mainly due to the genius and enterprise of one who, if not of foreign birth, was of foreign origin and education, seeking, in a strange land, the means of displaying his genius and courage in effecting grand discoveries. Sebastian Cabot, the son of an eminent Venetian merchant, was born at Bristol in England, about the year 1477. Being removed to Venice at the early age of four, he there received, for the age, an excellent education, and became especially imbued with the taste for maritime enterprise. Returning to England yet a youth, his ambition, like that of others of his family, was strongly kindled by tidings of the grand discovery of Columbus, then the chief event of the day. "By this fame and report," he says, "there increased in my heart a great flame of desire to attempt some notable thing."

An ambition so laudable has seldom been gratified at such an early age; and a more "notable thing" than the young adventurer probably dreamed of, was destined, while he was yet a boy, to immortalize his name. Henry VII., whose far-sighted policy had looked with immediate favour on the scheme of Columbus, and who had narrowly missed the first claim to America, in March, 1496, at the instance of John Cabot, granted to him and his three sons—Lewis, Sebastian, and Sancius—a patent "to sail to all parts, countrys, and seas, of the East, of the West, and of the North, to seek and find out whatsoever isles, countries, regions, or provinces of the heathen and infidels, whatsoever they may be, and in what part of the world soever they be, which before this time have been unknown to all Christians." The main object of this expedition was the enterprising attempt, so often since repeated, first from ignorance of climate and geography, and latterly from sheer English hardihood and perseverance, to find a North-west passage to the shores of India.

Sebastian, though as yet only a youth of nineteen, was entrusted with the command of the expedition, which consisted of five ships, and in the spring of 1497, accompanied by his father, took his departure from the port of Bristol. After stopping at Iceland, they held on to the westward, and on the 24th of June, beheld the land stretching before them, being portions of the coasts of Labrador and Newfoundland. Little exultation seems to have been awakened by

this momentous discovery of a continent. "After certayne dayes," says Sebastian, "I found that the land ranne toward the North, which was to mee a great displeasure, \* \* \* not thinking to find any other land than Cathay" (China). He entered, however, it would seem, one of the channels which lead into Hudson's Bay, and thought himself (like Hudson, a century later) fairly in the desired track; but after keeping westward for several days, the crews, discouraged by the length of the voyage and the failure of provision, insisted on return. Compelled to yield, he put about, and after coasting along shore for some way to the southward, made his way to England. Not long afterwards, John Cabot expired.

In the spring of 1498, Sebastian, anxious to found a colony, took with him three hundred men, and again set sail for the region he had discovered. These unfortunate people he landed on the bleak and inhospitable coast of Labrador, that they might form a settlement there, and then with the squadron renewed his search for the North-west Passage. The particulars of this unsuccessful attempt are not recorded; but on his return to the station, he found that the settlers had suffered miserably from cold and exposure, though, in that high northern latitude, "the dayes were very longe, and in a manner without nyght." A number had already perished, and the rest, refusing to remain any longer in these inclement regions, were taken on board, and carried back to England. In the return voyage, he coasted along the Atlantic sea-board of North America as far as Florida.

From this time until the year 1512, very little is known of the career of Cabot; though, it is said, deprived of the aid of the crown, he fitted out vessels at his own charges, and made "great discoveries," in a more southerly direction. In that year we find him employed by Ferdinand of Spain, and, not long after, a member of the Council of the Indies. He was also entrusted with the command of a fresh expedition to seek the Westerly Passage; but this project failing, from the death of his patron, in 1516, he returned to England, where he was received with favour by Henry VIII. From that country he made a fresh expedition to the north-west, attaining the sixty-seventh degree of north latitude, and making fresh surveys in Hudson's Bay; but from the severity of the season, the mutinous disposition of his crews, and the timidity of Sir Thomas Pert, who commanded under him, ("whose faint heart was the cause that the voyage took none effect,") was compelled to return to England, his purpose

anaccomplished. In 1518, he was recalled to Spain by Charles V., then on the throne of that country, and received the honourable and responsible appointment of Chief Pilot.

In April of 1528, he set forth, with three ships, on a voyage to the Pacific by the strait of Magellan; but, through mutiny and shipwreck, his project was disconcerted, and he devoted himself to inland exploration. He passed up the La Plata and the Paraguay, and, during an absence of five years, added materially to a knowledge of the geography of those regions, as well as of their natural wealth and resources. In 1531, he returned to Spain, and resumed his office of Chief Pilot, being then fifty-three years of age. Despite his many misfortunes, his reputation as a discoverer and navigator was great. "He is so valiant a man," says a contemporary, "and so well practiced in all things pertaining to navigations and the science of cosmographie, that at this present he hath not his like in all Spaine, insomuch that for his vertues he is preferred above all other Pilots that saile to the West Indies, who may not passe thither without his license, and is therefore called Pilote Maggiore, (that is, Grand Pilot.)" "I found him," says another, "a very gentle and courteous person, who entertained mee friendly, and showed mee many things, and among other a large mappe of the world"—at that time, doubtless, a great curiosity, and which certainly would be none the less such now. The learned and enterprising seem to have found delight in his society, and as, with increasing age, he gradually relinquished his more active occupations, a serene tranquillity, relieved from monotony by the interest of his office, rewarded the more arduous achievements of his youth and manhood. "After this," he writes, "I made many other voyages, which I now pretermit, and waxing olde, I give myself to rest from such travels, because there are now many young and lustie pilots and mariners of good experience, by whose forwardness I do rejoyce in the fruit of my labors and rest in the charge of this office as you see."

Aged as the discoverer was when he wrote this letter, his work was far from finished; the promotion of English enterprise and the building up of a marine mightier than the world has ever seen, being reserved as the crowning laurel of his long and useful life. In 1543, being then seventy years old, he revisited his native country, where he met with much favour from the young king, Edward VI. It has been said that he was appointed to the office of Grand Pilot of England—and—an office which, in the unprosperous condition of foreign

com  
tain  
skill  
evin  
Cabo  
be s  
whos  
reca  
H  
spir  
told,  
pilot  
tion  
1553,  
with  
in the  
unap  
Tham  
the c  
runni  
thick  
dows  
This  
of his  
of th  
pushi  
found  
We  
Engli  
ligent  
basis.  
the co  
years  
narrat  
olde g  
wishi  
of the  
Christ  
that w  
to see

commerce, must, at this time, have been almost a sinecure. He certainly received a handsome pension. His reputation for maritime skill, (as well perhaps as the jealousy of the Spanish court,) is evinced in a formal demand made by Charles V., that "Sebastian Cabote, Grand Pilot of the Emperor's Indies, then in England, might be sent over to Spain, as a very necessary man for the Emperor, whose servant he was and had a pension of him." This peremptory recall was, however, disregarded.

His arrival in London gave a fresh stimulus to the almost decayed spirit of English enterprise. The chief men of that port, we are told, began "first of all to deal and consult diligently" with the aged pilot; and by his advice three vessels were fitted out for an expedition to the north-east. This little squadron, which sailed in May, 1553, under the command of Sir Hugh Willoughby, was regarded with a curiosity which indicates the infancy of maritime enterprise in the nation whose exploits in that direction have since been utterly unapproachable by those of any other. As it floated down the Thames, says old Hakluyt, "being come neere to Greenwich (where the court then lay) presently on the news thereof, the courtiers came running out, and the common people flockt together, standing very thiek upon the shoare; the privie counsell, they lookt out at the windows of the court, and the rest ranne up to the toppes of the towers." This expedition resulted in the destruction of Sir Hugh and most of his people, who perished on the dreary coast of Lapland; but one of the vessels, commanded by Richard Chancellor, succeeded in pushing her way far eastward through the Arctic seas, and laid the foundation of a prosperous commerce between England and Russia.

We find Cabot, in extreme old age, still the active patron of English enterprise and commerce; which, by his vigorous and intelligent direction, was gradually placed on a substantial and lucrative basis. A pleasant description of his demeanour is given by one of the company of a small vessel, which, with his friends (when eighty years old) he visited at Gravesend. "They went on shore," says the narrator, "giving to our mariners right liberal rewards; and the good olde gentleman, master Cabota, gave to the poor most liberrall almes, wishing them to pray for the good fortune and prosperous success of the *Search-Thrift*, our pinesse. And then at the signe of the Christopher, hee and his friends banketed, and made mee, and them that were in the company great cheere; and so very joy that he had to see the towardness of our intended discovery, he entered into the

dance himself, among the rest of the young and lusty company; which being ended, hee and his friends departed, *most gently commending us to the governance of Almighty God.*" The most elaborate description could hardly present a more agreeable picture of hale, cheerful, and benevolent old age, than is suggested by this little incident, thus casually recorded.

After the accession of Mary, this aged and useful servant of the crown spent the brief remainder of his days in neglect and obscurity. It mattered little to him, however, for his work was done. "On his death-bed, says an eye-witness, 'he spake slightly' of a certain divine revelation (which he might disclose to no man) for the infallible ascertainment of the longitude. With his last thoughts thus amused by visions so suited to his mind and his past life, the Discoverer of North America died calmly—it is supposed in the city of London; but the date of his death, and the place where his remains are laid, have long been lost even to tradition."

---

## CHAPTER II.

THE "DOMINUS VOBISCU:" FAILURE AND MISFORTUNE.—  
IMPROVEMENT OF THE ENGLISH MARINE.—MARTIN PRO-  
BISHER: HIS VOYAGE IN SEARCH OF A NORTH-WEST PASSAGE.  
—DIMINUTIVE EQUIPMENTS OF THE EARLY DISCOV-  
ERERS.—SUPPOSED DISCOVERY OF GOLD ORE.—  
SECOND EXPEDITION OF PROBISHER.—SURVEYS.  
—CONTEST WITH THE ESQUIMAUX.—HIS THIRD  
EXPEDITION.—ITS FAILURE.

THE voyage of Cabot, under Henry VIII., in 1517, in search of a North-west Passage, is the only one made by the English, in that direction, for ten years, of which any record has survived. In 1527, two ships, the "*Dominus Vobiscum*" ("the Lord be with you") and another were dispatched by the same sovereign to the northern coasts of America. "Divers cunning men," one being a canon of St. Paul's, went on this expedition, which, however, one of the vessels being wrecked, resulted in nothing of importance. The fact, indeed, that a letter, describing the voyage, was forwarded home

usty company;  
most gently com-  
most elaborate  
picture of hale,  
by this little

servant of the  
and obscurity.  
one. "On his  
a certain divine  
r the infallible  
ats thus amused  
e Discoverer of  
ity of London;  
remains are laid,

ESFORTUNE.—  
MARTIN PRO-  
EST PASSAGE.  
Y DISCOV-  
D ORE.—  
URYEYS.  
THIRD

7, in search of a  
English, in that  
ved. In 1527,  
with you") and  
o the northern  
eing a canon of  
er, one of the  
nce. The fact,  
orwarded home









from  
cat  
by  
hav  
I  
sam  
you  
fam  
is a  
obt  
nish  
soo  
oro  
for  
of n  
a fe  
ann  
T  
and  
to E  
alre  
of C  
skil  
ever  
exp  
the  
a N  
Fro  
nota  
F  
ever  
and  
wic  
larg  
Wi  
from  
hist  
stru  
est  
am

from the harbour of St. John's, Newfoundland, would seem to indicate that some intercourse already existed with those parts—probably by fishing vessels, which, in emulation of the early Bretons, may have resorted thither.

Nine years afterwards, (1536,) another voyage was made in the same direction by a company of adventurers, many of whom were young lawyers from the Inns of Court, and gentlemen of good family. They were reduced to a wretched condition, and even, it is said, resorted to cannibalism, devouring one another; at last, obtaining by stratagem, at Newfoundland, a French ship, well furnished with supplies, they made their way home, whither they were soon followed (in the ship they had left) by the French crew, clamorous for redress. It would appear, from laws passed not long after for the protection of the fisheries at Newfoundland, that this branch of national industry had already made a fair beginning; and only a few years later, from thirty to fifty English vessels, it is said, came annually to that region.

The fate of Willoughby, in seeking a north-east passage, in 1553, and the success of his officer, Chancellor, in discovering a sea-route to Russia, and opening a lucrative commerce with that empire, have already been mentioned. The English marine, under the auspices of Cabot, rapidly increased in extent, and the English mariners in skill and boldness; and the brilliant reign of Elizabeth, so fertile in every department of greatness, was illustrated by numerous naval exploits, both in war and attempted discovery. The attention of the learned and enterprising was revived to the scheme of effecting a North-west Passage—an undertaking, in the language of Martin Frobisher, "the only thing of the world, yet left undone, whereby a notable mind might become fortunate and famous."

For fifteen years, that navigator, afterwards so famous in almost every sea, vainly sought the means of pursuing his grand design; and it was not until 1576, that by the favour of the Earl of Warwick, he was enabled to fit out a little flotilla of three vessels, the largest of which was only thirty-five tons, and the smallest but ten. With this slender equipment, on the 19th of June, 1576, he sailed from Yarmouth on his long-cherished enterprise. "In reviewing the history of these early expeditions, the most casual reader must be struck with the humble and insignificant means with which the grandest enterprises were attempted and often accomplished. Columbus, amid the storms of a most tempestuous winter, made his way back to

Europe, after his great discovery, in an open caravel; Hudson, with only ten men, undertook 'to find a passage to India by way of the north pole;' and the good Sir Humphrey Gilbert, after voyaging safely to Newfoundland in his little Squirrel, (of only ten tons,) was finally whelmed in a tremendous gale beneath the 'pyramid-like' seas of the Atlantic."

On the 11th of July, this little squadron came to the southern extremity of Greenland, and, keeping to the westward, on the 18th of August again made land on some part, it is probable, of the coast of Labrador. Here the voyagers fell in with parties of Esquimaux, who came off to the vessels in their seal-skin boats; and five of the crew, who too rashly went ashore with them, were carried off, and could not be recovered. This land was named by Frobisher "Meta Incognita." One of his little vessels was swallowed up by the sea, and another deserted him; yet he pressed on, and made considerable surveys in those dreary regions. On his return to England, certain bits of glittering stone which he had found there were confidently pronounced by the English goldsmiths to be no other than gold ore. The announcement of this fancied discovery of the precious metal stimulated the nation to fresh enterprise, and even relaxed the strings of the royal purse (in general most reluctantly unloosed) to a slight disbursement. With a ship of an hundred and eighty tons, furnished by the crown, and called the *Ayde* (*Aid*), and with two smaller vessels, on the 26th of May, 1577, he again set forth in quest of gold mines and the North-west Passage.

He passed Friesland, and thence, stretching over to Labrador, sailed up the straits which still bears his name, and which he supposed to be a channel dividing Asia and America. A plenty of the glittering trash which had deluded him was found, and stowed aboard the ship; and for thirty leagues he made his way up the strait, confidently supposing that it led to the Indian ocean. In some boats of the Esquimaux, various European articles were found, probably belonging to the mariners who had been lost on the preceding voyage. To recover these or to revenge their death, he engaged in hostilities with the savages, who fought with much desperation, flinging themselves, when mortally wounded, into the sea. A number of them having been slain, the rest took refuge among the cliffs, all the men of the party making their escape. "Two women," says the journal of the voyage, "not being so apt to escape as the men were, the one being olde, the other encombred with a yong childe,

we tooke. The olde wretch, whom divers of our Saylers supposed to be eyther the Divell or a witch, had her buskins plucked off, to see if she were cloven-footed, and for her ougly hewe and deformitie, we let her goe; the yong woman and the childe we brought away." All attempts to recover the lost mariners proved fruitless, and on the 21st of August, ice having begun to form around the ships, Frobisher perceived the danger of attempting to remain or proceed. Accordingly, he put about, and with his vessels freighted with two hundred tons of shining earth, returned to England.

Wonderful to state, the fallacy of the imagined El Dorado was not yet discovered. The ore was pronounced genuine by men of science, and, as usual where the thirst for gold is fairly awakened, men flocked in crowds to join a fresh expedition. Fifteen ships, with preparations for a settlement, were fitted out, and, under command of Frobisher, on the 31st of May, 1578, again sailed for the land of imagined treasure. After encountering much danger from storms and icebergs, the fleet entered a great strait leading westward, probably the chief entrance to Hudson's Bay. Finding that he was not in the passage he had formerly entered, in the region of imagined gold, Frobisher put about; but was so long in getting to the desired locality that winter almost set in before he arrived there; his sailors and colonists, disheartened by the length of the voyage, clamoured for return; one ship, laden with supplies, deserted; and, compelled to abandon his plans for colonization and discovery, the admiral, freighting his ships with the supposed treasure, returned to England. By this time, its worthlessness had been fairly discovered; and though he eagerly besought the means at least for continuing his attempts at the North-west Passage, the public and the crown, discouraged by their losses and misfortunes, refused to lend him further assistance. The remainder of his life was passed in naval warfare and adventure, which perpetuate his name as a bold leader and skilful navigator. He died in 1604, of a wound which he received in an expedition to the French coast.

## CHAPTER III.

ENGLISH ENTERPRISE.—DRAKE.—SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT  
 —HIS FIRST ATTEMPT TO COLONIZE AMERICA.—SIR WAL-  
 TER RALEIGH.—SIR HUMPHREY SAILS FOR AMERICA —  
 SHIPWRECKS AND MISFORTUNES.—THE RETURN VOYAGE.  
 --TEMPESTS.—LOSS OF SIR HUMPHREY AND HIS CREW.

ENGLAND, in the midst of continued loss and misfortune by her attempts at discovery, at mining, and at colonization in the New World, was now fairly embarked in her grand career of naval enterprise—the wealth and renown acquired by her daring mariners in their half-chivalrous, half-piratical expeditions against the Spaniards of America serving to keep alive the national interest in that region, and a knowledge of the Western Continent being incidentally but materially promoted by their cruises. At the same time that Fro-bisher was making his unsuccessful voyages in search of gold and of the North-west Passage, Francis Drake, a mariner of similar and yet greater renown, after his memorable passage of the straits of Magellan, was engaged in a survey of the western coast of North America, in the course of which he touched on the shores of Oregon, which he named New Albion.

The example of enterprise, stimulated by motives purer and more honourable than those of either, was not long in presenting itself. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, a man of high character and amiable temper, both a soldier and a civilian, had interested himself much in the daring but futile voyages of his countrymen in search of a North-west Passage. He had even written a treatise, founded on the testimony and opinion of "many learned men and painfull travellers," "to proove by experience of sundrie men's travels the opening of some part of this North-west Passage; whereby good hope remaineth of the rest." No words could have phrased more effectually that expectant longing, which now for three centuries has beset men of courage, of enterprise and inquiry, to solve the grand problem—"the one thing yet left undone upon the earth whereby a notable mind might be made famous and fortunate"—of a communication between the two oceans. That terrible problem, whose final solution we have just witnessed,

will ever remain burdened with the saddest associations, both ancient and modern, of heroic courage and indefatigable perseverance doomed to repeated suffering, disappointment, and destruction.

In the year 1578 he obtained from Elizabeth a patent, conferring sole jurisdiction, both civil and criminal, over a very extensive territory in America, not precisely located, on condition that he should plant a colony there within six years. His half-brother, the famous Sir Walter Raleigh, then twenty-six years of age, his imagination fired by the narratives of Columbus, of Cortes, and of other famous pioneers of the New World, also engaged in the enterprise. This expedition, delayed and weakened by various misfortunes, finally sailed with only two vessels, one of which was captured by the Spaniards; the crew of the other returned without effecting any thing in the way of settlement.

An interval of several years elapsed, during which Raleigh rose high in the royal favour; and in 1583, the brothers renewed their enterprise, Sir Humphrey, in person, commanding the expedition. The queen, to express her favour, at his departure bestowed on him an anchor of gold, with a great pearl set in it, which, during the remainder of his life, he wore, with allowable complacency, on his breast. The fleet consisted of five sail, the largest of which, the Raleigh, was furnished by the famous man after whom it was named. There were two hundred and sixty men on board, including mechanics and mineralogists; and a learned Hungarian, named Parmenius, was taken as the chronologer of the expedition. There was also provided, says one of the commanders, "Musike in great variety; not omitting the least toys, as Morris-dancers, hobby-horse, and the like conceits, to delight the savage people, whom we intended to win by all faire meanes possible."

Soon after their departure, the Raleigh, on account of an infectious disease, put back; and Sir Humphrey, with the remainder of the fleet, kept on to Newfoundland. At St. John's Harbour, at that island, he summoned the Spanish and Portuguese fishermen to witness the ceremony of taking possession in the name of the English sovereign—an operation which he performed by digging a turf, and setting up a pillar, to which the arms of England were affixed. Silver ore, as it was supposed, was discovered, and was taken aboard the vessels, one of which was abandoned, while with the remainder Sir Humphrey pursued his voyage along the coast towards the south. On his way, the largest ship remaining, with the ore, was wrecked,

BY GILBERT  
—SIR WAL-  
MERICA—  
N VOYAGE.  
IS CREW.

fortune by her  
on in the New  
of naval enter-  
ing mariners in  
t the Spaniards  
t in that region,  
ncidentally but  
time that Fro-  
of gold and  
of similar and  
f the straits of  
coast of North  
ores of Oregon,

urer and more  
representing itself.  
amiable temper,  
ch in the daring  
orth-west Pass-  
testimony and  
s," "to prove  
f some part of  
eth of the rest."  
pectant longing,  
arage, of enter-  
one thing yet  
might be made  
the two oceans.  
just witnessed,



and a hundred souls perished, including the Hungarian. Return was now considered necessary, and in the midst of terrible storms and tempests, the prows were turned homeward. "Sir Humphrey had chosen to sail in a little tender, called the Squirrel, a mere cockleshell in size—'too small to pass through the ocean sea at that season of the year.' In vain did the officers of the *Hinde*, the larger vessel, entreat him, in this dangerous weather, to shift his flag aboard their ship. He came on board, for a convivial meeting, but returned to his slender craft, saying, 'I will not desert my little company, with whom I have passed so many storms and perils.'

"The weather grew heavier and heavier; the oldest sailors declaring that they had never seen such seas—'breaking very high,' says a spectator, 'and pyramid-wise'—the very worst sea that is known. Lights were burned at night, and the little *Squirrel*, for a long time, was seen gallantly contending with the waves, which almost engulfed her. Once she came so near that they of the *Hinde* could see Sir Humphrey sitting by the mainmast, with a book in his hand, reading. He looked up, and cried cheerily, 'We are as neere to Heaven by sea as by land.' But the seas broke over her more heavily; about midnight, all at once, the lights were extinguished; and in the morning nothing was seen of the good Sir Humphrey or his little ship. She had doubtless been whelmed by the toppling down of some huge pyramid of water. Such was the melancholy but honourable end of one of the worthiest and most persevering patrons of English enterprise. He perished in the pursuance of his own exalted maxim: 'That he is not worthy to live at all, who, for fear or danger of death, shunneth his country's service or his own honor; for death is inevitable and fame immortal.'"<sup>\*</sup>

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

## CHAPTER IV.

THE PATENT OF RALEIGH.—HE DISPATCHES AMIDAS AND BARLOW TO CAROLINA: THEIR REPORT.—THE COUNTRY NAMED VIRGINIA.—VOYAGES OF DAVIS, ETC.—SECOND EXPEDITION OF RALEIGH, UNDER LANE.—SETTLEMENT AT ROANOKE.—POLLY AND CRUELTY OF THE ENGLISH.—THE INDIANS.—MASSACRE BY THE ENGLISH.—FAILURE AND RETURN OF THE EXPEDITION.

RALEIGH, whose enterprising spirit was dismayed neither by the loss of his brother, nor the wreck and failure of the late expedition, immediately resolved to renew the attempt, and secure to himself the glory of the first founder of an English settlement in America. To one so high in the queen's favour, letters patent, of the most liberal nature, were readily issued, granting him power to colonize, with almost unlimited personal jurisdiction, "such remote, heathen, and barbarous lands as are not actually possessed by any Christians, or inhabited by any Christian people." No particular region was specified as the subject of this indefinite grant; but, warned by the fate of former enterprises, he had resolved to plant his settlement in the milder regions of the south. The very year after the loss of Sir Humphrey, on the 27th of April, 1584, he dispatched two vessels, well provided with men and supplies, under two experienced captains, Amidas and Barlow, to the American coast.

Taking the circuitous route of the Canaries and the West Indies, (which, strange to say, for many years was considered the only practicable track,) after a voyage of two months, they arrived off the shores of Carolina. For more than a hundred miles they sailed along the coast, seeking a harbour, and on the 18th of July, entered Ocracoke Inlet. Here they landed on an island, delighted with the softness of the climate and the beauty of the vegetation, and took formal possession of the country in the name of Elizabeth. The natives, at first shy and timid, proved gentle and friendly, and on the island of Roanoke the voyagers were entertained with much hospitality at the residence of the chief. After making some brief survey of the coast, they returned to England, where the glowing description which they gave of the beauties of the region, encouraged

the projector, and revived fresh enterprise in the nation. In honour of his patroness, Raleigh bestowed on the newly discovered region, the name of Virginia—a name, like that of Florida and of Louisiana, originally applied to a tract far more extensive than even the broad and beautiful state by which it is now borne.

A fresh stimulus, at this time, was given to the North-Western enterprise, and the voyages of Davis, in 1585, 6, 7, though unsuccessful in accomplishing their design, added greatly to the geographical knowledge of the dreary seas and coasts in that direction. The voyages and discoveries of the famous Henry Hudson, resulting in his own destruction, but in the eternal commemoration of his name, occurred a few years later. (See "The Dutch in America.")

The year after the return of his pioneer-vessels, (1585,) Raleigh, then in the full tide of court favour and increasing wealth, fitted out a fresh expedition, of seven vessels, with an hundred and eight colonists, under command of Ralph (afterwards Sir Ralph) Lane, destined for the shores of Carolina. His friend, Sir Richard Grenville, one of the bravest and choicest spirits of the age, commanded the fleet, which, on the 9th of April, set sail from Plymouth. Taking the usual circuitous route, it passed through Ocracoke Inlet to the island of Roanoke; and Grenville, with Lane and others, made a tour of exploration. They were well entertained by the natives whom they encountered—in return for which, as usual with the European adventurers, provoked by slight injury, they took cruel and indiscriminate revenge. "At Aquascogoe," says Sir Ralph, "the Indians stole a Silver Cup, wherefore we burnt the towne, and spoyled their corne," &c., &c. What an exceedingly low standard of morality, of policy, of common decency even, do acts like these, recorded a hundred times by their authors with the most *naïve* unconsciousness, exhibit!

The settlers, under Lane, left on the island of Roanoke, at first were all enjoyment at the serenity of the climate and beauty of the country. "It is the goodliest soil," says their governor, "under the cope of heaven; the most pleasing territory of the world; the continent is of a huge and unknown greatness, and well peopled and towned, though savagely." The native culture of tobacco, of maize, and the potato, was observed with much interest; an interest which would have been redoubled, could the visitors have foreseen the vast magnitude and importance which the production of these articles was destined one day to assume.

A more particular observation of the Indians than had hitherto been made, was taken by the colonists, who describe them as generally a feeble, inoffensive race, dwelling in small villages, and forming tribes of no great separate importance. Master Heriot, who especially devoted himself to the subject, travelled among them, and endeavoured to indoctrinate them with some idea of Christianity. They manifested much reverence for the Bible which he displayed to them, kissing it and hugging it to their breasts, and doubtless considering it "a great medicine." They had a species of belief in the Divine Existence and the immortality of the soul; and the traveller tells a pleasant story of one of them who had been buried for dead, but was afterwards exhumed and revived. According to the Indians, the recovered patient "showed that although his body had laine dead in the grave, yet his soule lived, and had travailed far in a long broad way, on both sides whereof grewe more sweete, fayre, and delicate trees and fruits than ever he had seene before; at length he came to the most brave and fayre houses, neere which he met his Father, that was dead long agoe, who gave him charge to goe backe to shew his friends what good there was to doe, to enjoy the pleasures of that place; which when hee had done, hee should come again."

Allured by fanciful and perhaps misunderstood tales concerning great treasures at the source of the Roanoke, Lane, with a number of his people, ascended its rapid stream. Their provisions were soon exhausted, yet they pressed on, "seeing they had yet a dog, that, being boyled with saxafras leaves, would richly feede them in their return," but accomplished nothing of their object, and returned disappointed. A most outrageous deed was presently perpetrated. The neighboring Indians, *it is said*, jealous of the intrusion of the strangers, had conspired against them, and Lane, with others, desiring an interview with King Wingina, the principal chief of that region, treacherously attacked and massacred him and his attendants. In June, 1586, the famous Sir Francis Drake, with a fleet of twenty-three ships, came to anchor off the island; and, though that energetic commander did every thing in his power to encourage the colonists, and to furnish them with all necessary supplies, yet, desponding of success, they desired to return to their homes. Accordingly, he took them aboard his fleet, and carried them to England—the principal result of their American sojourn being the introduction to that country of the custom of smoking tobacco, which they had learned of the Indians.

## CHAPTER V.

**SMALL SETTLEMENT PLANTED BY GRENVILLE AT ROANOKE DESTROYED BY THE INDIANS.—THIRD EXPEDITION OF RALEIGH.—FIRST ENGLISH CHILD IN AMERICA.—LOSS AND SUPPOSED DESTRUCTION OF THE ROANOKE COLONY.—MISFORTUNES OF RALEIGH.—TARDINESS AND ILL-FORTUNE OF ENGLISH ENTERPRISE.—REFLECTIONS.**

ONLY a few days after the hasty and ill-advised departure of Lane and his people, a vessel, dispatched by Raleigh, with abundant supplies, arrived at the deserted settlement; and soon afterwards, Grenville, with three more ships, also well supplied, came to the same place. He left fifteen men on the island; but the next comers found there only the ruins of their fort and dwellings, amid which human bones, the evidence of Indian hostility, lay bleaching.

Raleigh, on learning of the desertion of his settlement, with indefatigable industry, set to work afresh; and in April, 1587, dispatched another expedition, with especial provision for the cultivation of the land, and with a number of women, that the comforts of a home might be early established. In July, the fleet arrived at Roanoke, where the sad evidences of the destruction of Grenville's men were observed; and, though the projector had ordered that the new settlement should be founded on Chesapeake Bay, yet, on account of the impatience of the naval commander, the governor, White, and his people disembarked on the island. Indian hostilities were soon renewed in the murder of one of the settlers—and the latter, attacking a party of the natives by night, found too late that they belonged to a friendly tribe. On the 18th of August, 1587, Virginia Dare, the first child born of English parents in the United States, was ushered into a brief and ill-fated being.

White, by the urgent request of the colonists, consisting, at his departure, of an hundred and eighteen persons, of whom seventeen were women, and two children, returned to England in one of the vessels, to provide further supplies. But the momentous events just then occurring in the equipment and defeat of the Spanish Armada, retarded the desired assistance; and Raleigh, who had expended

forty thousand pounds of his estate in the vain attempt to colonize Virginia, was compelled to relinquish the enterprise to others—assigning certain of his rights to a company of London merchants. Such delay, however, occurred, in fitting out a fresh expedition, that it was not until 1590 that White returned to Roanoke; but the settlers had disappeared; and though Raleigh, it is said, sent to search for them on five several occasions, no trace of the fate of this lost colony has ever been found. Probably, like the former, it perished from Indian hostility.

Strangely enough, all the efforts of one of the most intelligent, wealthy, and persevering men of England to effect a settlement in America proved ineffectual. Sir Walter Raleigh, besides his repeated efforts in behalf of Virginian colonization, had aided the north-west voyages, destined to end in results alike futile, and, in his old age, broken down by imprisonment and suffering, headed an equally fruitless expedition to the Orinoco and the tropical coasts of Guiana. Whatever his errors as a courtier and a favourite, history will do him justice as a statesman, a soldier, a mariner, a discoverer, and a founder of colonization—the most brilliant character of a remarkable age; and America, in especial, will always look back with reverence and affection on the earliest and most persevering promoter of her welfare—a man whose faults were those of the time, whose virtues were his own; and who, in addition to the shining attributes of a head to plan and a hand to execute, possessed the more endearing quality of a heart to feel and to commiserate.

Such repeated loss and mortality had now made men wary of undertaking American colonization. "All hopes of Virginia thus abandoned," says a later adventurer, "it lay dead and obscured from 1590 to this year 1602." In March of that year Bartholomew Gosnold, under the advice of Raleigh, tried the experiment of sailing directly to America, instead of taking the circuitous route of the Canaries and West Indies. Singular to relate, the experiment succeeded; and after a voyage of seven weeks, in a small vessel, the navigator came to Massachusetts. He landed on Cape Cod, and on the Vineyard islands, and having freighted his little bark with *sassafras* obtained by traffic from the Indians, returned in June to England. Enterprise, stimulated by his success, was renewed, in the diminutive vessels of the day, and much of the eastern sea-board was surveyed. Such voyages, familiarizing navigators with the coast and the most desirable localities, prepared the way for fresh attempts at settlement.

ROANOKE DE-  
F RALEIGH.  
AND SUP  
LONY.—  
ND ILL-  
TIONS.

arture of Lane  
abundant sup-  
rwards, Gren-  
to the same  
comers found  
which human

nt, with inde-  
37, dispatched  
ivation of the  
a home might  
anoke, where  
men were ob-  
ne new settle-  
ccount of the  
hite, and his  
es were soon  
atter, attack-  
hey belonged  
irginia Dare,  
States, was

isting, at his  
m seventeen  
n one of the  
s events just  
ish Armada,  
d expended

While her rivals, long ere this time, had succeeded in gaining a permanent footing on the shores of the New World, and had conquered or founded wealthy empires in the south, England, her claims and her endeavours chiefly confined to the more barren and inclement regions of the north, had as yet reaped nothing but loss and misfortune from her enterprise in the New World. Not a single spot on that vast continent now mostly peopled by her children, was the settled habitation of an Englishman. "In reviewing the history of American colonization, the mind is at first struck with the wonderful brilliancy and rapidity of Spanish discovery and conquest during the first century of their career; an impression naturally followed by the reflection that in the end no substantial advantage has accrued to the nation whose enterprise laid open the pathway to the New World, and whose valour and genius were the first to avail themselves of its tempting opportunities. Extermination of the native inhabitants, bigoted exclusion of foreigners, and, in the end, outrageous oppression of her own dependencies, have marked, almost without exception, the colonial administration of Spain, and have finally resulted in its nearly complete annihilation. Her once numerous provinces, alienated by mismanagement and tyranny, have found, in republican anarchy, a questionable relief from parental misrule; while that beautiful island, almost the solitary jewel in her crown, and only proving, by its exception, the general rule of her losses, is held by a tenure so insecure as hardly to deserve the name of possession.

"For an hundred and ten years, the rival nations of France and England hardly took a step in the same direction, or, if they did, under circumstances of such gross ignorance and infatuation, as were almost certain to preclude the possibility of success. The various and widely-severed colonies of France, founded, through a century of misfortunes and discouragements, by ardent and indefatigable servants of the crown, have, with one or two insignificant exceptions, slipped from her hands—not from any want of loyalty or national affection in the provincial inhabitants, but from the feebleness of the French marine, ever unable to compete with that of her haughty rival, and quite inefficient for the protection and retention of distant colonies.

"England, the last to enter on the noble enterprise of peopling the New Hemisphere, but finally bringing to the task a spirit of progress, a love of freedom, and a strength of principle, unknown to

her predecessors, has founded, amid disastrous and unpromising beginnings, an empire mightier and more enduring than all or any of its compeers; lost, indeed, for the most part, to her private aggrandizement, but not to the honour of her name or the best interests of mankind; an empire already prosperous beyond all example in history, and destined, it is probable, at no distant day, to unite under its genial protection every league of that vast continent stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific, from the tropical forests of Darien to the eternal snows of the Arctic Circle."\*

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

in gaining a  
and had con-  
d, her claims  
en and inle-  
but loss and  
Not a single  
children, was  
g the history  
with the won-  
and conquest  
naturally fol-  
advantage has  
athway to the  
first to avail  
nation of the  
d, in the end,  
arked, almost  
in, and have  
once numer-  
ranny, have  
rom parental  
jewel in her  
l rule of her  
rve the name

f France and  
if they did,  
ation, as were  
The various  
gh a century  
ndefatigable  
t exceptions,  
y or national  
eebleness of  
her haughty  
tion of dis-

of peopling  
a spirit of  
unknown to



# THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA.

## CHAPTER I.

MEMOIR OF CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.—HIS YOUTHFUL ADVENTURES AND SERVICES.—HE TURNS HERMIT.—HIS ADVENTURES IN FRANCE.—HE IS FLUNG OVERBOARD.—SEA-FIGHT.—TRAVELS IN ITALY.—HIS CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE TURKS.—SIEGE OF REGALL.—THE THREE TURKS' HEADS.—SMITH SENT A SLAVE TO TARTARY: HIS WONDERFUL ESCAPE.—SUBSEQUENT ADVENTURES.—RETURNS TO ENGLAND.

No account of American, and still less of Virginian colonization, would be complete without some memoir of that remarkable man to whose unwearied personal exertions the foundation of an English commonwealth in this country is almost entirely due. Romance would hardly venture to imagine adventures more marvellous, or courage more chivalrous than his; and when to a temper the most sprightly, adventurous, and enterprising of his day, were added the unsurpassed qualities of judgment, of perseverance, of fortitude, and of forbearance, the result could hardly fail to be a character of no ordinary greatness, and the work of his life a work destined in some manner to affect the interests of mankind. His extraordinary career, fortunately detailed, in good part, with modest quaintness, by his own pen, will ever remain the delight of youth, and the admiration of the historical reader.

Captain John Smith, incomparably the greatest and most famous of English adventurers in America, was born of a good family at Willoughby, Lincolnshire, in 1579. His mind, from childhood, set on adventure and travel, at the age of thirteen, he secretly sold his books and satchel, and was about going off to sea, when interrupted by the death of his father. His guardians apprenticed him to a merchant of Lynn, whom, in consequence of refusal to gratify his

taste for  
son of L  
the Neth  
tyranny  
bury—a  
of Princ  
Holy Isl  
again be  
common  
—thoug  
Warkw  
shelter  
ences of  
his narr  
studie w  
eise a g  
more of  
could n  
tries"—  
distract  
dom.

Taki  
four sh  
in Pica  
poverty  
he spe  
cold, a  
This k  
after, p  
despoil  
any w  
ground  
them,  
former  
the ho  
his ch  
travell  
ble ob  
At  
freight

taste for the sea, he speedily quitted, and with his young patron, the son of Lord Willoughby, went into France. Thence he repaired to the Netherlands, then engaged in their struggle against Spanish tyranny; and served some three or four years under Captain Duxbury—an Englishman, commanding, it would seem, in the service of Prince Maurice. He sailed to Scotland, but was shipwrecked at Holy Isle, and finding no chance of preferment at the Scottish court, again betook himself to Willoughby. Here, by one of those freaks common to ardent and imaginative youth, he chose to turn hermit—though rather after the fashion of Friar Tuck than the recluse of Warkworth. In a great wood, far from the town, he built himself a shelter of boughs, where, without bedding, or any of the conveniences of civilized life, he made his abode. In the curt language of his narrative, (which, like *Cæsar's*, runs in the third person,) "His studie was *Machiavills Art of Warre*, and *Marcus Aurelius*; his exercise a good horse, with his lance and ring; *his fool was thought to be more of venison than anything else*; \* \* \* Long these pleasures could not content him, but hee returned againe to the Low Countries"—intending to make his way to the east of Germany, then distracted with Turkish warfare, and fight on the side of Christendom. At this time he was only nineteen.

Taking ship for France, he was despoiled of all his baggage by four sharpers, and, selling his cloak to pay for his passage, landing in Picardy, went in pursuit of them. Reduced to great distress and poverty, "wandering from port to port to finde some man of warre, he spent that he had, and in a Forest, neere dead with griefe and cold, a rich Farmer found him by a faire Fountaine under a tree. This kinde Pesant relieved him againe, to his content." Not long after, passing through a forest, he fell in with Cursell, one of his despoilers. "His piercing injuries had so small patience, as without any word they both drew, and in a short time Cursell fell to the ground, when from an old ruinated Tower the inhabitants seeing them, were satisfied, when they heard Cursell confesse what had formerly passed." We next find the youthful adventurer enjoying the hospitality of a noble earl (who had known him in England) at his chateau in Brittany; whence, apparently better supplied, he travelled over much of France, surveying fortresses and other notable objects of examination.

At Marseilles, by ill-fortune, he embarked on board a vessel freighted with "a route of pilgrims, of divers nations," going to

Rome, and put to sea. Compelled by tempests, the ship anchored under the Isle of St. Mary, off Nice, where the "inhumane Provincials," concluding that Smith, in his double capacity of Englishman and heretic was their Jonah, set upon him, "hourely cursing him," he tells us, "not onely for a Huguenoit but his Nation they swore were all Pyrats, and so vildly railed on his dread sovereigne Queene *Elizabeth*, and that they never should have faire weather as long as hee was aboard them; their disputations grew to that passion" (stimulated, perhaps, by the liberal use of a staff, with which the gallant Captain requited their assaults) "that they threw him overboard, yet God brought him to that little Isle, where was no inhabitants but a few kine and goats." With his customary good-luck, however, next morning he was taken on board of the *Britaine*, a French ship, and handsomely entertained by the captain. Sailing to Alexandria, the ship discharged her freight, and thence passed over to the northern coasts. Meeting with a large Venetian argosy, the French captain hailed her, and was answered by a shot which lost him a man. A naval battle, contested with great fury, and lasting for some hours, with all the horrors of broadsides, boarding, danger of conflagration, &c., ensued; but after the argosy had lost twenty men and was ready to sink, she yielded. All was now active exertion in stopping her leaks and transferring her cargo to the victor. "The Silkes, Velvets, Cloth of Gold, and Tissue, Pyasters, Chicqueenes, and Sultanies, (which is gold and silver,) they unloaded in four and twenty houres, was wonderfull, whereof having sufficient, and tired with toile, they cast her off with her company, with as much good merchandize as would have fraughted another *Britaine*, that was but two hundred Tunnes, shee foure or five hundred." As a reward for his valour in this desperate engagement, Smith received five hundred chicqueenes "and a little box God sent him" (he piously adds) "worth neere as much more."

Landing in Piedmont, he travelled through much of Italy, spent some time in surveying the rugged and picturesque coast of Albania and Dalmatia, and, eager for a chance to fight against the Turks, finally made his way to Gratz, in Syria, where was the court of the Archduke Ferdinand, of Austria. No time could have been more propitious to his hopes. The memorable war with the Great Turk, Mahomet II., was then in full contest, and the young adventurer, introduced by some of his countrymen to the high officers of the imperial service, soon found an ample field for the display of his

cour  
ho j  
conc  
slaug  
com  
fanc  
the c  
lent  
strat  
triv  
grea  
expl  
sling  
upon  
flam  
fall,  
most  
near  
ciles  
were  
the p  
piece  
wou  
enow

T  
Moy  
imp  
by a  
such  
but  
thei  
for  
that  
past  
mar  
So  
tha  
adv  
adv  
wit

courage and military genius. At the siege of Olympcha, soon after he joined the army, by an ingenious system of telegraphic fire he concerted a plan with the garrison, by which the Turks, with great slaughter, were compelled to raise the siege. He now received the command of two hundred and fifty men in the regiment of the famous Earl Meldritch, and executed other ingenious devices against the enemy, which, in his biography, are quaintly titled "An excellent stratagem by Smith; another not much worse;" "A pretty stratagem of fire-works by Smith," &c., &c. One of these contrivances, at the siege of Stowlle-Wesenburg, (1601,) consisted of a great number of bombs or grenades, prepared with all manner of explosive and combustible materials, which, by means of great slings, he flung into the thickest of the besieged. "At midnight, upon the alarm," he says, "it was a fearful sight to behold the short flaming course of their flight in the air, but presently after their fall, the lamentable noise of the miserably slaughtered *Turkes* was most wonderful to hear." This town, which the latter had held for nearly sixty years, was finally taken by storm, "with such a merciless execution as was most pitifull to behold." Soon after they were again defeated with the loss of six thousand men, in a battle on the plains of Girke, and Smith, half of whose regiment was cut to pieces, as he says, "had his horse slaine under him and himself sore wounded; but he was not long unmounted, *for there was choice enough of horses that wanted masters.*"

The Christian army, seventeen thousand strong, under Prince Moyses and Earl Meldritch, laid siege to Regall, a strong and almost impregnable town in the mountains of Transylvania, garrisoned by a large force of "Turks, Tartars, Bandittoes, Rennegadoes, and such like." The work of making trenches and batteries went on but slowly, and the Turks, jeering at their enemies, would ask if their artillery was in pawn, and complain that they were growing fat for want of exercise. A message presently arrived from the fort, that "to delight the Ladies, who did long to see some court-like pastime, the Lord Tusbashaw did defee any captain that had the command of a company that durst combate with him for his Head." So many of the Christian officers were eager to undertake the duel, that the matter was decided by lot, and the peril and honour of the adventure fell to our young friend Smith. At a given signal, the adversaries, in full view of both armies—"the Rampiers all beset with faire Dames"—tilted against each other with equal courage

and fury, but with better advantage to the Christian, who ran his enemy through helmet and brain, and nimbly alighting, cut off his head, which he presented to the Prince General.

One Gualgro, "the vowed friend" of the fallen chief, resolved to avenge his fall or share his fate; and a second encounter, the next day, came off, with equal success to Smith, who unhorsed his enemy and speedily possessed himself of his head. Unsatisfied with his unusual good fortune and renown, the young champion, in turn, sent a courteous message that the ladies might have the heads of their two servants, and his own besides, if any Turk of proper degree would come and take them. This audacious challenge, accepted by one *Bonny Mulgro*, had nearly proved the death of our hero, who, by a blow of his opponent's battle-axe, lost his own and was nearly unhorsed. The Turks set up a tremendous shout of applause from the ramparts, yet Smith, to use his own language, "what by the readinesse of his horse, and his judgment and dexterity in such a business, beyond all men's expectation, by God's assistance, not onely avoided the *Turke's* violence, but having drawne his Faulcheon, pierced the *Turke* so under the Culets, thorow backe and body, that, although he alighted from his horse, hee stood not long ere hee lost his head, as the rest had done." Great rejoicing took place in the Christian army, and Smith was complimented and exalted to the skies. The town, after a desperate defence, was taken by storm, and the Turks entrenched themselves in the castle. "The Earle, remembering his father's death, battered it with all the ordinance in the towne, and the next day took it; all he found could bear Armes he put to the sword, and set their heads upon stakes round about the walls, as they had used the Christians when they tooke it." This was certainly rather an indifferent school for the cultivation of humanity or refinement; yet Smith seems never to have become infected with the cruelty of the age, or to have engaged in these sanguinary scenes with any motive beyond that of the renown to be acquired by gallant deeds of arms, and the idea, in his day not altogether groundless, that a blow struck in behalf of Christendom against the invading ranks of the infidels, was a meritorious work.

Sigismund of Transylvania, on repairing to the army, was so pleased with this last exploit of the young soldier, that "with great honour he gave him three *Turkes' Heads* in a Shield for his Armes, by patent under his hand and seale, with an oathe ever to weare

them  
yeere  
recor

For  
terrib  
almos  
"near  
and n  
to the  
deare  
lishm  
and w  
of the  
gentle  
ing s

Cap  
as a s  
sent h  
with t  
person  
encou  
and fe  
with  
Nalbr  
howe  
the tr  
him.

great  
and l  
dog  
thres  
the h  
Bash  
occasi  
he be  
have  
cloth  
knap  
at all  
but f

them in his Colours, his picture in Gould, and three hundred Ducats yeerely for a pension." This patent was afterwards admitted and recorded in the Herald's College of England.

Fortune finally turned against the Christians, whose army, in the terrible battle of Rotenton, overwhelmed by superior numbers, was almost entirely cut to pieces. "In this bloody field," says our author, "neere 30,000 lay, some headlesse, armelesse, and leglesse, all cut and mangled; where breathing their last, they gave this knowledge to the world, that for the lives of so few, the *Crym-Tartar* never paid dearer." Among the victims were a number of adventurous Englishmen, fighting for renown, who all "did what men could doe, and when they could do no more, left there their bodies in testimonie of their mindes. \* \* \* But Smith" (continues that gentleman) "among the slaughtered dead bodies and many a gasping soule, with toile and wounds lay groaning among the rest."

Captured and cured of his wounds, he was sold with many more as a slave at Axapolis; and his purchaser, a certain Bashaw Bogall, sent him on to Constantinople as a present to his young mistress, with the assurance that he was a Bohemian lord, the trophy of his personal prowess. The lady, like most whom the gallant captain encountered, at once experienced a tender interest for his welfare; and fearing lest he should be sold out of the family, dispatched him, with a letter of recommendation, to her brother, the Bashaw of Nalbritz, in Tartary, near the sea of Azof. This kindly manœuvre, however, served him nothing; for the ferocious Turk, apprehending the true state of the case, took all imaginable pains in persecuting him. With his head and beard shaved "so bare as his hand," a great iron ring rivetted about his neck, and a rough garment of hair and hide, the unfortunate Smith underwent a slavery, "so bad, a dog could hardly have lived to endure," and was finally made thresher at a lonely grange of his master, more than a league from the house. The result, in his own brief language, was, that "the Bashaw, as he used often to visit his granges, visited him, and took occasion so to beat, spurne, and revile him, that, forgetting all reason, he beat out the *Tymour's* braines with his threshing-bat, for they have no flailles; and seeing his estate could be no worse than it was, clothed himself in his clothes, hid his body under the straw, filled his knapsacke with corne, mounted his horse, and ranne into the desert at all adventure." For some days he wandered in the wilderness, but finally, lighting upon the high road from Tartary to Russia,

made his way, after a journey of sixteen days, to Ecopolis, a Russian post on the Don. Here he was kindly received, and on his return to Transylvania, "glutted with content and neere drowned with joy," great rejoicing took place at his escape and the manner of it, both so characteristic of his temper. At Prague, whither he repaired, Sigismund presented him with fifteen hundred ducats, equipped with which he travelled through Germany, France, and Spain, viewing notable places and adding to his extensive information. In a French ship he sailed to Africa, meaning to take part in the civil wars in Morocco; "but by reason of the uncertainty, and the perfidious, treacherous, bloody murders rather than warre, among those perfidious, barbarous *Moors*," changed his purpose. Passing an evening aboard the ship, a gale of wind compelled her to run to sea, and the captain's taste for adventure was presently gratified by "a brave sea-night," lasting for two days, with a couple of Spanish men-of-war. They were finally beaten off; with a loss, it was supposed, of a hundred men. In an action so desperate, the services of Smith, it may well be supposed, were not without an opportunity for their full appreciation. Not long after (1604) he returned to England.

---

## CHAPTER II.

VIRGINIAN COLONIZATION REVIVED.—PATENT OF JAMES I.—ILL-ASSORTED COMPANY OF SETTLERS.—THE EXPEDITION SAILS FOR AMERICA.—ACCIDENTALLY ENTERS JAMES RIVER.—ILL TREATMENT OF SMITH.—INTERCOURSE WITH THE INDIANS.—JAMESTOWN FOUNDED.—EXCURSION OF SMITH AND NEWPORT.—POWHATAN.—THE INDIANS OF VIRGINIA.

SOON after the return of Smith, he became acquainted with Captain Gosnold, whose voyage has already been mentioned; and the scheme of Virginian colonization was again revived. Sir Ferdinand Gorges, Sir John Popham, chief justice of England, and other persons of rank and influence, were persuaded to take an interest in their plan; and thus in April, 1606, the king (James I.) was induced to issue letters patent to Sir Thomas Gates, Sir George Somers and others, granting them all the territory on the eastern sea-board of North

America, between thirty-four and forty-five degrees north latitude. Two companies, one of Londoners and the other of gentlemen, &c., from the West of England, were formed, the first to colonize the southern and the latter the northern portion of the grant; but with a strict proviso, dictated by the foolish jealousy of James, that a hundred miles of wilderness should intervene between their respective settlements. As the first of these only succeeded in their design, our account will be restricted chiefly to their operations.

On the 19th of December, 1606, three small vessels, commanded by Captain Christopher Newport, and carrying an hundred and five colonists, sailed from Blackwall for Virginia. Forty-eight of this number were enrolled as gentlemen, and twelve as labourers—an ominous proportion for the prosperity of the projected settlement. Gosnold and Smith, Edward Wingfield, a merchant, George Percy, and the Rev. Robert Hunt, were the principal persons of the expedition.

Delayed by contrary winds, the little fleet, bearing the germ of the American commonwealth, was six weeks in sight of England; and when it finally got to sea, took the old circuitous route of the Canaries and West Indies. By the folly of James, sealed instructions, in a box not to be opened till their arrival, had been provided, naming the authorities of the colony. Dissension thus sprang up early in the voyage, and at the Canaries, Smith, accused, by the absurd jealousy of some, of conspiring to make himself "king of Virginia," was put in confinement. They steered for Roanoke, but by a piece of excellent disappointment, were carried by a storm past the place of their destination, and entered Chesapeake Bay. Naming the headlands Cape Henry and Cape Charles, in honour of the king's sons, they sailed up the James River about forty miles, and went on shore, delighted with all they saw. "We passed through excellent ground," says one of them, "full of flowers of divers kinds and colours, and as goodly trees as I have seen, as cedar, cypress, and other kinds; going a little further we came to a little plat of ground, full of fine and beautiful strawberries, four times bigger and better than ours of England." "Heaven and earth," says the enthusiastic Smith, "seemed never to have agreed better to frame a place for man's commodious and delightful habitation."

The very day of their arrival, the settlers perceived certain hostile savages, "creeping on all fours, from the hills like Bears," but put them to flight by a discharge of muskets. At Point Comfort,

polis, a Russian  
on his return  
ned with joy,"  
ner of it, both  
r he repaired,  
equipped with  
Spain, viewing  
In a French  
civil wars in  
the perfidious,  
ong those per-  
ng an evening  
to sea, and the  
"a brave sea-  
h men-of-war.  
sed, of a hun-  
Smith, it may  
for their full  
ngland.

MES I.—ILL-  
N SAILS FOR  
VER.—ILL  
INDIANS.  
TH AND  
GINIA.

t with Captain  
nd the scheme  
inand Gorges,  
er persons of  
in their plan;  
uced to issue  
s and others,  
ard of North



however, and other places, they were kindly received by the natives, who gave them corn-bread, pipes and tobacco, and held a dance in honour of them. The chief of the Rappahannas, who, with a considerable attendance, came to meet them, "entertained us," says the journal, "in so modest a proud fashion, as though he had been a prince of civil government, holding his countenance without any laughter or any such ill behaviour. He caused his mat to be spread on the ground, where he sat down with great majesty, taking a pipe of tobacco, the rest of his company standing around him."

Having made considerable survey of the shores of the river, the little colony of Englishmen chose for the site of their settlement a peninsula on the northern bank, and called it Jamestown, in honour of the sovereign. It was now an hundred and nine years since Cabot, sailing by these shores, had conferred on England the conventional right to so great a part of the North American continent; yet this was the first successful attempt of that nation to plant a colony in the Western Hemisphere. That it did not speedily share the fate of its predecessors, is almost entirely due to the admirable courage, sagacity, and patience of a man greatly wronged and abused, in its very inception.

On opening the sealed box, it was found that a council of seven, including Wingfield, Gosnold, Newport, and Smith, were appointed to govern the colony; but the last, the only reliable man of the whole company, by the paltry jealousy of his associates, was set aside; "the Councill was sworne, Mr. *Wingfield* was chosen President, and an Oration made, why Captaine *Smith* was not admitted of the Councill as the rest." His zeal for the promotion of the scheme unquenched by this unworthy treatment, the excluded councillor set forth with Newport on an expedition of further survey.

In the course of this voyage, much was learned concerning the Indians of the adjoining regions. Of forty-three native tribes, dwelling between the mountains and the sea, about thirty, numbering, it is said, eight thousand souls, were under the rule of a powerful chief-tain, named Wahunsonacock, but whose customary title, derived like that of a European grandee, from his principal residence, was Powhatan. The names of Tuscaloosa, Quigaltanqui, and those of many other native American chiefs, identical with their towns or principalities, indicate the prevalence of the usage. His residence of Powhatan was at the Falls of James River, at the site of Richmond, and that of Werowocomoco on the north side of York River.

Ascending the first-named stream, after a voyage of six days, the explorers came to the falls, where they were courteously received by the great chief just mentioned—"of personage," says Smith, "a tall, well proportioned man, with a sower looke, his head some what gray, his beard so thinne it seemeth none at all, his age neere sixtie; of a very able and hardy body to endure any labor. \* \* \* It is strange," he presently proceeds, "to see with what great feare and adoration all these people doe obey this Powhatan. For at his feete they present whatsoever he commandeth, and at the least frowne of his brow, their greatest spirits will tremble with feare; and no marvell, for he is very tyrannous and terrible in punishing such as offend him. \* \* Yet when he listeth, his will is a law and must be obeyed; not onely as a king, but halfe as a God they esteeme him."

The Indians of Virginia, dwelling in a milder clime, and on a more fertile soil, seem to have possessed more of the comforts of life than those of New England. They lived by the chase, by fishing, and, to a considerable extent, by plantation. Their clothing was of furs, but they were very hardy and able to endure cold. Their children, from infancy, they used to wash in the rivers, "and by paintings and ointments so tanne their skinned, that after a yeare or two no weather will hurte them." The customary passion of savages for personal picturing, seems, indeed, to have had full sway, the favourite colour being red. "Many other formes of painting they use, but he is the most gallant that is the most monstrous to behold."

They were a warlike people, and were often engaged in feud with their neighbours. Smith gives a curious account of a great sham-fight, which Powhatan's warriors, at Mattapanient, once performed for his diversion. Two parties, each of a hundred, approached each other in warlike array, "all duly keeping their orders, yet leaping and singing after their accustomed tune, which they only use in Warres. Vpon the first flight of arrowes, they gave such horrible shouts and schreeches, as so many infernall hell-hounds could not have made them more terrible. When they had spent their arrowes, they joyned together prettily, charging and retiring, every ranke seconding the other. As they got advantage, they caught their enemies by the hayre of the head, and down came he that was taken. His enemy with his wooden sword seemed to beate out his braines, and still they crept to the rear to maintain the skirmish. \* \* \* All their actions, voyces, and gestures, both in charging and retiring,

were so strained to the height of their qualitie and nature, that the strangeness thereof made it seeme very delightfull."

Little that is definite seems to have been ascertained concerning their religious belief—the uncouth ceremonies of the Powwow, and the manifestations of a savage taste being directly construed into an explicit Satanism. "Their chief God they worship," says the captain, "is the Devill. Him they call *Okee*, and serve him more of feare than love. They say they have conferrence with him, and fashion themselves as neare to his shape as they can imagine. In their Temples they have his image evill-favoredly carved, in such manner as the deformitic may well suit with such a God. \* \*

Upon the top of certain red sandy hils in the woodes, there are three great houses filled with Images of their Kings and Devills, and Tombes of their predecessors. This place they count so holy as none but the Priests and Kings dare come into them." Their religious ceremonies were sufficiently fantastic and barbarous. Their chief priest, horrid in a head-dress of the skins of snakes and other reptiles, made invocations before the circle of worshippers "with broken sentences, by starts and strange passions, and at every pause the rest give a short groane"—probably the Indian "ugh," denoting assent. "And in this lamentable ignorance," he continues, "doe these poore Soules sacrifice themselves to the Devill, not knowing their Creator; and we had not language sufficient, so plainly to express it as to make them understand it, which God grant they may."

---

### CHAPTER III.

TRIAL AND VINDICATION OF SMITH.—FAMINE AND TERRIBLE MORTALITY.—SMITH, BY HIS EXERTIONS, SUPPORTS THE COLONY.—TREACHERY OF HIS ASSOCIATES.—DEALINGS WITH THE INDIANS.—IDLE AND MISERABLE COLONISTS.

WHILE the party of survey was absent, an attack had been made by the Indians on the colonists, one of whom was killed, and many others were wounded, and Jamestown was therefore fortified with palisades and artillery. Captain Smith, on his return, to silence the slanders of his enemies, demanded a public trial; in which his inno-

ture, that the

ed concerning  
Powwow, and  
onstrued into  
ip," says the  
him more of  
with him, and  
imagine. In  
rved, in such  
God. \* \*

ere are three  
Devills, and  
nt so holy as  
" Their reli-  
arous. Their  
kes and other  
ippers "with  
t every pause  
gh," denoting  
ntinues, "doe  
not knowing  
plainly to ex-  
at they may."

ND TERRIBL  
PORTS THE  
EALINGS  
ONISTS.

d been made  
d, and many  
fortified with  
to silence the  
rich his inno-



...quell, and ... the ...  
 ...been ascertained concerning  
 ...ones of the Powwows, or  
 ...being directly construed into  
 ...they worship," says it  
 ...all *Que*, and serve for ...  
 ...have conferences with him, an  
 ...hope as they can imagine. I  
 ...age will be ... in suc  
 ...well with men & God. \* \*  
 ...the ... are three  
 ...of their ... and  
 ...so holy a  
 ...into them. Their  
 ...and ... Their  
 ...of snakes and oth  
 ...summers' with  
 ...according  
 ...the  
 ...language sufficient so plainly to  
 ...which, God grant they say.

THE ...

CONSTITUTION OF THE ...  
 ... OF THE  
 ... OF ...  
 ...

...and been ...  
 ...as killed ...  
 ...with  
 ...the  
 ...

LANDING OF THE PURITANS

... that the  
concern  
... were, ar  
... strued int  
...," says u  
... in, there c  
... hia, an  
... maging. I  
... in such  
... d. \* \* \*  
... re three  
... vinds, and  
... so Holy a.  
... Their ad  
... ons. The  
... and othe  
... rs "with  
... r's  
... voling  
... mney, folo  
... me, grow wh  
... only to ex  
... they say."

LANDING OF THE THURBERS.



... TRIB  
... THE  
... ENGR  
... NISTS

... book, much  
... of our  
... fished with  
... the  
... time

cer  
res  
pay  
wh

lan  
pri  
lee  
wil  
tur  
the  
e pr  
set  
the  
"fr  
can  
mit  
Bes  
was

I  
one  
agg  
and  
the  
dea  
wa  
ref  
bro  
reli

5  
non  
jud  
ma  
ass  
W  
the  
"P  
to  
tha  
tha

cence and the malice of his detractors was so apparent, that he was restored to his seat in the Council, and Wingfield was adjudged to pay him damages in goods to the value of two hundred pounds, which, however, Smith put into the store-house, for the public use.

On the 15th of June, Newport, with the vessels, returned to England. His departure was the signal for immediate distress and privation. The company, with wretched improvidence, had neglected to supply sufficient stores for a colony just landed in the wilderness, and even during the stay of the fleet, many of the unfortunate settlers had been reduced for support to biscuits pilfered by the sailors from the ship-stores, and sparingly dealt out to the hungry applicants "for saxefras, fures, or love." A regular famine at once set in, a daily pint of wheat or barley, all alive with insects, being the only allowance. "Had we been as free," says one of them, "from all sinnes as gluttony and drunkenness, we might have been canonized as saints; but our President would never have been admitted, for ingrossing to his private, Oatemeale, Sacke, Oyle, *Aquavita*, Beefe, Egges, and what not but the Kettell. \* \* Our drinke was water, our lodging Castles in the Ayre."

During the summer, fifty of the company, of whom Gosnold was one, had died from the diseases incident to a change of climate and aggravated by privation and exposure. Wingfield, with a cowardly and treacherous policy, attempted to seize the pinnace and desert the settlement, "which," proceeds the old narrator, "so moved our dead Spirits as we deposed him." When this famine and distress was at its height, the neighbouring Indians, who heretofore had refused to impart their store, suddenly changing their resolution, brought abundant supplies of fruits and provision—a seasonable relief, ascribed by the colonists to the direct interposition of God.

The council was now reduced to three, consisting of Ratcliffe, the nominal president, Martin, and Smith; but the two first, "of weake judgment in dangers and lesse industry in peace," shifted the entire management and care of the colony on the shoulders of their sturdy associate. Those shoulders were amply strong enough to bear it. With the greatest diligence, he set to work to supply the wants of the settlers, and to provide them with shelter against the winter. "By his owne example, good words, and faire promises, he set some to mow, others to binde thatch, some to build houses, others to thatch, alwayes bearing the greatest taske for his owne share, so that, in short time, he provided most of them lodgings, neglecting any



*for himselfe.*" This labour accomplished, and the people beginning to suffer again from want of food, he set forth in a boat, with five or six others, to gain supplies by traffic with the more distant Indians. The latter, however, with rude inhospitality, "scorned him," he says, "as a famished man, and would in derision offer him a handfull of corne, a peece of bread, for their swords and muskets, and such like proportions also for their apparell." These uncivil taunts brought on hostilities, and the captain, in a skirmish, got possession of their *Okee* or god, to ransom which, they were fain to load the English boat with plenty of corn, turkeys, and venison. Smith, in return, gave them beads, copper, and hatchets, and a friendship was struck up with that curious suddenness which seems alike to distinguish savage enmity or amity.

In spite of Smith's unwearied exertions, to supply the settlers with food, we are told, "yet what he carefully provided, the rest carelesly spent. \* \* \* The Spaniard never more greedily desired gold than he victuall, nor his Souldiers more to abandon the country than he to keepe it." Of the ill-assorted company, he says, there were "many mecrely projecting, verball and idle contemplators, and those so devoted to pure idlennesse, that though they had lived in Virginia two or three years, lordly, necessitie itselfe could not compell them to passe the Peninsula or the Palisadoes of *James Towne*. \* \* \* Our ingenious Verbalists were no lesse plague to us in Virginia than the Locusts to the Egyptians." Because they did not find Taverns and Alehouses at every turn, he says, nor feather beds and down pillows, they thought of nothing but present comfort and speedy return. Wingfield and others seized the pinnace, and would have fled to England, but Smith by force of arms compelled them to remain, and one of the malcontents was killed in the attempt.

EXPER  
AMO.

P  
PRO  
by tra  
achis o  
In an  
memo  
ment  
Hav  
stream  
reach  
furthe  
under  
Only o  
compe  
was b  
their c  
hundre  
before  
equal  
wound  
so ben  
deadly  
The  
a fire.  
compa  
this st  
instinc  
Smith,  
with p  
own w  
round.

## CHAPTER IV.

EXPEDITION AND CAPTURE OF SMITH: HIS STRANGE ADVENTURES  
AMONG THE INDIANS.—CONJURATIONS PERFORMED OVER HIM.

—HE IS CARRIED TO POWHATAN.—HIS LIFE SAVED BY  
POCAHONTAS —STRANGE MASQUERADE OF POWHATAN.

—RELEASE AND RETURN OF SMITH.

PROCEEDING up the Chickahominy, Captain Smith at last procured by traffic such abundant supplies of provision, that the empty stomachs of the mutineers no longer cried out for return to England. In another expedition, in the same direction, he experienced that memorable adventure, the rival of romance and the brightest ornament of American colonial history.

Having left his canoe, with two companions, on the bank of a stream, he struck off twenty miles further into the wilderness to reach its head waters. The crew of his barge, which he had left further down the river, were attacked by a great body of warriors, under Opechancanough, king of Pamunkey, the brother of Powhatan. Only one of them, however, was captured, who, after having been compelled to inform the savages of the route taken by Captain Smith, was barbarously put to death. His two companions, sleeping by their canoe, were the next victims, and finally the whole force, two hundred strong, came up with Smith himself. Binding his guide before him, as a shield against their arrows, the captain fought with equal coolness and desperation. He killed three of the enemy and wounded many more; but finally, getting fast in a morass, became so benumbed with cold, that, rather than freeze, he threw away his deadly weapons, and yielded himself prisoner.

The Indians drew him out, and chafed his benumbed limbs before a fire. His presence of mind unfailling, he pulled forth a little compass, set in ivory, which he gave the chief. "At the sight of this strange little engine, with its trembling vibrations, apparently instinct with life, the wonder of his captors knew no bounds; and Smith, taking advantage of their interest, began forthwith to enchain with philosophy the attention of his savage auditors." To use his own words, "when he demonstrated by that Globe-like Jewell, the roundnesse of the earth and skies, the spheare of the Sunne,

Moone, and Starres, and how the Sunne did chase the night round about the world continually; the greatnesse of the Sea and Land, the diversitie of Nations, varietie of complexions, and how we were to them Antipodes, and many such-like matters, they stood as all amazed with admiration."

Having tried his nerve by tying him to a tree, and all making ready to shoot at him, they led him in triumph to Orapaks, a town a few miles from Powhatan, where a hideous war-dance was performed about him, and where, from the overweening hospitality of his hosts, he began to fear that he was to be fattened for sacrifice. Fully appreciating his valour, they made him great offers if he would assist them in an intended attack on Jamestown; but Smith, having written a note to his friends, warning them of the danger, and desiring certain articles, persuaded the Indians to take it thither, and leave it in sight of the colonists. To their utter amazement, they found in the same spot, on the following day, the very articles that Smith had promised them, and all, in wonder, concluded, "that either he couldo divine or the paper could speake."

He was next taken to Pamunkey, where such strange and fantastical conjurations were enacted over him, that he felt, he says, as if translated to the infernal regions. This mystical ceremony lasted for three days; after which, the tribe entertained him with much kindness. They had procured a bag of gunpowder, which they were carefully keeping to plant the next spring, supposing it to be a species of seed. At last he was taken to Werowocomoco, where Powhatan, "with more than two hundred of his grim courtiers, dressed in their greatest braveries," was awaiting him. As he entered, the whole court rose, in respect for their valiant captive, and gave a great shout. He was served in the most honourable manner, the Indian queen of Appamatuck waiting on him in person. What followed cannot be better given than in his own language or that of some one who heard it from his own lips. "Having feasted him in the best barbarous manner they could, a long consultation was held; but the conclusion was, two great stones were brought before *Powhatan*; then as many as could layd hands on him, dragged him to them, and thereon layd his head, and being ready with their clubs to beate out his braines, *Pocahontas*, the King's dearest daughter, when no intreaty could prevaile, got his head in her arms, and layd her owne upon his to save him from death; whereat the Emperour was contented he should live."

"In  
After t  
neyed  
turesqu  
'the d  
lives in  
the rec  
than th  
moreov  
inciden  
histori  
of the  
the sa  
remov  
doubt,  
colony  
The  
of his  
charac  
"*Powh*  
he cou  
the w  
(anoth  
a mat  
he eve  
some t  
told h  
*James*  
which  
esteem  
afterw  
recapit  
of *Pow*  
describ  
in a *Se*  
an ese  
but th  
too he  
transp

"In all history there is no incident more dramatic and touching. After the lapse of more than two centuries, familiarized, but unhackneyed by repetition, it still remains the most charming and picturesque scene in the whole range of American annals. Its heroine, 'the darling of history' (then only a child of ten) still warmly lives in the love and remembrance of a whole people, and stands, the redeeming spirit of her race to hallow it with a kinder memory than that of warfare and revenge." This memorable transaction, moreover, is of great interest as one of those comparatively rare incidents where the feelings and passions bring about an event of high historical importance. Certainly this was such, for the entire weight of the colony, for a long time afterwards, rested on the brave heart, the sagacious head, and the manly arm of Smith. Had he been removed, especially in this critical juncture, the settlers, without doubt, would immediately have abandoned the idea of preserving the colony, and have made their way homeward with all practicable speed.

The generosity of the chief did not stop half way. The release of his captive was resolved on, and was communicated in a fashion characteristic enough. "Two dayes after," the captain tells us, "*Powhatan* having disguised himself in the most fearefullest manner he could, caused Capt. *Smith* to be brought forth to a great house in the woodes, and there upon a mat by the fire to be left alone" (another experiment on his nerves). "Not long after from behinde a mat that divided the house, was made the most dolefullest noyse he ever heard; then *Powhatan*, more like a devill than a man, with some two hundred more as blacke as himself, came unto him and told him now they were friends, and presently he should goe to *James Towne*, to send him two great gunnes and a gryndstone, for which he would give him the country of *Capahowosick*, and for ever esteeme him as his son *Nantaquoud*." In a memorial, many years afterwards addressed to the queen in behalf of *Pocahontas*, *Smith*, recapitulating the kindnesses which he had received from the *House of Powhatan*, especially commemorates that of this son, whom he describes as "the most manliest, comeliest, boldest spirit I ever saw in a *Salvage*." Accordingly he was dispatched to the settlement with an escort of twelve guides, and was received with great rejoicing; but the messengers, finding two cannons and a millstone "somewhat too heavy," were fain to return with presents better fitted for their transportation.

## CHAPTER V.

PRIVATIONS OF THE COLONISTS.—RELIEVED BY POCAHONTAS.—ARRIVAL OF NEWPORT FROM ENGLAND.—INTER-COURSE AND TRAFFIC WITH POWHATAN.—BLUE BEADS FOR CROWN JEWELS.—IMAGINARY GOLD MINE.—SMITH'S VOYAGE IN THE CHESAPEAKE.—INTER-VIEWS WITH NUMEROUS NATIVE TRIBES.—STING-RAY POINT.—HIS RETURN.

DURING the six weeks' captivity of Smith, the miserable little remnant of the colony, by quarrels and improvidence, was all in confusion, and he was again compelled to use force to keep a number from deserting in the pinnace. The malcontents next hatched up a ridiculous scheme for his execution on account of the loss of his companions, saying that, by the Levitical law, he was responsible for their lives: "but he quickly tooke such order with such Lawyers that he layd them by the heels," (i. e. in prison) "till he sent some of them prisoners for England." The colony, indeed, would have perished of hunger, but for the generosity of Pocahontas, (and perhaps Powhatan,) who with her attendants carried food to Jamestown every four or five days. Through her influence many other Indians brought provision as presents, or, if they sold it, made the captain fix his own price, "so had he enchanted these poore soules, being their prisoner."

Of two ships, dispatched by the company, with a reinforcement of a hundred men, to Virginia, one only under Newport reached her destination, in the latter part of the year 1607. A brisk traffic was now carried on with the Indians; and at the request of Powhatan, Smith and Newport made him a visit. "With many pretty discourses to renew their old acquaintance," says the original narrative, "this great King and our Captaine passed their time. \* \* \* Three or foure days more we spent in feasting, dauncing, and trading, wherein *Powhatan* carried himself so proudly, yet discreetly, (in his salvage manner) as made us all admire his naturall gifts." Newport, however, proved no match for him at a bargain, and the colonists would have received but a pitiful supply of provision for their goods, but for the astuteness of Smith, who contrived, as if by accident, to

displa  
majest  
time h  
more t  
the co  
kings  
such  
"for  
2 or 3  
fami  
blue  
blood

Aft  
posed  
or iron  
with  
monst  
ment  
a dru  
spring  
by a  
provis  
fruit  
she w

Un  
them  
thoug  
kept  
leader  
of Ju  
in a  
of ex  
attain  
may  
of re  
geog  
many  
frjen  
expo  
for

display before the chief several flashy ornaments. The fancy of his majesty was wonderfully struck with certain blue beads. "A long time he importunately desired them, but Smith seemed so much the more to affect them, as being composed of a most rare substance of the colour of the skyes, and not to be worn but by the greatest kings in the world. This made him half madde to be the owner of such strange Jewells; so that ere we departed," says the narrator, "for a pound or two of blew beades, he brought over my king for 2 or 300 Bushells of corne; yet parted good friends." Other royal families were supplied with crown jewels at similar rates, and the blue beads were held in such veneration that none, except of the blood-royal, were permitted to wear them.

After their return, a fresh misfortune befell the colony in the supposed discovery of a bed of gold—which probably was yellow mica or iron pyrites—and to the gathering of which the foolish colonists, with great eagerness, betook themselves, despite the passionate remonstrances of Smith. "Never," he says, "anything did more torment him than to see all necessary business neglected to fraught such a drunken ship" (Newport's) "with so much gilded durt." In the spring of 1608, the other vessel, the Phoenix, which had been blown by a tempest to the West Indies, arrived with abundant supplies of provisions. She was dispatched home with a load of cedar, the first fruit reaped by England from the natural wealth of the vast region she was attempting to occupy.

Under the active management of Smith, the colonists now set themselves busily to work at building and planting, and the colony, though somewhat menaced by the dubious conduct of the Indians, kept in check only by the resolute conduct of the same energetic leader, began to stand on a basis of rational prosperity. On the 2d of June, the indefatigable captain, with fourteen companions, set forth in a barge on a voyage of discovery, and especially for the purpose of exploring Chesapeake Bay. "Some visions of a South Sea to be attained and a new channel opened to the wealthy regions of India, may have mingled, it is probable, with the more practical intention of reducing these great waters and their shores within the limits of geography." In the course of this survey along the eastern shore, many Indians were encountered, at first timid or hostile, and finally friendly and confiding. After a fortnight of incessant labour and exposure, at the mouth of the Patapsco, his crew strongly petitioned for return. The weather had been stormy and disastrous, their

shirts had been taken to make sails, and several of them were sick. With much regret, their leader consented, and on the 16th of June discovered the river Potomac, which he ascended for thirty miles. Here, we are told, probably with extraordinary exaggeration, the voyagers found "all the woods layd with ambuscadoes to the number of three or foure thousand Salvages,(1) so strangely paynted, grimed, and disguised, shouting, yelling, and crying, as so many spirits from hell could not have showed more terrible." In spite of this vehement demonstration, they presently entered into friendly intercourse with the English.

On their return the latter were liberally supplied with game by the Indians whom they encountered, and found fish so plenty that they attempted to catch them with a frying-pan; but found that instrument better suited for their disposal out of the water than in it. At the mouth of the Rappahanock, at Sting-Ray Point, (the name of which still commemorates the incident,) the gallant captain, having speared a fish with his sword, and taking it off "(not knowing her condition)" was grievously stung; and such alarming symptoms ensued that, concluding his end was at hand, he gave directions for his funeral, and had his grave prepared in an island hard by; yet by means of "a precious oyle" applied by Russell the surgeon, recovered so far that he had his revenge of the fish by eating a piece of it for his supper. On the 21st of July the expedition returned to Jamestown, having made extensive surveys, and acquired much knowledge of the tribes inhabiting the shores of the Chesapeake.

SMI  
SU  
R

V  
falle  
Rat  
that  
had  
our  
that  
app  
and  
had  
had  
the  
F  
thre  
new  
surv  
view  
from  
tribe  
tion  
of h  
grea  
they  
simp  
gods  
port  
of th  
leg

## CHAPTER VI.

SMITH MADE PRESIDENT.—HE RESUMES THE SURVEY.—THE SUSQUEHANNAS.—ADVENTURES WITH THE INDIANS — REMARKABLE FEAT OF SURVEY.—RETURN TO JAMESTOWN.—ARRIVAL OF NEWPORT.—ABSURD INSTRUCTIONS OF THE ENGLISH COMPANY.—THE CORONATION OF POWHATAN.—UNSUCCESSFUL ATTEMPT OF NEWPORT TO FIND THE SOUTH SEA.

WHILE Smith was absent, the colony, as a matter of course, had fallen into miserable disorder and anarchy. "The silly President," Ratcliffe, had so ill-treated the colonists, especially those last arrived, that, in the words of the old chronicler, "had we not arrived, they had strangely tormented him with revenge: but the good Newes of our Discovery, and the good hope we had, by the Salvages' relation, that our Bay stretched into the South Sea (!) or somewhat neare it, appeased their fury." Ratcliffe was forthwith deposed from office, and Smith elected in his place—"the place which, from the first, had been due to his superior judgment and experience, and which had been amply earned by his untiring devotion to the service of the colony."

Fonder of enterprise than of ease or official dignity, at the end of three days, having appointed a discreet deputy to fill his place, the new president, with twelve companions, resumed his expedition of survey. He first cruised to the Patapsco, having a friendly interview on the way with a party of the powerful tribe of Massawomecs, from the north; and on the river Tockwogh, hearing of another tribe, called the Susquehannas, of giant-like stature, sent an invitation to them to come and meet him. Accordingly, sixty warriors, of herculean frame, soon presented themselves before him. "Such great and well proportioned men," he says, "are seldome seene, for they seemed like Giants to the English, yet seemed of a honest and simple disposition, with much adoe restrained from adoring us as gods. \* \* \* For their language, it may well beseeme their proportions, sounding from them as a voyce in a vault. \* The picture of the greatest of them is signified in the Mapped, the calfe of whose leg was three-quarters of a yard about, and all the rest of his limbs



so answerable to that proportion, that he seemed the goodliest man we ever beheld." These splendid savages were fittingly dressed in the skins of wolves and bears, so worn as much to resemble the natural ferocious appearance of the animals.

Their veneration for Smith, whose reputation had doubtless preceded him, was almost unbounded. "There seems to have been a natural dignity, kindness, and manhood in his demeanor, which invariably was sufficient to overawe or conciliate the rudest tribes which he encountered." "Our order," says the journal of the voyage, "was daily to have prayer, with a Psalme, at which solemnitie the poor Salvages much wondred; our Prayers being done, a while they were busied with a consultation till they had contrived their businesse. Then they began in a most passionate manner to hold vp their handes to the Sunne, with a most fearefull Song, then embracing our Captaine, they began to adore him in like manner; though he rebuked them, yet they proceeded till their Song was finished; which done, with a most strange furious action and a hellish voyce, began an Oration of their loves; that ended, with a great painted Beares skin they covered him; then one ready with a great chayne of white Beades, weighing at least six or seaven poundes, hung it about his necke, the others had 18 mantles, made of divers kinds of skinnes, sowed together; all these, with many other toyes, they layed at his feete, stroking their ceremonious hands about his necke, to be their Governour and Protector."

Passing up the Rappahannock, the voyagers were attacked by hostile savages, who, "accommodating themselves with branches," showered volleys of arrows on their barge. One of these, being wounded, was taken by the English, and was asked why his people showed such enmity to peaceful strangers—to which, says the narrative, "the poore Salvage mildly answered that they heard we were a people come from under the world to take their world from them. \* \* Then we asked him what was beyond the mountains, he answered the Sunne; but of anything els he knew nothing, because the woodes were not burnt."

In the course of this protracted expedition, Smith completed the survey of the shores of Chesapeake Bay, of which he made an accurate chart, and acquired much other useful information. A brief but interesting account of the country and the various tribes encountered, was also drawn up, and on the 7th of September, after an absence of three months, (excepting the short visit in July, when he

was made president,) and a voyage of some three thousand miles, he returned to Jamestown with his little craft deeply laden with provisions. Three days after he was formally invested with his office and title. Sickness had prevailed, and many more of the unfortunate settlers had perished in his absence.

Captain Newport soon arrived again, bringing seventy additional colonists, some of them persons of consideration. Two Englishwomen, a Mrs. Forrest and maid, were the first females who came to the colony, and there were also eight Poles or Germans, sent to make tar, glass, and potash. The English company, irritated and disappointed in the failure of their extravagant expectations, had ordered the unfortunate captain "not to returne without a lumpe of golde, a certaintie of the South Sea, or one of the lost companie sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh." Accordingly, he had brought a great barge, built in separate pieces, which was to be carried over the mountains of the West, (the Blue Ridge,) and thence launched into some river flowing into the Pacific! "If he had burnt her to ashes," writes Smith, indignantly remonstrating with the company, "one might have carried her in a bag (but as she is, five hundred cannot) to a navigable place above the Falls. And for him at that time to find in the South Sea a Mine of Golde, or any of them sent by Sir *Walter Raleigh!* at our Consultation I told them was as likely as the rest."

To propitiate *Powhatan*, and thus secure a free passage to the Pacific and the gold mine, these gentlemen had dispatched to him certain royalties, consisting of a basin and ewer, a bed and furniture, a chair of state, a suit of scarlet, a cloak and a crown—the latter purporting to be a present from his fellow-sovereign, the king of England. Smith, after vainly protesting against these absurdities, finding the new-comers resolute to prosecute their plan, did his best to aid them. He posted, with only four attendants, to Werowocomoco, where, in the absence of *Powhatan*, *Pocahontas*, with thirty of her maidens, entertained him with a quaint masquerade and a feast, "of all the Salvage dainties they could devise," and treated him with the highest honour and affection. The chief, on his arrival, being invited to proceed to Jamestown and be invested with his regalia, "was taken with a sudden fit of dignity or suspicion," and to the courteous urgency of Smith, replied, "If your king have sent me Presents, I also am a King, and this is my land; eight days I will stay to receive them. Your Father" (Newport) "is to come to

me, not I to him, nor yet to your fort, neither will I bite at such a bait. \* \* \* As for any salt water beyond the mountains, the Relations you have had from my people are false," and sitting down, he began to draw maps, on the ground, of all the adjacent regions.

Smith and Newport, to humour his obstinacy, accordingly, with the presents and a guard of fifty men, repaired to Werowocomoco. The solemn coronation of Powhatan, which took place the day after their arrival, is described with much dry humour in the old narrative. His majesty seems to have had some conception of the humbug of the thing, or perhaps a strong distrust of the English, or a dread of necromancy. His furniture having been properly set up, we are told, "his scarlet Cloke and Apparell were with much adoe put on him, being perswaded by *Namontack*\* they would not hurt him; but a foule trouble there was to make him kneele to receive his Crowne, he neither knowing the maiesty nor meaning of a Crowne nor bending of the knee, endured so many perswasions, examples, and instructions as tyred them all; at last, *by leaning hard on his shoulders, he a little stooped*, and three, having the Crowne in their hands, put it on his head, when, by the warning of a Pistoll, the Boats were prepared with such a volley of shot, that the King started up in a horrible feare, till he saw that all was well."

This august ceremony accomplished, Newport, despite the warnings of the king, with one hundred and twenty men, in "his great five-peeced barge," set forth to ascend the James River in quest of his lump of gold and the South Sea. The boat was stopped by the Falls, and the company, after getting by land about forty miles further, and suffering much from toil and exposure, were compelled to return to Jamestown. On their arrival, Captain Smith set them at work at various useful occupations, such as cutting down trees and hewing timber, taking the lead himself, and making labour pleasant by good-nature and merriment.

\* Newport, on his former visit, had presented Powhatan with a boy named Salvage, and the chief, in return, had given him "*Namontack*, his trustie servant, and one of a snewd, subtile capacitie."

## CHAPTER VII.

PLOT AGAINST SMITH.—HIS LETTER TO THE COMPANY.—HIS EFFORTS TO SUPPORT THE COLONY.—EXPEDITION TO SURPRISE POWHATAN.—ARTFUL SPEECHES, AND MUTUAL TREACHERY.—THE ENGLISH AGAIN SAVED BY POCAHONTAS

To meet the scarcity of provisions, which again menaced the colony, Smith again ascended the Chickahominy, and brought back a great store of corn. Newport and Ratcliffe, in his absence, had plotted to depose him; but, we are told, "their horns were so much too short to effect it, as they themselves more narrowly escaped a greater mischief." He finally dispatched home a ship freighted with the products of the country, and in a letter to the company, besought a supply of mechanics and labourers. Complaining of the misrepresentations of Newport, he adds, "Now that you should know I have made you as great a discovery as he, for a lesse charge than he spendeth you every meale, I have sent you this Mappe of the Bay and Rivers, with an annexed Relation of the Countries and Nations that inhabit them, as you may see." They had complained that they were kept in ignorance of the country, to which he stiffly replies, "I desire but to know what either you or these here doe know, but what I have learned to tell you, at the continuall hazard of my life."

In the ensuing winter, scarcity again prevailed, and the president, by repeated excursions among the Indians, sleeping, with his attendants, in the snow, gained a scanty and precarious supply. The colony at length being in danger of starvation, he came to the rash and unscrupulous resolution of seizing the stores of Powhatan and making prisoner of that chief himself. On the 29th of December, he set forth up the river, with three boats and forty-six volunteers, and on his way dispatched Mr. Sicklemore, ("a very valiant, honest, and painefull Souldier,") with two more, on an unsuccessful search for the lost colony of Raleigh. Arriving at Werowocomoco, he was well entertained by Powhatan, who, however, was well apprized of his hostile intention, having been informed of it by the Germans, who had been sent to build him a house. Much parley ensued, each professing much friendship, and endeavouring to take the other at a

disadvantage, and Powhatan made a set speech, "expostulating the difference between Peace and Warre."

"Captaine Smith," he said, "you may understand that, having scene the death of all my people thrice, and not any one living of those three generations but myselfe, I know the difference of Peace and Warre better than any in my country. But now I am old, and ere long must die. \* \* \* Think you I am so simple as not to know it is better to eate good meate, lye well, and sleep quietly with my women and children, laugh and be merry with you, have copper, hatchets, or what I want, being your friend; than be forced to flye from all, to lye cold in the woods, feede upon Acornes, rootes, and such trash, and be so hunted by you that I can neither rest, eate, nor sleepe; but my tyred men must watch, and if a twig but breake, every one cryeth, 'there commeth Captaine Smith,' then must I fly I know not whither, and thus with miserable feare end my miserable life." He then endeavoured to persuade the English to lay aside their arms, intending to surprise them; and on their refusal, heaving a deep sigh, "breathed his mind once more," in artful persuasions to the same effect, and reminded Smith how he had always called him his father. "I call you father, indeed," said his guest, "and as a father you shall see I will love you; but the small care you have of such a childe, caused my men to perswade me to looke to myselfe."

Meanwhile, he privately sent for his soldiers at the boats to land quickly and surprisè the chief; but the latter, forewarned of their movements, retreated into the woods, and his warriors, in great number, closed around the house. But Smith, rushing among them with sword and target, made good his exit, and Powhatan, says the narrative, "to excuse his flight and the sudden coming of this multitude, sent our Captaine a great bracelet and a chaine of pearl, by an ancient Oratour,"—who had charge, with plausible explanations, to smooth the affair over. The captain had purchased a quantity of corn, which the Indians carried to his barge, and prepared to pass the night in the village. Powhatan, "bursting with desire to have his head," meanwhile, laid a deep plot for the destruction of the intruders. "Notwithstanding," continues the old narrative, "the eternall all seeing God did prevent him, and by a strange meanes. For Pocahontas, his dearest iewell and daughter, in that darke night came through the irksome woodes, and told our Captaine great cheare should be sent us by and by; but *Powhatan* and all the power he

could  
could  
Then  
Such  
the t  
seen  
dead  
In  
ing  
quar  
latter  
made  
cauti  
mess  
them  
ing t  
be r  
prop  
been

THE  
EN

A  
repa  
plot  
that  
roun  
"wi  
whil  
exte  
then

could make would after come kill us all, if they that brought it could not kill us with our owne weapons when we were at supper. Therefore, if we would live, shee wished us presently to be gone. Such things as she delighted in he would have given her; but with the teares running downe her cheekes, she said she durst not be seene to have any, for if Powhatan should know it, she were but dead; so shee ranne away by herselfe as she came."

In the evening, according to the plot, a number of savages, bearing great platters of venison and other refreshments, came to the quarters of the English. With much civility, they requested the latter to put out the matches of their guns, alleging that the smoke made them sick; but the intended victims only redoubled their precautions against surprise, and Powhatan, who sent messenger after messenger to learn the state of affairs, at length despaired of finding them off their guard, and relinquished his design. The next morning the uninvited visitors took their departure. "It certainly cannot be regretted that this attempt of Smith to seize the person and property of the chief who had formerly spared his life should have been unsuccessful."

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE PLOT AT PAMUNKEY: DEFEATED BY THE DARING AND ENERGY OF SMITH.—THE COLONY SUPPLIED.—SMITH POISONED.—HIS UNSCRUPULOUS POLICY.—HIS FIGHT WITH THE KING OF PASPAHEGH.—"PRETTY ACCIDENTS" AMONG THE INDIANS.

AT Pamunkey, the seat of Opechancanough, whither they next repaired, liberal entertainment was provided for the English, and a plot for their destruction was again concerted. At the house of that chief, Smith, with only fifteen companions, was finally surrounded by a force of seven hundred armed warriors; his host, "with a strained cheerfulness," holding him engaged in talk the while. On seeing his situation, the captain, in a stirring little speech, exhorted his people "to fight like men and not die like sheepe," and then, telling his treacherous host, "I see your plot to murder me,

but I feare it not," defied him to single combat. Besides his life, he offered to stake on the issue any amount of copper against the same value in corn—"and our Game," he said, "shall be, the Conquerour take all." But the chief, declining this handsome proposal, endeavoured to induce his guest to venture forth, on pretence of bestowing on him a rich present, thirty of the savages lying in ambush behind a great log to shoot him.

Apprized of this design, the incensed captain, "in a rage snatched the king by his long locke in the midst of his men," clapped a pistol to his breast, and led him forth before the multitude of his warriors. The chief then "bestowed his presents in good sadnesse," his people, fearing for his life, making no resistance; and Smith "still holding the King by the hayre," addressed the assembled savages with stern reproaches. "If you shoote but one Arrow," he concluded, "to shed one drop of bloud of any of my men, or steale the leaste of these Beades and Copper which I spurne here before me with my foote; you shall see I will not cease revenge (if once I begin) so long as I can heare to find one of your Nation that will not deny the name of *Pamaunk*. I am not now at *Rassawenk*, half drowned with myre, where you tooke me prisoner. You promised to fraught my ship ere I departed, and so you shall, or I will loade her with your dead carcasses." This "angry parle," however, he ended more mildly, offering the release of their chief and his own friendship, if they would fulfil their agreements. Struck, it would seem, with equal awe and admiration, the Indians laid aside their weapons, and began to bring in great store of provisions, and singularly enough, yet, from repeated experience, not improbably, they appear to have fulfilled their agreement with real cordiality.

Meanwhile, affairs at Jamestown had gone ill, Scrivener, the deputy, with ten others, having been drowned, on a stormy day, in a boat. The life of the messenger sent with the disastrous tidings to Werowocomoco, was only saved by the compassion of Pocahontas, who contrived to hide him from the executioners. The contest of their wits was presently renewed between Smith and Powhatan, the former endeavouring to surprise that chief and seize his store of provisions, (a plan again defeated by "those damned Dutchmen," says the indignant narrator,) and the latter leaving no means untried to take the life of his redoubted foe. His people not daring to attack the English openly, an attempt was made to poison them, which, however, only had the effect to make Smith and some others disa-

greea  
fellow  
with  
with  
he ex  
ing, i  
him l  
Th  
bush  
vario  
from  
tainly  
consi  
doubt  
exped  
ferent  
the cl  
world  
proce  
daily  
washe  
inven  
did th  
Th  
set th  
table  
tasks  
Fresh  
out, a  
his sv  
his h  
inter  
a mo  
persw  
faueb  
preve  
well  
the P  
till th  
gled

greeably but not dangerously sick. "*Wecuttanow*, a stout young fellow, knowing he was suspected of bringing this present of poyson, with fortie or fiftie of his chiefs companions, (seeing the President with but a few men at Potauncok,) so proudly braved it, as though he expected to incounter a revenge.—Which the President perceiving, in the midst of his company did not onely beate, but spurne him like a dogge, as scorning to doe him any worse mischiefe."

The company finally returned to Jamestown with five hundred bushels of corn, obtained by long foraging and traffic among the various tribes. A portion, we regret to say, was wrested by violence from its possessors, and it is to be lamented that Smith, who certainly had a generous and compassionate heart, should have suffered considerations of policy or reprisal to commit him in acts which doubtless leave a shade upon his memory. The old chronicler of the expedition, however, seems to have viewed the matter in a very different light, and even takes much pains to exculpate the party from the charge of blameable moderation, which, he fears, "the blind world's ignorant censure" might impute to them. "These temporizing proceedings," he says, "to some may seem too charitable, to such a daily daring, trecherous people; to others not pleasing that we washed not the ground with their blouds, nor showed such strange inventions in mangling, murdering, ransacking, and destroying (as did the *Spaniards*) the simple bodies of such ignorant soules."

The dread of starvation removed by this abundant supply, Smith set the colonists at work at various useful occupations, keeping a table of their merits or demerits, and strictly enforcing the required tasks—"for there was no excuse could prevaile to deceive him." Fresh troubles with the savages, excited by the Germans, soon broke out, and Smith, incautiously travelling alone, with no weapon but his sword, again had occasion to show all his manhood in defending his head. An ambuscade of forty warriors had been prepared to intercept him. "By the way he incountred the King of Paspapegh, a most stout strong Salvage, whose perswasions not being able to persuade him to his Ambush, seeing him onely armed but with a faucheon" (falchion) "attempted to have shot him, but the President prevented his shooting by grappling with him, and the Salvage as well prevented his drawing his faucheon, and perforce bore him into the River to have drowned him. Long they struggled in the water, till the President got such a hold on his throat, he had neare strangled the King; but having drawne his faucheon to cut off his head,



seeing how pitifully he begged his life, he led him prisoner to James Towne and put him in chaynes." Encounters with the hostile tribe, resulting in a more sanguinary manner, were finally ended by treaty. The Indians had been eager, by theft or under-handed dealings, to procure arms and ammunition; but it so happened that in drying a quantity of gun-powder on a piece of armour over the fire, it exploded, to their terrible injury, so that by "this and many such pretty Accidents," we are told, they took a wholesome distrust of the dangerous commodity, and adopted an attitude of conciliation toward the colonists.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

IDLENESS OF THE SETTLERS.—ELOQUENT SPEECH AND VIGOROUS POLICY OF SMITH.—THE NEW VIRGINIA COMPANY.—UNJUST ASSUMPTION OF POWER.—SMITH DEPOSED.—GREAT EXPEDITION DISPATCHED FROM ENGLAND: ILL-FORTUNE.  
—ARRIVAL OF NUMEROUS IMMIGRANTS.—ANARCHY.  
—SMITH REASSUMES THE PRESIDENCY.

By the energy of their brave and industrious president, the Virginian colonists had been amply supplied with food and shelter; and additional buildings and more extended agriculture betokened the prosperity of the settlement. Destruction of their store, by rotting and the rats, renewed former privations, and reawakened the old mutinous and discontented spirit. By the assistance of the Indians, and by fishing and gathering the natural products of the country, a number of the more industrious continued to keep the settlement from starvation. "But such was the strange condition of some 150, that had they not been forced, *nolens volens*, to gather and prepare their victuall, they would all have starved or eaten one another." "These distracted Gluttonous Loyterers" would fain have sold to the Indians every utensil of labour or defence, for a pittance of corn, and omitted no means of cunning and mutinous demeanour to compel the president to break up the settlement and return to England.

Out of patience at their ill-behaviour, he finally resorted to severe measures. In a summary manner he punished the chief ringleader,

"one Dyer, a most crafty fellow and his ancient Maligner," and made a speech of severe admonition, evidently carefully modelled on his favourite classics, to the rest. "Fellow-soldiers," he said, "I did little think any so false to report, or so many to be so simple as to be perswaded, that I either intend to starve you, or that *Powhatan* at this present hath come for himselfe, much lesse for you; or that I would not have it, if I knew where it were to be had. Neither did I thinke any so malicious as I now see a great many; yet it shall not so passionate me but I will doe my best for my most maligner. But dream no longer of this vaine hope from *Powhatan*, nor that I will longer forbear to force you from your Idlenesse, and punish you if you rayle. But if I find any more runners for Newfoundland with the Pinnace, let them assuredly looke to arrive at the Gallows.

"You cannot deny but that by the hazard of my life many a time I have saved yours, when (might your own wills have prevailed) you wou'd have starved. But I protest by that God that made me, since necessitie hath not power to force you to gather for yourselves those fruites the earth doth yeeld, you shall not onely gather for your selves, but for those that are sicke. As yet, I never had more from the store than the worst of you; and all my English extraordinary provision that I have, you shall see me divide it among the sicke.

"And this Salvage trash you so scornefully repine at, being put in your mouths, your stomachs can digest it. If you would have better, you should have brought it; and therefore I will take a course that you shall provide what is to be had. The sicke shall not starve, but share equally of all our labors, and he that gathereth not every day as much as I doe, the next day shall be set beyond the river, and be banished from the Fort as a drone, till he amend his conditions or starve."

This stern and summary policy had the required effect, and the colonists set to work collecting the natural fruits of the country with such diligence that their condition was speedily improved. In the spring of 1609, Captain Samuel Argall (afterwards governor) arrived in a vessel well loaded with supplies, which the settlers converted to their own use, restitution being afterwards made. This arrival brought tidings of an important character.

Disappointed and irritated by what they considered the inexcusable neglect of their agents in failing to discover a gold mine or a passage to the Pacific, the Virginia Company visited the whole

er to James  
the hostile  
ally ended  
der-handed  
o happened  
armour over  
y "this and  
wholesome  
tude of con-

D VIGOROUS  
— UNJUST  
REAT EX-  
ORTUNE.  
RCHY.  
Y.

ent, the Vir  
shelter; and  
etokened the  
e, by rotting  
ened the old  
of the In-  
ducts of the  
to keep the  
ge condition  
ens, to gather  
or eaten one  
uld fain have  
for a pittance  
as demeanour  
and return to

rted to severe  
ef ringleader,

weight of their displeasure on the head of Captain Smith. "His necessarily firm and rigorous rule had made him many enemies; and the bluntness and plain-spoken truth of his communications had shocked the dignity of the authorities at home. They resolved to depose him from the command of the colony, which his almost unaided exertions had so repeatedly preserved from destruction, and the true value of which their short-sighted rapacity prevented them from appreciating."

To gratify persons of wealth and influence who had joined the company, in May, 1609, a new charter was obtained, granting absolute power of control over Virginia to the patentees, and unjustly depriving the colonists of even the shadow of self-government. Lord Delaware was appointed captain-general, and a host of inferior officers, with high-sounding titles, were also created for the benefit of the poverty-stricken colony. In the same month, nine ships, commanded by Newport, and carrying five hundred people, under command of Sir Thomas Gates and Sir George Somers, sailed from England, leaving Delaware to follow with fresh recruits. These three dignitaries, by a singular piece of folly, all embarked in the same ship, with all their papers, and a great part of the provisions. In the latter part of July, this vessel, "in the taylor of a *Hericano*" (hurricane) was driven from the squadron and wrecked on the Bermudas. Another foundered at sea, and the rest, in most miserable plight, and without any general commander, arrived finally at Jamestown.

Their arrival was the signal for fresh disorders. Most of the new emigrants, it would seem, were in a manner the refuse of the community—"much fitter to spoil a commonwealth than to raise or maintain one." In "this lewd company," it is said, were "many unruly Gallants, packed thither by their friends to escape ill-destinies"—broken down gentlemen, bankrupt tradesmen, and decayed serving-men. Smith having been deposed by the authorities, and their officers having been shipwrecked on the Bermudas, there was no regular government, and the people soon fell into a state of anarchy, setting up and pulling down their authorities almost daily, and modelling the government after their changeable caprice and fancy. In this strait, the more sensible entreated Smith to resume the command, seeing that no one had yet arrived to displace him. He consented with reluctance, and a vigorous exertion of his wonted authority soon reduced these unruly spirits to something like order and obedience.

## CHAPTER X.

FUTILE ATTEMPTS AT FOUNDED NEW SETTLEMENTS — POLLY AND OBSTINACY OF THE COLONISTS. — SMITH TERRIBLY INJURED. — HE RETURNS TO ENGLAND. — HIS SERVICES TO THE COLONY. — AWFUL SUFFERING AND MORTALITY AFTER HIS DEPARTURE.

JAMESTOWN being overcrowded, it was now thought best to plant other settlements, and a hundred and twenty men, under Martin, attempted to found a colony at Nansemond; but from the inefficiency of their commander and the hostility of the Indians, the scheme proved a complete failure. A like number, under Captain West, proceeded to the Falls of James River, where they pitched upon a spot exposed to inundations and other inconveniences. To provide them a better locality, Smith agreed with Powhatan for the purchase of his town of the same name, hard by, with its fort and all the houses: "but both this excellent place and those good conditions did these furies refuse, contemning both him, his kinde care and authority." To persuade them to reason, he repaired thither with only five companions, but was compelled by their violence to betake himself to his barge, where, for nine days, he waited, hoping to find them more sensible, and much troubled at hearing the continual complaints of their violence and injustice made by the neighbouring Indians. He finally sailed down the river, but was presently recalled by news that the savages had attacked them and killed a number. Hastening back, he found them submissive enough, and removed them to the quarters he had selected, at Powhatan, where, indeed, they did not long remain, resuming, with strange obstinacy, their ill-chosen position.

The captain, as he returned, met with terrible injury from the explosion of a bag of gun-powder, which caught fire while he was asleep, burning him severely, and setting fire to his clothes. He jumped overboard to quench them, and was with difficulty saved from drowning. Carried in this wretched condition, for a hundred miles, to Jamestown, without the aid of surgery, he was laid prostrate on a bed of sickness, and some of the malcontents, it is said, "seeing the President unable to stand, and neere bereft of his senses

by reason of his torment, plotted to murder him in his bed. But his heart did faile him that should have given fire to that mercilesse pistoll."

The president, his active and energetic career thus lamentably arrested, and knowing that the arrival of any of the delayed officials would at once supplant his authority, now resolved to proceed to England for surgical aid. Early in the autumn of 1609, he set sail, leaving at Jamestown and the other Virginia posts four hundred and nine  $\nu$  people, well supplied with arms, provision, and the means of cultivation and improvement.

"It is almost impossible to over-estimate the services of this remarkable man in laying the foundation of the American empire. The brilliant feats of arms which he so often performed, and the deadly perils which he so often encountered, are little in comparison with the untiring zeal, the ever-watchful foresight, and the sagacious policy, by which, for years, he sustained, on his single arm, the entire weight of the existence of the colony. Incompetency of his employers, mutiny among his followers, the hostility of powerful tribes, sickness, privations, and famine itself, were all remedied or conquered by his almost unaided exertions.

"Rude and violent as he often was toward the offending natives, no white man, perhaps, ever so far conciliated the favour and gained the respect of the Indian race. His very name, long after, was a spell of power among them, and had he remained in Virginia a few years longer, the memorable massacre which, in 1622, proved an almost fatal blow to the settlements in that country, would, it is probable, never have been perpetrated. The wretched condition of the colony, immediately after his departure, may be given in the rude but graphic language of one who shared its misfortunes.

"Now we all found the losse of Captaine *Smith*, yea, his greatest maligners could now curse his losse; as for corne, provision, and contribution from the Salvages, we had nothing but mortall wounds, with clubs and arrows; as for our Hogs, Hens, Goates, Sheepe, Horse, or what lived, our commanders, officers, and the Salvages daily consumed them, (some small proportion sometimes we tasted,) till all was devoured; then swords, arms, pieces, or anything we traded with the Salvages, whose cruell fingers were so oft imbrewed in our blouds, that, what by their crueltie, our Governour's indiscretion and the losse of our ships, of five hundred, within six moneths after Captaine *Smith's* departure, there remained not past

sixti  
tures  
wain  
such  
of o  
slew  
and  
herb  
(pick  
whic  
time  
vile  
occa  
gove  
"  
ofte  
laid-  
case,  
resol

MEM  
TO

H  
Smi  
to c  
rema  
of w

sixtie men, women, and children, most miserable and poore creatures; and those were preserved, for the most part, by roots, herbes, walnuts, acornes, now and then a little fish; they that had starch, in such extremities made no small use of it; yea, even the very skinned of our Horses. Nay, so great was our famine, that a Salvage we slew and buried, the poorer sort tooke him up againe and ate him, and so did divers one another, boyled and stewed with rootes and herbes; and one amongst the rest did kille his wife, powdered" (pickled) "her, and had eaten part of her before it was knowne, for which hee was executed as hee well deserved \* \* This was that time, which still to this day we call 'the starving time'; it were too vile to say, and scarce to be beleaved what we endured; but the occasion was oure own, for want of providence, industrie, and government.'

"Such are the trials, sufferings, and privations, amid which, too often, the foundation of a commonwealth in the wilderness must be laid—misfortunes at times hardly avoidable, but, as in the present case, infinitely aggravated by the want of a firm, sagacious, and resolute Head."\*

---

## CHAPTER XI.

MEMOIR OF SMITH, CONTINUED AND CONCLUDED.—HIS VOYAGE TO NEW ENGLAND AND SURVEYS.—HIS SECOND EXPEDITION.—HIS ADVENTURES AMONG THE PIRATES: HIS ESCAPE.—HIS GREAT EXERTIONS FOR THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.—INTERESTING INTERVIEW BETWEEN SMITH AND POCAHONTAS IN ENGLAND.—LAST YEARS OF SMITH.—HIS DEATH.—HIS CHARACTER AND ACHIEVEMENTS.

HAVING given a brief account of the early adventures of Captain Smith, (whose life, more nearly than that of any other man, seems to connect the fortunes of the Old World with the New,) having remarked to what admirable purpose his training in the rough school of war, of travel, and of adversity served in his career as a colonist,

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

it may not be amiss to give a few particulars of the remainder of his active and useful life—especially as that life, to its end, was mainly and unweariedly devoted to the task of promoting American discovery and colonization. In March of 1614, we again find him, in company with some merchants of London, fitting out an expedition to New England, in two vessels, one of which he commanded in person. By the last of April, he arrived at the island of Manhegin, on the coast of Maine, where he built seven boats, and made an unsuccessful attempt at whale-fishing. The crews, with much better success, were therefore set to work at catching and curing cod, while Smith, with eight men, in a small boat, surveyed and mapped out the coast, from Penobscot to Cape Cod. In his chart, he had mostly given the original Indian names, but, with a natural desire to commemorate his own adventures, had inserted a few others drawn from that fertile source. Cape Ann was called Cape Tragabigzanda, in honour of his young mistress of Constantinople, and the Isles of Shoals were laid down as "The 3 Turkes' Leads." At his request, however, Prince (afterwards king) Charles, changed most of these names to those of English localities, which are still retained.

Having procured by traffic an immense quantity of beaver and other furs from the Indians, (with whom, also, he had two fights,) in August he returned to England, leaving his consort, Captain Thomas Hunt, to continue the fishing and carry the cargo to Spain. That scoundrel, at his departure, in the words of Smith, "betraied foure and twentie of those poore Salvages aboard his Ship, and most dishonestly and inhumanely, for their kind treatment of me and all our men, carried them with him to *Maligo*" (Malaga), "and there for a little private gaine sold those silly Salvages for rials of eight; but this vilde act kept him ever after from any more imploiment to those parts." To this cruel and treacherous act, as to those of a similar nature, committed by the French in their voyages to Canada, may be attributed much of the hostility experienced by later comers in settling the country.

At Plymouth, to which Smith next came, he found the people still "interested in the dead patent of this unregarded country" (New England), and was easily induced to undertake a voyage for the company of that port, rejecting, with honourable promptitude, the proposals of the Virginia Company, who would now gladly have availed themselves of his services. In March, 1615, he sailed for America with two small vessels, on a voyage which was but one

serie  
was  
sixty  
pirat  
that  
some  
They  
had  
age.  
comp  
than  
Esca  
men-  
the C  
misse  
as a  
capt  
in th  
ing t  
the S  
Th  
thes  
scrip  
next  
deser  
a sm  
at th  
thes  
gone  
(auc  
the c  
Gall  
her  
fiftie  
thou  
treas  
gers.  
figh  
Eng  
is su

series of misfortunes. His ship being wrecked and dismantled, he was compelled to put back, and in June, in a little vessel of only sixty tons, resumed the enterprise. Falling in with an English pirate of thirty-six guns, he defied her so bravely with only four, that the crew were amazed until they recognized Smith, with whom some of them had served years before, probably in the Eastern wars. They begged him to take the command of their ship (which they had seized at Tunis,) but he declined the offer, and pursued his voyage. Near Fayal, he had a fight with two French pirates, whom he compelled his crew to resist, threatening to blow up the vessel rather than yield, as long as there was a charge of powder left aboard. Escaping from this danger, at Flores he was captured by four French men-of-war, the commander of which, despite his commission under the Great Seal of England, plundered his little vessel, and then dismissed her, reserving Smith, as a precaution against his revenge, as a prisoner. During the whole summer, these rovers cruised about, capturing and plundering many vessels, keeping Smith a prisoner in the cabin, when they took any English vessels, but gladly availing themselves of his courage and seamanship in their fights with the Spaniards.

The very different light in which the worthy captain regarded these several transactions, may best be inferred from his own description of the capture of two prizes of the different nations. "The next wee tooke," he says (in a journal, which, with a particular description of New England, he wrote aboard the Frenchman), "was a small Englishman of *Poole*, from *New found land*: the great *Cabben* at this present was my Prison, from whence I could see them pillage these poore men of all they had and halfe their fishe; when hee was gone they sold his poore clothes at the Main Mast by an outcry;" (auction), "which scarce gave each man seven pence a peece." Mark the change in his tone in narrating the capture of a rich Spanish Galleon—"a *West Indies* man of warre, a forenoone wee fought with her and then tooke her, with one thousand, one Hundred Hides, fiftie chests of Cutchanele, fourteene coffers of wedges of Silver, eight thousand Rialls of Eight, and six coffers of the king of *Spaine's* treasure, besides the good pillage and rich Coffers of many rich Passengers. Two moneths they kept me in this manner to manage their fights against the Spaniards and bee a prisoner when they tooke any English." The very imperfect tone of public morality at this age is sufficiently evinced in the complacency with which Smith—justly



regarded as an uncommonly honest and upright man—views these scenes of piratical plunder—always provided that the subject of them were not an Englishman.

His captors promised him ten thousand crowns as the reward of his skill and valour; yet when they arrived at Rochelle, knowing his determined character, and dreading his vengeance, still kept him prisoner. In a terrible storm, however, which drove them all under hatches, (and which, that same night, destroyed the ship, with half her company), he made his escape in a small boat, and, after being driven to sea and enduring great peril and suffering, was found, half dead, by some Fowlers, on an oozy island, and was brought ashore and kindly relieved.

Returning home, he published a book on New England, which he had written to beguile the weariness of his captivity, and, with extraordinary activity, travelling through the west of England, distributed seven thousand copies of it among people of note and influence. "But all," he says, "availed no more than to hew rocks with Oyster shells." He received, however, an abundance of promises of aid in the enterprise of settling that country, and was invested by the Plymouth company with the title of "Admiral of New England." These encouragements all ended in words, no active steps being taken for the furtherance of the object which he had so much at heart.

A most interesting interview between Smith and Pocahontas, about this time, is recorded. That noble-hearted princess, despite the great affection which her father bore to her, had incurred his displeasure by her repeated acts of kindness in behalf of the English, and was living exiled from his court, under the protection of Japazaws, chief of the Potomacs. That treacherous dignitary, bribed by a copper kettle, entrapped her on board the vessel of Captain Argall, who, notwithstanding her tears and lamentations, made her prisoner, and took her to Jamestown—informing her father that she could be ransomed only by the delivery of numerous arms, &c., which his people had stolen from the English. "This vnwelcome newes," says the chronicler, "much troubled *Powhatan*, because hee loved both his daughter and our commodities well." After an alternation of war and negotiation, the matter was at last happily settled in a manner more agreeable than either.

"Long before this," continues the narrative, "Master Iohn Rolfe, an honest Gentleman and of good behavior, had beene in love with Pocahontas, and she with him, which resolution Sir Thomas Dale

well  
know  
by h  
old V  
maria  
the c  
about  
friend  
as all  
In  
husb  
learn  
the n  
civill  
her a  
sons c  
lated  
the V  
strang  
God,"  
death  
once  
first a  
Un  
it is s  
sume  
capta  
to pr  
ceren  
was a  
lenne  
scure  
he co  
or th  
shee  
begat  
done  
bee h  
land  
thoug

well approved; the bruit (report) of this marriage soon came to the knowledge of *Powhatan*, a thing acceptable unto him, as appeared by his sudden consent, for within ten daies, he sent *Opachisco*, an old Uncle of hers, and two of his sons, to see the manner of the marriage, and to doe in that behalfe what they were requested, for the confirmation thereof, as his deputie; which was accordingly done about the first of Aprill," (1613), "and ever since we have had friendly trade and commerce" (intercourse) "with *Powhatan* himselfe, as all his subjects."

In 1616, the Lady Rebecca (as she was now christened), with her husband and child, accompanied Sir Thomas to England. She had learned English, and adopted Christianity, and "was become," says the narrator, with unconscious national satire, "very formall and civill after our English manner." Captain Smith, on learning of her arrival, lost no time in commending her to the attention of persons of influence, and, in a studied memorial to the queen, recapitulated the many services rendered by Pocahontas to himself and to the Virginian colony, and besought her favour for the interesting stranger. "During the time of two or three yeeres, she, next under God," he says, "was still the instrument to preserue this colonie from death, famine, and utter confusion, which, if in those days it had once been dissolved, *Virginia* might have laine as it was at our first arrivall to this day."

Unhappily, on account of the ridiculous jealousy of James I., (who, it is said, exhibited much indignation against Rolfe, for having presumed, being a subject, to intermarry with the blood-royal) the captain, when he went to see her, fearing, by too great familiarity, to prejudice her interest at court, thought best to salute her with ceremonious gravity. At this strange reception, her affectionate heart was at once grieved and indignant. With a species of Indian sullenness, and "without any word," he says, "she turned about, obscured her face, as not seeming well-contented. In that humour," he continues, "her husband, with divers others, we all left her two or three hours," (how could he!) "repenting myself to have writt shée could speake English. \* \* But not long after she began to talke, and remembered mee well what courtesies shée had done; saying, 'You did promise *Powhatan* what was yours should bee his, and he the like to you; you called him father, being in his land a stranger, and by the same reason so must I doe you;' which though I would have excused, that I durst not allow of that title,

vs these  
of them

ward of  
knowing  
kept him  
all under  
with half  
ter being  
und, half  
t ashore

which he  
and, with  
land, dis-  
and influ-  
rocks with  
romises of  
vested by  
England."  
eing taken  
heart.

ntas, about  
e the great  
displeasure  
h, and was  
zaws, chief  
y a copper  
rgall, who,  
isoner, and  
uld be ran-  
his people  
a," says the  
ed both his  
tion of war  
a manner

John Rolfe,  
n love with  
thomas Dale

because she was a King's daughter, with a well set countenance she said, 'Were you not afraid to come into my father's countrie and cause feare in him and all his people (but mee), and feare you here I should call you father? I tell you then I will, and you shall call mee childe, and so I will bee for ever and ever your countryman.'

This prudent conduct of Smith and her other friends, it would seem, allayed the absurd jealousy of James; for, he continues, "it pleased both the King and Queene's maiesty honorably to esteeme her, accompanied by that honorable Lady, the Lady *De la Warre*, and that honorable Lord, her husband, and divers other persons of good quality, both publikely at the maskes and otherwise, to her great satisfaction and content, which doubtless she would have deserved, had she ever lived to arrive in Virginia." She died at Gravesend, on her way home, in the following year, at the age of twenty-two, leaving a son, from whom a numerous race of descendants have been derived. "Among them was the celebrated John Randolph of Roanoke—justly prouder of his descent from the old imperial race of Powhatan, illustrated by the more gentle heroism of his daughter, than he could have been of the noblest derivation from European ancestry."

In 1617, Captain Smith had been assured by the Plymouth Company that he should be sent out, with a fleet of twenty ships, to found a colony in New England; but this promise never was fulfilled, though he was unwearied in his exertions to incite his countrymen to American enterprise. When, in 1622, news came of the terrible massacre devised by Opechancanough, (see chapter XIII.) he proposed to the Virginia Company that if they would but allow him an hundred and thirty men, "to imploy onely in ranging the Countries and tormenting" (harassing) "the Salvages," their whole territory should be kept in peace and security; but they rejected the offer, as involving a necessity for too great expense. Another terrible massacre, a few years later, was the result of this shortsighted policy.

In the following year, we find the captain before a royal commission, giving his evidence and opinion concerning the unfortunate colony with much shrewdness, candour, and charity. Of the last few years of his life little is known. He lived, it is believed, in quiet repose in the city of London, employed chiefly in writing and publishing. He was engaged on a "History of the Sea," when, in 1631, death closed a career in which utility and romance were perhaps

more closely and continuously united than in any other of which a record has survived.

"In the whole history of adventure, discovery, and exploration, there are few names more honourable or more deservedly famous than that of Captain John Smith. To us he has always appeared (to his very name and title) the finest and most perfect exemplar of a bold Englishman that ever figured on the stage of the world. In his character, bravery, fortitude, sagacity, and sound common sense were so happily tempered and united as to command instinctive respect; while the tolerably-infused tincture of impetuosity, prejudice, and self-will, seems only to lend a piquancy to his worthier traits, and more finely to set off the national characteristics. His love of enterprise and his daring, chivalrous spirit, were tempered with a judgment, moderation, and humanity, which, in so rough a career, have never been surpassed. The cutter-off of Turks' heads, the desperate Indian fighter, and the sworn foe to the Spaniard is all compassion and sympathy when the 'Silly Salvages' are kidnapped by his treacherous countryman, or when the 'poore clothes' of a small Englishman' are sold by outcry at the main-mast of a pirate.

"In early youth, his grand passion was for fighting and renown, no matter on what field, so that a man of honour might engage. In maturer years, the noble passion for founding nations and spreading civilization took a yet firmer possession of his soul. 'Who,' he exclaims in his manly address to the idlers of England, 'who can desire more content than hath small means, or only his merit, to advance his fortunes, than to tread and plant that ground he hath purchased by the hazard of his life; if hee have but the taste of vertue and magnanimitie, what to such a mind can bee more pleasant than planting and building a foundation for his posterity, got from the rude earth by God's blessing and his owne industry, without prejudice to any; if hee have any graine of faith or zeale in Religion, what can hee doe lesse hurtfull to any or more agreeable to God, than to seeke to convert those poore Salvages to know Christ and humanity, whose labors, with discretion, will triply reward thy charge and paine; what so truly sutes with honor and honesty as the discovering things vnknowne, erecting Townes, peopling countries, informing the ignorant, reforming things unjust, teaching vertue and gaine to our native mother Country; to find imploiment for those that are idle, because they know not what to doe; so farre from wronging any, as to cause posterity to re-

member them, and remembering thee, ever honor that remembrance with praise.'

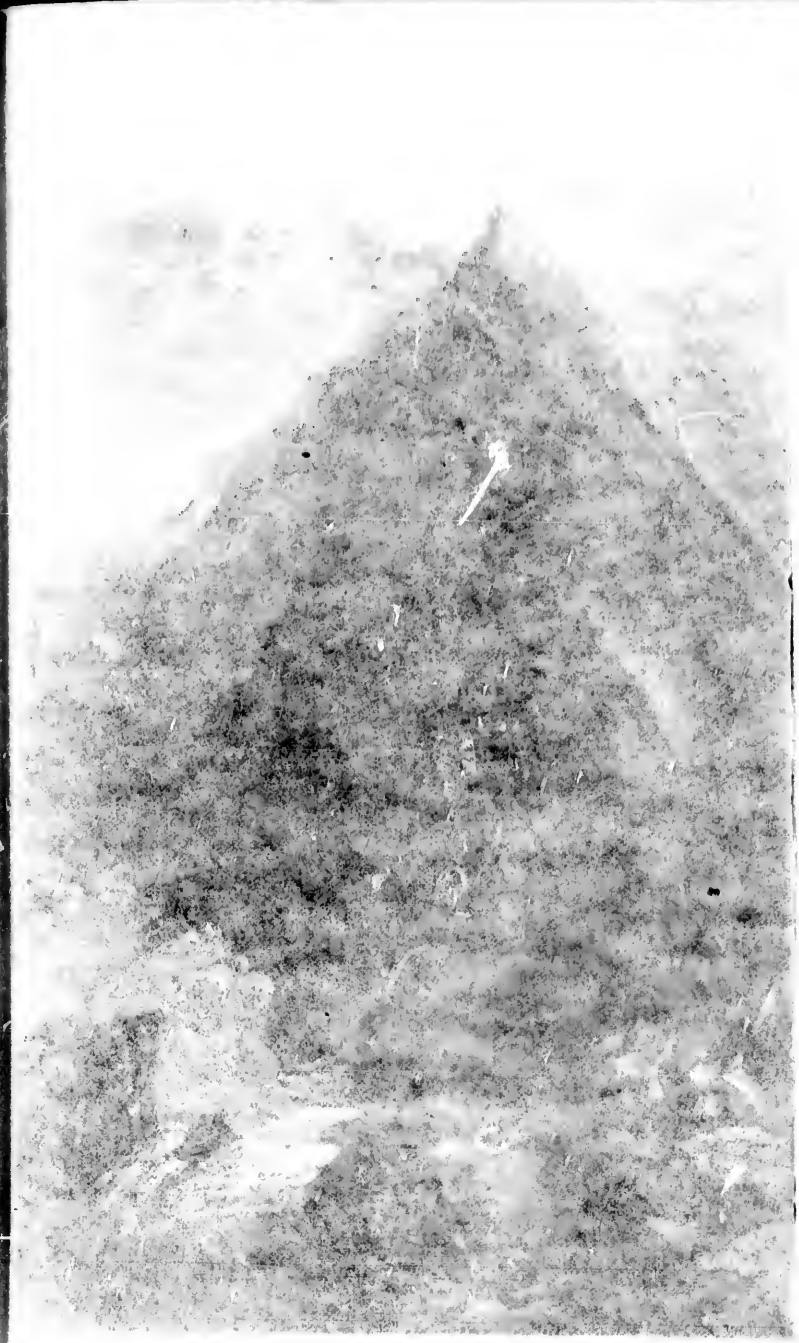
"The full merits of Smith, as the earliest and most indefatigable promoter of the colonization of New England, have never been adequately appreciated. By his personal exertions in the survey, delineation, and description of that neglected region, and by the continual publications which, at great pains and expense, he industriously circulated in England, he awakened the public interest in an enterprise which, otherwise, for many years might have been slighted and deferred. He lived to see the foundations of a great nation firmly laid, both at the south and the north, and, though like many other great projectors and labourers in the same field of action, he reaped no personal advantage (but rather much loss) from his exertion and enterprise, he continued, to the day of his death, to regard the two colonies with the fond partiality of a parent, and to do all he could for their advancement. 'By that acquaintance I have with them,' he writes, 'I call them my Children, for they have beene my Wife, my Hawks, Hounds, my Cards, my Dice, and in total, my best content, as indifferent to my heart as my left hand to my right. And notwithstanding all those miracles of disasters which have crossed both them and me, yet, were there not an Englishman remaining (as, God be thanked, notwithstanding the massacre, there are some thousands); I would yet begin againe with as small meanes as I did at first, not that I have any secret encouragement, (I protest) more than lamentable experience,' &c.

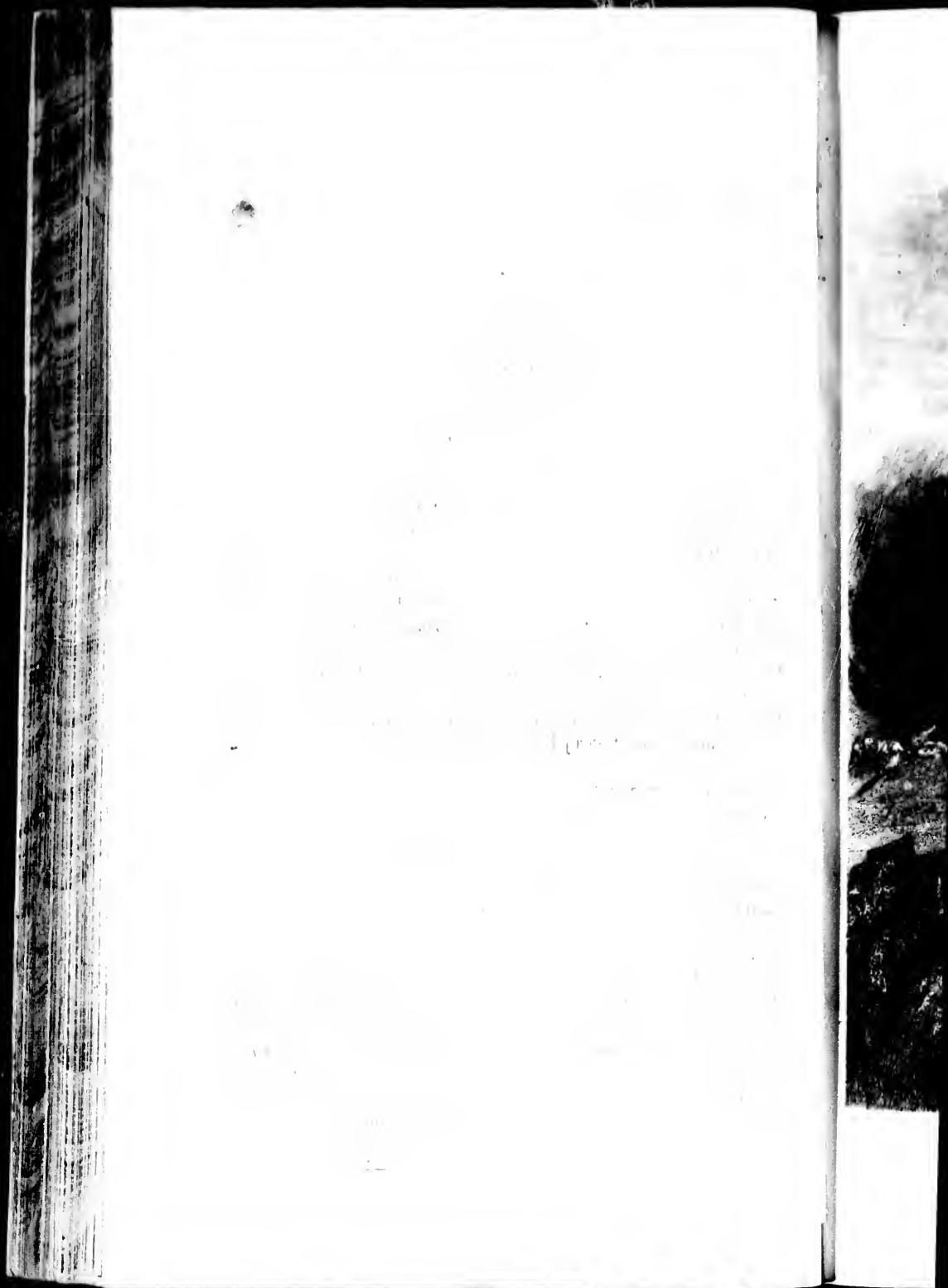
"It only remains to add that, although, so far as we are informed, never married, the gallant captain was, and deservedly, a general favourite with the ladies. There seems to have been a certain manhood and kindness in his very look, which, almost at a glance, conciliated to him the good-will of the fairer and weaker portion of humanity. These favours, so flattering to the natural vanity of man, he bears worthily, and with no offence to the givers, ever speaking with the utmost modesty and gratitude of the kindness he had so often experienced at their hands. His acknowledgment to the sex (introduced in his dedication to the Duchess of Richmond) reminds us of the celebrated eulogy pronounced by Ledyard. 'I confesse,' he writes, 'my hand, though able to wield a weapon among the Barbarous, yet well may tremble in handling a pen before so many *Judicious* \* \* Yet my comfort is, that heretofore honorable and vertuous *Ladies*, and comparable but among them selves, have offered

embrance

fatigable  
been ade-  
y, delin-  
continual  
ously cir-  
enterprise  
hted and  
on firmly  
any other  
he reaped  
rtion and  
d the two  
he could  
them,' he  
Wife, my  
st content,  
And not-  
ossed both  
g (as, God  
ousands);  
t first, not  
an lament-

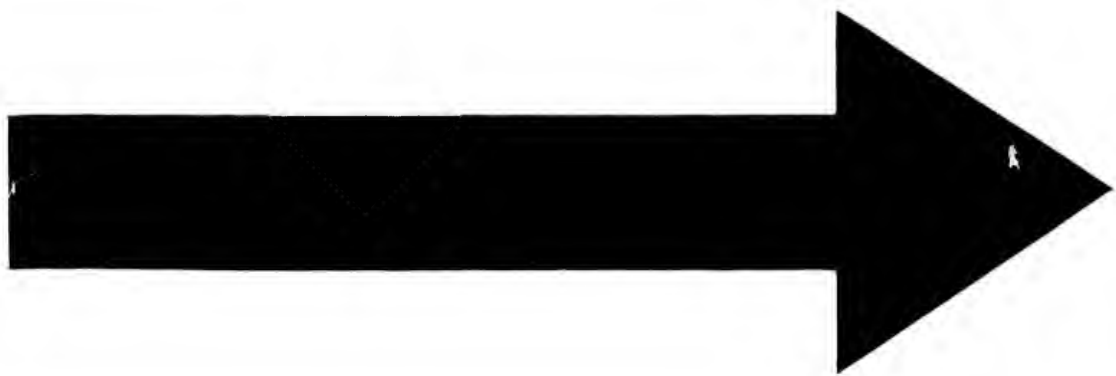
informed,  
a general  
ertain man-  
a glance,  
portion of  
ty of man,  
r speaking  
he had so  
o the sex  
d) reminds  
confesse,  
among the  
e so many  
orable and  
ave offered

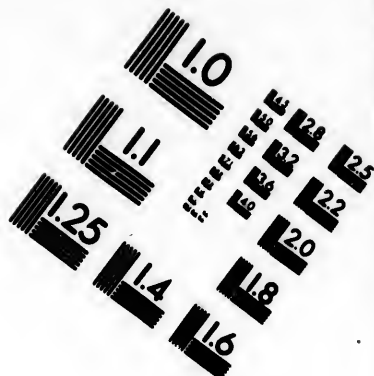
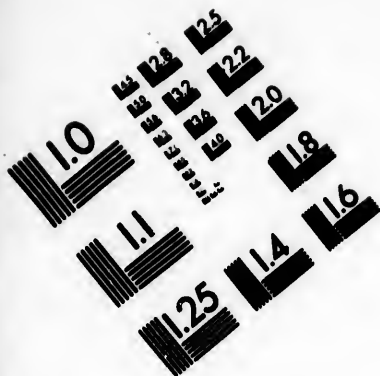




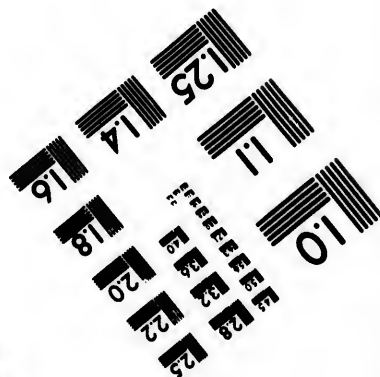
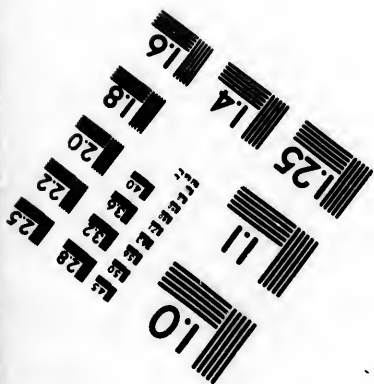
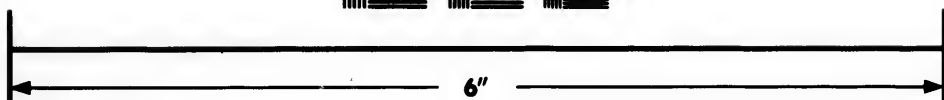
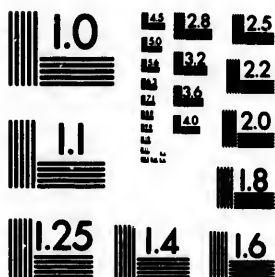








**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14590  
(716) 872-4503

18  
20  
22  
24  
25

10  
11

me  
part  
bigz  
secu  
of 1  
nece  
hont  
Wh  
long  
the

ARR

o

T  
part  
a sh  
peri  
Gate  
arri  
161  
sixt  
end  
with  
fish  
desi  
his  
the

me rescue and protection in my greatest dangers; even in forraine parts I have felt reliefa from that sex.—The beauteous Lady Tragabizanda, when I was a slave to the Turkes, did all she could to secure me' (i. e. make me secure). 'When I overcame the *Bashaw* of *Nulbritz*, in *Tartaria*, the charitable Lady *Callamata* supplied my necessities. In the vtmost of many extremities that biessed Pokahontas, the great King's daughter of Virginia, oft saved my life. When I escaped the crueltie of Pirats and most furious stormes, a long time alone in a small Boat at Sea, and driven ashore in France, the good Lady *Madam Chanoyes* bountifully assisted me.'\*\*

---

## CHAPTER XII.

ARRIVAL OF GATES.—MISERABLE CONDITION OF THE COLONY.  
 —JAMESTOWN DESERTED.—ARRIVAL OF LORD DELAWARE:  
 OF SIR THOMAS DALE.—EXERTIONS OF THE COMPANY.  
 —INCREASED IMMIGRATION.—THE CULTURE OF TOBACCO  
 INTRODUCED, AND EAGERLY PURSUED.—TYRANNY OF  
 ARGALL: HIS DISPLACEMENT.—GREAT ACCESSION OF  
 IMMIGRANTS.—WIVES PURCHASED WITH TOBACCO.  
 —LIBERAL CONCESSIONS TO THE COLONISTS.

THE lamentable condition of the Virginian colony, after the departure of Smith, has been described. Thirty of the settlers, seizing a ship, had turned pirates, and the greater part of the remainder perished of famine, disease or Indian hostility. When Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been wrecked on Bermuda, arrived at Virginia in vessels of their own construction, (May 24th, 1610,) out of four hundred and ninety, whom Smith had left, only sixty remained, and those in a condition of such misery that their end was almost at hand. There seemed no alternative but to sail with all speed for Newfoundland, and there seek assistance from the fishermen; and, accordingly, early in June, (resisting the miserable desire of the settlers to fire their deserted dwellings,) Gates, with his people and the relics of the Virginian colony, proceeded down the river.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

The very next morning (June 10th, 1610) they learned that Lord Delaware had arrived on the coast with supplies, and, putting about, returned with all speed to Jamestown. The new governor, a man of high character and good judgment, by his wholesome rule, and by the supplies which he brought, soon restored comparative comfort to the little colony, which, at this time, including the company of Gates and his own emigrants, did not exceed two hundred souls; but on account of illness, was compelled, the same year, to quit Virginia, leaving the administration in the hands of Mr. Percy. In May of the next year, (1611,) Sir Thomas Dale, dispatched thither with fresh supplies, arrived, and assumed the government.

Sir Thomas Gates, who had also repaired to England, by his urgent representations, excited the company to fresh exertions, and in August of the same year, with six ships, bearing three hundred more emigrants and a hundred cattle, he arrived at Jamestown, and assumed the office of governor. The colony now numbered seven hundred.

In 1612, by a fresh patent, the Bermudas and all other islands within three hundred leagues of Virginia, were included in that province, and lotteries were authorized for the benefit of the company. The prosperity of the colony improved, and its peaceful relations with the Indians seemed secured by the marriage of Rolfe and Pocahontas, which took place about this time—a propitious event, resulting in the alliance not only of *Powhatan* and his people, but of the Chickahominies and other tribes.

In the account of Acadia, mention has been made of the atrocious and piratical expedition from Virginia, under Captain Samuel Argall, destroying the little colony of Port Royal, the first settlement of the French in North America. That unprincipled commander, on his return, also entered the harbour of Manhattan (New York), and enforced a show of submission from the little colony of Hollanders inhabiting the island of that name. In 1614, Sir Thomas, appointing Dale as governor, returned to England; and the latter, two years afterwards, leaving in turn George Yeardley as deputy, followed the example. By far the most memorable fact in this stage of the colony's progress, is the commencement of the culture of tobacco, the use of which, adopted from the Indians, had been introduced into England. With such industry did the prospect of a profitable reward for labour inspire the colonists, that the very streets of Jamestown were planted with tobacco.

In 1617, the office of deputy-governor was conferred by the company on that rash and unscrupulous man, Samuel Argall; and the death of Lord Delaware—who, embarking with a considerable company, the same year, for Virginia, died on the voyage—left his natural tyranny and arrogance without a check. The colonists, ere long, were, in effect, completely enslaved by their arbitrary governor, who used his office only as a means for his private aggrandizement, and their very lives were in danger from his fury. But on the report of these excesses reaching England, the culprit, after a spirited contest between the different factions in the company, was displaced, and Yeardley, whose mild and benevolent temper had made him popular with the settlers, was appointed to the command. His just and considerate rule soon restored quiet.

The company, desirous to avoid such abuses for the future, had checked the authority of the governor by that of the council, and actually admitted the colonists to a species of self-government. The governor, with the council, and certain representatives of the people, were permitted to enact some laws, which, however, were not to be valid, unless ratified by the corporation at home. The officers of the company, and in especial, Sir Edwin Sandys, the treasurer, supported by the liberal party, now used great exertions for the increase of the colony and the extension of its liberties. In 1619, there were only six hundred settlers in Virginia, and during a single year that energetic officer dispatched thither more than twelve hundred additional emigrants. An hundred and fifty young women, of good character, were shipped to the province, and were married with great readiness—the husbands paying the company each an hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco or more, for the expense of their transportation. By 1621, three thousand five hundred emigrants had reached Virginia; and, in the same year, with liberality and foresight, rare indeed for the age, the company made an ordinance conferring on that province a settled and, in a manner, independent government. The governor and council, indeed, were to be appointed by the company, but a legislative assembly was to be chosen by the people, with power to enact laws, subject to the approval of the company—those emanating from London, in like manner, to be valid only on ratification by the assembly. Courts of law, strictly following those of England, were required to be instituted, and the great blessing of civil liberty—as great, perhaps, as that enjoyed by Englishmen at home—was secured to the first American colony. This

magnanimous concession, due to the generous efforts of Southampton, Sandys, and others of the liberal party, was one of the first and most important fruits of that spirit of progress at that time just beginning to make itself felt in the English councils.

---

### CHAPTER XIII.

WYATT GOVERNOR.—NEGRO SLAVERY INTRODUCED.—DEATH OF POWHATAN AND SUCCESSION OF OPECHANCANOUGH.—PLOT DEVISED BY THE LATTER.—TERRIBLE MASSACRE OF THE ENGLISH.—DEPRESSION OF THE COLONY.—USURPATION OF THE PATENT BY JAMES I.—PRUDENT POLICY TOWARD THE COLONISTS.

SIR FRANCIS WYATT, bearing the invaluable gift of a constitution, arrived in Virginia, as governor, in 1621. The year previous, unhappily, had been distinguished by the first introduction of slavery into the colony—a Dutch vessel having entered the James River, and brought twenty negroes for sale. For a long time, indeed, this nefarious traffic made little progress—being principally carried on by the people who commenced it, and being rather connived at than favoured by the government of the province.

The agricultural progress of Virginia had been grievously retarded by unsuccessful efforts at the production of wine and silk—articles of luxury, the least suited to a new territory and a sparse population. The profitable culture of tobacco, and its sudden importance as the staple of Virginian agriculture, have been noticed; and that of cotton, first commenced as an experiment, in 1621, marks an era in the history of American agriculture vastly more important yet.

King Powhatan, who, after the English alliance of his daughter, had been the firm friend of the colonists, died full of years, in 1618, the year after the death of Pocahontas. Opechancanough, his younger brother, succeeded him in the government of thirty tribes which he had ruled. Apprehensions of Indian hostility, from a long interval of peace, had gradually died out, and the settlers, eager for the cultivation of tobacco, continually pushed their plantations further into the wilderness and more remote from mutual aid. So completely

was  
sava,  
were

It  
popu  
indis  
nativ  
ancie  
offen  
"Jac  
vind  
"by  
with  
the c  
noon  
pear  
fell c  
three  
coun  
tation  
wish  
The  
man  
for  
yet,"  
the r  
man  
mors  
whic  
is th  
hum  
all b  
G  
were  
the  
to v  
pro  
unfo  
T  
sust



was apprehension allayed, that fire-arms, to furnish which to the savages had formerly been denounced as an offence worthy of death, were now freely supplied them for hunting and fowling.

It is not easy to arrive at the causes which induced the Indian population, apparently so friendly and confiding, to resolve on an indiscriminate massacre of the English. Doubtless, like all other native tribes, they were jealous of continual intrusions on their ancient domain. It is said, also, that Opechancanough was mortally offended by the killing of one of his favourite councillors, called "Jack of the Feather." He may also have remembered, with deep vindictiveness, how Captain Smith, many years before, had held him "by the hayre of his head" before his assembled warriors. Certainly, with almost incredible secrecy and concert, he and his people plotted the destruction of the whites. On the 22d of March, 1622, about noon, the Indians, who, up to the last moment, maintained the appearance of cordiality and friendship, suddenly and simultaneously fell on the English settlements in every quarter. In a single hour, three hundred and forty-seven of the colonists, including six of the council, were massacred; and Jamestown, with some adjoining plantations, was saved only by the timely warning of an Indian who wished to rescue an English friend from the intended extermination. The savages, who seem to have manifested extraordinary ferocity, in many instances, rose from the very tables which had been spread for their dinners, to murder their unsuspecting hosts. "Neither yet," says the old chronicler, "did these beasts spare those among the rest well knowne unto them, from whom they had daily received many benefits, but spitefully also massacred them without any remorse or pitie; being in this more fell than Lions and Dragons, which (as Histories record) have preserved their Benefactors; such is the force of good deeds, though done to cruell Beasts, to take humanitie upon them; but these miscreants put on a more unnatural brutishnesse than beasts," &c.

Great discouragement fell on the afflicted colony. The plantations were reduced to a tenth of their number. Sickness prevailed, and the planters were compelled to direct their attention from agriculture to war with the enemy. The mother-country, with honourable promptitude, contributed liberally to the aid and comfort of the unfortunate settlers.

The company, which had expended great sums in planting and sustaining the colony, but which had reaped no profit from its enter-

Southamp-  
e first and  
time just

—DEATH  
OUGH.—  
SSACRE  
NY.—  
-PRU-

constitution,  
previous, un-  
a of slavery  
ames River,  
indeed, this  
y carried on  
ived at than

ly retarded  
ilk—articles  
population.  
istance as the  
and that of  
ks an era in  
ant yet.

his daughter,  
ars, in 1618,  
anough, his  
thirty tribes  
from a long  
ers, eager for  
ations further  
so completely

prise, was now of importance chiefly as the theatre of debate between the liberal and arbitrary factions. To suppress the former, soon became an object of royal jealousy, and, in 1622, the king made an unsuccessful attempt to control the election of a treasurer. In the following year, after the pretence of legal investigation, the patent was declared forfeited, and the king resumed the authority into his own hands. This transaction, though committed under the guise of law, cannot be regarded otherwise than as a piece of royal usurpation, dictated by jealousy at the republican tendencies of the majority of the company. The foreign government of Virginia was now placed in the hands of a committee of partisans of the court, which was invested with the same powers as the late Virginia Company. This change, however, brought no immediate disadvantage to the colonists, whose liberties were, though not expressly, suffered to remain on the same footing as before. Sir Francis Wyatt was confirmed in the office of governor.

Having thus described the tardy and unprosperous settlement of Virginia, and the final dissolution of the company to whose efforts its existence as a colony was due, we leave, for the present, the ensuing particulars of its early history, to relate that of the commonwealth next founded on these shores—a commonwealth whose honour, to all time, will be, that it was founded on principle rather than on profit, and from its very inception, preferred liberty, though with exile and suffering, to unjust restraint, though sweetened with the comforts of country and of home.

T

U N S  
S E  
PT  
pani  
tion  
othe  
atten  
ures  
In t  
agai  
Ken  
begi  
ingl  
gov  
wess  
aged  
atte  
T  
mea  
161  
Nor  
Eng  
of t  
tion  
for

# THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.

## CHAPTER I.

UNSUCCESSFUL ATTEMPTS OF THE PLYMOUTH COMPANY TO SETTLE NEW ENGLAND.—PERSECUTION OF THE NON-CONFORMISTS.—RETREAT OF ROBINSON'S CONGREGATION TO HOLLAND: THEIR HIGH CHARACTER: THEIR RESOLUTION TO PLANT A COLONY: THEIR LOYALTY AND COURAGE: DEPARTURE FROM DELFT HAVEN.

THE patent issued by James I. for the formation of two companies to settle North America has been mentioned, and the plantation of a colony in Virginia by the first of them described. The other, of weaker resources and less enterprise, experienced in their attempts to settle New England only a succession of miserable failures. Their first vessel, in 1606, was captured by the Spaniards. In the following year, two others, bearing forty-five emigrants, were again dispatched thither, and, in August, came to the mouth of the Kennebec. A small village, slightly fortified, was built, and, in the beginning of winter, the ships returned. The season proved exceedingly severe; part of their provisions were lost by a fire; their governor, George Popham, died; and when, the next year, the vessels returned with supplies, the colonists had become so discouraged as to resolve on forsaking the plantation. Thus, the first attempt at a settlement in New England was nipped in the bud.

The discouragement caused by this ill-success was in some measure allayed by the enterprise and exertions of Smith, who, in 1614, surveyed and mapped out a great portion of the coast of Northern Virginia, on which he first bestowed the title of New England. The crime of his partner, Hunt, in kidnapping a number of the Indians, and selling them as slaves in Spain, has been mentioned, as well as the strenuous but unavailing exertions of Smith, for years afterwards, to effect the colonization of these neglected

regions. Great schemes, indeed, were formed, and lavish promises were made by the Plymouth Company; and the honourable title of "Admiral of New England," bestowed, in perpetuity, on Smith, seemed to indicate a confidence in great ultimate success. All, however, vanished in mere words, though the company, in 1620, procured from the king a renewal of their patent, with such almost unlimited powers of government and extent of territory as had never before been conferred by the crown on any subject or association. The settlement of New England was due to a spirit more earnest and an aim more honourable than even those by which its warmest promoters had hitherto been actuated.

The persecution of non-conformists, commenced in the reign of Elizabeth, was carried, under that of James I., to such an unendurable extreme, that a voluntary exile from England seemed at last the only resource of the aggrieved party. Even this forlorn alternative, under the despotic rule of the House of Stewart, was denied them; and great suffering and long separation were endured by those who sought to fly the country. In 1608, the congregation of the Rev. John Robinson, an eminent preacher of the Independent Church, after several unsuccessful attempts, attended with ill-usage and separation, contrived to get clear of England. They settled at Leyden, under the more humane and liberal government of Holland, and during a protracted residence at that city, by their good conduct, gained universal respect. "These English," said the magistrates, "have lived amongst us ten years, and yet we never had any suit or accusation against any of them."

Their church, which, at the end of that time, numbered three hundred communicants, was of a strictly independent government; and, to their honour, a provision of their creed declared a doctrine rare, and, indeed, almost unheard of at the day—that ecclesiastical censure should involve no temporal penalty. Their cause and their doctrines, defended by the learning and eloquence of their pastor, were viewed with general respect and sympathy.

Wedded to industry, no less by necessity than principle, they had learned mechanical arts, and honestly, though hardly, supported their families. They never, indeed, became in any way assimilated with the Dutch in language or in manners, and ever cherished an affectionate feeling for the land from which they had been so rudely driven. The dissoluteness of manners prevalent among certain classes of the community in which they were settled, filled them with

apprehension for the morals of their children; and it was at last considered advisable by them to seek a permanent asylum and a national home, even if it could only be found in some yet untrodden wilderness. It was proposed by the more enterprising, that they should seek "some of those unpeopled countries of America, which are fruitfull and fit for habitation, being devoid of all civill inhabitants, where there are only salvage and brutish people, which range up and down little otherwise than the wild beasts."

To this scheme the more timid of the company opposed many objections, and especially the cruelty of the savages, and their horrible treatment of their prisoners. "It was answered," says Bradford,\* "that all great and honorable actions were accompanied with great difficulties, and must be both enterprised and overcome with answerable courages. It was granted the dangers were great, but not desperate, and the difficulties were many, but not invincible. It might be that some of the things feared might never befall them; others, by providence, care, and the use of good means, might in a great measure be prevented; and all of them, through the help of God, by patience and fortitude, might either be borne or overcome." This noble reply appears to have silenced the objectors; for, after several days passed in prayer and humiliation, it was resolved that the little congregation of exiles should seek a final home, whether for life or death, in the American wilderness.

On learning their determination, the Dutch, who held their courage and virtue in high esteem, were anxiously desirous that the proposed settlement should be made in the name of their own nation, and made handsome offers to that end; but the love of country prevailed, and it was resolved that wherever the company might found a state, it should be but one more province for the crown, to which, in despite of its wanton oppression, they were still blindly, but loyally attached. The most eligible spot, if permission could be obtained to remove thither, seemed some uninhabited part of that vast and indefinite tract, then known as Virginia. Through the influence of Sandys, permission to settle was obtained from the Virginia Company, and through that of the tolerant Archbishop Usher, a sort of tacit connivance at their scheme was wrung from the king. On the most hard and exorbitant terms, absorbing the labours and profits of the projected colony for seven years, the requisite means were obtained from a company of London merchants. A little ship,

\* Second governor of Plymouth colony.

called the *Speedwell*, of sixty tons, had been purchased, and another the *May-Flower*, of one hundred and eighty, had been hired in England. The first of these was brought to Delft Haven, a port a little south of Leyden, whither, on the 21st of July, 1622, a portion of the congregation, who were to sail, accompanied by most of the remainder, repaired. "So they left that pleasant and goodly city, which had been their resting place near twelve years. But they knew they were *Pilgrims*, and looked not much on those things, but lifted their eyes to heaven, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits. \* \* \* The next day, the wind being fair, they went on board, and their friends with them; when, truly doleful was the sight of that sad and mournful parting; to see what sighs, and sobs, and prayers did sound amongst them; what tears did gush from every eye and pithy speeches pierced each other's heart; that sundry of the Dutch strangers that stood on the quay as spectators, could not refrain from tears." Their pastor, Robinson, who, with a portion of his people, remained, "falling down on his knees, and they all with him, with watery cheeks commended them, with most fervent prayers, to the Lord and his blessing; and then, with mutual embraces and many tears, they took their leaves of one another, which proved to be their last leave to many of them."\*

---

## CHAPTER II.

TORMY VOYAGE OF THE PILGRIMS TO AMERICA.—THEY ARRIVE AT CAPE COD: ARE COMPELLED TO DISEMBARK: INSTITUTE A REPUBLIC.—THEIR SIMPLE CONSTITUTION.—CARVER ELECTED GOVERNOR.—ABSENCE OF PERSONAL AMBITION AMONG THE PURITAN SETTLERS.

THE *May-Flower* and the *Speedwell*, carrying an hundred and twenty passengers, on the 5th of August, 1620, sailed from Southamton in company. Compelled, by a leak in the latter, they put back into Dartmouth, whence, on the 21st, they again took their departure. After getting a hundred leagues to sea, they were again obliged, through the timidity of her captain and some of the com-

\* Bradford's History of Plymouth Colony.

pany  
were  
Sept  
aboar  
weath  
becam  
with  
begar  
thes  
senge  
"by  
And  
storm  
hull f  
with  
know  
On  
days,  
a goo  
agree  
bourh  
it is s  
ritoric  
on la  
findin  
jurisc  
work  
(Nov  
ceede  
All t  
lowin

"In  
of our  
advanc  
plant  
and m  
selves  
furthe  
such  
time,  
we pr

pany, to return to Plymouth. Here they disembarked the few who were too fearful to see the adventure to an end, and on the 8th of September, the remainder, one hundred and one in number, going aboard the *May-Flower*, bade their final farewell to England. The weather, for a time pleasant, at length, with the approach of winter, became adverse, bringing "many contrary winds and fierce storms, with which their ship was shrewdly shaken." The *May-Flower* began to leak, and one of her main beams bent and cracked. Despite these discouragements, it was resolved to hold on. One of the passengers, by good fortune, had taken among his effects a large screw, "by means of which the said beam was brought into his place again. And so," continues the pilgrim journalist, "after many boisterous storms, in which they could make no sail, but were forced to lie at hull for many days together, after long beating at sea, they fell in with the land called Cape Cod; the which being made and certainly known to be it, they were not a little joyful."

On the 10th of November, after a weary passage of sixty-three days, the ship doubled the extremity of Cape Cod, and anchored in a good harbour, on which Provincetown now stands. It had been agreed that the pilgrims should be landed somewhere in the neighbourhood of the Hudson, but the captain of the *May-Flower*, bribed, it is said, by the Dutch, who were jealous of intrusion on their territories, pleading the low state of the provision as an excuse, insisted on landing them immediately. Being compelled to comply, and finding themselves without the limits of the Virginia Company's jurisdiction, and thus destitute of a government, they at once set to work to construct one; and, on the very day after their arrival, (November 11th,) with a reservation of allegiance to the crown, proceeded to erect a democracy in its simplest and most explicit sense. All the men of the company, forty-one in number, signed the following brief but comprehensive instrument:

"In the name of God, amen; we, whose names are underwritten, the loyal subjects of our dread sovereign, King James, having undertaken, for the glory of God and advancement of the Christian faith, and honor of our king and country, a voyage to plant the first colony in the northern parts of Virginia, do by these presents, solemnly and mutually, in the presence of God and one of another, covenant and combine ourselves together, into a civil body politic, for our better ordering and preservation, and furtherance of the ends aforesaid; and by virtue hereof to enact, constitute and frame such just and equal laws, ordinances, acts, constitutions and offices, from time to time, as shall be thought most convenient for the good of the colony. Unto which we promise all due obedience and submission."

A.—THEY  
EMBARK:  
STITUTION.  
P PER-  
LERS.

undred and  
rom South-  
er, they put  
took their  
were again  
of the com-

Such was the plain and simple form of the first written constitution, emanating from the popular will, ever adopted in America. It may be regarded as the basis of that vast superstructure of freedom which has since been gradually reared in the Western Hemisphere.

Mr. John Carver, a gentleman of high integrity and amiable character, and one of the chief promoters of the enterprise, was forthwith chosen governor—an office which, in the present juncture of affairs, could have offered little temptation to ambition. "In the early history of New England, it may be remarked, we do not find, as in that of nearly all other European settlements, the name of any one man greatly conspicuous above his companions, or exclusively identified with the foundation of the commonwealth. The names of Cortes and Pizarro, of Champlain and Penn and Smith, are each inseparably associated with the history of the countries whose destinies, for good or evil, they had so large a share in shaping; while, in the less ambitious annals of Puritan colonization, the memories of Carver, Bradford, and Winslow—of Endicott and Winthrop—of Standish, Mason, and Church, with those of many other associate worthies, are fused and blended with the common history of the country.

"The cause of this distinction is not difficult to define. Principle, rather than personal ambition, whether of the more selfish or generous kind, was the main spring and prompting motive of the actors who figured in those once neglected scenes of enterprise; and all thought of private advancement or renown was for the time merged in a spirit of community, such as only the strong prompting of religious enthusiasm can maintain."

---

### CHAPTER III.

DREARY APPEARANCE OF NEW ENGLAND.—EXPLORING PARTY.  
—STRANGE INJUSTICE TO THE INDIANS.—THE VOYAGE TO  
PLYMOUTH HARBOUR.—SKIRMISH WITH THE SAVAGES.  
—SETTLEMENT OF PLYMOUTH FOUNDED.—GREAT SUFFERING AND MORTALITY AMONG THE PILGRIMS.

URGED by the impatience of the master of the May-Flower, the little band of exiles busied themselves in finding a place for immediate disembarkation and settlement. Nothing could have been more



dreary or desolate than the appearance of the country they had touched on—of a stern and sombre character in the pleasantest season, and now doubly severe in the gloom of an approaching winter. "Which way soever," says one of them, "they turned their eyes (save upward to the Heaven) they could have little solace or content in respect of any outward objects. For summer being done, all things stand for them to look upon with a weather-beaten face; and the whole country being full of woods and thickets, represented a wild and Salvage hue. If they looked behind them, there was the mighty ocean which they had passed, and was now a main bar and gulf to separate them from all the civil parts of the world. \* \* \* May and ought not the children of these fathers rightly to say, 'Our fathers were Englishmen, which came over this great ocean and were ready to perish in this wilderness. But they cried unto the Lord, and he heard their voice and looked on their adversity.' And let them therefore praise the Lord, because he is good, and his mercies endure forever."

On the 15th, sixteen volunteers were permitted to go on shore, under command of Captain Miles Standish, who had served in the wars of Holland, and who was the only soldier by profession in the whole company. This redoubtable warrior (the Mr. Greatheart of the Progress of these Pilgrims) was a man little in stature, but remarkably strong and active, and of the most fiery and resolute courage. The company marched inland for ten miles, following a party of Indians, whom they could not overtake. Weary and thirsty, they came at last to a spring, where, says one, "we sat us down and drank our first New England water, with as much delight as ever we drank drink in all our lives." They found and examined an Indian grave, carefully replacing the articles deposited there, "thinking it would be odious unto them to ransack their sepulchres." From a subterranean store-house, however, which they discovered, they thought fit to carry off a supply of provisions, among which were "six and thirty goodly ears of corn, some yellow and some red, and others mixed with blue, which was a very goodly sight." Reparation was afterwards made to the owners, and, it is said, that the grain thus obtained, preserved for seed, eventually secured the colony from famine. In other expeditions of survey, both store-houses and wigmaws were "ransacked," and the simple wealth of the absent Indians unjustly appropriated—though, with the saving clause of intended restitution. "*Some of the best things wee tooke,*"

then constitu-  
America. In  
e of freedom  
Hemisphere.  
amiable char-  
was forthwith  
ure of affairs,  
the early his-  
ot find, as in  
ne of any one  
lusively iden-  
The names of  
ith, are each  
s whose desti-  
ap; while,  
the memories  
Winthrop—of  
associate wor-  
of the country.  
e. Principle,  
elfish or gener-  
e of the actors  
praise; and all  
e time merged  
mpting of reli-

ORING PARTY.  
E VOYAGE TO  
E SAVAGES.  
REAT SUP-  
ILGRIMS.

ay-Flower, the  
ace for immedi  
have been more

remarks the narrator, with that happy unconsciousness of impropriety which, almost throughout our colonial history, marks the record of violence, of fraud, or of spoliation committed on the natives.

The adjoining regions having been partially explored, at a consultation, it was thought best by some, for the convenience of fishing and other advantages, to settle on Cape Cod; but the pilot, Mr. Coppin, suggesting that there was a good harbour on the western side of the bay, it was resolved to examine it. On the 6th of December, a bitter cold day, Carver, Winslow, Bradford, Standish, and fourteen more, embarked in the shallop, and followed the coast southward. The spray, falling on their clothes, froze instantly, "and made them many times like coats of iron." On the morning of the second day of their voyage, while at prayers on the shore, they were assailed with arrows by a party of savages. Muskets were discharged in return, but no serious result seems to have ensued on either side. The Indians finally retreated, leaving, among other trophies, eighteen arrows, "headed with brass, some with harts' horns, and others with eagles' claws." "The cry of our enemies," says one of the pilgrims, "was dreadful. Their note was after this manner, '*woach, woach, ha ha hach woach.*'" This peculiar succession of sounds has descended to our own day, as the war-whoop of certain native tribes.

All that day, the voyagers sailed swiftly, with a fair wind, along the coast; but toward night, the weather grew heavier, and the rudder breaking from its hinges, they had much ado to scud before the wind, steering with oars. "The seas were grown so great that we were much troubled and in great danger; and night grew on. Anon, Master Coppin bade us be of good cheer, he saw the harbour. As we drew near, the gale being stiff, and we bearing great sail to get in, split our mast into three pieces, and were like to have cast away our shallop. Yet, by God's mercy, recovering ourselves, we had the flood with us, and struck into the harbour."

This harbour, already surveyed and named by Captain John Smith, was that of Plymouth. The location appeared so favourable that it was resolved to plant the settlement there, and, accordingly, the party of survey having returned to Cape Cod, on the 16th, the ship, with all her company (except one who had died at sea, and four who had died at the cape), came into the harbour. "On the 22d of December, 1620, a day for ever memorable in the annals of America, the little band of Pilgrims landed on that rock, now, like the Stone of Mecca, the object of enthusiastic pilgrimage to their

of impropri-  
s the record  
natives.

ed, at a con-  
ce of fishing  
e pilot, Mr.  
the western  
ch of Decem-  
andish, and  
e coast south-  
stantly, "and  
rning of the  
re, they were  
e discharged  
n either side.  
ies, eighteen  
d others with  
the pilgrims,  
*woach, woach,*  
as descended  
oes.

r wind, along  
vier, and the  
o scud before  
so great that  
ght grew on.  
t the harbour.  
g great sail to  
e to have cast  
ourselves, we

Captain John  
so favourable  
, accordingly,  
the 16th, the  
d at sea, and  
r. "On the  
the annals of  
ock, now, like  
mage to their



remains the witness of the happy unconsciousness of improprity which characterizes our colonial history, marks the record of the crimes of blood and rapine, committed on the natives. The country, however, has been partially explored, at a considerable distance from the coast, by some, for the convenience of fishing and other purposes, as on Cape Cod; but the pilot, Mr. John Smith, resolved to examine it. On the 6th of December, 1619, he, with Carver, Winslow, Bradford, Standish, and others, embarked in the shallop, and followed the coast southward all day, falling on their clothes, froze instantly, "and were sometimes times like coats of iron." On the morning of the seventh day of their voyage, while at prayers on the shore, they were assailed with arrows by a party of savages. Muskets were discharged in return, but no serious result seems to have ensued on either side. The Indians finally retreated, leaving a long other trophies, eighteen arrows, "headed with brass, some with birds' horns, and others with eagles' claws." "The cry of our enemies," says one of the pilgrims, "was dreadful. Their note was after this manner, 'woach, woach, ha ha ha ha woach.'" This peculiar succession of sounds has descended to our own day, as the war-whoop of certain native tribes.

All that day, the voyagers sailed swiftly, with a fair wind, along the coast; but toward night, the weather grew heavier, and the rudder, being frozen in its hinges, they had much ado to send before the wind, steering with oars. "The seas were grown so great that we were in great danger; and in great danger; and night grew on. And, Master Smith, being in the shallop, he saw the harbour. As we drew near, the wind rose so, and we hearing great sail to get in, split our vessel into three parts, and were like to have cast away our lives. Yet by God's mercy, by sooting ourselves, we had the boat saved, and a goodly harbour."

This harbour, already surveyed and named by Captain John Smith, was that of Plymouth. The weather being so favourable that it was resolved to pilot the shallop on shore, and, accordingly, the party of survey having returned to Cape Cod, on the 16th, the ship, with all her company (except those who had died at sea, and four who had died at the cape), entered the harbour. "On the 22d of December, 1620, a day memorable in the annals of America, the little band of Pilgrims landed on that rock, now, like the stone of Mecca, the object of a domestic pilgrimage to their

improp-  
the record  
ives.

at a con-  
of fishing  
pilot, Mr.  
e western  
of Decem-  
dish, and  
ast south-  
ly, "and  
ng of the  
they were  
secharged  
ither side.  
eighteen  
thers with  
e pilgrims,  
ch, wash,  
descended

ind, along  
r, and the  
end before  
great that  
t grew on.  
e harbour.  
reat sail to  
o have cast  
rselves, we

tain John  
favourable  
ccordingly,  
e 16th, the  
at sea, and  
"On the  
annals of  
, now, like  
ge to their

THE GREAT TREE



desc  
cut,  
so t  
(esp  
befo  
of c

THE  
-

B  
had  
grea  
tribe  
of t  
vivi  
with  
who  
in t  
tho  
The  
Rho  
rior  
the  
in F  
Bay  
com  
dre  
had  
red  
sup  
was

descendants." A site was selected for the town, and timber being cut, nineteen houses, with all possible dispatch, were erected: but, so severe was the season, and so great the unavoidable exposure, (especially in wading on the shallows, to and from their barge,) that, before the end of February, twenty-five more of them had perished of disease and privation.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

THE INDIANS OF NEW ENGLAND: THINNED BY PESTILENCE.

—THE PEQUOTS, NARRAGANSETTS, AND OTHER TRIBES.

—EXTRAORDINARY OPINIONS OF THE ENGLISH CONCERNING THEM.—BIGOTED ACCOUNTS OF THE ANCIENT HISTORIANS, ETC.

By a desolating pestilence, which, not long before their arrival, had swept New England, the country around Plymouth had been, in great measure, denuded of its original inhabitants. Many powerful tribes had been almost annihilated, and others reduced to a fraction of their original numbers. The most considerable nations yet surviving, were those of the Pequots and Narragansetts, often at war with each other, and with other neighbouring tribes. The former, whose chief stronghold was on a commanding eminence in Groton, in the east of Connecticut, numbered, says Roger Williams, thirty thousand souls. This, undoubtedly, is an excessive exaggeration. The latter, a noble and magnanimous people, dwelt in the state of Rhode Island, where, *it is said*, they numbered five thousand warriors. The Pokanokets, a confederacy of smaller tribes, including the Wampanoags, Pocassets, Sogkonates, and many others, dwelt in Eastern Massachusetts, and on the upper waters of Narragansett Bay. Before the ravages of the pestilence, they are said to have comprised three thousand warriors; but afterwards only five hundred. The Massachusetts, dwelling around the Bay of that name, had formerly been a great people, but, from the same cause, were reduced to a mere remnant. These tribes mostly acknowledged the supremacy of Massasoit, chief of the Wampanoags, whose chief seat was at Mount Hope, near the present town of Bristol. The Paw-

tuckets, who, we are told, had also numbered three thousand warriors, had been almost completely exterminated. Many small clans, mostly dwelling in the westward of Connecticut and Massachusetts, are not included in this estimate.

All these tribes, except the Pequots and Narragansetts, were tributary to the Mohawks, inhabiting the east of New York, one of the fiercest and most powerful of the celebrated Five Nations. "Two old Mohawks," says Dr. Trumbull, "every year or two might be seen issuing their orders, and collecting their tribute, with as much authority and haughtiness as a Roman dictator." Any disobedience of their commands was speedily punished by an avenging war-party, which cut off the offenders without mercy. The Mohawks, it is said, would sometimes pursue their victims into the houses of the English, yelling, "We are come! we are come to suck your blood," and slaying them on the very hearth-stone. This powerful league, however, long at mortal feud with the French of Canada, regarded the English, as rivals of the latter, with complacency, and never offered any molestation to their persons or property.

"It was now just a century since the Conquest of Mexico, by Cortes, had first brought the races of Europe into direct collision with those of the Western Continent. In that interval, the Reformation had arisen, had spread, and had produced perhaps its finest fruit in the little band of self-devoted exiles\* who sought in the wilderness a foothold for civil and religious freedom. As a matter of course, the world was more enlightened, yet, strange to say, hardly a step had yet been taken in the direction of the fairest and noblest result to which enlightenment can tend—the acknowledgment of the universal humanity and brotherhood of all mankind. Our pious forefathers, like the Spaniards of the century before, still

\* Some idea of the noble spirit of tolerance which distinguished the first exiled Puritans may be gathered from the farewell address of their pastor, breathing sentiments infinitely in advance of his age, and even, in some degree, of our own. "I charge you," he says, "before God and his blessed angels, that you follow me no further than you have seen me follow the Lord Jesus Christ. The Lord has more truth yet to break out of his Holy Word. I cannot sufficiently bewail the condition of the reformed churches, who are come to a period in religion, and will go at present no further than the instruments of their reformation.—Luther and Calvin were great and shining lights in their time, yet they penetrated not into the whole counsel of God.—I beseech you, remember it—'tis an article of your church covenant—that you be ready to receive whatever truth is made known to you from the written word of God."

regar  
certai  
famili  
Nothi  
on thi  
cious,  
Acco  
aborig  
dinary  
says,  
in a h  
their c  
and di  
from c  
In h  
a sort  
power  
and to  
ceive,  
forms  
&c., b  
chiefes  
to atta  
are me  
eth mo  
enant  
knives  
have s  
from t  
dainty  
when  
they  
bushes  
to the  
Hea  
Engla  
centur  
the fo  
about  
greate



regarded the dwellers of the New World as the direct offspring or certainly the direct worshippers of Satan, and as enjoying all the familiarity to which his most favoured *protégés* could be entitled. Nothing is more strange than to read the opinions and conclusions on this subject of the men of that age—men otherwise just, sagacious, and, for their day, liberal in the extreme."

According to one of the early historians of New England, the aborigines, on learning of the arrival of the pilgrims, took extraordinary pains to exorcise the advent of Christianity. "They got," he says, "all the powaws of the country, who, for three days together, in a horrid and devilish manner, did curse and execrate them with their conjurations, which assembly and service they held in a dark and dismal swamp. Behold how Satan labored to hinder the gospel from coming into New England."

In his "Good News from New England," Governor Winslow, with a sort of ludicrous reiteration, dwells on the same point. "Another power they worship," he informs us, "whom they call *Hobbamock*, and to the northward of us *Hobbamoqui*; this, as far as we can conceive, is the devil. \* \* This *Hobbamock* appears in sundry forms unto them, as in the shape of a man, a deer, a fawn, an eagle, &c., but most ordinarily a snake. He appears not to all, but the chiefest and most judicious among them; though all of them strive to attain to that hellish height of honor. \* \* The *paniesses* are men of great courage and wisdom, and to these the devil appeareth more familiarly than to others, and, as we conceive, maketh covenant with them to preserve them from death by wounds with arrows, knives, hatchets, &c. \* \* And to the end that they may have store of these, they train up the most forward and likeliest boys, from their childhood, in great hardness, and make them abstain from dainty meat, observing divers orders prescribed, to the end that, when they are of age, the devil may appear to them. \* \* Also they beat their shins with sticks, and cause them to run through bushes, stumps, and brambles, to make them hardy and acceptable to the devil, that in time he may appear to them."

Hear the reverend William Hubbard, the painful historian of New England, only a few years before the commencement of the eighteenth century. He concludes a dissertation on the origin of the Indians in the following lucid and summary manner: "Mr. Mede's opinion about the passage of the natives into this remote region, carries the greatest probability of truth with it; of whose conjecture it may be

said, in a sense, as sometimes of Achithopell's counsell in those dayes, that itt was as the oracle of God. His conceitt is, that when the devill was putt out of his throne in the other parts of the world, and that the mouth of all his oracles was stopt in Europe, Asia, and Africa, hee seduced a company of silly wretches to follow his conduct" (guidance) "into this unknowne part of the world, where hee might lye hid, and not be disturbed in the idolatrous and abominable, or rather diabolical service hee expected from those his followers; for here are no footsteps of any religion before the English came, but meerely diabolical \* \* and so uncouth, as if it were framed and devised by the devill himselfe, and 'tis transacted by them they used to call pawwows, by some kind of familiarity with Satan, to whom they used to resort for counsell in all kinde of evils, both corporall and civill."

"To opinions such as these, the result of ignorance and prejudice, must doubtless be attributed a large measure of that cruel and uncharitable spirit, which dictated not only the wrongs and massacres committed on the natives, but the still more displeasing exultation over their sufferings and extermination, which glows with an infernal light in the pages of the chronicles of the day, and especially in those of the reverend historians, Hubbard and Mather.

"Continually on the alert against the assaults of the infernal enemy, our fathers saw his finger in witchcraft, in Indian warfare, and in many another annoyance, the result of natural causes. Anger and hatred were thus aroused—hatred, indeed, of an imaginary foe, but still hatred, bitter, personal, and vindictive to a degree which we can hardly conceive, and which found its gratification in vengeance on the supposed agents of the invisible Tormentor.

"It could hardly, perhaps, be expected that men engaged in the deadly terrors of savage warfare should have much sympathy for their vanquished enemies—especially when regarded as children of the devil; yet the daring ferocity of the Indian-fighters, occasionally relieved by a touch of good feeling and humanity, is far more agreeable to contemplate than the venomous spirit exhibited by the honourable and reverend recorders of their deeds, whose minds, imbued with the wretched notion of Satanic agency, seem actually to revel in the torment, destruction, and assured damnation of their unfortunate foes. In this particular, we perceive a superstition strangely variant from that of the Spaniard, who, while slaying and tormenting the miserable bodies of the aborigines, was ever anxious, even at the

stak  
and  
per

SAM  
FO  
CO  
J

TE  
comm  
had l  
on th  
the pi  
A fri  
with  
aloof  
the o  
He w  
had l  
he pr  
that  
many  
sixty  
Edwa  
"We  
with  
"we  
a pot  
Mass  
with  
tion

stake or the gallows, that their souls might escape the eternal penalty, and be admitted to the same heaven which he expected to enjoy in person."<sup>\*</sup>

---

## CHAPTER V.

**SAMOSSET: "WELCOME, ENGLISHMEN."—THE VISIT OF MASSASOIT.—TREATY AND ALLIANCE.—MORTALITY AMONG THE COLONISTS.—DEATH OF GOVERNOR CARVER.—DUEL, AND ITS PUNISHMENT.—VISIT TO MASSASOIT: TO IYAN-OUGH.—AFFECTING INCIDENT.**

THE first Indian with whom the settlers of Plymouth had any communication, was one Samoset, a sagamore or petty chief, who had learned a little English from the traders of Manhegin, and who, on the 16th of March, 1621, entered the little settlement, and saluted the pilgrims with the ever-memorable words, "Welcome, Englishmen." A friendly intercourse, by his means, was immediately established with the neighbouring Indians, who heretofore had held cautiously aloof. One whom he brought on a subsequent visit, was Squanto, the only surviving native of Patuxet, the country around Plymouth. He was one of the twenty-four whom "that wicked varlet Hunt" had kidnapped, and, having been at London, and learned English, he proved of great value as an interpreter. He brought information that Massasoit, the greatest sachem of the adjoining regions, with many of his subjects, was close at hand. That chief, attended by sixty men, presently appeared on the hill above Plymouth, and Edward Winslow, with the interpreters, was sent to meet him. "We sent to the king," says the old historian, "a pair of knives, with a copper chain and a jewel at it. To Quadequina" (his brother) "we sent likewise a knife, and a jewel to hang in his ear, and withal a pot of strong waters." In compliance with a friendly invitation, Massasoit, leaving Winslow as a hostage, descended the hill, and, with twenty attendants, came to one of the houses, where preparation had been made to receive him.

<sup>\*</sup> Discoverers, &c., of America.

Governor Carver, with the sound of drum and trumpet, presently entered, and the two dignitaries were soon in convivial and political harmony. "After salutations, our governor kissing his hand, the king kissed him, and so they sat down. The governor called for some strong waters, and drank to him, and he drank a great draught," &c., &c. An interview thus propitiously commenced, soon ripened into treaty and alliance—alliance faithfully observed by both parties for more than fifty years; and the sachem (influenced, it is to be feared, a trifle overmuch by the vigorous draught he had imbibed) "acknowledged himself content to become the subject of our sovereign lord, the king aforesaid, his heirs and successors; and gave unto them all the lands adjacent to them and to their heirs forever. \* \* All which the king seemed to like well, and it was applauded of his followers. All the while he sat by the governor, he trembled with fear. In his person he is a very lusty man, in his best years, of an able body, grave of countenance and spare of speech; in his attire, little or nothing differing from the rest of his followers, only in a great chain of white bone beads about his neck; and at it, behind his neck, hangs a little bag of tobacco, which he drank and gave us to drink," (i. e. smoke.)

Under the instruction of Squanto and Samoset, the English, with the coming on of spring, applied themselves to fishing and to the agriculture suitable to the country. Twenty acres of Indian corn were planted. Thirteen more of the colonists died during March, reducing them to half of their original number, and the May-Flower, half of whose crew was also dead, on the fifth of April, sailed for England. On the following day, died good Governor Carver, who, while toiling in the unwonted heat of an American sun, had received a mortal *coup de soleil*. "His care and pains were so great for the common good, as therewith, it is thought, he oppressed himself and shortened his days." Such is the brief but honourable epitaph of the first New England executive. William Bradford, a young man, but ardent and energetic, was elected to succeed him. Under his rule the first punishment was inflicted in the colony. Two servants of Mr. Hopkins, for fighting a duel, with sword and dagger, were adjudged, by general vote, to be tied, neck and heels together, and so to remain twenty-four hours; but the judges, moved by the excruciating tortures of the culprits (both of whom had been wounded in their duello) released them within an hour, on promise of better carriage for the future.

W  
scit,  
tion,  
blen  
was  
seem  
poor  
could  
turni  
wher  
not l  
Was  
bring  
and v  
this n  
afore  
unto  
discou  
he wo  
days,  
ashan  
A  
and v  
stable  
twent  
fair c  
His e  
ful an  
griev  
judge  
us, be  
break  
exces  
three  
his sh  
(for T  
by w  
her o  
shoul  
all th

Winslow and Hopkins, setting forth, in July, on a visit to Massasoit, passed through many fields well cleared and ready for cultivation, but depopulated by the pestilence, numerous skeletons still bleaching on the ground. Massasoit, though friendly and hospitable, was ill-prepared for the reception of company, the royal larder, it seems, just then, being woefully unsupplied. Two fish, which the poor king caught with his own hands, were all the refreshment he could offer them. Agreements for traffic were made, and the chief, turning to his assembled subjects, made a long oration, "the meaning whereof," says Winslow, "was, as far as we could learn, thus, 'Was not he, Massasoit, commander of the country round about them? Was not such a town his and the people of it? and should they not bring their skins unto us?' To which they answered, they were his, and would be at peace with us, and bring their skins to us. After this manner he named at least thirty places, and their answer was as aforesaid to every one; so that, as it was delightful, it was tedious unto us. This being ended, he lighted tobacco for us, and fell to discoursing of England and of the King's Majesty, marvelling that he would live without a wife." After a friendly sojourn of some days, the envoys returned, leaving the chief "both grieved and ashamed that he could no better entertain them."

A party of the English, searching for a lost child, (who was found, and well cared for by the Indians,) put into Cummaquid, (Barnstable,) the seat of the sachem Iyanough, "a man not exceeding twenty-six years of age, but very personable, gentle, courteous, and fair conditioned; indeed, not like a savage, saving for his attire. His entertainment was answerable to his parts, and his cheer plentiful and various. One thing," proceeds the narrator, "was very grievous to us at this place. There was an old woman, whom we judged to be no less than a hundred years old, which came to see us, because she never saw English; yet could not behold us without breaking out into great passion," (emotion,) "weeping and crying excessively. We demanding the reason of it, they told us she had three sons, who, when Master Hunt was in these parts, went aboard his ship to trade with him, and he carried them captives into Spain, (for Tisquantum," (Squanto) "was at that time carried away also,) by which means she was deprived of the comfort of her children in her old age. We told them we were sorry that any Englishman should give them that offence, that Hunt was a bad man, and that all the English that heard it condemned him for the same; but for

us, we would not offer them any such injury, though it would gain us all the skins in the country. So we gave her some small trifles, which somewhat appeased her."

---

## CHAPTER VI.

ARRIVAL OF THE FORTUNE.—CHALLENGE FROM CANONICUS:  
HIS SUPERSTITIOUS DREAD.—PLYMOUTH FORTIFIED.—  
WESTON'S COLONY AT WEYMOUTH: ITS MISERABLE CON-  
DITION.—MASSASOIT ILL: CURED BY THE ENGLISH.  
—DANGEROUS PLOT REVEALED.

A SMALL vessel, called the Fortune, in November, 1621, arrived at Plymouth, bringing thirty-five additional emigrants—not enough, indeed, to replace those who had already perished of privation and exposure—and bringing neither arms nor provision to the weak and hungry colonists. That the settlement, in its infancy, was not speedily cut off, was due only to the friendliness of Massasoit and other chiefs, and to the courageous attitude of the few Englishmen who remained alive. By the energy and promptitude of Standish, a germ of native hostility was suppressed, and many petty chieftains even subscribed their marks to an acknowledgment of allegiance to the king of England. One Hobbamock, a noted *paniese* or warrior of Massasoit, came to live with the English, and during the rest of his life, was faithful to their service.

Canonicus, the great sachem of the Narragansetts, who, at one time, had sent a friendly message to the colonists, for some unknown reason—perhaps the arrival of the additional emigrants—changing his policy, assumed an attitude of open hostility. He sent a messenger to Plymouth, who, without any explanation, presented "a bundle of new arrows, lapped in a rattlesnake's skin." The English, amazed at this odd present, were informed by Squanto, "that it imported enmity, and was no better than a challenge." On hearing this, the governor, with much spirit, drawing forth the arrows, stuffed the skin, in turn, with powder and shot, and sent it back, adding a bold message of defiance. The hostile chief, his superstition awakened by the mysterious contents of the skin, declined taking

up the gauntlet he had so hastily thrown down—"insomuch as he would not once touch the powder and shot, nor suffer it to stay in his house or country. Whereupon, the messenger refusing it, another took it up; and having been posted from place to place a long time, at length it came whole back again." Vigilance being thus awakened among the colonists, they fortified the town, and under the direction of Standish, observed strict rules of discipline. Squanto also thought proper to do his part, by informing his countrymen that the English had the plague buried in their store-house, and could let it loose on the whole country, if they had a mind.

In the summer of 1622, two vessels were dispatched from England by a Mr. Weston, which landed at Wessagusset (Weymouth) some fifty or sixty idle and profligate emigrants. By their shiftlessness, and the encroachments of the neighbouring savages, (who soon saw of what stuff they were made,) they were reduced ere long to a woeful condition. In March of the same spring, a messenger was dispatched to Plymouth with "a pitiful narration of their lamentable and weak estate, and of the Indians' carriages," (demeanour,) "whose boldness increased abundantly, insomuch that the victuals they got, they would take out of their pots, and eat before their faces; yea, if in anything they gainsaid them, they were ready to hold a knife at their breasts; *that, to give them content, they had hanged one of them, that stole the Indians corn, and yet they regarded it not; that one of their company was turned salvage; that their people had mostly forsaken the town, and made their rendezvous where they got their victual, because they would not take the pains to bring it home; that they had sold their clothes for corn, and were ready to starve both with cold and hunger also, because they could not endure to get victuals by reason of their nakedness.*"

These disagreeable tidings of Indian hostility were presently alarmingly confirmed. News arriving that Massasoit was mortally ill, Winslow, with Hobbamock and another companion, was dispatched to his assistance, with such simple remedies as the poverty of the colony could afford. The goodness of the chief and the attachment of his followers was evidenced by the grief of Hobbamock, who, on the way, "manifesting a troubled spirit, brake forth into these speeches: *Neen womasu sagamus! Neen womasu sagamus!* &c.—'My loving sachem, my loving sachem! Many have I known, but never any like thee.' And turning him to me" (Winslow) "said, whilst I lived I should never see his like among the Indians;

saying he was no liar, he was not bloody and cruel, like other Indians; in anger and passion he was soon reclaimed; easy to be reconciled toward such as had offended him; ruled by reason in such measure that he would not scorn the advice of mean" (humble) "men; and that he governed his men better with few strokes than others did with many; truly loving where he loved; yea, he feared we had not a faithful friend left among the Indians; showing how he oft times restrained their malice, &c., continuing a long speech, with such signs of lamentation and unfeigned sorrow, as it would have made the hardest heart relent."

Arriving at Pokanoket, the visitors, with difficulty, forced their way into the king's house, which was so crowded with Indians, that, although the latter did their best to make a passage, it was no easy matter. This assembly was performing incantations for his relief, "making such a hellish noise," says Winslow, "as it distempered us that were well, and therefore unlike to ease him that was sick." His sight was quite gone, but on hearing who had come, he put forth his hand, and took that of the Englishman. "Then he said twice, though very inwardly," (faintly,) "*Keen Winsnow?* which is to say, 'Art thou Winslow?' I answered *Alhe*, that is yes. Then he doubled these words, *Matta neen wonckanet namen, Winsnow!* that is to say, 'Oh, Winslow, I shall never see thee again.'" Despite the unfavourable circumstances, his guest contrived to get down his throat a "confection of many comfortable conserves," which wrought so effectually that the patient soon began to mend apace. The other sick in his village was also physicked and tended by the good Winslow; and Massasoit, finding himself recovering, "broke forth into the following speeches, 'Now I see the English are my friends and love me; and whilst I live, I will never forget this kindness they have showed me.'" In gratitude, he revealed a formidable plot among the Massachusetts and other tribes, which he had lately been solicited to join, for the destruction of the two settlements of Plymouth and Wessagusset.

Followed by the blessings of the whole village, the Englishmen returned, lodging on their way, at Mattapoiset, with the sachem Caubitant, whose attitude had been dubious, and whom they wished to conciliate. "By the way," says our old traveller, "I had much conference with him, so likewise at his house, he being a notable politician, yet full of merry jests and squibs, and never better pleased than when the like are returned again upon him." The people of

this  
gion,  
hearl  
sever  
many

EXPE  
—  
0

TH  
eviden  
offens  
Capta  
gusset  
one o  
villain  
and B  
weak  
faces,  
warn  
town.  
tradin  
smoo  
Secip  
to co  
man  
party  
"tell  
shur  
unav  
O  
ting



this town Winslow endeavoured to impress with the truths of religion, and especially of the ten commandments; "all which they hearkened unto with great attention; and liked well of; only the seventh commandment they excepted against, thinking there were many inconveniences in it."

---

## CHAPTER VII.

EXPEDITION OF STANDISH TO WEYMOUTH.—DARING POLICY.  
—SLAUGHTER OF THE CONSPIRING INDIANS.—THE COL-  
ONY OF WESTON BROKEN UP.—PRIVATIONS AND SUFF-  
ERINGS AT PLYMOUTH: DROUGHT: SEASONABLE  
SUPPLY OF RAIN.—ADDITIONAL ARRIVAL.

THE information given by Massasoit being confirmed by further evidence, it was resolved, with extraordinary boldness, to take the offensive, and strike a deadly blow at the heads of the conspiracy. Captain Standish, with only eight companions, set forth for Wessagusset, to protect the people there, and especially to get the head of one of the chief conspirators—"Wittawamut, a notable insulting villain, who had formerly imbued his hands in the blood of French and English, and had oft boasted of his own valor and derided their weakness, especially because, as he said, they died crying, making sour faces, more like children than men." The captain, on arriving there, warned the settlers of their danger, and collected them within the town. An Indian spy, who presently entered, under pretence of trading in furs, reported to his people that, though he spoke smoothly, "he saw by his eyes that he was angry in his heart." Seeing their plot discovered, the conspiring chiefs made no attempt to conceal their enmity. "One Pecksuot, who was a paniese, being a man of notable spirit," told Hobbamock, who had come with the party, that they had heard that Standish was come to kill them—"tell him," he said, "we know it, but fear him not, neither will we shun him; but let him begin when he dare, he shall not take us at unawares."

One or two at a time, the savages would present themselves, whetting their knives before the captain's face, and making other men-

acing gestures. "Amongst the rest, Wittawamut bragged of the excellency of his knife. On the end of the handle was pictured a woman's face, 'but,' said he, 'I have another at home that hath killed both French and English, and that hath a man's face on it; and by and by these two must marry.' Further he said of that knife he there had, *Hannaim namen, hunnaim michen, matta cuts*, that is to say, 'By and by it should see, and by and by it should eat, but not speak' \* \* These things the captain observed, yet bare with patience for the present.

"On the next day, seeing he could not get many together at once, and this Pecksnot and Wittawamut being both together, with another man, and a youth of some eighteen years of age (which was brother to Wittawamut, and, villain-like, trod in his steps) and having about as many of his own company in a room with them, gave the word to his men, and the door having been fast shut, began himself with Pecksnot, and snatching his own knife from his neck, though with much struggling, killed him therewith, (the point whereof he had made as sharp as a needle and ground the back also to an edge.) Wittawamut and the other man the rest killed, and took the youth, whom the captain caused to be hanged. But it is incredible how many wounds these two pineses" (panieses) "received before they died, not making any fearful noise, but catching at their weapons and striving to the last." Three more were killed by the same party, and in a fight in the woods (in which Hobbamock took an active part) the Indians were defeated and put to flight.

The news of these successes was received with much joy at Plymouth, and the head of Wittawamut, a grisly token of vengeance, was affixed to the fort at that place. The worthy Robinson, indeed, received the account of this sanguinary (though perhaps necessary) affair, with great grief and mortification. "Would," he writes lamentingly to his exiled people, "that you had converted some of them before you killed any."

Weston's colony, which had proved so miserably unfitted for the country, was now completely broken up; a part of the settlers proceeding to Manhegin, and the rest accompanying Standish to Plymouth. They might probably have remained in security where they were; for such an impression did this fierce and energetic conduct make on the hostile savages, that, for fifty years they made no further attempts against the English.

The summer of 1623 brought grievous famine and distress, the

color  
sands  
corn  
giving  
similar  
same  
tion  
been  
tude  
humid  
might  
touch  
"and  
"dist  
some  
were  
tions,  
good  
Th  
especi  
conju  
with  
good,  
ours  
serve  
starv  
two s  
those  
senti  
instr  
diffic  
alwa  
are t

colonists being compelled to search the woods for nuts and the sea sands for clams, as their only sustenance. Once, it is said, a pint of corn being the entire stock of provisions in the town, it was divided, giving five kernels to each—an incident since commemorated, by a similar division at the entertainments of their descendants, in the same venerated spot. A long drought also threatened the destruction of the crops, to secure which all their little store of corn had been planted. These sufferings they bore with extraordinary fortitude and cheerfulness; and finally set aside a day of fasting and humiliation, and prayer for relief to God, "if our continuance there might any way stand with his glory and our good"—a sublime and touching sentiment. Toward the close of the day, clouds gathered, "and on the next morning," says the narrator, with quaint eloquence, "distilled such soft, sweet, and moderate showers of rain, continuing some fourteen days and mixed with such seasonable weather, as it were hard to say whether our withered corn, or our drooping affections, were most quickened and revived; such was the bounty and goodness of our God."

The Indians were greatly surprised at this unlooked-for result, and especially, according to Winslow, at "the difference between their conjuration, and our invocation to God for rain; theirs being mixed with such storms and tempests, as sometimes, instead of doing them good, it layeth the corn flat on the ground, to their prejudice; but ours in so gentle and seasonable a manner, as they had never observed the like." The harvest proved plentiful, and all fear of starvation was allayed. In July and August of the same summer, two ships, with sixty additional settlers, arrived. In a letter sent by those who yet remained, was the following prophetic and consoling sentiment: "Let it not be grievous to you that you have been the instruments to break the ice for others who come after you with less difficulty; *the honor shall be yours to the world's end*: we bear you always in our breasts, and our hearty affection is toward you all, as are the hearts of hundreds more who never saw your faces."

## CHAPTER VIII.

NEW SETTLEMENTS FOUNDED: NEW HAMPSHIRE AND MAINE  
—ENDICOTT'S COMPANY.—THE REVELLERS OF MERRY  
MOUNT: BROKEN UP BY THE PURITANS.—SETTLEMENT OF  
MASSACHUSETTS.—FOUNDATION OF BOSTON.—GREAT  
EMIGRATION.—MORTALITY AND SUFFERING.

THE progress of the Plymouth colony was slow, but sure, and although the original settlement, at the end of ten years, numbered but three hundred souls, at an early day, it began to send offshoots into the adjoining regions. In 1625, their admirable pastor, Robinson, died at Leyden, having been prevented from emigrating by an adverse influence in England. The remainder of his congregation, as soon as practicable, joined their brethren in America. Enterprise, directed to the same region, was revived in the mother-country. New patents were issued to Gorges and other projectors, and settlements, as early as 1623, were made on the banks of the Piscataqua. Portsmouth and Dover were settled, and the foundation of New Hampshire was thus permanently laid. That of Maine was not long in succeeding, the temporary trading and fishing stations on its coast being gradually converted to permanent occupation. Roger Conant, a man of extraordinary courage and perseverance, with only three companions, laid the foundation of a settlement at Naumkeag (now Salem) near Cape Ann. Preparations for a Puritan emigration, on an extensive scale, were made in England; and in the summer of 1628, John Endicott, a man of brave and religious, but rugged and bigoted nature, with about a hundred companions, arrived at the diminutive outpost of Salem. The vigorous and practical spirit of Puritanism, as well as its more gloomy and ascetic qualifications, were not long in making their demonstration.

"A small settlement, named Mount Wollaston, (Quincy), had fallen into the hands of one Thomas Morton, described as 'a petty fogging attorney of Furnival's Inn,' who, with a crew of dissolute companions, lived there in much excess and licentiousness. He changed the name of the place to Merry Mount ('as if this jollity could have lasted always') and, besides selling fire-arms to the Indians, kept a haunt for all the idle serving men and lewd companions in the country. Thus they lived for some time, 'vainly quaffing and drinking

both  
ten p  
and c  
furier  
said  
and v  
tion a  
or id  
"7  
worth  
tion  
read  
their  
finall  
Capta  
house  
The c  
got fr  
many  
sland  
and p  
ton, h  
and f  
Pisca  
Ma  
forme  
from  
of th  
Engl  
more  
a nev  
of Ju  
emig  
perso  
city c  
stone  
land,  
built  
settle

both wine and strong liquors in great excess (as some have reported, ten pound's worth in a morning) setting up a May-pole, drinking and dancing about it, and frisking about it like so many fairies, or furies rather—yea, and worse practices. \* \* \* The said Morton, likewise, to show his poetry, composed sundry rhymes and verses, some tending to lasciviousness, and others to the detraction and scandal of some persons' names, which he affixed to his idle or idol May-pole.'

"These dissolute courses received their first check from 'that worthy gentleman, Mr. John Endicott,' who, soon after the foundation of his settlement, paid them a visit, cut down their May-pole, read them a terrible lecture, and once more changed the name of their abode, calling it Mount Dagon. The whole community was finally broken up by a small force dispatched from Plymouth, under Captain Standish. 'This party seized Morton, and 'demolished his house, that it might no longer be a roost for such unclean birds.' The culprit was sent over seas. 'Notwithstanding, in England he got free again, and wrote an infamous and scurrilous book against many of the godly and chief men of the country, full of lies and slanders, and full fraught with profane calumnies against their names and persons and the ways of God.' Returning imprudently to Boston, he was imprisoned 'for the aforesaid book and other things,' and finally 'being grown old in wickedness, at last ended his life in Piscataqua.'"\*

Many persons of wealth and eminence of the Puritan party having formed the design of emigration, a charter, in 1629, was obtained from the king for the formation of a new company, under the title of the "Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England." In the latter part of June, that same year, two hundred more emigrants, dispatched by this corporation, arrived at Salem, and a new settlement was founded at Charlestown. During the months of June and July, 1630, eleven ships, bearing a great number of emigrants, arrived in Massachusetts Bay. At this time, the only person living on the peninsula of Shawmut (the site of the present city of Boston) was an Episcopal clergyman, the Rev. William Blackstone, who, on account of ecclesiastical scruples, had quitted England, and betaken himself to the American wilderness. He had built a cottage and planted an orchard. The new comers first settled at Charlestown, where a small colony had already been estab-

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

lished; but, on the invitation of Mr. Blackstone, and attracted by the natural advantages of the place, their governor, the celebrated John Winthrop, with other persons of distinction, removed thither. The principal place of the plantation was, accordingly, erected on that admirable locality, which, in all the wide region of which it is the metropolis, could hardly find a rival, in beauty or convenience. In the course of the year, five more vessels, with more emigrants, making the number fifteen hundred, arrived. Buildings were erected with all possible dispatch, but such were the numbers, that proper shelter for all was unobtainable. Before December, two hundred had died of disease occasioned by their hardships, and more than a hundred had retreated to England. These sufferings were endured with much fortitude by the survivors. "We here enjoy God and Jesus Christ," wrote Winthrop (who had lost a son) to his wife, "and is not this enough? I would not have altered my course, though I had foreseen all these afflictions. I never had more peace of mind." Despite these discouragements, the spirit of enterprise was fairly awakened in the Puritan party, and during the next few years, such numbers continued to flock to the new colony, that an Order in Council was issued by the king to restrain the emigration. Nevertheless, for a long time, great numbers of the persecuted faction resorted to Massachusetts—the year 1635 being especially memorable for the arrival of a large company, among whom were the afterwards celebrated Hugh Peters (chaplain to Cromwell) and Mr. (afterwards Sir Henry) Vane, who, the year after his arrival, was elected governor. It is said that Hampden, Cromwell, and Pym, (three names the most formidable in the great revolution,) had also embarked, but, by an order of court, were constrained to remain, to the destruction of the power and the person that withheld them.

CH A R  
LA

"T  
mensu  
party,  
to upl  
voke  
destin  
Accor  
New V  
the fo  
some  
prospe  
'were  
their t  
Plymo  
vietion  
therefo  
gical c  
accord  
unfort  
develo  
their f  
is the  
to use  
occur  
ities,  
cipal  
mirth  
Th  
"Mai  
forffa

## CHAPTER IX.

CHARACTER OF THE FOUNDERS OF MASSACHUSETTS.—REGU-  
 LATIONS FOR PUBLIC MORALITY: FOR APPAREL, ETC.—  
 AMUSING PENALTIES.—INTOLERANCE IN RELIGION.  
 —COMMENCEMENT OF PERSECUTION.

"THE wealth and importance of this new community were commensurate with the growing power of the Puritan party. That party, originally so humble and depressed, was already beginning to uplift its voice in the councils of the English nation, and to provoke fresh and suicidal efforts of that arbitrary power, which was destined, ere long, to fall, with such terrible circumstances, before it. Accordingly, the men who now transferred their fortunes to the New World, though aiming, as earnestly as their predecessors, at the foundation of a religious commonwealth, brought with them somewhat of that insolence which is always the handmaid of new prosperity. 'Their characters,' says the candid and judicious Baylies, 'were more elevated, but their dispositions were less kindly, and their tempers more austere, sour, and domineering than those of their Plymouth brethren. They had brought themselves to a positive conviction of their own evangelical purity and perfect godliness, and therefore they tolerated not even the slightest difference in theological opinions.' They were composed, in short, of that stuff which, according to circumstances, makes a martyr or a persecutor; and, unfortunately for their reputation, the latter had opportunity for development. This, however, can hardly be laid at the door of their faith. Having power to persecute, they persecuted; and where is the religious community, which, having such power, ever forbore to use it? Until, indeed, aroused by opposition (which did not occur for many years, the arbitrary and intolerant spirit of the authorities, for the most part, lay dormant, only indulging itself in municipal regulations and fantastic penalties, rather fitted to provoke mirth than indignation."\*

Though the sweeping generalities and searching particulars of a "Maine Law," never suggested themselves to the legislation of our forefathers, acts for the restraint of intemperance were not wanting.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

As early as 1634, we find a traveller complaining that if a gentleman went into either of the two public houses in Boston, he was followed by an officer appointed for the purpose, who watched his potations narrowly, and when of opinion that he had enough, would countermand his orders, and cut off all further supply—"beyond which," says our author, bitterly, "he could not get one drop!" Another ordinance enjoined on all constables to keep special watch over all "common coasters, unprofitable fowlers, and tobacco takers." But when the clergy began to use the inhibited weed, the severity of this provision was relaxed. Vanity in dress was severely reprehended, especially "immoderate great sleeves, slash apparel, and long-wigs." Any one who should "give offence to his neighbor by the excessive length of his hair," might be arraigned before the General Court, and compelled to remove the obnoxious surplusage.

No regular system of law, common or statute, being adopted at first, sentences of punishment were framed according to the ingenious fancy of the court. These sentences, gravely perpetuated in the records, sound oddly enough to modern jurisprudence. Josias Plaistowe, for stealing, is fined, and doomed thereafter to be called Josias, "and not Mr. as he formerly used to be." "Mrs. Cornish, found suspicious of incontinency," is (probably in default of sufficient evidence for conviction) "seriously admonished to take heed." Mr. Robert Shorthose, who had thought proper to swear by the blood of God, is adjudged to have his tongue put in a cleft stick, and so to remain for half an hour. Edward Palmer, who had made a new pair of stocks for the town, for presenting the extortionate bill of two pounds and upward, is sentenced to pay a fine of five, and for one hour personally to test the efficacy of his own handiwork—a salutary warning to all public creditors. Nothing seems to have been more sharply repressed than any question of the authority of the court. In 1632, according to the record, "Thomas Knower was set in the bilboes for threatening ye court, that if he should be punished, he would have it tried in England, whether he was lawfully punished or no."

Religious conformity, at first not enforced to a sanguinary extreme, was a regular part of the political system. All persons, under pain of a fine, were compelled to attend meeting. Mr. Painter, it seems, "on a sudden turned Anabaptist," and would not have his child baptised, "Whereupon," says Governor Winthrop, with delightful discrimination between an opinion and the expression of it, "because

he w  
faster  
but fo  
ment  
vellow  
be go  
being  
any w  
was l  
five p  
the re  
a late  
as ma

REV.  
PER  
EX  
TH

INT  
exciti  
clergy  
politic  
newly  
settled  
chuse  
to Pl  
piety  
benev  
mann  
"God  
lodge  
Plym  
great



he was very poor, so as no other but corporal punishment could be fastened on him, he was ordered to be whipped, *not for his opinion, but for reproaching the Lord's Ordinance.* He endured his punishment with much obstinacy, and said, boastingly, that God had marvelously assisted him." Hugh Bretts, for heresy, was ordered to be gone out of the jurisdiction, "and not return again, on pain of being hanged." By a piece of intolerance, quite as unjustifiable as any which the Puritans themselves had endured in England, restraint was laid on the consciences of the Indians, who, under penalty of five pounds, were forbidden to worship the devil, or to practice any of the religious rites of their forefathers. It was ordered, moreover, at a later day, that if any negro slaves should take refuge among them, as many Indians should be "captivated" in their place.

---

## CHAPTER X.

REV. ROGER WILLIAMS.—HIS LIBERAL OPINIONS.—HE IS PERSECUTED BY THE AUTHORITIES OF MASSACHUSETTS.—EXPELLED FROM THAT PROVINCE.—TAKES REFUGE IN THE WILDERNESS.—FOUNDS PROVIDENCE PLANTATIONS AND THE STATE OF RHODE ISLAND.

INTOLERANCE in the province of Massachusetts, ere long, was the exciting cause of fresh schemes of colonization. Roger Williams, a clergyman of liberal opinions in religion and enlightened views in politics, in 1631, attracted by the expectation of tolerance in the newly-peopled wilderness, made his way to Boston. He was first settled at Salem, but on account of the illiberal hostility of the Massachusetts authorities, who had some idea of his sentiments, removed to Plymouth, where he was appointed assistant minister, and by his piety and eloquence, became much endeared to the people. From benevolent motives, he took much pains to learn the language and manners and to conciliate the affections of the neighbouring Indians. "God was pleased," he says, "to give me a painful, patient spirit, to lodge with them in their filthy, smoky holes, even while I lived in Plymouth and Salem, to gain their tongue." Massasoit and the two great sachems of the Narragansetts (Canonicus and his nephew Mi-

antonimo) accorded him their friendship—that of the latter eventually proving of no small moment to the prosperity and even the existence of the New England colonies. He resided two years in Plymouth, and then moved again to Salem, followed by a considerable number of his congregation.

There (August, 1634) he was regularly installed as pastor, and by his liberal preaching speedily revived the prejudice and hostility of the authorities. In that day, it was considered a startling novelty to declare that a man was the proper guardian of his own religious belief, and that the state had no right to intermeddle with it. In reading the terrible history of martyrdom, three reigns before this, we do not find many objections raised to the practice of burning men alive, abstractly considered—but the question was debated with intense earnestness as to what shade of opinion was fittest to be repressed by the flames. Probably a good many tenets might have been enumerated, which nearly all parties in the English Church would have united in denouncing as worthy of punishment. Yet, doubtless, it was well for mankind that martyrdoms, though on points ostensibly the most trifling and immaterial, should have been bravely undergone; for, if it had once been established that death and suffering would make men belie the faith that was in them, self-will and error, and consequent misfortune to the race, would have found the means for their eternal perpetuation. To the end of time, the only rule would have been that of the naturally violent, self-willed, and cruel. But then, and long after, it was considered allowable, by nearly all sects of Christians, to repress opinions of some sort by the strong arm of the law. It was, therefore, to the no small annoyance of the Massachusetts magistrates, as a reflection on their systematic intolerance, that the preacher boldly announced “that no human power had the right to intermeddle in matters of conscience; and that neither church, nor state, nor bishop, nor priest, nor king, may prescribe the smallest iota of religious faith. For this, he maintained, a man is responsible to God alone.” Especially he deprecated the unjust laws compelling universal attendance at meeting and a compulsory support of the clergy, affirming that the civil power “extends only to the bodies and goods, and outward estates of men,” and maintaining that with their belief “the civil magistrate may not intermeddle, even to stop a church from apostacy and heresy.”

He had frequently been censured by the authorities or vexatiously summoned before them; and on the promulgation of these incendiary

doct  
bring  
and  
for h  
cong  
next  
the s  
reca  
broa  
the a  
any  
Suff  
hensi

In  
a ver  
desig  
took  
anoth  
quair  
aged  
taine  
a num  
and  
from  
settle  
for fe  
remo  
partly  
passe  
in the  
the h  
cheer  
count  
the n  
ulous  
hono  
the m  
the se  
it sho

doctrines, as they were considered, immediate steps were taken to bring him to justice. Salem, which supported him, was disfranchised, and in July, 1635, the audacious minister was put regularly on trial, for his "dangerous opinions." After a protracted debate, he and his congregation were allowed "time to consider these things till the next General Court, and then, either to give satisfaction, or expect the sentence." At the next sitting, in October, as he still refused to recant, a resolution was passed that, whereas the offender "hath broached and divulged divers new and dangerous opinions against the authority of magistrates, and yet maintaineth the same without any retraction," his sentence should be banishment from the colony. Suffered to remain for a time, many people "taken with an apprehension of his godliness," resorted to him.

In alarm at this evidence of his popularity, the court dispatched a vessel to seize and transport him over seas. Informed of this design, in the dead of winter, (January, 1636) he left his family, and took refuge in the forest, where, passing from one Indian hut to another, he found a miserable subsistence. "These ravens," he says quaintly, "fed me in the wilderness." At Mount Hope, where the aged Massasoit was still residing, he was kindly received, and obtained from that chief a grant of land on the Seekonk river. Thither a number of his friends, in the spring, betook themselves from Salem, and commenced a plantation. A letter, however, presently came from Winslow, the governor of Plymouth, advising him that he had settled within the jurisdiction of that colony, and requesting him, for fear of offence to their powerful neighbour, Massachusetts, to remove yet a little farther. The fields already planted, and the partly-built dwelling were abandoned, and with five comrades he passed down Seekonk river in a canoe, in quest of a home yet deeper in the wilderness. As they paddled toward its mouth, an Indian on the high western bank saluted them with the friendly cry, "What cheer, Netop,\* what cheer!" Espying a fair spring and a fertile country, the exiled preacher and his companions landed, and founded the new colony of "Providence Plantations," on the site of the populous and wealthy city which yet commemorates the name. To the honour of this little association of free spirits, they resolved that the majority should govern in civil matters and in none other, and the settlement speedily became, what Williams had earnestly desired it should—"a shelter for persons distressed in conscience."

\* Friend.

By his influence with the Narragansett sachems, land and the permission to settle had been obtained; and this influence, two years after the foundation of Providence, was again exerted in behalf of a large number of persons, expelled from Massachusetts as heretics, but "lovingly entertained" at the new colony of religious freedom. On very moderate terms he procured for them a grant of the beautiful island of Rhode Island, which has since given its name to the entire state, and a very flourishing settlement soon sprang up there. "It was not price or money," he writes, many years afterwards, "that could have purchased Rhode Island. It was obtained by love; by the love and favor which that honorable gentleman Sir Henry Vane and myself had with the great sachem Miantonimo, about the league which I procured between the Massachusetts English and the Narragansetts, in the Pequot war." (That war, with the causes which originated it, and the important influence of Williams, in behalf of the English, will presently be recounted.)

---

## CHAPTER XI.

SETTLEMENT OF CONNECTICUT BY PLYMOUTH: BY MASSACHUSETTS.—HARDSHIPS OF THE COLONISTS.—FOUNDATION OF HARTFORD, ETC.—EMIGRATION UNDER HOOKER: NEW HAVEN FOUNDED.—COMMENCEMENT OF THE PEQUOT WAR.—INFLUENCE OF ROGER WILLIAMS.

A SETTLEMENT on the fertile banks of the Connecticut river had been projected at an early day, and the flourishing commonwealth of Massachusetts had been urged to undertake it; but the authorities of that province, deterred by many opposing circumstances, especially the dread of Indian hostility, had deferred or neglected it. With more courage and enterprise, the little colony of Plymouth undertook the task. Thence, in October of 1633, William Holmes sailed for the Connecticut in a vessel, carrying the frame of a house, and a small number of men, to establish a trading post, and perhaps a plantation. Passing up that river, he was warned off by the Dutch, who had a small fort at what is now known as Hartford, but sailed on, and built his house a few miles above, a little below the junction of the Farmington and Connecticut rivers.

The example thus set, emigration from Massachusetts rapidly followed. In October, 1635, a company of sixty—men, women, and children—took up their march westward from Massachusetts. These people, their supplies cut off by the freezing of the river, suffered great hardships, and numbers betook themselves to the coast. In May, the next year, a much larger emigration occurred—a hundred colonists, under the Rev. Thomas Hooker, a divine eminent for his eloquence and piety, proceeding overland in the same direction. A numerous drove of cattle, the milk of which sustained them on the way, was driven before them. Small settlements had already been made at Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor, and a form of government had been instituted at an early day. By the end of the year 1636, about eight hundred settlers had made their way to the banks of the Connecticut.

Not long afterwards (April, 1638) a new colony of Puritans was founded at New Haven, under the two friends, Theophilus Eaton, and the Rev. John Davenport, the former of whom, until his death, for twenty years held by election the office of governor. Villages and plantations, springing from this source, spread rapidly along the shores of Long Island Sound. An Indian war, the first in New England, almost immediately after the foundation of the settlements on the Connecticut, menaced their destruction. To avenge certain murders committed, years before, by the Pequots, Massachusetts had dispatched an expedition by sea, which committed wanton and indiscriminate reprisals. Hostilities thus precipitated, a murderous warfare ensued. Cotton Mather, indeed, sees fit to ascribe the whole matter, as usual, to the direct intervention of the enemy. "Two colonies of churches," he says, "being thus *brought forth*, and a third *conceived*, within the bounds of New England, it was time for the devil to take the *alarum*, and make some attempt in opposition to the *possession* which the Lord Jesus Christ was going to have of these *utmost parts of the earth*. These *parts* were then covered with nations of barbarous *indians* and infidels, in whom the *prince of the power of the air* did *work as a spirit*; nor could it be expected that nations of wretches, whose whole *religion* was the most explicit sort of *devil-worship* should not be acted by the devil to engage in some early and bloody action, for the extinction of a plantation so contrary to his interests, as that of *New England* was."

Whatever the cause, the whole weight of Indian hostility and resentment fell on the feeble settlements of Connecticut. The Pe-

quots kept constant watch to surprise all stragglers, and frequently put their captives to death with the most cruel torments. A small fort had been erected by the English at Saybrook, near the mouth of the river, and the little garrison, under their governor, Gardiner, held out against the besieging savages with much resolution. Sassacus, the principal sachem of the hostile tribe, now used every exertion to gain the alliance of his old enemies, the Narragansetts, sending ambassadors to Canonicus and Miantonimo, urging every motive of policy and self-preservation for the relinquishment of their feud and uniting their arms against the common enemy. This piece of diplomacy was defeated by the agency of Roger Williams, whose influence with those great sachems has been already mentioned, and who, at the request of the Massachusetts authorities, promptly set forth in his canoe, and made his way, in a dangerous storm, to the Narragansett court. There he stayed for three days, countervailing by his persuasions the arguments of the Pequot ambassadors, whose hands were still reeking with the blood of his countrymen, and "from whom he nightly looked for their bloody knives at his throat also." These persuasions, combined with ancient enmity, outweighed the influence of the Pequots, and Canonicus entered into league with the English.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

THE PEQUOT WAR, CONTINUED.—THE ATTACK ON WETHERSFIELD.—EXPEDITION UNDER MASON.—SURPRISE AND STORMING OF THE PEQUOT FORT: TERRIBLE SLAUGHTER AND CONFLAGRATION.—FINAL DEFEAT AND DESTRUCTION OF THE TRIBE.—BARBAROUS EXULTATION OF THE EARLY HISTORIANS.—REFLECTIONS.

IN April, 1637, the Pequots attacked the little town of Wethersfield, and killed nine of the settlers. The English now saw the necessity for immediate and energetic action. Ninety men were speedily equipped, and put under the command of Captain John Mason, an active soldier, and a party of seventy Mohegan Indians, headed by the notorious Uncas, (then in revolt against his chief and

kinsman, Sassacus,) were persuaded to join the expedition. Letters, entreating aid, were dispatched to Massachusetts. Early in May, the allied force proceeded down the river, and at Saybrook, set sail for the country of the Narragansetts, intending to take the enemy by surprise. Though apprized that a force from Massachusetts was on the way to join him, Mason, fearing lest the Pequots should learn of his design, resolved to strike a blow without delay. Strengthened by a considerable force of native allies, he marched westward from the Narragansett country, with great secrecy, and on the 5th of June, a little before daylight, came to "Pequot Hill," (in the present town of Groton,) on which the strongest fort of the enemy was situated.

The barking of a dog gave the first alarm to the unsuspecting garrison, who, though taken by surprise, and startled from profound slumber, hastily snatched their rude weapons, and fought with much courage. Mason, wearied at the length of the contest, at last cried, "We must burn them!" and snatching up a brand, set fire to the matting in one of the wigwams. The whole village was composed of the driest and most combustible materials, and the flames, urged by a strong wind, spread swiftly through the fort. The warriors continued to shoot until their bowstrings were snapped by the heat, and then mostly perished in the flames, or were shot down, in attempting to escape over the palisades. Women, children, and old people met the same terrible fate. It seems certain that at least four hundred perished, and possibly many more. "It was supposed," says Dr. Increase Mather, "that no less than 500 or 600 Pequot souls were brought down to hell that day." The reverend gentleman, it would seem, took an especial comfort in considering the future torment of the enemy; for elsewhere, he tells of "two and twenty Indian captains, slain all of them and brought down to hell in one day," and of a certain chief, who sneered at the religion of the English, "and withal, added a hideous blasphemy, immediately upon which a bullet took him in the head, and dashed out his brains, sending his cursed soul in a moment amongst the devils and blasphemers in hell forever."—*Prevalency of Pruyer*, page 7.

Perhaps we cannot better arrive at a knowledge of the state of public sentiment in that day, and, indeed, for half a century afterward, than by perusing a few more of these precious extracts from the old New England historians.

"It was a fearful sight," says Mr. Morton, (New England's Memo-

frequently  
A small  
the mouth  
or, Gardiner,  
ution. Sas-  
ed every ex-  
arragansetts,  
arging every  
ment of their  
This piece  
lliams, whose  
y mentioned,  
ies, promptly  
storm, to the  
countervailing  
assadors, whose  
nrymen, and  
s at his throat  
y, outweighed  
to league with

ON WETHERS-  
AND STORM-  
HTER AND  
TRUCTION  
OF THE  
S.

wn of Wethers-  
n now saw the  
nety men were  
f Captain John  
hegan Indians,  
st his chief and

rial,) "to see them thus frying in the fire, and the streams of blood quenching the same; and horrible was the stink and scent thereof; but the victory seemed a sweet sacrifice, and they gave the praise thereof to God, who had wrought so wonderfully for them, thus to enclose their enemies in their hands," &c. The Pequots from other villages, on hearing the disastrous tidings, hastened in numbers to the scene, and their very natural anguish is mocked by Cotton Mather in a strain of satire as dull as it is wicked. "When they came to see the ashes of their *friends*," he says, "mingled with the ashes of the *fort*, and the bodies of their countrymen so terribly *barbikew'd*, where the English had been doing a good morning's work, they howl'd, they roar'd, they stamp'd, they tore their hair; and though they did not *swear* (for they knew not how) yet they *curs'd*, and were the pictures of so many devils in desperation." Is not the feeling which prompted this truly diabolical sentence identical with that which animates the red warrior when beholding his foe consuming at the stake or running the gauntlet through innumerable blows?

Separated into small bodies, the Pequots were speedily cut off, in detail, by the victors. Closely pursued by their allied enemies, a portion retreated westward, and finally, in a swamp at Fairfield, after a brave defence, were completely routed. Most of the warriors were slain, and the women and children were made slaves, a portion being shipped to the West Indies. Sassacus, and a small body of his warriors, took refuge among the Mohawks, but were put to death by that inimical tribe. Several hundred of the broken nation, on one occasion, were taken by the English in the Narragansett country. "The men among them," says the Reverend William Holland, "to the number of 30, were turned presently into Charon's ferry boat, under the command of Skipper Gallop, who dispatched them a little without the harbour." "Twas found," says Reverend Cotton Mather, "the quickest way to feed the *fishes* with em." The women and children were enslaved. Thus thinned by massacre and transportation, the forlorn relics of the tribe thereafter remained in entire subjection to the victors.

"In reading accounts like these, it seems hard to determine which is the savage and which the child of civilization—and the hasty conclusion would be, that, except in the possession of fire-arms to defeat the Indians, and of letters to record their destruction, the authors and approvers of such deeds were but little in advance of the unhappy race, whose extermination left room for their own

incr  
disg  
the  
ques  
exis  
thos  
fiero  
The  
mar  
who  
godl  
patr  
"  
own  
ter o  
agen  
tical  
many  
plied  
excel  
wars  
the I  
king  
elatic  
ating  
over



increase and prosperity. But until our own day is free from the disgrace of scenes parallel in cruelty, enacted by those who have had the advantage of two centuries of civilization, it ill becomes us to question with too great severity the deeds of men struggling for existence, in the wilderness, not only with a savage foe, but with all those hardships and uncertainties which render the heart of man fierce, callous, and unscrupulous in the means of self-preservation. The most disagreeable part of the whole business, as we have remarked before, is the fiendish exultation of the learned historians, who, sitting in their arm-chairs at Boston and Ipswich, record with godless sneers and chuckles, the defeat and sufferings of the savage patriots of the soil.

"These gentlemen, possessed with a happy conviction of their own righteousness, appear to have thought that the Lord, as a matter of course, was on their side, and that only the Adversary or his agents could be arrayed against them. A long course of ecclesiastical dictation had made them as infallible, in their 'conceit,' as so many popes; and a constant handling of Jewish scriptures had supplied them with a vast number of historical texts, all susceptible of excellent application in behalf of their position. These were the wars of the Lord; the extirpation of the uncircumcised occupants of the Promised Land; crusades against Edomites, Philistines, and Og, king of Bashan; and any severity toward the vanquished, or any elation at their defeat, might find an easy precedent in the exterminating policy of priests and prophets, and the pæans of victory chanted over their fallen foes."\*

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

# THE SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.

## CHAPTER I.

SIR GEORGE CALVERT: HIS SCHEMES FOR SETTLEMENTS IN AMERICA: HE OBTAINS THE GRANT OF MARYLAND: FOUNDS A COLONY THERE.—SETTLEMENT OF ST. MARY'S.—RELATIONS WITH THE INDIANS.—EXPULSION OF CLAYBORNE.—DISCONTENT AND INSURRECTION.—PROTESTANT SETTLERS.—ACT FOR THE TOLERATION OF ALL CHRISTIAN SECTS.

SIR GEORGE CALVERT, a secretary of state under James I., having conscientiously become a Catholic, and finding, in the adoption of this proscribed faith, an insuperable bar to political ambition at home, had, from an early day, directed his exertions to the enterprise of peopling and governing new regions in America. He had made strenuous and protracted, but unavailing endeavours to found a permanent and prosperous settlement on the rugged shores of Newfoundland: and, finally, turned his attention to the milder and more fertile regions of Virginia. His desire to plant a colony there being thwarted by the prejudice of the authorities against his faith, he returned to England, where his court-favour, despite this obstacle, being good, he obtained from the crown the grant of an extensive region northward of the southern bank of the Potomac, and extending to the fortieth degree of north latitude.

Over this wide tract, almost unlimited personal jurisdiction was conferred on him, with some reservation in favour of self-government by the settlers; and the title of Lord Baltimore, which he received at the same time, was an additional proof of the royal favour. In honour of the queen, Henrietta Maria, he bestowed on the region of his projected colony the name of Maryland. Before the final ratification of the charter, he died, but his rights were confirmed to his son Cecil, the second Lord Baltimore, who devoted himself with

much  
163  
hun  
Dov  
at I  
dial  
Mar  
In  
inha  
Yoa  
men  
and  
they  
itself  
vide  
with  
was  
years  
On  
tranq  
Willi  
Kent  
had e  
prop  
Desp  
gove  
an ap  
ation  
tenar  
Clay  
procc  
injur  
cerni  
rest  
Fe  
it dic  
simil  
to al  
prop  
sione

much energy to the completion of his father's plan. In November, 1633, he dispatched his brother, Leonard Calvert, with about two hundred emigrants, mostly Catholics, in two vessels, the Ark and Dove, to found the projected settlement. This company first touched at Point Comfort, in Virginia, where, though with no sincere cordiality, they were courteously received by the authorities; and in March of the following year, proceeded to the Potomac.

Intercourse, generally friendly, was established with the natives inhabiting its shores; and, on the St. Mary's, at an Indian town, called Yocomoco, (afterwards St. Mary's,) it was resolved to plant a settlement. The chief received the emigrants with extraordinary kindness and hospitality, and for hatchets, hoes, and other European articles, they obtained not only a large tract of land, but half of the village itself, with the corn growing adjacent, and were thus at once provided with comfortable shelter. This peaceful and friendly intercourse with the native inhabitants continued for nearly ten years, when it was interrupted by hostilities. These, after a continuance of two years, were ended by treaty, and a long interval of peace succeeded.

Only a few years after the establishment of the new colony, its tranquillity was disturbed by a species of civil warfare. Captain William Clayborne, who had planted a trading establishment on Kent Island, opposite to the settlements of Lord Baltimore, and who had expended large sums on the enterprise, was summoned by the proprietary to yield it up, as lying within the limits of his patent. Despite forcible remonstrance, both from Virginia and the English government, Baltimore resolved to enforce this obnoxious claim by an appeal to arms. After a number of hostile encounters, the plantation on the isle of Kent was carried by a night assault, and its tenants were made prisoners or put to flight. On the complaint of Clayborne, the king (July, 1638) strongly reprehended these violent proceedings, but, on account of the liberal political opinions of the injured party, the Commissioners of Plantations decided that, "concerning the violences and wrongs by the said Clayborne and the rest complained of, they found no cause at all to relieve them," &c.

Founded, as the new colony was, by a sect persecuted in England, it did not imitate the example of other settlements originating in a similar cause, but allowed free liberty of conscience and of worship to all, at least of the Christian faith. The overbearing claims of the proprietor to almost complete personal jurisdiction, however, occasioned much discontent and uneasiness; and, in 1645, excited an

actual insurrection, by which Calvert, the governor, was compelled to retreat into Virginia. The government of the proprietor, a year or two afterwards, was reinstated—an amnesty being granted for all political offences. In 1649, the year of the king's execution, the people, taking advantage of the success of the revolutionary party in England, wrung from Lord Baltimore an act by which some portion of legislative power was secured to their deputies.

To increase the population of his province, that nobleman now began to invite Protestant settlers, both from New England and Virginia. The former, strongly prejudiced, declined the invitation, but from the latter, on account of the arbitrary spirit of the authorities, great numbers migrated to Maryland. In 1649, the Catholic assembly, to their honour, passed a statute, explicitly declaring (what had always been matter of custom in the province) perfect freedom in matters of Christian faith. "Whereas the enforcing of the conscience in matters of religion," proclaims this liberal enactment, "hath frequently fallen out to be of dangerous consequence in those commonwealths where it has been practised, and for the more quiet and peaceable government of this province, and the better to preserve mutual love and amity among the inhabitants, no person within this province, professing to believe in Jesus Christ, shall be any ways troubled, molested, or discountenanced for his or her religion, in the free exercise thereof." The object sought in the explicit enactment of this statute was, doubtless, as well to attract and conciliate Protestant emigration, as for self-protection in event of the Catholics themselves falling into the minority.

AR  
OR  
V  
  
T  
wer  
oath  
ganc  
unsu  
subj  
obno  
ure  
to c  
imp  
ingl  
A  
parl  
both  
tran  
retar  
affar  
far  
of t  
redr  
all  
secr  
sent  
sion  
pro  
Sto  
of s  
thee

## CHAPTER II.

ARBITRARY SYSTEM OF LORD BALTIMORE.—DISAFFECTION OF THE PROTESTANT SETTLERS.—INTERFERENCE OF THE VIRGINIA COMMISSIONERS.—AFFAIRS IN ENGLAND.—TRIUMPH OF THE PROTESTANTS.—REPEAL OF TOLERATION.—CIVIL WAR.—VICTORY OF THE PROTESTANTS.—PENDALL'S INSURRECTION: HIS SUCCESS AND FINAL RUIN.—TOLERATION RESTORED.

THE Virginian settlers, imbued with a spirit of political liberty, were surprised and grieved, ere long, at being required to take an oath of allegiance to Lord Baltimore, couched in terms of such arrogance, as appeared to them "far too high for him, and strangely unsuitable to the present liberty which God hath given to English subjects." The proprietor sternly rejected any modification of the obnoxious form, and ordered Stone, his governor, to enforce forfeiture and banishment against all who should fail within three months to comply with his requisition. But that functionary thought it imprudent to carry out such an arbitrary ordinance, and, accordingly, deferred its execution.

A commission had been appointed to reduce Virginia under the parliamentary rule, and it so happened that Bennet and Clayborne, both at enmity with the proprietor, had the principal control of its transactions. The former being made governor, and the latter secretary of Virginia, they speedily found occasion to interfere in the affairs of Maryland. After considerable debate with Stone, they so far modified their demands as only to claim the nomination of most of the colonial officers. Baltimore, exceedingly indignant, sought redress from the revolutionary party, which he had endeavoured by all means to conciliate; and it is supposed that he obtained some secret promise of countenance from the Protector; for, in 1654, he sent word to his governor to resist the proceedings of the commission at all hazards, to displace their officers, and to expel from the province all who would not take the disputed oath of allegiance. Stone, accordingly, feeling confident, it would seem, in the support of some high authority, proceeded, with much impetuosity, to put these obnoxious instructions into force.

Three months of negotiation ensued, when the commission, resolving to carry matters with a high hand, set forth for Maryland, and issued a proclamation deposing him, and declaring Cromwell the head of the government. With a strong force of Protestants, they advanced against the governor, who, on his part, could gather but a comparatively small and timid levy of the opposite sect and faction. In despair of success, he resigned his authority into the hands of the two commissioners, who, thereupon, appointed ten others, to administer affairs in the several departments. By an edict, the same summer, they deprived the Catholics of their elective franchise; and the next assembly, strongly Protestant, repealed the act for universal toleration, so far as the obnoxious religion was concerned.

Though this bigoted act was not carried to the extreme of actual persecution, it naturally produced great resentment in the minds of the aggrieved sect. To be thus excluded, at least by the law, from the province they had founded, and to see their religion, a refuge for which had induced them to undertake their exile, proscribed by aliens, was more than human patience could endure. The Catholics and others attached to the house of Baltimore, rallied around the governor, and soon presented a formidable attitude. They seized on the public records at Patuxent, reduced a considerable tract of country to submission, and advanced upon the chief station of the Protestant party, at Providence, in Anne Arundel. Overawed at these formidable demonstrations, the latter made overtures of peace, and even of submission, but receiving no answer, resolved to fight the quarrel out. In March, 1655, the Catholic force, two hundred and fifty strong, sailed up the Severn and disembarked. Their enemies, less than half that number, made a desperate stand against them, and battle was joined with cries of "Hey for St. Mary!" and "God is our strength!" After a sharp but brief contest, victory fell to the weaker but more valiant party of Puritans; Stone, with his chief officers, being made captive, and all the rest of his force except five being killed or made prisoners. Baggage, artillery, and a store of beads and relics, and similar "trash wherein they trusted," also fell into the hands of the victors. The life of the defeated leader was hardly saved from the vengeance of his enemies, and four of the chief persons of his party were tried by a council of war, and were executed.

Not long after these events, Josias Fendall, an active partisan of the Baltimore faction, rallying the Catholics, raised a counter-insurrection, which was suppressed, not without difficulty. The proprie-

tary, pleased with his exertions, now appointed him governor, and he gained possession of the district of St. Mary's. By March, 1658, by his policy and address, he contrived to have the authority of Baltimore and of himself acknowledged throughout the province. Religious freedom, and the relinquishment of the obnoxious claims of the proprietary, were among the conditions on which this agreement was founded.

When, in March, 1660, tidings of the Restoration of Charles II., came to Maryland, the assembly, supposing that Baltimore, on account of his intrigues with the revolutionary party, would be a mark for the royal displeasure, hastily and prematurely disowned his authority, substituting their own, in the king's name. But the proprietor, easily making his peace at court, was fully reinstated in his privileges, and speedily sent out his brother, Philip Calvert, as governor. Fendall, who had been implicated in the proceedings of the assembly, was tried and convicted of high treason, but was suffered to escape with comparatively slight punishment. For a subsequent insurrectionary movement, he was fined, imprisoned, and banished from the colony.

The population of the province, at this time, (1660,) has been variously estimated at from eight to twelve thousand. The Quakers, who had experienced such persecution in other colonies (see New England, &c.) resorted there in considerable numbers, and were tolerated in the exercise of their worship.

# VIRGINIA, CONTINUED.

---

## CHAPTER I.

REIGN OF CHARLES I.: HIS VIEWS OF VIRGINIA — YEARDLEY,  
GOVERNOR: WEST: HARVEY: HIS DEPOSITION BY THE PEOPLE:  
HE IS SUPPORTED BY THE CROWN.—WYATT.—SIR WIL-  
LIAM BERKELEY, GOVERNOR.—LOYALTY OF THE COL-  
ONY.—PERSECUTION OF DISSENTERS.—SECOND INDIAN  
CONSPIRACY AND MASSACRE.—OPECHANNOUGH  
A PRISONER: HIS SPEECH: MURDERED BY A  
SOLDIER.—REDUCTION OF THE INDIANS.—  
TRIUMPH OF THE PURITANS IN ENGLAND.  
—ROYALIST EMIGRATION TO VIRGINIA.  
—LOYALTY OF THE PROVINCE.

THE main object of Charles I., from the time of his accession to the throne, in governing Virginia, seems to have been to derive as great a pecuniary profit from it as possible. Sufficiently arbitrary in his domestic policy, he probably regarded any republican spirit in this weak and distant colony as too inconsiderable to deserve his attention; while, continually seeking the means of supporting a government without the necessity of resorting to parliament for supplies, his only anxiety was to derive as large a revenue as possible from the importation of tobacco. When Wyatt, in 1626, returned to England, Sir George Yeardley, the author, as it were, of Virginia's political freedom, was appointed governor. Under his just and equal administration, the province prospered and increased greatly in numbers; as many as a thousand emigrants arriving in a single year. He died in 1627, leaving a high character, and a memory revered by the people. Francis West was elected his successor, as governor, by the council, which, in such case, was authorized to fill the vacancy. John Harvey, who, soon after, was

appo  
1626  
disc  
of go  
rema  
early  
TH  
ians  
own  
howe  
defea  
from  
the s  
peopl  
maril  
place,  
royal  
to ho  
Two  
turn a  
dial a  
in the  
the co  
To  
trium  
satisf  
lished  
instit  
—an  
banis  
copal  
Ho  
petty  
mem  
savag  
attac  
settle  
fell v  
menc  
in pu



appointed by the king to that office, and who arrived in Virginia in 1629, appears, by his system of favouritism, to have excited much discontent in the province, which, nevertheless, by its popular form of government, enjoyed a good share of prosperity and freedom. A remarkable order and steadiness seems to have characterized its early legislation.

The cession to Lord Baltimore of a large tract, which the Virginians had always been accustomed to consider as lying within their own jurisdiction, created no little alarm and uneasiness. Harvey, however, who was a strong partisan of the crown, when Clayborne, defeated and outlawed in Maryland, took refuge in Virginia, so far from taking advantage of the opportunity to exert an influence over the sister province, sent the fugitive a prisoner to England. The people, and the majority of the council, indignant at this act, summarily deposed the governor, appointing Captain John West in his place, till the king's pleasure could be known. Supported by the royal favour, however, he reassumed his office, which he continued to hold until 1639, when he was replaced by Sir Francis Wyatt. Two years afterwards, (February, 1642,) Sir William Berkeley, in turn appointed to that office, arrived in Virginia, where, by his cordial agreement with the legislature, many improvements were made in the civil code, and important acts were passed for the benefit of the colony.

To a province like Virginia, alike prosperous and loyal, the triumph of the popular and Puritan party in England brought no satisfaction. On the contrary, to mark its attachment to the established church, the colonial government even went to the length of instituting a religious persecution (the first in Virginia) in its behalf—an especial order being issued in 1643, by the council, for the banishment of non-conformists, and the silencing of all except Episcopal preaching.

Hostility with the Indians, long confined to sudden forays and petty skirmishes, in the next year ripened to a general war. Remembering the sanguinary success of their former attempt, the savages, with profound secrecy, again concerted a simultaneous attack on the intruders. On the 18th of April, 1644, the frontier settlements were assaulted, and some three hundred of the colonists fell victims; but the assailants, losing heart, their design only commenced, returned to the forests, where their enemies were not long in pursuing them. In this war, Opechancanough, so long the terror

of the whites, was made prisoner. He was now in extreme old age, being unable to raise his eyelids, which, when he desired to see, were opened by his attendants. Being brought before the governor, a spectacle for the eager curiosity of the crowd, he said, haughtily, "Had Sir William Berkeley fallen into my hands, I would not have exposed him thus to the gaze of my people." A ruffianly soldier, to avenge, it is said, some former grievance, extinguished, by a cowardly murder, the feeble spark of life yet lingering in his frame. These successes were followed up with much vigour, repeated incursions being made against the Indians; and, in 1646, peace was concluded with Necotowance, their chief, (the successor of Opechancanough,) on terms of submission and cession of territory.

This difficulty, (the last with the natives in their immediate vicinity,) thus overcome, the Virginian settlements continued to increase and prosper. In the winter of 1648, more than thirty vessels, at one time, were trading in their ports. The number of colonists had risen to twenty thousand; and the triumph of the Puritans in England, compelling the opposite party to exile, brought about an emigration of numerous loyalists and cavaliers, some of them men of distinction. The loyalty of the province, confirmed by this means, stood firm for the House of Stuart. Immediately after the execution of Charles, the government of Virginia had recognized his son, and the latter, from his retreat in Berda, had sent to Berkeley a new commission; and that officer, in 1651, wrote to the king, with ardent expressions of attachment and fidelity, and even hinting the advisability of his taking refuge in his American colonies. It was deemed possible, by the over-sanguine cavaliers, that this little province, the last to submit to the commonwealth, might make a successful stand for royalty against the entire power of England.

...me old age,  
...sired to see,  
...he governor,  
...d, haughtily,  
...uld not have  
...ianly soldier,  
...ed, by a cow-  
...in his frame.  
...peated incur-  
...6, peace was  
...r of Opechan-  
...ory.  
...mediate vicin-  
...ed to increase  
...ty vessels, at  
...olonists had  
...Puritans in  
...ght about an  
...of them men  
...by this means,  
...er the execu-  
...nized his son,  
...erkeley a new  
...g, with ardent  
...ng the advisa-  
...t was deemed  
...ttle province,  
...ke a successful



of the soldier, was made prisoner. He was now in extreme old age, being unable to raise his eyelids, which, when he desired to see, were opened by his attendants. Being brought before the governor, desirous for the eager curiosity of the crowd, he said, haughtily, "That Sir William Berkeley fallen into my hands, I would not have exposed him thus to the gaze of my people." A ruffianly soldier, in revenge, it is said, some former grievance, extinguished, by a cowardly murder, the feeble spark of life yet lingering in his frame. These successes were followed up with much vigour, repeated incursions being made against the Indians; and, in 1616, peace was concluded with Neôtowance, their chief, (the successor of Opechanough) on terms of submission and cession of territory.

This difficulty, (the last with the natives in their immediate vicinity,) thus overcome, the Virginian settlements continued to increase and prosper. In the winter of 1648, more than thirty vessels, at one time, were trading in their ports. The number of colonists had risen to twenty thousand; and the triumph of the Puritans in England, compelling the opposite party to exile, brought about an emigration of numerous loyalists and cavaliers, some of them men of distinction. The loyalty of the province, confirmed by this means, stood firm for the House of Stuart. Immediately after the execution of Charles, the government of Virginia had recognized his son, and the latter, from his retreat in Berds, had sent to Berkeley a new commission; and that officer, in 1651, wrote to the king, with ardent expressions of attachment and fidelity, and even hinting the advisability of his taking refuge in his American colonies. It was deemed possible, by the over-sanguine cavaliers, that this little province, the last to submit to the commonwealth, might make a successful stand for royalty against the entire power of England.

me old age,  
red to see,  
e governor,  
haughtily,  
ld not have  
anly soldier,  
l, by a cow-  
h his frame.  
eated incur-  
peace was  
of Opechan-  
ry.  
mediate vicin-  
d to increase  
y vessels, at  
colonists had  
Puritans  
ght about at  
of them men  
y this means,  
er the execu-  
nized his son,  
erkeley a new  
g, with ardent  
g the advisa-  
t was deemed  
ttle province,  
e a successful



ACT  
AC  
T.

Th  
its at  
state  
Act,  
with  
on b  
which  
the n  
and l  
reduc  
use a  
libert  
Virg  
dethr  
the n  
thoug  
privi  
but s  
assen  
Richa  
office  
receiv  
durin  
cised  
In  
who

## CHAPTER II.

ACT FOR THE REDUCTION OF VIRGINIA.—THE NAVIGATION ACT.—MODERATION OF THE PARLIAMENT.—SUBMISSION OF THE PROVINCE.—BENNETT, GOVERNOR: DIGGS: MATHEWS.—JEALOUSY OF THE ASSEMBLY AGAINST FOREIGN INTERFERENCE.—FREEDOM AND PROSPERITY OF VIRGINIA UNDER THE COMMONWEALTH.—DEATH OF CROMWELL.—BERKELEY, GOVERNOR.—RESTORATION OF CHARLES II.—ITS ILL EFFECT ON THE PROVINCE.

THE Parliament, triumphant over its enemies at home, at last turned its attention to the refractory province of Virginia. The council of state was empowered to reduce it to obedience; and the "Navigation Act," passed in 1651, deprived it, nominally, at least, in common with the other English colonies, of foreign trade, except that carried on by English vessels. Considering the bold front of opposition which Virginia had exhibited to the popular government of England, the measures adopted were characterized by singular moderation and leniency. Two of the three commissioners, appointed for the reduction of the province, were Virginians; and they had charge to use all mild and persuasive means before resorting to force. The liberties of the colony were amply secured, in case of peace, and the Virginians, not feeling called on to contend for the claims of a dethroned monarch to the extreme of actual resistance, on learning the moderate nature of the parliamentary commission, laid aside all thought of resistance. Full power of self-government, and equal privileges with Englishmen at home, were provided for the colony; but the influence of the dominant party, and the submission or assent of the colonists, were sufficiently evinced in the election of Richard Bennett, a strong revolutionist, by the burgesses, to the office of governor. On his retirement, in 1655, Edward Diggs received the same office at the hands of the assembly—Cromwell, during his tenure of power, never interfering with the right exercised by the Virginians of choosing their own officers.

In 1658, an old planter, named Samuel Mathews, described as one who "kept a good house, lived bravely, and was a true lover of

Virginia," was chosen to the same post. Becoming, ere long, involved in a dispute with the assembly, he announced his intention of referring the matters in issue to the decision of the Protector. Alarmed at the prospect of dependence on a foreign authority, that body proceeded to make a bold and startling declaration of the popular sovereignty, and actually deposed Mathews, whom they had lately elected. Having thus vindicated their dignity, they forthwith reinstated him in office, while he submitted to their requirements with a readiness which sufficiently shows that, whatever the temporary disagreement, no serious ill-feeling had existed between the executive and legislative powers. The spirit of public liberty, by this bold demonstration, gained a great accession of strength and firmness.

On the death of the Protector, the assembly of burgesses, after private deliberation, resolved to acknowledge his son, Richard Cromwell, as the head of the English government; and when, by his resignation and the death of their governor, (1660,) the destinies of Virginia seemed fallen entirely in their hands, they resolved that the supreme power should be lodged in their own body, and that all writs should issue in its name, "until there shall arrive from England a commission, which the assembly itself shall judge to be lawful." The prospect of the Restoration was hailed with joy by Virginia, and the election of Sir William Berkeley to the office of governor, was an earnest of its renewed loyalty. That faithful adherent to the House of Stuart, in accepting the office, however, expressly acknowledged the authority of the assembly, of which, he said, he was but a servant, and waited eagerly for news of the reerection of the monarchy.

During the civil wars, the parliamentary government, and the Protectorate, Virginia had been steadily gaining, by precedent, fortifications to her system of self-government. Commerce was free, (for the Navigation Act soon became a dead letter,) and religious toleration (except to the Quakers, a sect at that time almost universally proscribed) was fully established. Universal suffrage of freemen prevailed, and in consequence of the fertility of the soil, and the high price commanded by the staple production, tobacco, remarkable prosperity prevailed. These advantages, unalloyed by any act of oppression by the home government, had rendered the province one of the most desirable places of residence in America.

The elevation of Charles II. to the throne of his fathers, marked by



the northern colonies with such gloomy forebodings, was received with exultation by Virginia. Berkeley at once reassumed his official functions, under the royal authority, and, in the king's name, summoned an assembly, which, from its loyalist composition, clearly indicated the prevalent sympathy of the colony. With strange indifference to the blessings the country had enjoyed under self-government, the dominant party at once proceeded to pass acts of an arbitrary and intolerant nature. Suffrage was restricted to freeholders and householders, the English Church was exclusively reestablished, and the persecution of dissenters, which had before compelled them to seek refuge in other colonies, was renewed. The assembly, like the Long Parliament, made its sitting, in a manner, perpetual, the members retaining their seats for more than ten years, and, finally, dissolving only when compelled by necessity. The restoration of arbitrary power was systematically pursued.

The reërection of the monarchy, to which Virginia had looked with such sanguine hope, was presently the means of inflicting great evil on the colony. The provisions of the Navigation Act, restricting all commerce to the parent-country, had been evaded or disregarded at an early day by the American provinces, and had latterly fallen into complete disuse. This obnoxious statute was now reenacted with increased strictness, and enforced with practical rigour—the influence of the London merchants, who derived great profits from the monopoly, proving sufficient to outweigh all the complaints and remonstrances of the colonists. In vain did Berkeley, deputed by the Virginians, repair to court, and urge on the ear of the king, with all the influence which his ancient loyalty could command, the disastrous effects produced on the province by this arbitrary restriction of its growing intercourse with European nations, and complain that the disloyal colonies of New England were suffered to set the act in question at nought, while the faithful province of Virginia was forced to a strict compliance. His remonstrances availed nothing, and thus the first fruit which Virginia reaped from the Restoration, long cherished with such ardent expectation, was the infliction of a monopoly calculated greatly to retard her progress and impair her prosperity.

# NEW ENGLAND,

CONTINUED.

---

## CHAPTER I.

INIMICAL MEASURES ADOPTED IN ENGLAND.—SPIRIT OF MASSACHUSETTS: THREAT OF REVOLT.—THE ENGLISH REVOLUTION.—INDUSTRY AND PROSPERITY OF NEW ENGLAND: ITS INDEPENDENCE.—NEW HAMPSHIRE ANNEXED TO MASSACHUSETTS.—FORMATION OF THE NEW ENGLAND CONFEDERACY.

THE first blow aimed by the English crown at the growing spirit of mingled freedom and intolerance in New England, was the appointment of a commission, consisting of the Archbishop of Canterbury and others, with full power to establish a government there, both ecclesiastical and civil, and to revoke any charter, the provisions of which might seem to infringe on the royal prerogative. (April, 1634.) The news of this invidious ordinance awakened universal alarm and indignation. A general spirit of resistance was evinced, and hasty provision was made for the fortification and defence of Massachusetts. All the clergy of the province, assembled at Boston, unanimously agreed to resist the imposition of a foreign governor. "We ought," they declared, "to defend our lawful possessions, if we are able; if not, to avoid and protract." A fresh intrigue, directed against the peace of the new commonwealth, was that of the Plymouth Company, which surrendered its charter into the king's hands, its members hoping to obtain extensive private grants, and using all their influence to get that of the Massachusetts Company revoked. Legal proceedings were commenced against the latter, but the death of Mason, the patentee of New Hampshire, and the prime mover of these inimical proceedings, prevented them from being carried to the extreme.

The council, in 1638, demanded of Winthrop, that the patent should be given up; but the authorities, in reply, urged strong demonstrations against the projected arbitrary enforcement. It was backed, indeed, by a judgment from the Court of King's Bench, but such judgment had been obtained by the intrigues of their enemies, and doubtless owed its origin to royal dictation or influence. They concluded their reply with an implied threat of independence in case matters were forced to an extremity. "If the patent be taken from us," they declare, "*the common people* will conceive that his majesty hath cast them off, and that hereby they are freed from their subjection and allegiance, and therefore will be ready to confederate themselves under a new government, for their necessary safety and subsistence, which will be of dangerous example unto other plantations, and perilous to ourselves, of incurring his majesty's displeasure." This covert menace of revolution, it may be imagined, was encouraged by the growing power and influence of the Puritan party in England, where, indeed, the authority of the sovereign was already beginning to find sufficient employment in suppressing the popular movement, without crossing the ocean to seek a sparsely-peopled wilderness. In fact, numbers, who, in the day of persecution, had sought refuge in America, now hastened back to England to take their share in the extraordinary events which were there beginning to transpire. "By the year 1640, the tide of emigration, which, for many years, had flowed steadily to New England, gradually ceased. The ascendancy of the Puritan party in England soon removed the grievous wrongs and disabilities under which that numerous body had once laboured, and the temptation to share the success of the triumphant faction at home was greater than that to retreat into the wilderness which had been its refuge when weak and persecuted by its destined victims."

More than twenty thousand emigrants, however, before the year 1640, had arrived in New England, and by their extraordinary industry and enterprise, prosperity and comfort had been developed to a degree which, considering the asperity of the climate and country, seemed hardly possible. Little more than ten years had elapsed since the foundation of the Massachusetts colony, yet in that interval, says Mr. Bancroft, fifty towns and villages had been planted, and nearly as many churches had been built; and foreign commerce, in furs, timber, grain, and fish, had already been established on a permanent base. Nay, the manufacture of cotton

—SPIRIT OF  
ENGLISH  
OF NEW  
SHIRE  
TION  
Y.

growing spirit  
land, was the  
bishop of Can-  
ernment there,  
the provisions  
ative. (April,  
enced universal  
be was evinced,  
and defence of  
bled at Boston,  
eign governor.  
sessions, if we  
trigue, directed  
hat of the Ply-  
nto the king's  
ate grants, and  
assets Company  
inst the latter,  
pshire, and the  
ted them from

(the staple being supplied from Barbadoes) had already made a commencement.

As a matter of course, the Long Parliament, the Puritan and revolutionary element of which was so greatly in the ascendant, looked with warm sympathy to the New England colonists; but the latter seem to have avoided, at first, any decided commitment of themselves either to the political or ecclesiastical strife which at this time raged in England. From this distracted condition of the mother-country, and the favour of the dominant party, they came to possess, what they enjoyed for nearly twenty years, the blessings of actual independence and self-government. This, however, must be understood in the restricted sense of partial suffrage, and of the entirely preponderate influence of "the church" over that of "the people." The most important political event of 1642, was the annexation to the jurisdiction of Massachusetts of the neighbouring settlements of New Hampshire, which, it was claimed, fell within the patent of the former, and the inhabitants of which, by their own action, confirmed the claim, and were admitted, on equal terms with the Massachusetts people, as an integral portion of that province.

As early as 1637, immediately after the dangers of the Pequot war had shown the necessity of union, a confederacy of the New England colonies had been proposed, and in the following year had again been discussed, but on account of the jealousy of Connecticut, had been deferred. The latter province, however, wishing assistance against the encroachments of the Dutch, at length renewed the negotiation; and in 1643, the states of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven, formed a union for mutual aid and protection—"the first germ of that mighty confederacy which now numbers more millions than its original did thousands, and which, from a bleak corner of New England, has extended, for twenty degrees of latitude, over the thousand leagues of mountain, forest, and prairie, that divide the two oceans."

The chief objects of this alliance were protection against hostile savages, resistance to Dutch and French encroachment, and the fortification of the degree of civil and religious liberty which the several colonies had obtained or permitted. Two commissioners from each colony (none but church members being eligible to the office) were to manage the affairs of the federal government, and to have the control of peace and war, of making public improvements, and, generally, of any matters which might properly pertain to the

government of a confederation. These powers, apparently so extensive, were held in check by the dependence of this central authority on the separate states for the means of carrying its enactments into effect. Neither the people of New Hampshire, nor those of Rhode Island or of Providence Plantations, although they desired it, were admitted to this league, which, indeed, was doubtless more harmonious than it could have been, had opinions more liberal in politics, or more tolerant in religion, been permitted to mingle in its councils.

---

## CHAPTER II.

UNCAS AND MIANTONIMO.—DEFEAT AND DEATH OF THE LATTER  
—DISCREDIT TO THE ENGLISH.—RHODE ISLAND: ITS LIBERTIES  
GUARANTEED BY THE PARLIAMENT.—LETTER TO SIR  
HENRY VANE.—REMARKABLE FREEDOM ENJOYED THERE.  
—MAINE ANNEXED BY MASSACHUSETTS.

A TRAGEDY, purely native in its origin and execution, but in which the English authorities contrived to play a very discreditable part, was enacted in 1643. Miantonimo, the Narragansett sachem, accused by Uncas, the Mohegan, of hostility to the colonies, had been compelled to appear in an ignominious manner at Boston, and had met with much humiliation at the hands of the English. To revenge himself on his accuser, despite a peace, guaranteed by the latter, with a thousand warriors he attacked the hostile tribe. Defeated by the superior strategy of his rival, and taken prisoner, he was conducted to Hartford, where Uncas, with a moderation which might seem surprising, but for the result which he probably considered as certain, referred the destiny of his captive to the Commissioners of the Confederacy. These, acting under advice and counsel of the clergy, so far from interposing in behalf of mercy, and actuated, doubtless, by jealousy of the tribe of the defeated chief, decided that he might lawfully be put to death, and delivered him into the hands of the victor. The latter, with his brother, Wawequa, and other Indians, and accompanied by two white men, led his prisoner along a solitary pathway, in which, at a silent signal from Uncas, Wawequa, stepping up behind, sunk his tomahawk in the brain of

the victim. The revengeful chief, it is said, cut a morsel of flesh from the shoulder of his enemy, and ate it, saying that it was "the sweetest meat he ever eat; it made his heart strong." The tribe of the fallen chief, who were warmly attached to him, lamented deeply over his unhappy fate, and complained with bitterness that large quantities of wampum, which they had sent to the Mohegans as a ransom for his life, had been retained, while the life of their leader, which it should have purchased, was treacherously taken. His brother, Pessacus, who succeeded to the command, took signal revenge on the enemy, and, but for the interposition of the English, would doubtless have inflicted on Uncas the same fate as that which the latter had wreaked on the chief of the Narragansetts.

While the other New England provinces, secure in union, and holding their political existence and possession of their territories either by royal charter, or purchase from the original grantees, presented an almost unassailable front to foreign interference, Rhode Island, whose only tenure of possession was that derived from the native chieftains, had cause alike to dread the ambition and encroachment of her powerful neighbours, and acts of usurpation on the part of the government at home. To place on a more secure basis the state he had founded, Williams, in 1643, sailed for England, and pleaded the cause of freedom before the parliamentary authorities. By the influence of Sir Henry Vane, who was now a member of the council for the government of America, and by the reputation which his own exertions had already acquired for him, a charter, insuring extraordinary freedom of civil government, was granted to Rhode Island by the parliament. On his return, he was welcomed with enthusiastic gratitude by the citizens, and the people of Providence, in an eloquent letter of thanks to Sir Henry Vane, expressed their acknowledgment of his continual kindness and protection. "From the first beginning," declares this admirably-written document, "you have been a noble and true friend to an outcast and despised people; we have ever reaped the sweet fruits of your constant loving kindness and favor. We have long been free from the iron yoke of wolfish bishops; we have sitted dry from the streams of blood, spilt by the wars in our native country. We have not felt the new chains of the presbyterian tyrants, nor in this colony have we been consumed by the over-zealous fire of the (so called) godly Christian magistrates. We have not known what an excise means; we have almost forgotten what tithes are. We have long

drank of the cup of as great liberties as any people that we can hear of, under the whole heaven. When we are gone, our posterity and children after us shall read in our town records your loving kindness to us, and our real endeavor after peace and righteousness." A more honourable testimonial, or one more gratifying to a pure and benevolent mind, has seldom been offered by a state to its benefactor.

The good people of Rhode Island, in possession of their coveted privileges, did not abuse them. Our liberty, they had boasted, shall not degenerate into an anarchy. Nor was this an idle vaunt. Although a very great diversity of creeds, some wild and fanatical enough, it is said, had taken refuge in the asylum from American persecution, and, though perfect freedom of debate prevailed, and was sometimes exercised stormily enough, the legislation of the little state was characterized by singular good sense and impartiality. Williams, who made another voyage to England to repel a menaced assault on its franchises, ever fostered the popular spirit, and despite the earnest wishes of the assembly, refused to obtain or accept from the English authorities the appointment of himself as governor—his wise prescience dreading any unnecessary commitment of the affairs of the state to a foreign, even though a friendly power.

In Maine, disputes arising between the agents of rival patentees, and no settlement of the question being issued from England, the inhabitants of several towns, by their own action, erected an independent government, and Massachusetts, ever willing to extend its influence, whether by force or invitation, over its neighbours, decided that the territory in question came within her own jurisdiction. Commissioners were dispatched there, and the whole country was speedily, with the consent of its inhabitants, brought under the government of the more powerful province. This summary change, however, appears to have been generally satisfactory to the residents.

rael of flesh  
it was "the  
The tribe of  
ented deeply  
as that large  
ohigans as a  
their leader,  
taken. His  
took signal  
of the English,  
as that which  
ts.  
in union, and  
eir territories  
grantees, pre-  
ference, Rhode  
ived from the  
ition and en-  
usurpation on  
a more secure  
ailed for Eng-  
parliamentary  
ho was now a  
ica, and by the  
ired for him, a  
overnment, was  
return, he was  
and the people  
ir Henry Vano,  
ndness and pro-  
mimably-written  
d to an outcast  
et fruits of your  
g been free from  
n dry from the  
ntry. We have  
nor in this colony  
of the (so called)  
n what an excise  
We have long

## CHAPTER III.

OPPOSITION TO THE MASSACHUSETTS AUTHORITIES.—PARLIAMENTARY ENCROACHMENT RESISTED AND RELINQUISHED.—NEW ENGLAND FAVOURED BY CROMWELL.—BIGOTED AND INTOLERANT LAWS OF MASSACHUSETTS.—PERSECUTION OF BAPTISTS.—THE QUAKERS: PERSECUTION OF THEM: FOUR EXECUTED: THEIR COURAGE AND FORTITUDE.—APOLOGISTS FOR THE HANGINGS.—REFLECTIONS.

THE authorities of Massachusetts, in close league with the clergy, the elders, and the more intolerant church party, were not long in awaking a spirit of opposition among the partisans of a more liberal and tolerant policy. At an early day, indeed, that party had shown much jealousy of any thing like a prescriptive government or dictation in elections, and when it had been proposed that the office of governor should be held for life, it was forthwith resolved by the deputies, that no magisterial office should be held for more than a year. A direct collision between the two parties had occurred in 1645, on a question of small moment in itself, but involving the legal extent of the authority of the magistrates. A small majority of the deputies to the general court held that, from the assumption of power by these authorities, the liberty of the people was in danger; the rest, and, of course, nearly all the magistrates themselves, resolved that "authority was overmuch slighted," and that there was danger of "a mere democracy." The popular party, by the enactment of a law on the point in question, obtained a nominal triumph, but the magistrates, the governor (Winthrop) and the clergy retained their ascendancy in the government, and circumstances favouring their purpose, were even enabled to extend their actual power.

In November, 1646, at an assembly of the general court of Massachusetts, a firm stand was made by the government of that colony against threatened encroachments by the parliament on its independence. A vehement and eloquent remonstrance was forwarded to England, where Winslow, their agent, and Sir Henry Vane, who, despite some unkind usage, was still a fast friend of the liberty of the colonies, exerted all their influence against the anticipated dan-



ger. The parliament, possessed of the true circumstances, confirmed their liberties and refused to listen to appeals from their justice. When, a few years afterwards, the supreme power became vested in Cromwell, as Protector, that great man, with a natural sympathy both for their virtues and their errors, looked with uncommon favour on the rugged colonists of New England. He favoured their commerce, allowed them full independence of self-government, and was even willing to extend their political power by a gift of the rich island of Jamaica, which had been wrested by him from the Spaniards. The Protectorate, without doubt, was the golden age of New England liberty.

The Massachusetts authorities, hardened by their triumph over the popular party, and provoked by opposition, ere long, by their sanguinary persecutions, inflicted on New England the darkest stain which her character had ever sustained. Sharp laws against both infidelity and heresy were enacted—the penalty of death being denounced against such as should deny the infallibility of any part of the Bible—anabaptism being made a penal offence—and absence from meeting being punishable by fine.

Had the whole community been entirely united in opinion, these bigoted laws might have remained simply an expression of the intolerance of those who contrived them. But a strong party in favour of full liberty of conscience already existed in New England, and in Plymouth, the proposition was even made for toleration to all, "without exception against Turk, Jew, Papist, Arian," &c., &c. The opponents of this plan contrived, by protracting, to defeat it; but it was evidently popular with the citizens, for, writes Winslow to Winthrop, "You would have admired to see how sweet this carion relished to the palate of most of them."—(Bancroft.)

The magistrates, the elders, the clergy, and the church generally, it would seem, were of opinion, that the sharp arm of the law should be used to restrain all dissent from their own views. Clarke, of Rhode Island, a Baptist, having attempted to preach at Lynn, was seized, and compelled to attend the Congregational meeting, where, says Mr. Bancroft, "he expressed his aversion by a harmless indecorum, which yet would have been without excuse, had his presence been voluntary." Heavy fines and severe whippings were used to repress the spread of the dreaded heresy. (1651.)

An obstacle to conformity far more formidable, and one irrepressible by persecution, was soon found in the fanatical courage of the

then rapidly increasing sect of Quakers—a sect, in external demeanour and popular consideration, almost the reverse of that which bears the title in our own day. An enthusiastic and purely self-abnegating zeal for their faith, caused them voluntarily and gratuitously to expose themselves to the extremest dangers of persecution; and at the time we write of, they were pretty generally proscribed throughout the Christian world. Two women of this persuasion, arriving at Boston in 1656, were seized at once, kept in close confinement for five weeks, and then, their books having been burned by the hangman, were expelled from the province. One of them, Mary Fisher, soon after, set forth alone to deliver a message to the Great Turk, an errand which she actually performed at Adrianople—the sanctity attached to her supposed insanity, protecting her from any wrong or insult. Many others of the obnoxious sect were sent back to England, or otherwise banished; and when, the next year, some of them returned, imprisonment and whipping were freely resorted to. Fines were imposed upon any who should attend the Quaker meetings or entertain any of the Quakers; and loss of ears and boring the tongue with a hot iron were provided for the obstinate.

As a natural consequence, a people so fearless, and even so enamoured, as it were, of persecution, soon flocked in numbers to Massachusetts; and the general court of that province, with a rash and cruel persistence in their policy of exclusion, enacted that death should be the penalty of returning from banishment. This sanguinary decree, precipitated by the turbulent and eccentric demeanour of some of the proscribed zealots, was, in 1659, carried into execution on the persons of Mary Dyer, who had returned, and of Stephenson and Robinson, who had come, as voluntary martyrs, to shame, with their blood, the cruelty of the authorities. At the place of execution the woman was reprieved, but answered with spirit, "Let me perish with my brethren, unless you will annul your wicked law." She was sent out of the colony, but, returning, also perished by the hands of the hangman. William Leddra, who was offered his life, on condition of promising to keep away, refused the proffer, and was also hanged. At the very time of his trial, Christison, also banished on pain of death, boldly returned, and entered the court; he was adjudged to die, but told his persecutors, truly enough, that for every one they hanged, five more would come to glut them with bloodshed.

Awed, it would seem, by the determination of the sufferers, and

yielding to popular opinion, which was shocked at these cruelties, the magistrates finally paused in their sanguinary career. The life of Christison was spared, and he, with many others, was released from prison. A royal order, not long after, prohibited the repetition of these extreme atrocities, though the minor devices of persecution were still freely resorted to.

It is extraordinary what pains have been taken by many of our writers to clear the skirts of their ancestors of the stain attaching to the most undeniable persecution on record. "It was in self-defence," thus the ablest and most accurate of American historians commences an elaborate apology for these transactions, "that Puritanism in America began those transient persecutions of which the excesses shall find in me no apologist." Not to dwell on the several inconsistencies, and even the contradictions in terms involved in this affirmation, it may be said confidently, that such a plea could be admissible, even on the odious ground of necessity, only where *some* natural right of the oppressors was in danger of infringement. Though the Quakers, or some of them, indeed railed at the worship of the Puritans, and even denied their right to self-government, surely it cannot be pretended that the principle of freedom was in any way endangered by the mere denunciation of a feeble few, then almost universally proscribed, and utterly destitute of political influence. But the argument evidently is, that, by retiring from the rest of the civilized world, and erecting a commonwealth by themselves, the Puritans had acquired a species of claim, if opposed, to infringe the natural right of others; that, having established a certain order of things, they were entitled to use, or, at least, were excusable in using, for its maintainance, means at which the natural sense of right in man revolts.

It has been as sedulously attempted to shift the blame from the shoulders of the persecutors to those of their victims. "But for them," (the Quakers,) says the same authority, "the country had been guiltless of blood!" The same may be said of the sufferers under any martyrdom, nay, under any crime or oppression. But for Prynne and his fellows, the mutilators of Charles would have had a sinecure; but for Servetus, the black cloak of Geneva might have remained uncrimsoned with the smoking blood of *vivo-cremation*; but for Joan Boucher, the memory of Cranmer had descended to us that of a martyr only, and not a relentless woman-burner; but for Cranmer himself, Rome had been spared her archest deed of

combined treachery and cruelty. No persecution, of course, can exist without its legitimate prey. That prey is, almost invariably, a small, but brave and stubborn minority, which, by its unbending opposition, inflames to madness the pride, the self-will, the passion of long-accustomed power. But methinks it rather hard that those who bravely surrendered their lives, in defiance of a wicked law, should have the dishonour of the transaction laid at their door, and be accused, at this day, of shaming with their blood the posterity of their murderers.

Nor is it fair to assume that the Quakers used any greater measure of provocation to their oppressors than has often been customary even with the most undeniable martyrs. The spirit of man, when sought to be crushed by superior physical power, will at least assert itself in bold and defiant words; and whatever the extravagances committed by some wrong-headed zealots among them, the demeanour of the victims, at least on their trial, seems to have been characterized by remarkable dignity and decency. The plain fact—so plain that its assertion is almost superfluous—seems to be, that the early rulers of Massachusetts were men of extraordinary force of character, bigoted, self-willed, and unusually disposed to tyrannize. They had resolved *to have their own way*, at whatever cost, even to the shedding of blood. The people against whom their cruel and tyrannical laws were directed, were few in number, but possessed by a spirit of daring, enthusiasm, and stubbornness, such as the world has seldom witnessed. They resolved that these sanguinary statutes, whose existence proclaimed them felons, by the very shame and horror of their execution should be annulled; and in laying down their lives in accomplishment of this purpose, they certainly earned as fairly the crown of martyrdom as any of the multitudes who, for conscience, for independence, for fame, or for salvation, had trodden the same thorny path before them.

EDD  
ST  
C

W  
catio  
was  
read  
succe  
Mass  
libran  
which  
extra  
and r  
of the  
enjoy  
The  
signal  
over  
suffere  
The  
its ori  
acted,  
secure  
in the  
tion o  
other  
the in  
Englis  
interc  
dened  
of art  
foreign  
bidden

## CHAPTER IV.

EDUCATION IN MASSACHUSETTS.—HARVARD COLLEGE.—RESTORATION OF CHARLES II.—OPPRESSIVE ENACTMENTS CONCERNING COMMERCE.—ATTITUDE OF THE COLONIES.—WINTHROP, THE YOUNGER.—CONNECTICUT OBTAINS A CHARTER: HER FREEDOM AND PROSPERITY.

WITH our forefathers, in nearly all the New England states, education, from the first, was a subject of solicitous care. Provision was made that all children in Massachusetts should at least learn to read and write, and schools of a higher character were not long in succeeding. Only a few years after the arrival of the Puritans in Massachusetts, John Harvard, dying there, by the bequest of his library and of half his estate, founded that admirable university which still commemorates his name, and which has exercised such extraordinary influence, from the first, in promoting the intelligence and refining the manners of New England. Fostered by the care of the state, and at times assisted by the neighbouring provinces, it enjoyed a continually increasing prosperity and usefulness.

The restoration of Charles II. to the throne of England was the signal for a renewal of those more obnoxious claims of sovereignty over the American colonies, which had either been relinquished or suffered to fall into disuse by the government of the commonwealth. The Navigation Act (the child of that government indeed, but, in its original, not designed rigidly to fetter their commerce) was reenacted, with new and oppressive provisions; a monopoly being secured to English merchants, English ships, and English navigators, in the entire foreign intercourse of those provinces. The exportation of a long list of articles, including tobacco, sugar, cotton, and other produce, was prohibited excepting to England; and ere long the importation of any European goods, except those supplied by English merchants, was in like manner made illegal. Commercial intercourse between the northern and southern colonies was burdened with oppressive duties; and, by degrees, the very manufacture of articles which might compete with that of the home country in foreign trade, or even in furnishing their own supplies, was also forbidden. Such was the oppressive system, the commencement of

which signalized to the colonists the restoration of English monarchy, and which, finally pursued to an extreme incompatible with their growing strength and spirit of independence, resulted in the loss to England of the most splendid provinces ever founded by the enterprise of her sons, or reared into greatness by their genius and industry.

While Massachusetts, both its political and moral prepossessions shocked by the prospect of the elevation of a character like that of the new king to the sovereignty of England, waited, with a species of sullen expectancy, the event of the change, and even meditated opposition, in case a royal governor should be sent to rule over it; the other New England colonies, weaker in numbers, and less determined in spirit, proclaimed the new sovereign with alacrity, and hastened to conciliate his favour. Winthrop the younger, a man of high character, and of most engaging address, was dispatched to London on the part of Connecticut, to obtain from the king a patent of that province for the hardy adventurers who, as yet, held it only by native conquest and purchase, and by the assignment of the representatives of the Earl of Warwick. Aided by some court influence, this emissary obtained an audience with Charles, who was so agreeably impressed with his character and demeanour, that he granted an ample charter to the petitioners. Hartford and New Haven were connected in one colony, and this vast patent extended westward across the entire continent, including in its limits the already numerous and prosperous settlements of the Dutch on the banks of the Hudson. By the same liberal instrument, complete independence, excepting the reservation of allegiance to the crown, was secured to the colonists. All power, both civil and criminal, judicial and executive, elective and legislative, was lodged in their own hands—a constitution more completely independent in effect, could hardly have been framed by the most ardent lover of liberty. Winthrop, after this successful result of his mission, returned to the province, where, in gratitude for his services, the office of chief magistrate, for fourteen years, by annual election, was conferred on him. Under these favourable auspices, the colony of Connecticut commenced a career of continual increase, of rational prosperity, and of tranquil happiness. The care for popular education, which has always characterized her legislation, was manifested at an early day. Common schools always existed, and the higher wants of the intellect, by the beginning of the next century, were provided for in the

foundation of an institution, the modesty and humbleness of whose origin contrast strongly with the strength and prosperity of its subsequent career—the college of Yale.

New England, said Mr. Webster, contained in its system three institutions which alone would have sufficed to make it free—the Town Meeting, the Congregational Church, and the Common School—institutions which still flourish in a nearer approach to perfection, the independent form of church government being confined to no shade of belief, in its privileges or its support. The peace and prosperity of Connecticut, founded on domestic harmony and freedom from foreign interference, remained for a century, uninterrupted by any serious disturbance.

---

## CHAPTER V.

THE CHARTER OF RHODE ISLAND.—CIVIL AND RELIGIOUS LIBERTY.—CARELESS AND EXTENSIVE GRANTS OF CHARLES II.—THE ATTITUDE OF MASSACHUSETTS: DISTRUST OF THE RESTORATION.—REQUISITIONS OF CHARLES II.—APPOINTMENT OF A COMMISSION.—ALARM OF THE COLONY.

ROGER WILLIAMS, having visited England, and obtained the sanction of parliament to the existence of the infant state he had founded, in 1652 returned to New England, leaving, as his agent, John Clarke, a man of great worth and indefatigable patience. This efficient emissary obtained from the crown, on the Restoration, the permission, earnestly besought by the colonists of Rhode Island, "to hold forth a lively experiment, that a most flourishing civil state may stand, and best be maintained with a full liberty of religious concernments." Powers of self-government, as ample as those granted to Connecticut, were secured to the little province, and, to gratify the benevolent request of the petitioners, it was expressly provided, that "no person within the said colony, at any time hereafter, shall be any wise molested, punished, disquieted, or called in question, for any difference of opinion in matters of religion; every person may at all times freely and fully enjoy his own judgment and

conscience in matters of religious concernment." Under this ancient charter, which has been in existence to our own day, Rhode Island enjoyed uncommon political blessings, both civil and religious. Its first benefit was the protection of that feeble colony against the ambitious encroachments of Massachusetts, which was desirous of extending its jurisdiction over its weaker neighbours, and which was effectually checked by this direct action of the crown. Rhode Island, at the time of this foundation of her political existence, numbered only between two and three thousand souls.

An extraordinary mixture of liberality and carelessness characterized the king's whole management of his North American provinces. To his brother James, and to several favourites and courtiers, he gave immense grants of territory, comprising nearly all the best part of the North American continent—that to William Penn, laying the foundation of a commonwealth of peace, being almost the only one whose origin was of a purer nature than mere personal rapacity or ambition.

Until it was absolutely certain that the commonwealth was at an end, and that the House of Stuart was reinstated on the throne, Massachusetts hesitated to commit itself to any decided recognition of sovereignty. But when, in the fall of 1661, the news of that event arrived, the general court, knowing that the province would be readily exposed to odium with the new government, hastened to prepare addresses to the crown and parliament. They stated plainly the religious scruples which had induced the Puritans to quit their country, averring that they were "true men, fearing God and the King," and praying that Charles, himself so lately in exile, would feel a sympathy for men suffering the same misfortune. The agent of the province was instructed to make what interest he could with the court and parliament, and, especially, to resist the allowance of appeals from the colonial government to that of England.

Upon this point, however, the new government seemed resolved to insist; and the general court, in view of a probable collision, with much boldness, published a declaration of rights, claiming for the province the entire power of appointing all its officers, of exercising all powers of government, legislative, executive, and judicial, and the right of resisting any infringement of its liberties, as theretofore enjoyed. Little more than a nominal allegiance to the crown was acknowledged; and when, in 1661, the Restoration was publicly proclaimed, it was done with much coldness and apathy.

of  
an  
on  
ki  
ter  
the  
a p  
Th  
at  
cite  
all  
S  
loya  
Wh  
an a  
appo  
Engl  
affair  
hasty  
safety  
especi  
Comm

REMON  
SION  
DIS  
RE  
C

THE  
hattan  
July, 1  
general



Messengers were dispatched to England to sustain the interests of the province, with instructions to persuade the king of its loyalty, and to parry, if possible, any attempt upon its liberties. They were only in a measure successful. The charter was confirmed, but the king demanded, with some reason, that the laws should be administered in his name, that the oath of allegiance should be taken, that the Church of England should be tolerated; and that none, except a property restriction, should be continued on the elective franchise. The latter of these demands, striking more closely than any other at the religious government and the prejudices of the colonists, excited the greatest discontent; and a stricter censorship was held over all except the established religion.

Stimulated by rumours, partly true and partly false, of the disloyal spirit of the province, (it was even rumoured that Goffe and Whalley, who had lately come over, and were in hiding, had raised an army against the crown,) the English sovereign proceeded to appoint a commission of four persons to investigate matters in New England, and to use a very discretionary authority in settling its affairs. On the news of this obnoxious measure reaching Boston, hasty measures were adopted for precaution and defence. The safety of the charter, and restraint upon the landing of soldiers, were especially provided for; and in view of the impending trials of the Commonwealth, a day of solemn prayer and fasting was appointed.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

REMONSTRANCE OF MASSACHUSETTS —DOINGS OF THE COMMISSIONERS: THEIR DISPUTES WITH THE AUTHORITIES: THEIR DISCOMFITURE AND RETURN TO ENGLAND.—SUCCESSFUL RESISTANCE OF MASSACHUSETTS.—INERTNESS OF THE CROWN.—PROSPERITY AND TRADE OF THE PROVINCE.

THE fleet, dispatched from England for the reduction of Manhattan and other Dutch settlements (see "New Netherlands") in July, 1664, arrived at Boston, bearing the commissioners. The general court, promptly assembled, in token of their loyalty, agreed

to levy a force in assistance of the expedition; and, while the fleet was busied at Manhattan, prepared a forcible and eloquent remonstrance, addressed to the king. Reciting the privileges of their charter, the sacrifices they had made to obtain it, and the liberties they had enjoyed under it; they foretold the trouble and ruin which any persistence in controlling the affairs of the colony would occasion. "God knows," they say, "our greatest ambition is to live a quiet life, in a corner of the world." Any thing but their liberties, they declared, they were willing to offer in testimony of their loyalty.

Meanwhile, the commissioners, not caring to make themselves unnecessarily odious, had busied themselves, in harmony with the colonists, in settling certain matters in Connecticut and Rhode Island—the "dutifulness and obedience" of which former, they averred, was "set off with the more lustre by the contrary deportment of Massachusetts." Plymouth, which was promised a separate charter, if it would submit the nomination of its governor to the commissioners, protested much loyalty, but declined the intermeddling proposition.

These gentlemen, returning to Boston, demanded that all the men should be assembled to hear the king's message; but their requisition was refused, though they denounced as traitors those who opposed the proceeding. The Massachusetts authorities refused to state directly whether they would obey the commission or not; and the members of it, to try their power, gave notice that they would hold a court for the trial of a cause to which the colony was a party. But the general court, by sound of trumpet, and proclamation of a herald, forbade all persons to take part in their proceedings. Foiled in this point, the visitors proceeded to intermeddle in the affairs of Maine and New Hampshire. The court, with equal promptitude and fearlessness, met them by an order to the inhabitants of the latter to forbear obeying or abetting them, at their peril. In Maine, indeed, they set up a royal government; but not long after their departure, Massachusetts, by force of arms, reestablished its authority there. They finally returned to England in much wrath and disappointment, without having accomplished any permanent alteration in the condition of the provinces.

The king, in very natural displeasure, now summoned (1666) some of the chief persons of Massachusetts to appear before him, and answer for the doings of that refractory province. The general court, which met to consider this demand, after protracted prayer, refused compliance, declaring that they had already expressed their

views in writing, "so that the ablest person among us could not declare our case more fully."

In all this peremptory resistance, and almost defiance of the authority of the crown, there was no lack of patriotic feeling, or of affection for the mother-country; for very effective assistance, in provisions and materials, was rendered to the English navy, in the contest with France, commencing at this time; and whether from fear or negligence, the king, immersed in sensuality, took no active measures to vindicate his claims. After much discussion in the council, it was considered that the refractory colony was too strong to meddle with; that it might, at a moment's warning, throw off its allegiance; and that the safest policy was to overlook its transgressions, and wait a more favourable opportunity for enforcing the obnoxious claims.

Meanwhile, the province, left to its own management, by the enterprise and industry for which its people have ever been distinguished, prospered in an extraordinary degree. Foreign commerce (for the Navigation Act was set at naught) sprung up with surprising rapidity; fish and furs were exported in quantities; and lumber, which, by the then recent invention of saw-mills, was prepared with unaccustomed ease from the almost exhaustless forests of Maine and New Hampshire, had already assumed high importance as an article of traffic.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

CONDITION OF THE NEW ENGLAND INDIANS: CONVERSION OF SOME OF THEM: THEIR NUMBERS AND STRENGTH.—

THE POKANOKETS.—METACOMET, OR KING PHILIP:

HIS GRIEVANCES: DISSIMULATION: SCHEME FOR THE

DESTRUCTION OF THE ENGLISH.—CAPTAIN

CHURCH: HIS CHARACTER, ETC.: HE DIS-

CONCERTS AN INTRIGUE OF PHILIP.

THOUGH liable to the imputation of blame, for too persistent encroachment, even under the guise of purchase, upon the domains of the native tribes adjoining them, the English colonists, to their credit, were sincerely desirous of civilizing and converting their

Indian neighbours. Many of the latter, by the praiseworthy pains of their white friends, had learned to read and write, and one of them even graduated at the university of Cambridge. The missionary labours of the admirable John Eliot and of the two Mayhews, had been crowned with much success in their conversion. The former, with wonderful patience and diligence, had even prepared and published, for their benefit, a translation of the Bible, in the Indian tongue. The race for whose salvation this pious and laborious monument of learning was erected, has passed entirely away. The Bible may still be found on the shelf of an ancient library, but no man living is able to peruse it. Around Boston, and on the cape and its adjoining islands, villages of "praying Indians" had been established, and friendship with the settlers had been thus confirmed and strengthened. But the powerful tribe of the Narragansetts, and that of the Pokanokets, at this time (1675) nearly as numerous, still clung, with a jealous fidelity, to the religion of their fathers.

In 1675, the number of Indians in New England was roughly computed at fifty thousand. Unprincipled traders had supplied them with fire-arms, which they had learned to use with deadly accuracy, and the possession of which gave them a dangerous consciousness of power. Confined, in a good measure, by the continual extension of the English settlements, to peninsulas and necks of land on the coast, many of the tribes began to suffer from insufficient room to procure their customary subsistence.

On the death of Massasoit, the earliest and firmest friend of the English, his son, Wamsutta, or, as he was called by the latter, Alexander, succeeded him in the sway of the Pokanokets. Only a few months after his accession, on some vague suspicion, he was seized by a party of English, and carried prisoner into Plymouth, where, in a few days, he died of a fever, brought on by anger and irritation. His brother, Metacomet, more commonly known as the famous King Philip, succeeded to the throne, and, from profound policy, maintained an appearance of great friendship for the whites. For nine years, with extraordinary dissimulation, though cherishing feelings of revenge for the death of his brother, and the encroachments on his territory, he maintained the appearance of amity. Some disputes, indeed, caused by the latter grievance, as early as 1671, had occurred; and Philip, strangely enough, subscribed a set of articles, yielding almost every point in question, and, in a manner, "delivering himself, body and soul, into the hands of the Plymouth author-

itics. His motive, doubtless, was to blind his enemies as to the extent and dangerous nature of the conspiracy he was meditating. His plan was nothing less than the complete extermination of the whites, and in its prosecution he displayed a policy, courage, and perseverance, which, in a savage, have never been surpassed. To knit the clans of New England, immemorably dissevered by traditional feud and enmity, into a confederacy against a foe so terrible as the English, might well have seemed to the most sanguine a hopeless task; yet such was the object to which Philip bent all his policy and energy, and in which, to a great extent, he succeeded." Argument, persuasion, and menace, were each, in turn, applied with the utmost adroitness.

In the spring of 1675, he sent six ambassadors to Awashonks, queen of the Sogkonates, demanding, on pain of his own vengeance, and of exposure (by an artful device) to the resentment of the English themselves, that the tribe should join his league. A solemn dance was appointed, to decide the question, and Awashonks, that the opposite party might not be unrepresented, sent for her neighbour, Captain Benjamin Church, the only white man in her domains. This celebrated man, one of the most famous Indian fighters in New England history, had just settled in the wilderness of Sogkonate. "He was a man of undaunted courage, of a sagacity fitted to cope with the wildest tactics of Indian warfare, and, withal, of a kindly and generous disposition, which, except when engaged in immediate hostilities, seem to have secured for him the respect and attachment of the wild tribes which he so often encountered. His narrative,\* written in his old age, by his son, from his own notes and dictation, is one of the choicest fragments of original history in our possession. As a literary performance, it is just respectable; but for vividness of detail and strength of expression, it is something more, and may well be entitled to rank with such rude but stirring productions as the 'True Conquest' of Bernal Diaz, and the 'True Adventures' of Captain John Smith."

On his arrival, a grand council was held, at which the six Wampanoags appeared in great state, making, says Church, "a formidable appearance, with their faces painted, and their hair trimmed back in comb fashion, with their powder-horns and shot-bags at their backs, which among that nation is the posture and figure of preparedness for war." A fierce discussion ensued, and a privy counsellor, named

\* "The Entertaining History of King Philip's War."

Little Eyes, attempted to draw Church aside, to privately dispatch him, but was prevented by others. The Englishman, with great boldness, advised Awashonks, "to knock those six Mount Hopes\* on the head, and shelter herself under the protection of the English Upon which, the Mount Hopes were for the present dumb." He then sharply rebuked them, as faithless wretches, thirsting for the blood of their neighbours, and assured them, that if they would have war, he should prove a sharp thorn in their sides. The queen and her people, overmastered by his eloquence and energy, dismissed the embassy, and, for a time, observed neutrality, if not fidelity.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

COMMENCEMENT OF PHILIP'S WAR.—EXPLOIT OF CHURCH —  
 RETREAT OF THE INDIANS.—PHILIP ROUSES THE TRIBES.  
 —DESTRUCTION OF TOWNS, ETC.—THE ATTACK ON  
 HADLEY: REPULSED BY GOFFE.—GREAT LOSSES  
 OF THE ENGLISH.—SPRINGFIELD BURNED.

It was soon evident that Philip was preparing for active war. He sent all the women and children of his tribe into the Narragansett country, and held a great dance, lasting for several weeks, with all the warriors of his neighbourhood. The first blow was struck on the 24th of June, in an attack on the little town of Swansey. Nine of the settlers were killed, and the rest fled, while the Indians fired their deserted dwellings. Soldiers were sent from Massachusetts, and Church, with a company from Plymouth, hastened to the frontier. Philip was compelled to flee, but only to ravage the country in other remote spots. Church, with only nineteen men, holding on in pursuit, at last, on the site of the present town of Tiverton, fell in with three hundred of the enemy. "The hill," he tells us, "seemed to move, being covered over with Indians, with their bright guns glittering in the sun, and running in a circumference with a design to surround them." From a place of vantage, the English defended themselves with much courage and desperation till taken off by a vessel which came to their aid, covering their

\* So called, from Mount Hope, the favourite seat of Philip.

ately dispatch  
an, with great  
Mount Hope\*  
of the English  
t dumb." He  
irsting for the  
ey would have  
he queen and  
, dismissed the  
fidelity.

OF CHURCH —  
THE TRIBES.  
ATTACK ON  
LOSSES  
RVED.

active war. He  
he Narragansett  
weeks, with all  
was struck on  
Swansey. Nine  
he Indians fired  
Massachusetts,  
ed to the fron-  
ge the country  
men, holding on  
of Tiverton, fell  
ll," he tells us,  
ians, with their  
a circumference  
of vantage, the  
and desperation  
, covering their  
Philip.



Little Ryan, however, drew Church aside, to privately dispatch him, but was prevented by others. The Englishman, with great boldness, advised Asashenka, "to knock these six Mount Hopes on the head, and let herself under the protection of the English. He told them the Mount Hopes were for the present dumb." He then sharply rebuked them, as faithless wretches, thirsting for the blood of their neighbours, and assured them, that if they would have done so, they should prove a sharp thorn in their sides. The queen and her people, overpowered by his eloquence and energy, dismissed the embassy, and, for a time, observed neutrality, if not fidelity.

## CHAPTER VIII.

COMMENCEMENT OF PHILIP'S WAR — RETREAT OF THE INDIANS — PHILIP ATTACKS THE TRIBES.  
 DESTRUCTION OF TOWNS, ETC. — THE ATTACK ON  
 SWANSEY — DEFEAT BY GORPHE — GREAT LOSSES  
 TO THE ENGLISH. — SPRINGFIELD BURNED.

It was soon evident that Philip was preparing for active war. He sent all the women and children of his tribe into the Narragansett country, and held a great dance lasting for several weeks, with all the warriors of his neighbouring tribes. The first blow was struck on the 24th of June, in an attack on the little town of Swansea. Nine of the soldiers were killed, and the rest fled, while the Indians fired the deserted dwellings. Such was the report from Massachusetts, and Church led a company of his own men to the frontier. Philip was disappointed in his plan to ravage the country in other remote spots, and he sent only sixteen men, holding on in pursuit to the first of the English town of Tiverton, full in with three hundred of the Indians. "The hill," he tells us, "seemed to meet, being covered with Indians, with their bright guns glittering in the sun, and forming in a circumference with a design to surround the place. In a place of vantage, the Indians showed themselves with such courage and desperation, all kinds of vessels were sent to their aid, covering their

Small Indian Mount Hope, the favourite seat of Philip.



ly dispatch  
with great  
ount Hop-  
the English  
dumb." He  
sting for the  
y would have  
e queen and  
dismissed the  
delity.

F CHURCH —  
HE TRIBES.  
TACK ON  
LOSSES  
NED.

ective war. He  
e Narragansett  
weeks, with all  
was struck on  
wanssey. Nine  
e Indians fired  
Massachusetts,  
ed to the front  
ge the country  
men, holding on  
of Tiverton, full  
1," he tells us.  
ans, with their  
a circumference  
of vantage, the  
and desperation  
, covering their  
lip.



em  
the  
cla  
ing  
the  
me  
swa  
war  
ren  
slav  
rem  
pro  
he  
obst  
D  
Phi  
Nur  
on t  
und  
days  
eigh  
men  
cess  
tow  
of e  
Phi  
num  
at r  
that  
was  
atta  
scer  
to b  
tion  
O  
Had  
The  
usu  
wou

embarkation with her fire. When all were on board but Church, that daring man, who had left his hat and cutlass by a spring, declared he would never leave them as trophies for the enemy. Loading his gun with his last charge of powder, he went back, and brought them off, amid a shower of bullets, some of which grazed his person.

The English forces, at last uniting, after some indecisive engagements, compelled Philip and his warriors to take refuge in a great swamp at Pocasset; their camp, consisting of a hundred new wigwams, being deserted. A great number of Indians, who had surrendered under fair promises, were treacherously transported as slaves—a piece of perfidious cruelty against which Church vainly remonstrated. That active officer, if permitted, could at this time, probably, by a close pursuit of the Indians, have ended the war, but he was continually thwarted and embarrassed by the inactivity and obstinacy of his superiors.

Defeated, with a loss of thirty warriors, in another engagement, Philip fled westward, and excited the remoter tribes to warfare. Numbers of the English were killed, and several flourishing villages on the frontier were burned. In Brookfield, however, a small force, under Captain Wheeler, besieged in a building, held out for two days against several hundred savages, who, after losing, it is said, eighty of their number, were compelled by the arrival of reinforcements to raise the siege. — “From this time, an almost continual succession of Indian attacks and massacres occurred, and town after town was laid in ashes. Aided by the continually exciting causes of enmity, developed by war with a foe so indefinite as ‘the Indians,’ Philip had succeeded in awaking a general hostility among the numerous tribes of the frontier. It was supposed that he was present at many of the scenes of midnight assault and massacre which, at that time, filled New England with alarm; but it is certain that he was seldom recognised. Once, it is said, he was seen at a successful attack, riding on a black horse, leaping fences, and exulting in the scene of destruction; and again, that he once ordered an arm-chair to be brought forth, that he might enjoy at his ease the conflagration of a village.”

On the 1st of September, a simultaneous attack was made on Hadley and Deerfield, the latter of which was mostly destroyed. The people of Hadley assembled at their meeting-house, armed as usual; but, taken by surprise at the unexpected assault of the savages, would probably have been overwhelmed, but for an unexpected

assistance. An old man, with long white hair, dressed in the fashion of a former day, suddenly appeared, and assumed the command. By his courage and skillful strategy, he put the enemy to flight, and then disappeared as suddenly and mysteriously as he came. Many of the people supposed him to be an angel, providentially sent to their aid; but he was, in reality, Major-General Goffe, one of the regicide judges, who, with his companion, Whalley, had been concealed for ten years in the cellar of Mr. Russell, minister of the town. "There are few incidents in history more striking than that of the old soldier, so long immured in this dismal habitation, roused once more by the clash of arms and the discharge of musketry, to mingle, for the last time, in the half-forgotten scenes of combat, and then shrinking back for ever into the gloom and twilight of his subterranean abode."

Thirty-six men, dispatched to the relief of Northfield, (where a number of the people had been slain,) were mostly cut off by an ambuscade, and a hundred more, consisting of the finest young men in the country, marching to Deerfield, under Captain Lathrop, surrounded by an overwhelming force of the enemy, after a desperate defence, were all killed, except seven or eight. Thirty houses were burned at Springfield, together with "the brave library" of Rev. Pelatiah Glover, which had once been carried to a place of safety—"but the said minister, a great student, and an *helluo librorum*, being impatient for want of his books, brought them back, to his great sorrow, for a bonfire for the proud insulting enemy. Of all the mischiefs," continues Rev. Mr. Hubbard, ("Indian Wars,") "done by the said enemy before that day, the burning of this said town of Springfield did more than any other discover the said actors to be the children of the devil, full of all subtlety and malice," &c., &c. The sympathy of the learned and studious may well travel back a couple of centuries, to condole with the unfortunate scholar, widowed of his library—his loss irreparable—bookless—in the American wilderness.

## CHAPTER IX.

PHILIP'S WAR, CONTINUED.—DESTRUCTION OF THE NARRAGANSETT FORT: TERRIBLE MASSACRE.—MALIGNANT EXULTATION OF THE EARLY HISTORIANS.—INDIAN SUCCESSSES.—CAPTURE AND DEATH OF CANONCHET: HIS HEROISM AND MAGNANIMITY.—DIPLOMACY OF CHURCH.

AT Hatfield, in October, the garrison and town's people beat off a body of seven or eight hundred savages who attacked the place; and during the beginning of the ensuing winter, little was done by either party, the Indians suffering greatly from want and exposure. Philip and his warriors, it was supposed, had taken refuge with the Narragansetts. The English now resolved to crush this latter tribe, as the most easily accessible, on account of the shelter they had afforded to the enemy. Five hundred soldiers, under command of Josias Winslow, governor of Plymouth, were dispatched against the devoted tribe, and on the afternoon of December 19th, a bitter winter's day, after a forced march, arrived at their principal fort. It was built on a plateau of elevated ground in a great swamp, and the only access to it was by the trunk of a large tree, lying in the water. Across this bridge of peril, the assailants, with much loss, made their way, and after a desperate battle within, lasting for some hours, firing the fort, renewed the terrible tragedy of Groton. Seven hundred of the Narragansett warriors are said to have fallen in the fight, and nearly half that number afterwards perished of their wounds. "The number of old men, women, and children," says Rev. Mr. Hubbard, "that perished either by fire, or that were starved with cold and hunger, none could tell." "They were ready," he narrates, in a strain of disgusting levity, "to dress their dinner, but our sudden and unexpected assault put them beside that work, making their cook-rooms too hot for them at that time when they and their mitchen fried together: And probably some of them eat their suppers in a colder place that night, most of their provisions as well as huts being consumed by fire, and those that were left alive forced to hide themselves in a cedar swamp, not far off, where they had nothing to defend them from the cold but boughs of spruce and pine trees!"

The defeated nation did not fall unavenged, eighty of the English being slain outright, and an hundred and fifty wounded, many of whom perished on the return march, rendered terrible by the severity of the season, and the want of proper supplies. Canonchet, (the son of Miantonino,) the brave young sachem of the Narragansetts, with the relics of his force, took refuge in the west, where, in concert with Philip, he planned schemes of vengeful reprisal. Lancaster and Medfield (the latter only twenty miles from Boston) were burned, and nearly a hundred of the settlers were killed or carried off. Portions of Providence and Weymouth were also destroyed, and two companies, each of fifty men, were successively "swallowed up" by the victorious enemy.

The first check to this spirited renewal of the war, was the capture of the brave Canonchet, who, having raised a force of many hundred men, to ensure provision for their support, had ventured eastward with a few warriors, to procure seed for plantation. He was shot at Stonington, having "refused to purchase his life by procuring the submission of his injured tribe; and met his death with the highest courage and fortitude—a true patriot, and a hero, whose soul, to judge from his brief sayings, was cast in an almost classical mould."

"This," says Mr. Hubbard, "was the confusion" (confounding) "of a damned wretch, that had often opened his mouth to blaspheme the name of the living God, and those that make profession thereof. He was told at large of his breach of faith, and how he had boasted *that he would not deliver up a Wampanoag nor the paring of a Wampanoag's nail*, that he would burn the English alive in their houses; to which he replied, *others were as forward for the war as himself, and he desired to hear no more thereof*. And when he was told his sentence was to die, he said, *he liked it well, that he should die before his heart was soft, or he had spoken anything unworthy of himself*. He told the English before they put him to death, *that the killing him would not end the war*; but it was a considerable step thereunto."

In the spring of 1676, the war continued to rage, several desperate actions being fought, with alternate success—part of Plymouth and other towns being burned, and great loss resulting to both parties. The Indians, indeed, suffered grievously from cold and hunger; and a force of cavalry, from Connecticut, aided by a body of Mohegans, was very effectually employed against them. Two hundred were

made prisoners on one occasion; five or six hundred surrendered on a doubtful promise of mercy; and many migrated to the west. Philip and his people still held out, and kept the settlements in continual dread of attack. His final defeat and destruction was due to the energy of Captain (afterwards colonel) Church, who had performed active service during the war, and who, immediately on recovering from his wounds, devoted himself to the task of bringing it to an end.

The Sogkonates, at this time, were in alliance with Philip, and to detach them from the hostile league, with only a single companion the captain boldly ventured into their country. He narrowly escaped with his life from the vengeance of some of them, but, by his persuasions and arguments, at last so completely won the confidence of the tribe, that the chief warrior rose, and placed himself and all the rest at his disposal, saying, "We will help you to Philip's head, ere the Indian corn be ripe." With an extraordinary savage pantomime, the clan performed the ceremony of swearing allegiance to their new commander, and the desertion of these allies, we are told, "broke Philip's heart as soon as he understood it, so as he never rejoiced after, or had success in any of his designs."

---

## CHAPTER X.

PHILIP'S WAR, CONTINUED.—SUCCESSFUL CAMPAIGN OF CHURCH.—DEFEAT AND CAPTURE OF THE SAVAGES.—

PHILIP'S DESPAIR: HE RETREATS TO MOUNT HOPE: IS DEFEATED AND SLAIN: BARBAROUS EXPOSURE OF HIS REMAINS: HIS CHARACTER.

WITH an English force, and a considerable number of Indian warriors, Church, in June, 1676, commenced an active campaign against the enemy, scouring the woods in all directions, and killing or making prisoners of great numbers of the hostile savages. "In the midst of this uncompromising warfare, we find him exhibiting a humanity and good faith uncommon at the time, using every exertion to prevent torture and cruelty, and vehemently protesting against any ill usage of the natives who surrendered. Once he fell

in with Little Eyes, (who would have killed him at Awashonk's dance,) and his Indians wished him to be revenged. 'But the Captain told them it was not Englishmen's fashion to seek revenge,' and took especial care for his safety and protection." The finest of his captives he selected for his own service, and, singular to state, such was the fascination of his manner, and his acquaintance with the Indian character, that he generally converted these recruits into devoted followers.

Pursuing the enemy into the Narragansett's country, "he came to Taunton river, over which the Indians had felled a large tree for the purpose of crossing. On the stump, at the opposite side, sat a solitary warrior. Church quietly raised his gun, but was prevented from firing by the suggestion that it was a friend. The Indian, aroused by the noise, looked up. It was Philip himself, musing drearily, no doubt, on the fallen fortunes of his race. Ere a gun could again be levelled, he sprang up, and bounded like a deer into the forest." Closely following his track, the English at last came up with the relics of the enemy, who were posted in a swamp. The latter, after a sharp skirmish, were defeated, and an hundred and seventy-three, including women and children, were taken captive. Philip and most of his warriors escaped, but his wife and child were among the prisoners. The latter described his condition as forlorn in the extreme, and said, that after this last misfortune, he was quite inconsolable.

"The unhappy sachem, after seeing his followers, one after another, fall before the English, or desert his failing cause, had betaken himself, like some wild animal hard driven by the hunters, to his ancient haunt, the former residence of his father, the friendly Massasoit. In all the pleasant region washed by the circling Narragansett, there is no spot more beautiful than that miniature mountain, the home of the old sachems of the Wampanoags. But with what feelings the last of their number, a fugitive before inveterate foes and recreant followers, looked on the pleasant habitation of his fathers, may more easily be imagined than described. Still, he sternly rejected all proposals for peace, and even slew one of his own followers, who had ventured to speak of treaty with the English. The brother of this victim, naturally enraged and alienated from his cause, at once deserted to the enemy, and gave the information which led to his final ruin.

"A few brave warriors yet remained faithful to him, and with



these and their women and children, he had taken refuge in a swamp hard by the mountain, on a little spot of rising ground. In that troubled night, the last of his life, the sachem, we are told, had dreamed of his betrayal,\* and awaking early, was recounting the vision to his companions, when the foe came suddenly upon him. His old enemy, Church, who was familiar with the ground, coming up quietly in the darkness of night had posted his followers, both English and Indian, so as, if possible, to prevent any from escaping. The result was almost immediate: several volleys had been rapidly fired, Philip, attempting to reach a secure position, came in range of an ambush, and was immediately shot through the heart by one Alderman, an Indian under Church's command. He fell on his face with his gun under him, and died without a struggle. (August 12, 1676.)† Most of the warriors, under old Annawon, Philip's chief captain, made their escape.

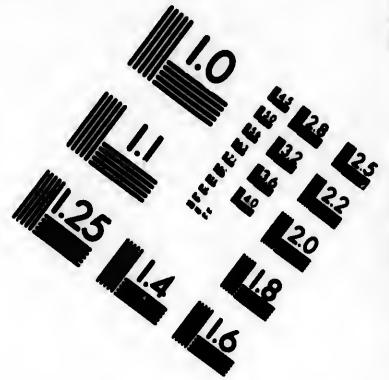
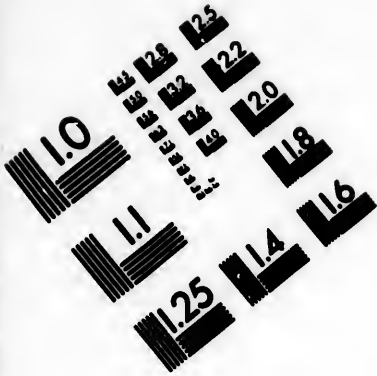
The body of the unfortunate sachem was drawn from the swamp, a spectacle of exultation for "the army;" and Church, following the barbarous fashion of the time, declared "that, forasmuch as he had caused many an Englishman's body to be unburied and to rot above ground, no one of his bones should be buried." "This *Agag*," says Cotton Mather, spitefully enough, "was now cut into quarters, which were then hanged up, while his head was carried in triumph to Plymouth, where it arrived on the very day that the church there was keeping a solemn *thanksgiving* to God. God sent 'em the head of a leviathan for a thanksgiving feast." The festivity of the modern observance of the same name, it is certain, could hardly be enhanced by the arrival of a human head, even though it were that of a brave and inveterate foe.

"The ghastly relic was long exposed in that town, an object of mingled horror and satisfaction to the citizens; and when the flesh was fallen away, and the dry jaw could be rattled with the skull, a grave historian records with satisfaction his odious trifling with the remains, which, in their life-time, he would not have dared to approach 'for all below the moon.' The only reward allotted to the victors was a bounty of thirty shillings on the head of every slain Indian; and Church, with some reason, complains that Philip's was

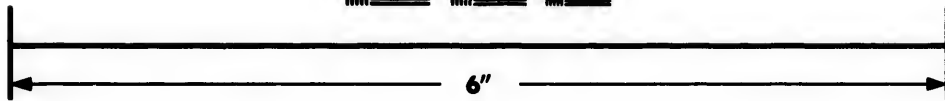
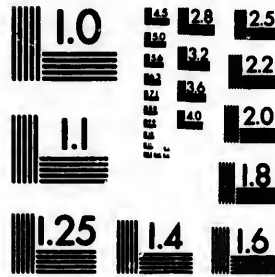
\* Mr. Hubbard, for a wonder, does not fully adopt this account, but dismisses it parenthetically, "(whether the devil appeared to him in a dream that night, as he did unto Saul (!) foreboding his tragical end, it matters not,)" &c., &c.

† Discoverers, &c., of America.





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14590  
(716) 872-4503

18  
20  
22  
25

10  
11  
22

rated no higher than the rest. The sinewy right hand of the sachem, much scarred by the bursting of a pistol, was given to Alderman, 'to show to such gentlemen as would bestow gratuities upon him; and accordingly he got many a penny by it.\*

"Thus died Philip of Pokanoket, the last sachem of the Wampanoags, the originator and the head of that terrible confederacy which so long kept New England in dread and consternation, and which, at one time, seemed almost to threaten its entire destruction. He was, undoubtedly, a man far superior to the generality of his race, in boldness, sagacity, and policy; his powers of persuasion were extraordinary; and the terrifying results of his enmity sufficiently evinced the ambitious nature of his scheme, and the genius with which it was conducted. The division and barbarous exposure of his remains entailed disgrace, not on him, but on the authors of the profanation; his sufferings and the injuries of his family have awakened in succeeding generations somewhat of that sympathy which is always due to misfortune; and though the defeated leader of a ruined confederation, his name, more than that of any other of the Indian race, has always excited the interest, if not the admiration of mankind.†

---

## CHAPTER XI.

PHILIP'S WAR, CONCLUDED.—CAPTURE OF ANNAWON AND HIS WARRIORS, BY CHURCH.—ROMANTIC INCIDENTS.—SUMMARY OF THE WAR.—PHILIP'S SON.—BARBAROUS POLICY OF THE VICTORS.—MURDEROUS ADVICE.—THE CHARACTER OF THE PURITANS.—REFLECTIONS.

CHURCH, with a small force, followed closely on the track of Annawon and the few warriors whom death and desertion had yet left to maintain the ruined cause of the Pokanokets; and, after long and wearisome pursuit, at length learned from a captive the place of his retreat. In his eagerness to surprise the foe (who never camped two nights in the same place), with only half a dozen friendly Indians, he set forth, with extraordinary boldness, on the adventure.

\* "Church's "Entertaining History."

† Discoverers, &c., of America.

The bivouac of the fugitives was in a place of remarkable security and difficulty of access, yet the captain, with his allies, lowering themselves by bushes over the face of a precipitous rock, took the enemy, mostly sleeping, by surprise, and secured their guns, which were all stacked together at the head of Annawon. That redoubted warrior, his weapons lost, surrendered, and the rest followed his example, Church promising to use all his influence in behalf of their lives. "I am come to sup with you," he said, pleasantly, to Annawon, and the latter bidding his women prepare a meal, the two captains feasted together in perfect harmony.

Did these limits allow, it would be pleasing to dwell on the romantic incidents of this most wonderful surprise; how the whole company, wearied with pursuit and flight, were soon wrapped in slumber, all but the two leaders, who lay looking at each other by the glimmering light of the embers; how Annawon arose and disappeared in the darkness, but ere long returned, bearing a powder-horn, a scarlet blanket, and two splendid belts of wampum, the regalia of the unfortunate Philip; how he solemnly invested Church with these royalties, as the victor over the last of the hostile tribe; and how, in the words of the captain, "they spent the remainder of the night in discourse, and Annawon gave an account of what mighty success he had formerly in wars against many nations of Indians, when he served Asuhmequin," (Massasoit,) "Philip's father."

This exploit ended Philip's war—a war which, though it lasted only a year and a half, seemed almost to threaten the destruction of New England. Thirteen towns had been laid in ashes, and many others partially destroyed, six hundred dwellings, in all, being burned by the enemy. Six hundred Englishmen had lost their lives, and the prosperity of the whole country had been grievously checked and retarded. But if misfortune was experienced by the victors, utter ruin and almost annihilation awaited the vanquished. In war, in conflagration, by starvation and cold, such vast numbers had perished, that the effective force of the hostile tribes was completely broken, and many of them were nearly extinguished. With the great number of prisoners, and the almost equally numerous portion, who surrendered on the promise or in the hope of mercy, a cruel and barbarous policy was adopted. The chief warriors were put to death; among them, Annawon, whose life Church vainly endeavoured to save, as well from good faith and humanity, as for the value of his services in future warfare. The rest, with the

VOL. IV.—39

and of the sachem,  
to Alderman, 'to  
upon him; and

m of the Wampa-  
confederacy which  
nation, and which,  
destruction. He  
ality of his race, in  
uasion were extra-  
sufficiently evinced  
nius with which it  
sure of his remains  
of the profanation;  
awakened in suc-  
which is always due  
of a ruined confed-  
of the Indian race,  
tion of mankind."†

ANNAWON AND  
INCIDENTS.—  
—BARBAROUS  
S ADVICE.—  
REFLECTIONS.

y on the track of  
desertion had yet  
ets; and, after long  
aptive the place of  
who never camped  
dozen friendly In-  
on the adventure  
rs, &c, of America.

women and children, were made slaves, most of them being transported and sold in the West Indies.

"In regard to the son of Philip, (a child only nine years old,) the authorities seem to have been greatly exercised in spirit. There were so many nice precedents for his execution to be found in Scripture, and security, as well as vengeance, would be satisfied by the destruction of the whole house of their dreaded enemy. Nothing can better show the venomous spirit of the times, or the depraving influence of a barbarous theology, than the following extract from a letter, written by Rev. Increase Mather, the minister of Boston, to his friend, Mr. Cotton: 'If it had not been out of my mind, when I was writing, I should have said something about Philip's son. *It is necessary that some effectual course should be taken about him. He makes me think of Hadad, who was a little child when his father (the chief sachem of the Edomites) was killed by Joab, and had not others fled away with him, I am apt to think, that David would have taken a course that Hadad should never have proved a scourge to the next generation.*' More humane counsels, however, prevailed, and the poor child was *only* shipped as a slave to Bermuda!

"Incidents, such as these, commonly suppressed by popular writers, are not uselessly recalled, in obtaining a just view of the spirit of the past. With all honour to the truly-great and respectable qualities of our New England ancestors—to their courage, their constancy, their morality, and their devotion—it is useless to disguise the fact that, in the grand essentials of charity and humanity, they were no wise in advance of their age, and in the less essential, but not less desirable articles of amenity and magnanimity, most decidedly behind it. But a certain infusion of disagreeable qualities seems almost an inseparable constituent of that *earnestness*, which alone can successfully contend with great obstacles, either human or natural—with civil tyranny and religious persecution—with the privations and dangers of the wilderness, and the unsparing enmity of its savage inhabitants.

"The communities, founded by men thus strongly but imperfectly moulded, have, with the genial influence of time, and by the admirable elements of freedom contained in their origin, gradually grown into a commonwealth, freer from the errors which disgraced their founders than any other on the face of the earth. Their prejudice has become principle, their superstition has refined into religion; and their very bigotry has softened down to liberality. While

enjoying the results of this ameliorating process, their descendants may well be charitable to those whose footsteps not only broke through the tangled recesses of the actual forest, but who, in treading pathways through the moral wilderness, occasionally stumbled, or left behind them a track too rugged or too tortuous to be followed."\*

---

## CHAPTER XII.

RENEWED INTERFERENCE OF THE CROWN IN MASSACHUSETTS.—SEVERANCE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE: ATTEMPT TO TYRANNIZE THERE: ITS FAILURE.—ACTION OF MASSACHUSETTS.—PROCEEDINGS AGAINST ITS CHARTER.—  
—VAIN OPPOSITION AND REMONSTRANCE.—  
THE CHARTER ANNULLED.

THE English government, gaining courage from the gradual establishment of arbitrary power at home, and still desirous to curb the growing spirit of independence in Massachusetts, in 1676, dispatched thither Edward Randolph as its special agent. This functionary was coldly received by the provincial authorities, who again explicitly denied the right of the crown or the parliament to intermeddle with its government. Returning, after a sojourn of only six weeks, to England, he excited the jealousy and inflamed the cupidity of the court by very exaggerated accounts of its wealth and population. By a decision of the privy council, the claim of Massachusetts, certainly rather untenable, to jurisdiction over Maine and New Hampshire, was set aside. Nevertheless, by purchase from the heirs of the patentee (Gorges) she speedily again got possession of great part of the former province; and, whereas it had formerly been considered an integral part of her dominion, it was now governed as a mere colony of Massachusetts, the officers being appointed by those of that state. This change naturally led to much discontent, the manifestation of which, however, was forcibly suppressed by the new claimant of sovereignty.

In New Hampshire, severed from Massachusetts, a direct royal

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.



government was set up, the offices of president, &c., being filled by the act of the crown. A popular assembly was allowed, which, at its first meeting (1680), took occasion to assert the independence of the province, declaring that no law or ordinance should be valid unless "made by the assembly and approved by the people." The patentee, at issue with the colonists on matters of title, procured for himself the authority of appointing a governor. Cranfield, the person selected, a man of rapacious and arbitrary disposition, hastened to the infant colony, in strong hopes of making a fortune at the expense of its inhabitants. Disappointed in his expectations, he committed a thousand rash and tyrannical acts, continually interfering in matters beyond his authority, both civil and religious, and striving, on false and impudent pretexs, to wring money from the slenderly-filled purses of the settlers. To these exactions the assembly and people opposed as determined a resistance—a resistance which the latter finally carried to the extreme of openly maltreating his officers; and, with his hopes of plunder and profit almost quite ungratified, he returned to England, bearing a malicious report of the condition of the province.

In view of the prospective danger to the liberties of Massachusetts, a general synod of all the churches was convoked, while the general court, by some formal enactments, in testimony of its loyalty, sought to avert the royal displeasure. The king's arms were put up on the court-house, and two or three acts in support of the royal dignity were passed; and, though the Navigation Act was expressly declared illegal and not binding, the general court, by an act of its own, rendered its provisions valid and effective. The king, who certainly exhibited considerable moderation, twice again dispatched a message of remonstrance to Massachusetts on its opposition to the home-government, and it was evident that extreme measures would finally be resorted to. The province, in 1682, dispatched agents to England to defend its interests; and, if possible, to bribe the king into protecting them. Their mission was in vain; and that the charter was in danger, was evident from the systematic warfare against civic corporations then being waged by the court in England. Great agitation pervaded the province. Maine was surrendered, but it was resolved to hold the charter as long as possible.

Legal proceedings were commenced against its holders in the English courts; and the judges, in those times, being generally mere creatures of the crown, only one issue could be looked for. The

king, at this juncture, once more suggested the wisdom of a direct submission, promising, on that condition, his favour, and as little infringement on their charter as might consist with the right of his government. Judging from the fate of the civic corporations in England, (for even London had been compelled to succumb before the royal power,) the prospect of successful resistance in the courts of law appeared entirely hopeless. The governor and magistrates accordingly resolved at last to try the effect of an unqualified submission, and throw themselves on the king's forbearance. A proposal that agents, to receive the royal commands, should be dispatched to England, was sent in to the house of deputies; but that more popular body, after an animated debate of a fortnight, refused, by their own act, to sanction the surrender of their liberties. The successful opposition of former times was recalled, and it was even urged as a matter of religion not voluntarily to put the state into the hands of a power inimical to its professed faith. With extraordinary firmness and spirit, they resolved to make no voluntary sacrifice, and only to fall, as a body politic, before the pressure of superior power. The latter result must have been foreseen. Remonstrance to the king proved fruitless; and in June, 1684, the English judges, then, as from the earliest times, mere agents to effect the pleasure of the crown, declared the charter forfeited. Thus, for a time, fell the independence of Massachusetts—an independence, it must be owned, at times, ungraciously asserted and arbitrarily exercised; but of which the main defects lay in the fact that it was an independence rather in name than in fact; the authority of the magistrates, and the overshadowing influence of the church, constituting a species of mingled aristocracy and theocracy sufficiently repugnant to more enlightened ideas of freedom. Yet, doubtless, even this imperfect form of liberty and self-government was in the highest degree useful in training the minds of the colonists to a jealousy of foreign power, and fostering the germ of a firmer and more liberal national spirit.

## SETTLEMENT OF THE CAROLINAS.

---

**FAILURE TO PLANT COLONIES IN THE SOUTH.—EMIGRATION FROM VIRGINIA TO NORTH CAROLINA: FROM BARBADOES TO SOUTH CAROLINA.—THE PATENT OF CHARLES II.—LEGISLATION OF LOCKE AND SHAPTESBURY.—CUMBROUS SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT.—DISCONTENT OF THE SETTLERS.—INSURRECTION IN NORTH CAROLINA.—SOTHEL DEPOSED BY THE PEOPLE.—CHARLESTON FOUNDED.—CONSTITUTION OF LOCKE RELINQUISHED.**

The first attempt of the English to found a settlement in America had been made in the mild regions lying south of Virginia. The disastrous failure of that attempt (Raleigh's), combined with the difficulty of access and a dread of Spanish cruelty, had retarded any further effort in the same direction; and while the bleaker and less fertile provinces of the north were rapidly filling up with continued emigration, no enterprise was directed to the rich soil and genial climate of the south. Sir Robert Heath, in 1630, indeed, obtained of Charles I. a patent for the foundation of a colony there; but this instrument, from his failure to effect a settlement, became forfeited.

Colonists from Virginia, between the years 1640 and 1650, suffering from religious intolerance, took refuge beyond the borders of that province, and formed settlements on the northern shores of Albemarle Sound—since known as North Carolina. By the fertility of the soil and the mildness of the winters, they soon lived in ease, their cattle and swine finding subsistence in the natural products of the country; and their numbers were yearly increased by fresh emigration. Some adventurers from Massachusetts, in 1661, made an attempt to found a settlement near Cape Fear; but the experiment proved unsuccessful. Their places were, however, supplied by a party of emigrants from Barbadoes, who proceeded to the same

region, and planted a colony there, selecting as their governor Sir John Yeomans, one of their number.

Among the lavish grants which distinguished the administration of Charles II., was one, in 1663, to the Duke of Albemarle (Gen Monk), Lord Ashley Cooper (afterwards the famous Earl of Shaftesbury), to Berkely, the governor of Virginia, and others, conveying to them all Carolina, from the thirty-sixth degree of latitude to the river San Matheo. The patentees, desirous to people their vast territory, gave much encouragement to those who had already settled there, assuring them of considerable political privileges; and Berkely, bringing additional emigrants from Virginia to North Carolina, settled them under the popular rule of Drummond.

By a fresh patent, issued in 1665, the proprietors, their claims extended westward across the entire continent, were empowered to create titles and to institute orders of nobility. This singular privilege was granted, in order that an elaborate constitution, devised by Shaftesbury and the celebrated Locke, might be carried into effect. By this extraordinary instrument, the fruit, doubtless, of painful ingenuity and labour, a system of government was set up, entirely without a precedent in the history of legislation. Its main feature was a hereditary landed aristocracy, dependent on property alone for its right to rule. The territory was divided into counties, of four hundred and eighty thousand acres each, in each of which were to be appointed one landgrave, or earl, and two caciques, or barons. All power was lodged in the holders of real estate, and the proprietors were always to continue exactly eight in number, neither more nor less. With a childish minuteness, the details of pedigree, of fashion, and ceremony, were made the especial province of one of these dignitaries. Such was the constitution, carefully elaborated by the most philosophical mind of the age, which yet, from the unfamiliarity of its author with the practical workings of political machinery, and the needs of a new country, never took practical effect, and soon lapsed into neglect and abrogation.

The colonists at Albemarle, who had already adopted a simple code of laws for their own government, received with much disgust the aristocratic and complicated system which the proprietors had devised; and the latter, not to increase the popular discontent, did not press the immediate adoption of all its particulars. They insisted, however, on establishing a provisional government, but without success; for the people, dissatisfied, imprisoned their collector

OLINAS.

—EMIGRATION  
BARBADOES TO  
RULES II.—  
RY.—CUM-  
NMENT OF  
NORTH  
PEO-  
ON-  
D.

lement in America  
of Virginia. The  
ined with the diffi-  
had retarded any  
e bleaker and less  
up with continued  
ich soil and genial  
0, indeed, obtained  
ony there; but this  
, became forfeited.  
40 and 1650, suffer-  
ond the borders of  
northern shores of  
ina. By the fertility  
y soon lived in ease,  
natural products of  
increased by fresh  
assets, in 1661, made  
ear; but the experi-  
e, however, supplied  
roceeded to the same

and other officers, seized the public funds, and took all the functions of government into their own hands. Their chief leader, who proceeded to England to defend their cause, was there tried for treason, and was acquitted only by the eloquence and influence of Shaftesbury, who considered the insurrection as rather a dispute among the colonists themselves than a revolution against the home government.

The better to carry out their obnoxious constitution, the proprietors next sent out Seth Sothel, one of their own number, as governor. This man, corrupt and greedy, for six years mismanaged the affairs of the province, enriching himself by bribes and extortion. At the end of that time the people put him under arrest, and the assembly tried him and banished him from the province. The proprietors, however ill pleased at the independence of that body, could not deny the justice of the sentence. They approved the measure, and appointed Philip Ludwell as his successor.

In 1670, they dispatched a body of emigrants, under William Sayle, to Port Royal, in South Carolina. In the following year, dissatisfied with the situation, he removed the settlement to the neck of land lying between the rivers Ashley and Cooper, where he founded a settlement named Charleston, in honour of the king, and since known as one of the fairest and wealthiest of southern cities. At his death, which occurred not long after, Sir John Yeomans, already, for some years, governor at Cape Fear, was appointed in his place; and the new settlement gradually absorbed into itself the colonists from that region. A separate government thus established over the two colonies, the names of North and South Carolina came into common usage.

Yeomans, accused of converting his office into an instrument for his own profit, was replaced by West, under whose popular rule the colony continued to increase and prosper. The proprietors, indeed, reaped no fruits from their enterprise, having expended large sums without getting any return. Dutch emigrants, both from New York and the mother-country, attracted by the mildness of the climate and the political freedom enjoyed by the settlers, resorted to South Carolina; and the oppression of the French Protestants, under Louis XIV., also induced numbers of the persecuted sect to take refuge there.

In 1686, James Colleton, a brother of one of the proprietors, was appointed governor, with the title of landgrave. Popular discon-

tent, especially at the elaborate and aristocratic system devised by Locke, was not long in making its demonstration; and the new governor was soon involved in disputes with the colonists. An assembly, elected expressly to resist him, met in 1687; and three years afterwards, an act was passed for his banishment from the province. The English revolution of 1688 had saved the proprietors from a seizure of their charter by the crown. On learning these news, they sent out Ludwell to examine the affairs of Carolina, and to report grievances. Such was the discontent manifested toward the constitution, that it was thought wisest to relinquish it; and, accordingly, in 1693, the whole cumbrous system, with its child's-play at nobility, and its attempt to create institutions which can be made respectable only by long usage and national association, was entirely abrogated and done away.

the functions  
der, who pro-  
d for treason,  
ce of Shaftes-  
dispute among  
the home gov-

n, the proprie-  
r, as gov-  
s mismanaged  
and extortion.  
arrest, and the  
nce. The pro-  
of that body,  
approved the  
sor.

under William  
following year,  
ttlement to the  
ooper, where he  
of the king, and  
southern cities.  
John Yeomans,  
as appointed in  
ed into itself the  
thus established  
h Carolina came

n instrument for  
popular rule the  
prietors, indeed,  
nded large sums  
from New York  
s of the climate  
resorted to South  
rotestants, under  
ated sect to take

e proprietors, was  
Popular discon-

# VIRGINIA,

## CONTINUED.

---

### CHAPTER I.

**RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS IN VIRGINIA.—REVIVAL OF INTOL-  
ERANCE AND OPPRESSION.—GRANT OF VIRGINIA TO COL-  
PEPPER AND ARLINGTON.—POPULAR DISCONTENT.—  
INDIAN WAR.—MURDER OF THE CHIEFS.—INSURREC-  
TION UNDER DACON.—TRIUMPH OF THE PEOPLE.**

THE unfavourable effect of the Restoration on Virginia has been mentioned. The renewal and enforcement of the Navigation Act fettered her rapidly increasing commerce, and the triumph of royalty at home was followed by that of tyranny and intolerance in the provincial government. The great number of servants, or slaves, in effect, for a term of years, who had been brought from England, even after their emancipation, constituted an inferior and uneducated class, easily kept down by an aristocracy of masters and slaveholders, whose power in the state was continually on the increase. There seems to have been even a systematic desire among the government party to keep a portion of the colonists in dependent ignorance. Berkeley thanks God that free-schools or printing presses were unknown in Virginia, and says he hopes there will be none this hundred years; "for learning," he sagely remarks, "has brought disobedience, and heresy, and sects into the world, and printing hath divulged them," &c. Negro slavery, by this time considerably on the increase, was absolute, the control of the master being almost unfettered by any law of restraint.

The Episcopal church was established as the religion of the state; and persecution of dissenters, especially of Baptists and Quakers, was revived. The assembly of burgesses appropriated extortionate sums for their own pay, as legislators, and, by refusing, for many years, to dissolve, set up a species of prescriptive government, little

short of actual usurpation. The fruit of the royal triumph, in the domestic economy of Virginia, was, in short, as accurately summed up by an elegant historian—"a political revolution, opposed to the principles of popular liberty and the progress of humanity. An assembly continuing for an indefinite period at the pleasure of the governor, and decreeing to its members extravagant and burdensome emoluments; a royal governor, whose salary was established by a permanent system of taxation; a constituency restricted and diminished; religious liberty taken away almost as soon as it had been won; arbitrary taxation in the counties by irresponsible magistrates; a hostility to popular education and to the press;—these were the changes which, in about ten years, were effected in a province that had begun to enjoy the benefits of a virtual independence and a gradually ameliorating legislation."

Fresh misfortune awaited the colony in the rash liberality of Charles, who, in 1678, bestowed on Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington, (the latter connected with him by a discreditable tie,) the entire control of Virginia for a term of thirty-one years. The assembly, on learning the news, fearing for the safety of their estates, dispatched agents to remonstrate with the crown, and to endeavour to obtain a charter for the colonial government; but their efforts, after a year's trial; proved ineffectual.

The oppression to which the people of Virginia, after the restoration of loyal and aristocratic power, were subjected, at last drove them into open resistance. Discontented gatherings and a tendency to revolt had prevailed for some time; and, considering that the outrageous taxes levied by their rulers swallowed up nearly all their earnings and profits, it is remarkable how long they endured the usurpation of the authorities. An Indian war was the first cause of insurrection. Hostilities were carried on with the Susquehannas and other tribes, both in Virginia and Maryland, and on one occasion, six chiefs, presenting themselves to treat of peace, were murdered by the enraged settlers. Berkeley, irascible, cruel, and tyrannical, was not without feelings of honor. On hearing of the crime, he exclaimed, "If they had killed my father, and my mother, and all my friends, yet if they had come to treat of peace, they ought to have gone in peace."

The savages, their passions inflamed to madness at this piece of cruelty and ill faith, renewed hostilities with much fury, attacking the English plantations in Virginia, and wreaking a tenfold revenge

IVAL OF INTOL-  
 INIA TO CUL-  
 CONTENT.—  
 —INSURREC-  
 E PEOPLE.

Virginia has been  
 e Navigation Act  
 e triumph of roy-  
 and intolerance in  
 r of servants, or  
 een brought from  
 d an inferior and  
 acy of masters and  
 continually on the  
 natic desire among  
 colonists in depend-  
 schools or printing  
 hopes there will be  
 gely remarks, "has  
 nto the world, and  
 very, by this time  
 control of the master

eligion of the state;  
 ptists and Quakers,  
 priated extortionate  
 refusing, for many  
 e government, little



for the loss of their chiefs. The movement spread, and the people—their lives, by the insufficiency of the government, constantly exposed—demanded the permission to carry on the war themselves. But Berkeley, ever despising the popular opinion, and his interest, it is said, being enlisted in behalf of peace by a monopoly of the beaver-trade, which he held, stubbornly refused his consent. A general insurrection was the result. Under Nathaniel Bacon, an English planter, of wealth and influence, of high courage and independence, five hundred men assembled in arms, resolved on a campaign against the enemy. Berkeley, enraged, proclaimed them rebels, and was levying forces to suppress the movement, when a fresh and formidable insurrection of the people, who demanded the immediate dissolution of the assembly, compelled him to desist, and return to Jamestown. With almost the entire force of the people arrayed against them, the governor and the aristocracy were compelled to yield. The assembly, which had so long sat an incubus on the province, was dissolved, and on the election of a new one, Bacon (successful in his Indian campaign) and a majority of his partisans were returned as members. The successful leader acknowledged his error in acting without a commission, and, to the universal joy of the people, was appointed commander-in-chief.

---

## CHAPTER II.

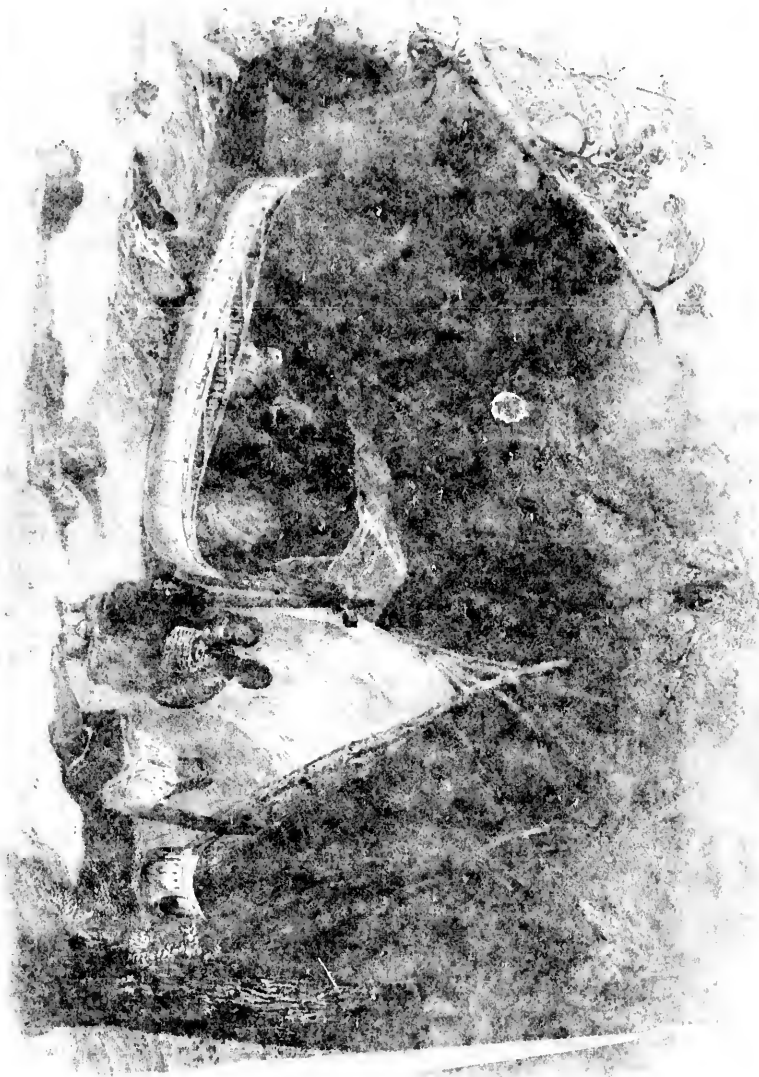
THE POPULAR ASSEMBLY.—MEASURES OF REFORM.—OPPOSITION AND TREACHERY OF BERKELEY.—CIVIL WAR.—TRIUMPH OF THE INSURGENTS.—JAMESTOWN BURNED.—DEATH OF BACON: HIS CHARACTER.—RUIN OF THE POPULAR CAUSE.  
—NUMEROUS EXECUTIONS.—DEATH OF BERKELEY.  
—ADMINISTRATION OF CULPEPPER, ETC.

THE new assembly, with a rational and moderate zeal for reform, proceeded to pass many salutary acts, restricting the magistrates in their arbitrary and extortionate course, providing for the purity of elections, curtailing exorbitant fees and salaries, taking precautions against the spread of intemperance, and finally, by a general amnesty, extinguishing, it was hoped, the seeds of civil conflagration,

, and the people—  
ent, constantly ex-  
e war themselves.  
and his interest, it  
monopoly of the  
l his consent. A  
athaniel Bacon, an  
courage and inde-  
resolved on a cam-  
proclaimed them  
movement, when a  
who demanded the  
him to desist, and  
force of the people  
tocracy were com-  
ng sat an incubus  
tion of a new one,  
a majority of his  
uccessful leader ac-  
mission, and, to the  
ander-in-chief.

ORM.—OPPOSITION  
R.—TRIUMPH OF  
—DEATH OF BA-  
PULAR CAUSE.  
Y BERKELEY.  
ER, ETC.

ate zeal for reform,  
the magistrates in  
ng for the purity of  
taking precautions  
, by a general am-  
civil conflagration,



1775  
1775

The movement spread, and the people, dissatisfied with the insufficiency of the government, consented to be armed. Berkeley, ever despising the popular opinion, and his interests, at the same time, being enlisted in behalf of peace by a monopoly of the sugar-trade, which he held, stubbornly refused his consent. A general insurrection was the result. Under Nathaniel Bacon, an English planter, of wealth and influence, of high courage and independence, five hundred men assembled in arms, resolved on a campaign against the enemy. Berkeley, enraged, proclaimed them rebels, and was levying forces to suppress the movement, when a fresh and formidable insurrection of the people, who demanded the immediate dissolution of the assembly, compelled him to desist, and return to Jamestown. With almost the entire force of the people arrayed against them, the governor and the aristocracy were compelled to yield. The assembly, which had so long sat an incubus on the province, was dissolved, and on the election of a new one, Bacon (successor to the Indian campaign) and a majority of his partisans were returned as members. The successful leader acknowledged his error in acting without a commission, and, to the universal joy of the people, was appointed commander-in-chief.

## CHAPTER II.

THE POPULAR INSURRECTION.—REPEAL OF REFORM.—OPPOSITION AND TREACHERY OF BERKELEY.—CIVIL WAR.—TRIUMPH OF THE INSURGENTS.—BACON'S RETURN.—DEATH OF BACON: HIS CHARACTER.—FATE OF THE POPULAR CAUSE.—NUMEROUS EXECUTIONS.—DEATH OF BERKELEY.—ADMINISTRATION OF BELPEPPER, ETC.

The new assembly, with a rational and moderate zeal for reform, proceeded to pass many salutary acts, restricting the magistrates in their arbitrary and oppressive course, providing for the purity of elections, curtailing exorbitant salaries, and taking precautions against the spread of intemperance, and, in the midst of this industry, nesty, extinguishing, it was hoped, the seeds of civil conflagration,

and the people—  
 commonly ex-  
 war the— you,  
 and his interest, it  
 oness of the  
 his content: A  
 Daniel Brown, an  
 courage and re-  
 solved on a re-  
 proclaimed for  
 movement, who  
 demanded the  
 him to desist, and  
 force of the people  
 eracy were com-  
 g sat an assem-  
 ion of a new one,  
 a majority of his  
 cessful leader ac-  
 mission, and, to the  
 under-in-chief.

P.M.—OPPOSITION  
 A.—TRIUMPH OF  
 DEATH OF RA-  
 PULAR CAUSE.  
 BERKELEY.  
 ER, ETC.

ate zeal for reform  
 the magistrates  
 g for the purity  
 taking precau-

civil conflagration.



TT  
Ja  
mi  
ad  
rac  
ma  
nee  
dia  
lan  
I  
jus  
mer  
cou  
sum  
liam  
and,  
self.  
shore  
been  
pired  
peopl  
the p  
nents  
sort,  
town.  
forth  
The  
India  
with  
the cr  
positi  
ate Ja  
the fle  
was d  
to bur  
fring  
chief,  
half-r  
voyag  
Aft

The demeanour of the governor was dubious, and Bacon, leaving Jamestown, presently returned, at the head of five hundred determined men, in whose presence resistance was in vain. Berkeley advanced to meet them, and, baring his breast, exclaimed, "A fair mark—shoot!" but Bacon told him that not a hair of his head or any man's should be hurt; and the passionate old governor, yielding to necessity, issued the required commission for war against the Indians, and, with the council and assembly, even dispatched to England high commendations of the loyalty and patriotism of his rival.

How insincere were his intentions is evident from the fact that, just as the province was regaining confidence, and Bacon commencing a campaign against the enemy, he repaired to Gloucester county, and again proclaimed him a traitor. The latter, in turn, summoned a convention of the principal persons of the colony at Williamsburgh, when all present took oath to maintain the Indian war, and, if necessary, to support their leader against the governor himself. The latter was endeavouring to levy an army on the eastern shore of the Chesapeake, and, on the advice of Drummond, who had been governor of North Carolina, the governor's term having expired, his retreat was held as an abdication, and a convention of the people was summoned for the settlement of the government. By the promise of plunder, and of freedom to the servants of his opponents, Berkeley gathered, in Accomack, a large force, of the baser sort, with which, transported in fifteen vessels, he sailed for Jamestown. Landing, he fell on his knees, returning thanks to God, and forthwith again proclaimed Bacon and his followers traitors.

The latter, after having made a successful expedition against the Indians, had disbanded his troops; but, on learning these tidings, with a small, but trusty body of followers, at once marched upon the capital. The ignoble forces of the governor showed more disposition for plunder than fighting; and he was compelled to evacuate Jamestown by night, and take refuge, with his people, aboard the fleet. Bacon entered the deserted town the next day, and, as it was doubtful how long he could retain possession, it was resolved to burn it. This was accordingly done, some of his chief adherents firing their own houses, and the little capital, for seventy years the chief, nay, almost the only town in Virginia, was laid in ashes. The half-ruined church, still standing, is all that attests to the passing voyager the former existence of the earliest of American settlements.

After further and signal successes, the career of the insurgents

was brought to a sudden end by the untimely death of their gallant leader, who, on the 1st of October, 1676, perished of a disease contracted by exposure to the damp nights of that unhealthy region. His memory, if tarnished by some errors, will always be held in high respect, as that of the first leader in the cause of American independence. He was, it seems, brave in the field, eloquent in council, magnanimous, honourable. The liberal and moderate legislation of the party which he headed bears witness to his talent for government. The enthusiastic affection of his friends and followers evinces his amiable nature. That he was forced into insurrection and continued civil warfare was, doubtless, the fruit of the tyranny of the ascendant faction, and the ill faith of the arbitrary governor at its head.

With Bacon expired the hope and success of the revolutionary party. Without a leader of talent or influence sufficient to combine them, the isolated and disorganized sections of that party were, in turn, defeated, and severally suppressed by the loyalists. Berkeley was restored to power, and, by frequent and merciless executions, evinced the natural cruelty of his disposition, and the tyrannical sentiment of the cause which he headed. Drummond, and more than twenty others, were hanged; and nothing but a remonstrance from the assembly finally availed to stay the hand of the executioner. Charles II. learned with much indignation of the sanguinary proceedings of his governor, and said that the old fool had taken more lives in the wilderness of Virginia than himself had for the murder of his father. In a proclamation, he severely censured these atrocities, and when Berkeley, not long after, returned to England, public opinion condemned him with equal severity. His death, which took place soon after his arrival, was probably hastened by a sense of the condemnation of the sovereign and the people.

As usual on the suppression of any popular movement, the futile insurrection in Virginia only entailed fresh evils on the country, being made the pretext for refusing it a charter, and continuing its dependence on the crown. All the late acts of the reformed assembly were repealed, and all the ancient grievances and oppressions were reinstated. No printing was allowed, and freedom of speech was curtailed by grievous penalties. Excessive and arbitrary taxes were levied by the authorities, and the condition of the people, especially the poorer classes, was again that of subjection and oppression.

Not long after the departure of Berkeley, Lord Culpepper, one of the two patentees of Virginia, a man of grasping and avaricious nature, obtained from the crown an appointment as governor of that province for life. He arrived in 1680, desirous of nothing but of turning his office to profitable account. His salary was doubled, and, to the great grief of the planters, he had a law passed for levying a perpetual export duty of two shillings on every hogshead of tobacco. After remaining in Virginia but a few months, just long enough to look out for his pecuniary interests, he took his departure for England. The misery of the province, consequent on its late disturbed condition, on the restriction of commerce, and the low price of its staple product, tobacco, produced disorder. Riot and insubordination prevailed, and were suppressed by executions. Culpepper returned for a few months to reap all possible advantages from his patent, at the expense of the suffering colonists.

In 1684, the obnoxious grant was annulled, and the government of Virginia was resumed by the crown. Effingham, the first royal governor, used his office only as a means of procuring petty emoluments, and thus rendered himself contemptible in the eyes of the people. The accession of James II., in the following year, and the ill-fated rebellion of Monmouth, increased the population of Virginia, by a number of convicts, who, on the suppression of that movement, were bestowed by the king on his favourites, and by them, with shameless venality, were sold into slavery in America. Under the arbitrary rule of the new sovereign, scarcely a shadow of self-government was allowed to the people of Virginia. A feeling of resistance being manifested in the assembly, that body was dissolved; but the people, a spirit of liberty reawakened, assumed an attitude so insurrectionary, that the governor, destitute of a force adequate to suppress it, was compelled to temporize, and to forego any attempts at renewed oppression.



## THE SETTLEMENT OF DELAWARE.

THE FIRST DUTCH COLONY IN DELAWARE: ITS DESTRUCTION.  
—SWEDES AND FINNS UNDER MINUIT.—CONQUEST OF THE  
SWEDISH SETTLEMENTS BY THE DUTCH, UNDER STUY  
VESANT.—DELAWARE UNDER THE DUKE OF YORK:  
UNDER PENN.—DISPUTES WITH MARYLAND CON-  
CERNING BOUNDARIES.—SEPARATION OF  
DELAWARE FROM PENNSYLVANIA.

THE disastrous attempt of the Dutch, under De Vriez, in 1631, to found a settlement in Delaware, has been described. ("Dutch in America.") The unfortunate little colony left by that navigator near the site of Lewistown, numbering only thirty-four souls, was cut off by the Indians to avenge the death of a chief, whose life had been sacrificed to the implacable sulkiness of the governor, Gillis Osset. De Vriez, returning from Holland the next year, found no relics of the settlement, except the bones of his countrymen, which lay bleaching on the shore.

The next enterprise in the same direction was that of a small body of Swedes and Finns, who, in 1638, under Minuit, (some time governor of the Dutch at Manhattan, and afterwards in the service of Christina of Sweden,) landed near Cape Henlopen, purchased land of the natives, and built a fort not far from the present site of Wilmington. Attracted by tidings of the mildness and fertility of New Sweden, for so the country was called, Swedish and Finnish emigrants hastened in numbers to the province. A new fort was built on an island below Philadelphia. The claims of the Dutch were resisted, and English adventurers were not allowed to settle. The building of Fort Casimir, by the former people, and its treacherous seizure by Risingh, the Swedish governor, have been described in their appropriate place, as well as the conquest of New Sweden by Peter Stuyvesant, the doughty governor of the New Netherlands. The Dutch company, stimulated by aggression, and fearing little from the distracted and feebly-governed kingdom of Sweden, had

ordered their officer, "to revenge their wrong, to drive the Swedes from the river, or compel their submission." Accordingly, in September, 1655, with a force of six hundred men, Stuyvesant sailed up the Delaware, on an avowed errand of conquest. Before a force, comparatively so formidable, the feeble colonies of Sweden, after a national existence of only seventeen years, were speedily compelled to succumb. The forts were reduced; a portion of the Swedes were sent to Europe, and the remainder, on taking the oath of allegiance, were suffered to remain. Many of their descendants are still living in Delaware.

On the conquest of the New Netherlands by the English, in 1664, the Dutch and Swedish settlements of Delaware came under the authority of the Duke of York. Disputes respecting boundaries soon arose. Lord Baltimore, the proprietor of Maryland, had claimed all the region on the west side of the Delaware as included in his grant; and incursions had been made from that province for the purpose of repelling settlers from the disputed territory. William Penn, the grant of Pennsylvania obtained, desirous of extending his coast line, (it was "more for love of the water," he said, "than of the land,") procured from the duke a cession of all the land for twelve miles around Newcastle, and all lying between that and the sea. On his arrival in America, (1682,) solemn possession of the territory was given to him by the duke's agent, at that town, and Penn addressed a multitude of his new subjects—Swedes, Dutch, and English—who had assembled to witness the ceremony, promising to all freedom, both civil and religious, and recommending virtue, religion, and sobriety of life.

The claim of Baltimore, still asserted, was for some time the subject of negotiation—the two proprietors at first exhibiting a polite, and afterwards a rather acrimonious pertinacity in maintaining their respective pretensions; but, in 1685, it was decided invalid by the Lords of Trade and the Plantations; and the boundary of the rival patentees was fixed by a pacific agreement. The three counties which Penn called his "Territories," and which now constitute the state of Delaware, for twenty years sent their delegates to the general assembly of Pennsylvania; but, in 1703, dissatisfied with the action of that body, procured permission to act by a legislature of their own; the proprietor, however, retaining his claims, and the same governor exercising executive functions over both Pennsylvania and Delaware.

WARE.

S DESTRUCTION.  
QUEST OF THE  
NDER STUY  
E OF YORK:  
AND CON-  
ION OF  
NIA.

e Vriez, in 1631, to  
cribed. ("Dutch in  
by that navigator  
irty-four souls, was  
chief, whose life had  
the governor, Gillis  
next year, found no  
countrymen, which

s that of a small body  
nuit, (some time gov-  
rds in the service of  
open, purchased land  
e present site of Wil-  
s and fertility of New  
ish and Finnish emi-  
A new fort was built  
ns of the Dutch were  
lowed to settle. The  
le, and its treacherous  
ave been described in  
st of New Sweden by  
the New Netherlands  
sion, and fearing little  
gdom of Sweden, had

## THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY.

---

CONQUEST BY THE ENGLISH.—NICHOLS, BERKELEY, AND CARTERET.—EMIGRATION FROM NEW ENGLAND.—SALE OF WEST NEW JERSEY TO THE QUAKERS.—PENWICK, BYLLINGE, AND PENN.—QUAKER SETTLEMENTS.—REMARKABLY FREE CONSTITUTION.—FRIENDLY DEALINGS WITH THE INDIANS.—USURPATION OF ANDROS: ITS DEFEAT.—EAST NEW JERSEY.

AFTER the conquest of the New Netherlands by the English, in 1664, Nichols, the first governor, encouraged the emigration of his countrymen from the adjoining settlements of New England and Long Island into the regions south of Manhattan; and settlements were made at Elizabethtown, Newark, and other localities. The Duke of York, the patentee of the whole country, in the very year of the conquest, assigned to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret the territories lying between the Hudson and the Delaware. In compliment to the latter, who, during the civil contests in England, had held the island of Jersey for the royal party, the country received its present name.

Philip Carteret, appointed governor by the new proprietors, came over the next year, and selected Elizabethtown as the capital of the province. By offering favourable terms, he induced many to emigrate thither from New England, and the population of the colony continued to increase. A question concerning the titles issued by Nichols, combined with other causes of discontent, in 1672, excited a popular movement against the governor, which, however, was finally quieted by concessions from the proprietors.

Berkeley, disappointed in his expectation of profitable returns, in 1674, for the inconsiderable sum of a thousand pounds, sold his share of New Jersey to the Quakers, who were eager for an opportunity to purchase in the New World a refuge for their proscribed

faith and persons. The assignment was made to John Fenwick in trust for Edward Byllinge, whose affairs were embarrassed. A dispute between these two was settled by the intervention of William Penn; and, in 1675, the former, with a large company of Friends, sailed for the Delaware. At a place which he called Salem, near Elsingburg, he established a settlement, and, by agreement with Sir George Carteret, the western portion of the province—thenceforward called West New Jersey—was set off and separated as the share of the new proprietors. Penn and two others, being made the assigns of Byllinge, as trustees for his creditors, divided the country into one hundred shares, which they set up for sale. All the purchasers made vigorous efforts to promote the growth of the province; and, in 1677, a large number of emigrants, mostly Quakers, came over and settled in and around Burlington.

The constitution, which, under the benevolent auspices of Quakerism, was adopted the same year, was of a nature extraordinarily liberal and democratic, considering the age. Perfect freedom of conscience and religion; universal suffrage by ballot; universal eligibility to office; strict accountability of representatives to their constituents; direct election of justices, &c., by the people; extraordinary privileges of jury; non-imprisonment for debt, and prohibition of slavery; such were the grand principles on which rested the earliest legislation of the Friends in the Old or the New World.

Lands were purchased of the Indians, whose rights were especially protected by law, and the chiefs, gathered in council at Burlington, pledged a perpetual league and friendship with the peaceful comers. "You are our brothers," they said, "and we will live like brothers with you. We will have a broad path for you and us to walk in. If an Englishman falls asleep in this path, the Indian shall pass him by, and say, 'He is an Englishman; he is asleep; let him alone.' The path shall be plain; there shall not be in it a stump to hurt the feet."

The tranquillity of this happy province was first disturbed by the violent interference of Andros, the governor of the Duke of York, who forcibly exacted customs of ships trading to the new colony, levied taxes on the inhabitants, and carried matters with a high hand when resisted. On the remonstrance of the people, most forcibly and eloquently set forth, the duke consented to refer the matter of jurisdiction to an impartial commission. By this the claims of his governor were pronounced illegal, and the liberties of New

## JERSEY.

LEY, AND CAR-  
SALE OF WEST  
, BYLLINGE,  
MARKABLY  
NGS WITH  
ROS: ITS

by the English, in  
emigration of his  
New England and  
; and settlements  
er localities. The  
, in the very year  
ir George Carteret  
he Delaware. In  
ntests in England,  
party, the country

proprietors, came  
the capital of the  
need many to emi-  
ation of the colony  
he titles issued by  
t, in 1672, excited  
ich, however, was  
s.

profitable returns, in  
pounds, sold his  
ager for an oppor-  
for their proscribed

Jersey were fully confirmed. An attempt of Byllinge, as proprietor, to assume undue rights, was resisted with equal success, and the Quakers, by advice of Penn, amending their constitution, elected a governor for themselves.

In 1682, East New Jersey was purchased by Penn and a number of others, from the heirs of Carteret. Robert Barclay, conspicuous for his defence of the Quakers, was appointed governor, and strong inducements to emigration were held forth. The cruelties enacted at this time against the Presbyterians of Scotland, caused numbers of that persecuted people to avail themselves of the opportunity for a refuge across the Atlantic. Their coming contributed materially to the well-being of the country—industry, endurance, and piety, being distinguishing traits in their character; and the two Jerseys, not many years afterwards reunited under a single government, owed much of their prosperity to the elements of virtue in the persecuted sects by which they were peopled.

age, as propri  
al success, and  
stitution, elected

and a number  
ay, conspicuous  
nor, and strong  
ruelities enacted  
caused numbers  
opportunity for  
uted materially  
ance, and piety,  
the two Jerseys,  
gle government,  
irtue in the per

## THE SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.

### CHAPTER I.

WILLIAM PENN: HIS YOUTH: HE TURNS QUAKER: IS EXPELLED FROM COLLEGE AND HOME: IMPRISONED FOR HIS OPINIONS: SEVERITY OF HIS FATHER: FRESH IMPRISONMENT: EXERTIONS IN BEHALF OF HIS SECT: HE ENGAGES IN THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY.

WILLIAM PENN, son of the distinguished admiral of the same name, was born at London on the 14th of October, 1644. At the early age of fifteen, he was placed at the University of Oxford, where, being of a temperament naturally religious and enthusiastic, he became deeply impressed by the teachings of Loe, a prominent member of the then almost universally persecuted sect of Quakers. For implication with this obnoxious community, and for resistance to the college authorities, (it has even been said that Penn and his friends tore the surplices of the students over their heads, when an order for the wearing of those garments had been issued,) he and several of his associates were expelled. His father, a man loyal, choleric, and prejudiced, unable to reclaim him by persuasion or argument from his eccentric views, turned him out of doors; but, afterwards, a partial reconciliation being effected, supplied him with the means for foreign travel, hoping, probably, that change of scene and adventure might dissipate his fantastic notions. Turning aside from his journey, the youth engaged in the study of theology at Saumur; whence he returned to England, and commenced that of the law at Lincoln's Inn. Distinguished by purity of life rather than by asceticism of manners, he made a figure corresponding with his social position; was esteemed a young gentleman of fashion, skilled in courtly and even martial accomplishments.

On coming of age, he was dispatched by his father to Ireland, to

take charge of his estates there, and falling in with his Quaker friend, Loe, at a meeting in Cork, all his old impressions readily revived. Imprisoned for attending the proscribed assemblies, but finally released through the favour of the lord-lieutenant, he returned home, where his father, grieved to the soul, used every exertion to change his persuasion. The old admiral, who now probably began to respect the stuff his son was made of, at last even offered to compromise matters so far as to agree that William might wear his hat any where except in presence of himself, of the king, and the king's brother—but even these easy terms of capitulation were refused, and he was again driven from the paternal roof.

He now became openly a preacher of the persecuted sect, which he defended in several publications—an offence for which he was committed to the Tower, and kept close prisoner for some months. In this, as well as his other difficulties, his judges seem to have been entirely at a loss for the motives which could induce a youth of fortune and family to connect himself with a cause so ignominious from the poverty, and so dangerous from the persecution which attended it. Discharged from prison, he returned to Ireland, where he busied himself in comforting his imprisoned brethren, and in procuring their release. He was again committed for public preaching, his trial creating no little excitement; but his father paid the fine which the young Quaker, from motives of principle, had refused to settle, and thus procured his discharge. A complete reconciliation took place, the brave and magnanimous old seaman finally appreciating the traits of courage, of honour, and of independence which his son inherited, though displayed in a field of action so different from his own. "Son William," he said on his death-bed, "if you and your friends keep to your plain way of living and preaching, you will make an end of the priests."

By the death of his father, Penn came into possession of an estate of fifteen hundred pounds a year, and, in 1672, was married to a woman in every way worthy of him—one distinguished by beauty, intelligence, principle, and sweetness of temper. He continued to preach and to write in behalf of the oppressed sect whose cause he had espoused; and the productions of his pen, characterized by simplicity, eloquence, and sound argument, laid a strong hold on public sentiment.

His first action in regard to settlements in the New World, was in 1676, when, having served as arbitrator between Byllinge and

Fenwick, he became one of the trustees of the former proprietor in Western New Jersey. He drew up a plan of government for that province. Religious toleration, trial by jury, and non-imprisonment for debt, were its main constitutional features. In the following year, large numbers of Quakers resorted there from England, and the province soon became a favourite refuge for that oppressed people. Penn, whose efforts were still unwearied in behalf of his suffering brethren, continued, with all his energy, to defend their cause at home, and to aid them in their emigration to the land of freedom and toleration.

---

## CHAPTER II.

PENN OBTAINS FROM CHARLES II. THE GRANT OF PENNSYLVANIA: HIS ADMIRABLE PROCLAMATION TO THE SETTLERS: HE REPAIRS TO AMERICA: GAINS POSSESSION OF DELAWARE: HONOURABLE DEALINGS WITH THE INDIANS: THEIR ATTACHMENT TO HIM.—THE GREAT TREATY.

His designs enlarged by successful experience, and his enterprise aiming at the foundation of a commonwealth more free and perfect than any the world had yet witnessed, in 1680 Penn made application to the crown for a share of the American territory then distributed by Charles II. with such a lavish hand among ambitious or profligate courtiers. If his proscribed opinions were calculated to retard his suit, his personal address and fortunate circumstances were equally suited to favour it. A large sum of money, due to his father from the government, he offered as the price of the desired grant. In March, 1681, a strong opposition overcome, he obtained from the king the patent of a vast tract of territory, containing three degrees of latitude and five of longitude.

In naming his province, his modesty prevented any allusion to himself. He "suggested Sylvania, on account of its woods, but they would still add Penn to it." The king, it is said, was pleased especially by command and sanction this compliment. The vast tracts of Pennsylvania, thus appropriately titled, he was to hold by the payment of two beaver-skins yearly to the crown, and one-fifth of



any precious metals discovered there. Very extensive powers of government were conferred on him personally; powers of which he never availed himself for purposes of selfish profit; and which he used or surrendered only to further the establishment of complete freedom, justice, and toleration over his vast domain. The more effectually to carry out his extensive scheme, he now relinquished the care of the affairs of New Jersey, which province, under his judicious management, had continually improved, both in increase and prosperity. His brief and admirable proclamation to the colonists (Swedes and others), who had already settled in the limits of his grant, cannot be too highly extolled for its simplicity, directness, and honesty. "*My Friends,*" he said, "I wish you all happiness, here and hereafter. These are to let you to know, that it hath pleased God in his Providence to cast you in my Lott and Care. It is a business, that, though I never undertook before, yet God has given me an understanding of my duty and an honest heart to do it up-rightly. I hope you will not be troubled at your chainge and the king's choice; for you are now fixt, at the mercy of no Governour that comes to make his fortune great. You shall be governed by laws of your own makeing, and live a free, and, if you will, a sober and industrious people. I shall not usurp the right of any, nor oppress his person. God has furnisht me with a better resolution, and has given me his grace to keep it. In short, whatever sober and free men can reasonably desire for the security and improvement of their own happiness, I shall heartily comply with—I beseech God to direct you in the way of righteousness, and therein prosper you and your children after you. I am your true friend, Wm. Penn." (April, 1681.)

Fresh emigrants were speedily forwarded to the land of refuge; and Penn, with noble self-denial and thought for the common good, rejected a great offer made to him, by a private company, for a monopoly (very common at the time) of Indian traffic. A system of government was devised, to be submitted to the approval of the settlers themselves; and by a grant procured from the Duke of York, the territory of the present state of Delaware was added to the already vast domain of Pennsylvania. With many of his friends and neighbours, of the proscribed persuasion, the proprietor set sail for America; and after a tedious voyage and numerous deaths on board, on the 27th of October, 1682, arrived at Newcastle.

The next day, great numbers of the original settlers—Swedes,

Dutch, and English—assembled at that town; and ceremonious legal possession of Delaware was delivered to Penn by the agent of the Duke of York. Recommending peace and sobriety to the inhabitants, the proprietor journeyed through the settlements of his grant, and visited his friends in the neighbouring provinces.

With a conscientious regard to the rights of the native inhabitants, seldom evinced by European founders of colonies, he had made strict provision in the articles of emigration and settlement for the protection of the Indians against either fraud or violence. The goods employed in traffic with them, were to be rigidly examined, to test their quality, “that the said Indians might neither be abused nor provoked;” and any difference between the two races was to be decided by a jury of twelve, half Indians and half white men. On his return to the Delaware (1683), occurred that memorable treaty, the delight of history, the favourite theme of art, and the perpetual honour of the faith and truthfulness of both the parties concerned in it.

With a few of his Quaker friends, he met the delegation, itself numerous, from the several tribes with whom the new settlers were to live as neighbours, or to mingle in traffic, or in the chase. Beneath a spreading elm at Shakamaxon, hard by the present city of Philadelphia—then a lonely river bank, covered with pines—in simple and truthful words, he addressed the assembled Algonquins, impressing the advantages of just and loving dealing, and of constant peace and friendship. “I will not call you children,” he said, “for parents sometimes chide their children too severely; nor brothers only; for brothers differ. The friendship between me and you I will not compare to a chain; for that the rains might rust, or the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man’s body were to be divided into two parts; we are all one flesh and blood.” In reply, the chiefs said, “We will live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the sun and moon shall endure.” Presents were exchanged, and the wampum-belts, in commemoration of the event, were given.

No oath confirmed this simple treaty, made in the free forest, by the lonely river, beneath the arching sky, between the wild tribes of America and a people proscribed in civilized Europe as the enemies of society. No deeds were signed, no record of the compact, except the simple wampum, was preserved. But it was never broken. The hands of the savages were never imbrued with

Quaker blood; and, while their descendants inhabited the same land, peace and good-will ever prevailed between them.

"In the following year," to use the language of an elegant historian, "Penn often met the Indians in council and at their festivals. He visited them in their cabins, shared the hospitable banquet of hominy and roasted acorns, and laughed and frolicked, and practised athletic games with the light-hearted, mirthful, confiding red men. He spoke to them of religion, and found that the tawny skin did not exclude the instinct of a Deity. 'The poor savage people believed in God and the soul without the aid of metaphysics.' He touched the secret springs of sympathy, and succeeding generations on the Susquehannah acknowledged his loveliness."

---

### CHAPTER III.

LIBERAL LEGISLATION OF PENNSYLVANIA.—PENN FOUND  
PHILADELPHIA: ITS RAPID INCREASE.—FORMATION OF A  
CONSTITUTION.—GREAT EMIGRATION FROM EUROPE.—  
GROWTH OF THE PROVINCE.—PENN RETURNS  
TO ENGLAND.—HIS SUBSEQUENT CAREER.

A POPULAR convention, assembled at Chester, in December, 1682, was entrusted with the settlement of the government. Under the just and liberal spirit of the proscribed society of Friends, extraordinary improvements in legislation appeared. Primogeniture was abolished, and equal suffrage was secured to all tax-payers. No tax could be levied except by force of law. Murder alone, at a time when capital offences, on the English statute-books, were almost without number, was to be punished by death. The punishment for other offences was mild and reasonable. The original settlers—Swedes, Finns, and Dutch—were assured of the same rights as Englishmen. The benevolent proprietor, rejoicing in his success in founding a free community, and amply repaid for his sacrifices and exertions by the gratitude of his people, concluded the work of legislation, as usual, with words of religious counsel and exhortation.

In the first months of 1683, he selected for the site of his capital that admirable location, close by the scene of his treaty, lying be

tween the Schuylkill and the Delaware. Here he laid out and founded the city of Philadelphia—a city which sprung into existence with a rapidity and prosperity unprecedented at the day, and almost rivalling the Aladdin-like structures in our western regions, which seem the growth of a night—the work of enchantment. In August of that year, it consisted of but three or four cottages. Within two years it contained six hundred houses.

Immediately after its selection, indeed, (March, 1683) a convention was assembled there for the purpose of forming a constitution. By that instrument it was provided that a council and assembly should be elected by the people, the first for three years, and the latter for one. The initiative of laws was reserved to the governor and council, and their ratification depended on the assembly, directly representing the action of the people. The governor was allowed a negative voice on the action of the council. The people received the charter, so unexpectedly liberal, with gratitude and exultation; but the former of these feelings, always short-lived with communities, was, not long after, merged in the eager desire to establish a still more complete form of democracy.

When the tidings of this unexampled generosity and tolerance on the part of the proprietor reached Europe, numbers, especially of the persecuted, from the British isles, from Holland, and from Germany, flocked across the seas to share in the blessings provided by the forethought and magnanimity of a single man. The sudden growth of Philadelphia has been mentioned. That of the whole province was on a corresponding scale—outrivalling even the rapid increase of New England. "I must, without vanity, say," affirms Penn, with just pride, "I have led the greatest colony into America that ever any man did upon a private credit, and the most prosperous beginnings that ever were in it are to be found among us." His humane and glorious mission in the New World accomplished, the executive power entrusted to a commission of the council, the generous founder of Pennsylvania took an affecting leave of the people who owed him so deep a debt of gratitude. Tender remembrance and pious counsel mingled in his last words. "I have been with you," he said, "cared over you, and served you, with unfeigned love; and you are beloved of me and dear to me beyond utterance.

\* \* You are come to a quiet land, and liberty and authority are in your own hands. Rule for Him under whom the princes of this world will one day esteem it an honour to govern in their places."

ted the same land,

of an elegant his-  
and at their fea-  
ted the hospitable  
ghed and frolicked,  
rted, mirthful, con-  
nd found that the  
y. "The poor sav-  
at the aid of meta-  
thy, and succeeding  
his loveliness."

A.—PENN FOUND  
FORMATION OF A  
FROM EUROPE.—  
N RETURNS  
CAREER.

r, in December, 1682,  
ernment. Under the  
y of Friends, extraor-  
Primogeniture was  
tax-payers. No tax  
rder alone, at a time  
e-books, were almost  
th. The punishment  
The original settlers—  
e same rights as Eng-  
ng in his success in  
for his sacrifices and  
ncluded the work of  
nseal and exhortation.  
the site of his capital  
f his treaty, lying be

Returned to England, (1684,) Penn employed his fortune, his influence, his eloquence, in behalf of the oppressed. Thanks to his name, his successful enterprise, and the respect which high integrity will ever command, his voice at court was potential. At his intercession, many hundreds of his unfortunate brethren were released from the prisons in which they had been so long immured. The eagerness of the new sovereign (James II.) to secure immunity for his fellow-communicants, the Catholics, led him to listen favourably to applications in behalf of other dissenters from the Establishment. Penn, in advance of all who sought either exclusive supremacy or mere toleration for their respective creeds, boldly contended for unlimited freedom of conscience, and won immortal honour by the wisdom, the logic, and the eloquence with which his writings in behalf of that grand object continually abound.

The first fruit of his generous concessions to the colonists, was the display of a rather turbulent spirit of freedom. His legislators, new to their business, soon became involved in quarrels with the executive, and evinced much jealousy even of the limited share of power and profit which the single-minded proprietor had reserved as his own. "The maker of the first Pennsylvania almanac was censured for publishing Penn as a lord. The assembly originated bills without scruple; they attempted a new organization of the judiciary; they alarmed the merchants by their lenity towards debtors; they would vote no taxes; they claimed the right of inspecting the records, and displacing the officers of the courts; they expelled a member who reminded them of their contravening the provisions of their charter." These tokens of ingratitude, leading, indeed, to no disastrous results, must have borne somewhat heavily on the heart of the benefactor of the province—that benefactor, who, having expended his estate in delivering the oppressed and founding a nation, and having relinquished in favour of his people the vast profits which avarice, or even common custom might have grasped, found himself, in old age, confined for debt within the rules of the Fleet prison. But a steadfast hope and a serene conscience, the prompters and supporters of his noble career, were equally his consolers under its unprosperous personal termination. His fame, emerging from the clouds of envy and detraction, shines, century after century, with a purer and more steady ray. His memory will ever be cherished by mankind as that of one of the wisest, worthiest, and least selfish of their race.

# THE NORTHERN COLONIES, CONTINUED.

---

## CHAPTER I.

SIR EDMUND ANDROS COMMISSIONED BY THE DUKE OF YORK: HIS ATTEMPTS TO EXTEND HIS AUTHORITY OVER CONNECTICUT — THOMAS DONGAN.—UNION OF THE COLONIES UNDER A ROYAL GOVERNOR.—ANDROS APPOINTED GOVERNOR-GENERAL.—OPPRESSION IN THE COLONIES.—PROCEEDINGS AGAINST CONNECTICUT AND RHODE ISLAND.—ANDROS'S VISIT TO CONNECTICUT.—PRESERVATION OF THE CHARTER.—THE NORTHERN PROVINCES FORCED TO SUBMISSION.—DOINGS IN NEW ENGLAND UPON THE OCCURRENCE OF THE REVOLUTION OF 1688.

At the period of the recession to England of the territories of the New Netherlands, after a brief possession by the Dutch, in 1673-4, James, Duke of York, procured a new royal patent, by which his former rights of proprietorship were secured to him, with enlarged governmental powers. He chose a fit emissary for the furtherance of his arbitrary intentions respecting his New England territory, in the person of Major Edmund Andros, who came over in the autumn of 1674, armed with nearly absolute authority, and entered upon the exercise of his office as governor at New York, in the month of October.

The people of Connecticut, justly proud of the privileges bestowed upon them in the charter obtained from Charles II., by the exertions of Winthrop, made open resistance to the attempt by Andros to extend his jurisdiction over their territory as far as the Connecticut river, which he claimed to be the boundary of New York. The

patent of the duke certainly covered this district, and extended eastward as far as the Kennebec. The year after his appointment, the governor, with several armed vessels, made a demonstration upon the fort at Saybrook, but such was the aspect of determination on the part of the colonial militia, and such the tone of a protest forwarded by the assembly then in session at Hartford, that he judged it prudent to withdraw.

At a later period, after the accession of James II. to the throne of England, the policy of uniting the New England colonies, and subjecting them to the sway of the royal governor, was more energetically pursued. Andros was superseded, in 1683, by Colonel Thomas Dongan, a man of more enlarged views, and generally far more acceptable to the colonists than his predecessor. During the three years of this administration, the principal events of political interest are connected with the history of that powerful aboriginal confederacy, known as the Six Nations.

Upon the demise of the crown, in 1685, the new monarch, with characteristic tyranny and short-sightedness, determined on pushing forward his scheme for a union of the provinces. The charter of Massachusetts was annulled by legal process in the English courts, New Hampshire having been previously separated from that colony, and constituted a royal province, in opposition to the wishes of its inhabitants. Writs of *Quo Warranto* were also issued against the authorities of Conn. and Rhode Island, requiring them to appear and show by "what warrant" they exercised powers of government. Joseph Dudley, a native of the country, was temporarily placed at the head of affairs in the eastern colonies, but was superseded at the close of the year 1686 by Andros, now Sir Edmund, who came out as Governor-General of New England, and in whom, assisted by a royal council, were vested all powers, legislative and executive. He brought with him a small body of regular troops, then, for the first time, quartered upon the New England colonies.

Andros is spoken of as a man of undoubted abilities and attainments; and he appears to have possessed a spirit of military pride which led him to respect an open and bold opposition. The principal acts of tyranny which rendered his administration unpopular, were in direct accordance with instructions from the English court. Power, such as his, can safely be entrusted with no man.

Among other grievances, the liberty of the press was abolished, and the unpopular Edward Randolph, who had previously been

sent out as inspector of customs, was appointed censor. The religious privileges and prejudices of the colonists by various regulations were invaded or outraged. In Massachusetts, marriages were required to be celebrated by a clergyman of the Episcopal Church, to the great disgust and inconvenience of the population. Even the Act of Toleration, by which dissenters in general were freed from former disabilities, was looked upon with suspicion, as being but one step taken by a Catholic monarch towards the final establishment of his own church.

An assessment of taxes, by the governor and council, was at first met by a general refusal and resistance; but the levy was enforced, and obstinate defaulters were punished with severity by fines and imprisonment. A favourite and most productive method of extortion, was the impeachment of titles to lands held under the old grants from towns or from the general assemblies, and ruinous fees were exacted from those who were thus compelled to procure new patents from the royal officials.

Legal process against the governments of Connecticut and Rhode Island had been stayed upon the transmission of memorials to the king, which had been construed into submission to the royal pleasure; but the charters of these provinces had not been formally surrendered. In January of 1687, Sir Edmund proceeded in person to Rhode Island, and put an end to the existing government. He destroyed the public seal, and, without material opposition, established the royal authority, as represented by himself and his creatures.

The General Assembly of Connecticut, being in session during the month of October following, was visited by the governor-general, who came, with an armed force, to compel a surrender of the charter, and to dissolve the provincial government. The treasured document was produced, and the question was discussed at great length. Night came on, and, as it was evident that Andros was fully determined to enforce his claims, a plan was concerted by which the instrument that had assured a free government to Connecticut was at least preserved, although rendered, for the time being, of no effect. The lights were extinguished, and, in the darkness and confusion which ensued, Captain Wadsworth, of Hartford, seized upon the charter, and, making his way out of the assembly-room, succeeded in depositing it unseen in a place of security, viz: the hollow of a huge oak. This tree is still living, and forms an object no less interesting from its antiquity, (being one of the few denizens of the



aboriginal forest now standing in the thickly-settled portions of New England,) and from the great size of its gnarled and picturesque trunk, than from its association with the incident above related. The original charter is still preserved at the secretary's office, in Hartford.

Andros met with no further opposition, and all New England, with New York and New Jersey, finally submitted to his dictation. He maintained his position until the revolution of 1688, by which William and Mary gained possession of the throne of England. An unprofitable eastern expedition against the French and Indians, under the Baron of St. Castine, was among the most noticeable events of the latter portion of his administration.

Upon receipt of the first definite intelligence of the revolution, the people of Boston rose in mass. Andros, his Secretary Randolph, and other officials, were seized and thrown into prison. The venerable Simon Bradstreet, former governor of the colony, was put at the head of a provisional government.

The whole of New England followed the example of Massachusetts. Connecticut and Rhode Island were reorganized under their violated charters, and all the other colonies, in resuming their old forms of government, rejoiced over the forced abdication of the king, and the establishment of a Protestant succession.

Andros was sent to England, and the various charges against him were examined by William and his council. It appeared, however, that he had in no material instance exceeded the powers expressly bestowed upon him, and the complaints were dismissed. Connecticut and Rhode Island received the royal confirmation of their old charters; but Massachusetts was less fortunate, having made defence in the proceedings under the *quo warranto*, to final judgment, which, it was decided, could only be reversed on writ of error

## CHAPTER II.

NEW YORK SUBSEQUENT TO THE REVOLUTION OF 1688 — ASSUMPTION OF AUTHORITY BY JACOB LEISLER: OPPOSITION BY THE COUNCIL.—INDIAN INCURSIONS.—ARRIVAL OF SLOUGHTER AS GOVERNOR.—TRIAL AND EXECUTION OF LEISLER AND MILBOURNE.—COLONEL FLETCHER: HIS FUTILE ATTEMPT TO ENFORCE AUTHORITY IN CONNECTICUT.—CHURCH DIFFICULTIES.—BELLAMONT'S PEACEABLE ADMINISTRATION.—CAPTAIN KIDD, THE PIRATE.

IN New York, the first news of the English revolution created great confusion and terror. Vague reports of intended outrages on the part of the Catholics excited the populace, and hastened a movement which proved fatal to its leaders. Jacob Leisler, a captain of militia, and a Dutch merchant of wealth and respectability, was prevailed upon to take command of a body of insurgents, and to seize upon the fort. The lieutenant-governor, Colonel Francis Nicholson, fled the country, and Leisler, at the head of a "committee of safety," assumed the administration of government, in opposition to the regular municipal authorities. The news of the accession of William and Mary having arrived, he made public proclamation of loyalty to the new sovereigns, and dispatched a letter to them, rendering an account of his proceedings, with a detail of the causes which had rendered such action necessary or expedient. In the month of August, Milbourne, a son-in-law of Leisler, came over from England, and received the appointment of secretary by the self-constituted government. The members of the old council, having retreated to Albany, there proclaimed their intended adherence to the new succession, and their denunciation of the rebellious Leisler. The people of Albany, in convention, determined to await a direct appointment by the crown, and, having conferred on Major Schuyler the command of the fort, refused to submit to the requirements, or yield to the persuasions of Milbourne, who, with a force of fifty men, had come to demand possession in the name of his superior.

In December (1689) came out a royal commission, directed to Nicholson, "or such as, for the time being, takes care for preserving

the peace, and administering the laws," &c. Leisler adopted this as his own warrant for the exercise of the powers he had assumed. Insecure in his position, and opposed by a powerful party, the governor was unable—some say incompetent—to make necessary preparations for the protection of the northern frontier. War existed between England and France, and parties of French and Indians, sent out by Frontenac, the Canadian governor, ravaged the country. In an attack upon Schenectady, some sixty of the inhabitants were slain, twenty-five were carried into captivity, and many who escaped suffered every extremity from exposure during their flight towards Albany. An expedition against Canada, undertaken by New York, Connecticut, and Massachusetts, from want of timely cooperation between the different parties, proved a complete failure.

Leisler succeeded in silencing the open opposition at Albany, but his supremacy was destined to be of short duration. Henry Sloughter, with a commission from the crown, came out as governor in March, 1691. A certain Captain Ingoldsby had landed at New York with troops three months previous, had announced this appointment, and claimed possession of the fort. Leisler refused to surrender the place, and, on the arrival of Sloughter, by order of that official, was arrested, together with Milbourne, and several members of his council.

The first steps taken by the governor, were to appoint a special court for the trial of the prisoners, and to issue warrants for an assembly, or council, to assist him in the administration. The result was what might be expected from the character of Sloughter, and the arbitrary nature of the proceedings. The accused were convicted of high-treason, and sentenced to death. The council concurred with the sentence, and the governor, at first hesitating to push matters to such an extremity, finally signed the death-warrants of Leisler and Milbourne. It has been said that his assent was obtained during a fit of intoxication. The victims perished on the gallows, in the month of May (1691). They met their fate with a composure and in a Christian spirit which must have enlisted general sympathy. Their heirs afterwards received their estates, the attainder being reversed, and the vain ceremonial of funeral honours was performed over the bodies of the unfortunate governor and his secretary.

Colonel Fletcher succeeded Sloughter in 1692, the latter having died suddenly, after holding office about four months. He was commissioned by the crown as commander of the militia of New

Jer  
Har  
Con  
opp  
pan  
his  
caus  
thre  
awed  
and  
Fl  
the a  
vouri  
house  
by the  
sancti  
rogue  
well sp  
Lor  
northe  
Island,  
out his  
people.  
tained  
which  
Bellam  
treasure  
by ferre  
subsequ  
capture  
account  
rude na  
was sup  
present

Jersey and Connecticut, and in the following year proceeded to Hartford for the purpose of enforcing his military claims. The Connecticut authorities refused to submit to his demands, as being opposed to privileges secured to them by charter. The militia companies were assembled, but when Fletcher ordered the reading of his commission, Captain William Wadsworth, the principal officer, caused the drums to be beat, and, adding to this violence a personal threat, "that he would make day-light shine through him," so overawed the colonel, that he desisted from the attempt to take command, and the next day set out for New York.

Fletcher held office until 1698. He had much controversy with the assembly respecting laws for the settlement of clergymen. Favouring the English Church, he was greatly exasperated when the house, after providing for the appointment of ministers to be elected by their parishioners, refused to add an amendment by which the sanction of the governor was required to their settlement. He pro-rogued the assembly forthwith, accusing the members, in his farewell speech, as being possessed of "a stubborn ill-temper."

Lord Bellamont, who succeeded him in 1698, as governor of the northern colonies, (with the exception of Connecticut and Rhode Island,) was a man of noble and generous disposition, and throughout his three years' administration gave general satisfaction to the people. It was at this time that the notorious Captain Kidd obtained a commission from the crown to cruise after pirates, with which the seas were infested. He was furnished with a vessel by Bellamont and others, for this purpose, it being supposed that great treasures might be recovered by the capture of these outlaws, and by ferreting out their places of retreat. The treachery of Kidd, his subsequent piratical exploits, his audacious appearance in public, his capture, and execution, mingled with many fabulous and exaggerated accounts of adventure, have ever since been favourite themes for rude nautical songs and tales. The search for treasures which he was supposed to have buried, has been continued even to the present day.

## CHAPTER III.

NEW CHARTER OF MASSACHUSETTS.—TRIALS FOR WITCHCRAFT IN SALEM.—FIRST EXECUTION.—PARRIS AND HIS FAMILY.—COURT OF EXAMINATION AT SALEM.—COTTON MATHER.—ARRIVAL OF PHIPPS.—NUMEROUS EXECUTIONS.—CONFESSIONS.—CRUELTY INFLICTED.—CHANGE IN PUBLIC OPINION.

IN Massachusetts, after the Revolution, a regular government was established under a new charter, brought out by Sir William Phipps, in 1692, which included under one government with that province the colony of Plymouth, and the partially conquered wilderness eastward to the mouth of the St. Lawrence.

This year is memorable in the history of New England, as the period when a fatal delusion, a superstitious terror, and a bloody fanaticism, resulted in acts which reflected an indelible disgrace upon the eastern colonies. We cannot, perhaps, at this date, arrive at satisfactory conclusions respecting the reputed witchcraft at Salem. Within the last few years a belief in manifestations as strange, and as apparently supernatural as those recorded by Mather and other early historians, has been steadily gaining ground: it numbers among its converts men of every condition, and of every variety of intellectual culture and endowment; and were the same interpretation, as in the seventeenth century, put upon the experiments whereby the phenomena are developed now, and were the same necessity felt for literal obedience to the Hebrew law, scenes more horrible than those we are now about to record, would be renewed in our midst.

We cannot, however, give the actors in those disgraceful proceedings credit for entire honesty and sincerity. Even granting that a foundation for suspicion and accusation was laid by the occurrence of events so unaccountable, that, in that age, reference to the devil and his familiars as their originators was but a natural explanation of the mystery, we can discover too much evidence of private malice, of duplicity, and misrepresentation, to allow of much room for charity towards those who took an active part in the persecutions, or those who endeavoured to justify or gloss over their crimes.

The first prosecutions for witchcraft took place several years previous to the time of which we are now speaking. An unfortunate old Irish woman, named Glover, was executed as a witch in 1688. Her accusation appears to have resulted from personal pique, but she was a Catholic, she spoke indifferent English, and her broken answers were easily interpreted against her.

The first case that occurred in 1692, was that of an Indian woman, named Tituba, a servant in the house of Samuel Parris, minister of Salem. A daughter and a niece of the latter, of the ages respectively of about nine and twelve, became afflicted with strange convulsions, and complained of pains and torments unexplainable by the faculty. They were pronounced bewitched, and Tituba was flogged by her master into a confession that she was the guilty party. Without undertaking to reason upon the cause of the phenomena, to what extent some strange sympathetic mental delusion (such as has from time to time been observed in all ages), may have prevailed, how far men in their sober senses may have become the dupes of artful children, or what really unaccountable physical manifestations may have taken place, we can only give the facts as they actually occurred.

Accusations multiplied with the number of the supposed possessed or afflicted persons. They extended from the poor and helpless to those of good standing and reputation, and a universal panic was excited, which finally worked its own cure. Meantime, a special court was convened at Salem (now Danvers) meeting-house, in the month of April, and the trials formally commenced. The accusers were personally confronted with their supposed tormentors, and added to their former declarations what appeared, to the prejudiced and excited court, direct and convincing evidence.

For minute accounts of the proceedings throughout these trials, as well as for experiments carried out at great length upon the possessed, in a spirit of philosophical inquiry, see the writings of Cotton Mather. He appears to have been a firm believer in the reality of these diabolical manifestations, but such was his dogmatic obstinacy, and his excessive self-esteem, that he never could or would confess to having been deceived. In reading his works, while we laugh at his absurdities, we cannot restrain feelings of the strongest indignation at his cruelty, bigotry, and intolerance. As a historian, he is notoriously fallacious, but we may believe that he saw, or thought he saw, the things which he describes as coming under his personal

observation, for he could scarcely appear in a more unamiable light than that in which he is exhibited upon his own testimony.

In the midst of the excitement (May 14th) Governor Phipps arrived, and assumed his office. He entered at once into the spirit of persecution, and ordered into irons the unfortunates with whom the jails were crowded.

Several sessions of the special court were held during the summer, and by the close of September no less than twenty persons, of various ages and of both sexes, had perished on the gallows as witches or necromancers. Among the most noted of these, was George Burroughs, formerly minister at Salem, and a rival of his successor, the infamous Parris. His demeanour on the scaffold was so strongly indicative of innocence, and such was the effect produced by his prayers and dying address, that it is said that the execution might have been prevented by the spectators if Cotton Mather had not made his way through the throng on horseback, and exerted his usual influence over the people, by vituperation against the victim of superstition. The principal point made against Burroughs, was his denial of the reality of the supposed witchcraft. So strong, indeed, was the popular prejudice, that those only of the accused could hope for favour or safety who were willing to minister to it by confessions and self-accusations.

The wildest absurdities respecting diabolical witch-meetings and incantations thus received corroboration. There was no difficulty in finding evidence against those who refused to confess, provided they had come, from any cause, to be in bad odour, or had personal enemies. The trials, as far as any form of law or rules of evidence are concerned, were the merest mockery; for whatever contradictions in testimony might occur, they were easily explained by the hypothesis that this was only an attempt by the devil to bewilder the witness by taking away his memory, or by making further false impressions. In various instances, direct and cruel bodily torture was resorted to, in order to extort confession. One old man of eighty or ninety, named Giles Cory, refused to plead, and was barbarously pressed to death, being subjected to the "*peine forte et dure*," as provided by the law of England. We must recollect, however, in passing judgment upon all these acts, that, provided their premises were correct, the early colonists only carried out principles universally received, and acted upon for ages, in the parent country. And yet there are those who speak of the degeneracy of modern times, and presume

to draw comparisons unfavourable to the present age, between the existing state of public morals and theology, and that of a former generation.

The first public intimation of any change in feeling or opinion respecting the Salem murders appears in a remonstrance sent in to the general court, at its October session, by the minister of Andover and his parishioners. The special court was then and there abolished, and the interval between that period and the month of January, (1693,) when the regular criminal court was to sit, allowed time for reflection on the part of the excited populace. When the new cases came before a grand jury, twenty-six indictments (out of fifty-six) were found true bills, but upon trial, there were but three convictions. Even those found guilty were relieved, and finally set at liberty.

Mather himself, giving his own ideas, or endorsing those of another, confesses that the matter might have been carried too far; for, he says: "at last it was evidently seen that there must be a stop put, or the generation of the children of God would fall under that condemnation." And again: "It cannot be imagin'd that in a place of so much knowledge, so many, in so small a compass of land, should so abominably leap into the devil's lap all at once."

---

## CHAPTER IV.

CONTROVERSY CONCERNING REVENUE.—SUSPECTED NEGRO REVOLT IN NEW YORK: MOCK-TRIALS OF THE ACCUSED: BARBAROUS PUNISHMENTS.—CONNECTICUT: THE SAYBROOK PLATFORM.  
—MASSACHUSETTS: BURNING OF DEERFIELD: DIFFICULTIES BETWEEN THE GOVERNORS AND ASSEMBLIES.—NEW HAMPSHIRE: ATTACK ON COCHECO: EASTERN INDIAN WAR.—RHODE ISLAND: ITS COMMERCIAL PROSPERITY.—NEW JERSEY: OPPOSITION TO ARBITRARY TAXATION: SCOTCH IMMIGRATION: PROSPERITY OF THE COLONY: ITS UNION WITH NEW YORK.

WITH the commencement of the eighteenth century a series of movements and conflicts commenced in the colonies, the tendency



of which was directly and steadily towards the establishment of those principles which resulted in their final independence. In New York, under the governments of the reckless and profligate Lord Cornbury, of Hunter, of Cosby, and Clark, vexed questions arose respecting the collection and application of the colonial revenues. The public monies had been so scandalously appropriated or misapplied by Cornbury, that, under his successors, care was taken by the assembly to secure the country against similar loss by the dishonesty or incompetency of the executive. The result was an almost constant altercation between the house and the governor's council. The attempt by the latter to alter or amend the fiscal provisions of the former was met by determined resistance, and again and again was the assembly dissolved by the governor.

During the administration of Clark, who, as senior member of the council, took the office of lieutenant-governor upon the death of Crósbey, in 1736, the assembly made express declaration, in an address to the governor, of the principles by which their legislation should be governed, in the following language: "We therefore beg leave to be plain with your honour, and hope you will not take it amiss when we tell you, that you are not to expect that we will either raise sums unfit to be raised, or put what we shall raise into the power of a governor to misapply, if we can prevent it; nor shall we make up any other deficiencies than what we conceive are fit and just to be paid; nor continue what support or revenue we shall raise, for any longer time than one year" (a provision for securing an annual session of the assembly); "nor do we think it convenient to do even that, until such laws are passed as we conceive necessary for the inhabitants of the colony," &c.

In the year 1741, scenes occurred in New York of a character strikingly illustrative of the truth, that the extreme of cruelty is generally the offspring of terror and cowardice. A number of fires took place at short intervals, and although many of them were plainly attributable to accident, suspicion arose that a plot had been formed by the negroes, of whom between one and two thousand were there held as slaves, to destroy and plunder the city. The testimony of two infamous informers, given in the one instance to secure a reward, and in the other, to escape punishment after conviction of a crime, gave form and directness to the accusation. As early as 1712, a panic somewhat similar had resulted in the death of nineteen victims of popular rage and terror, and the old feeling

ishment of those  
In New York,  
ate Lord Corn-  
questions arose  
onial revenues.  
riated or misap-  
was taken by the  
y the dishonesty  
s an almost con-  
r's council. The  
rovisions of the  
a and again was

or member of the  
on the death of  
ion, in an address  
egislation should  
erefore beg leave  
not take it amiss  
at we will either  
all raise into the  
t it; nor shall we  
nceive are fit and  
revenue we shall  
ision for securing  
hink it convenient  
conceive necessary

ork of a character  
reme of cruelty is  
A number of fires  
any of them were  
e that a plot had  
e and two thousand  
er the city. The  
he one instance to  
ishment after con-  
e accusation. As  
ulted in the death  
and the old feeling



*James Oglethorpe*

of what was done towards the establishment of these principles, their final independence. It is a yearning for the reckless and profligate lord Carnarvon, the Duke of Devonshire, and the Duke of Devonshire, vexed queen, and the application of the colonial revenue. The Duke of Devonshire had been so scandalously appropriated, that, under his successors, care was taken to secure the country against similar loss by the dissolution of the executive. The result was an absolute separation between the house and the governor's council. The attempt by the latter to alter or amend the fiscal provisions of the former was met by determined resistance, and again and again the assembly dissolved by the governor.

During the administration of Clark, who, as senior member of the council, took the office of lieutenant-governor upon the death of Crosby, in 1736, the assembly made express declaration, in an address to the governor, of the principles by which their legislation should be governed, in the following language:—"We therefore beg that you will be paid with your honour, and hope you will not take it upon you when we tell you, that you are not to expect that we will raise sums unfit to be raised, or put what we shall raise into the power of a governor to misapply, if we can prevent it; nor shall we make up any other deficiencies than what we conceive are just to be paid; nor continue what support or revenue we raise for any longer time than one year" (a provision for session an annual session of the assembly); "nor do we think it convenient to do even that, until such laws are passed as we conceive necessary for the inhabitants of the colony," &c.

In the year 1711, a riot occurred in New York of a character strikingly illustrative of the truth, that the extreme of cruelty is generally the offspring of terror and covardice. A number of slaves took place at several intervals, and although many of them were plainly attributable to accident, suspicion arose that a plot had been formed by the negroes, of whom between one and two thousand were there held as slaves, to destroy and plunder the city. The testimony of two infamous informers, given in the one instance to secure a reward and in the other, to escape punishment after the conviction of a crime, gave form and directness to the accusation. In early as 1712, a panic somewhat similar had resulted in the death of nineteen victims of popular rage and terror, and the old

... the  
... and Corn  
... reve  
... take  
... the dis  
... an al  
... 's coun  
... rove  
... and ag

r member of  
on the  
on, in an  
egislation  
therefore be  
not take it  
at we will  
all raise  
it; nor  
receive  
revenue  
ision for  
think it  
conceive

rk of a  
reme of  
A number  
ny of them  
that a pi  
and two  
for the city  
the one ins  
ishment  
he accusati  
alted in the  
and the old



Fig. 17. Putnam from a pencil sketch by J. M. Townsend in the possession of S. Salaman, Jr.

ISRAEL PUTNAM

*Israel Putnam*



was now revived with tenfold virulence. A great number of arrests were speedily made, and when the trials came on a strong bias was the public prejudice that, of the eight lawyers who then constituted the entire legal fraternity of the city, none would lend his services in the defence of a prisoner. "All assisted by turns on behalf of the prosecutions. The prisoners, who had no counsel, were tried and convicted upon most insufficient evidence. The lawyers vied with each other in heaping all sorts of abuse on their heads, and Chief-Justice Delancey, in passing sentence, vied with the lawyers. Many confessed, to save their lives, and then accused others. Thirteen unhappy convicts were burned at the stake, eighteen were hanged, and seventy-one transported."\*

Two of the victims were white men; the others were partly slaves and partly free blacks. One of the whites appears to have been condemned rather from the circumstance that he was a Catholic, and, as such, obnoxious to popular prejudice, than from any respectable evidence of guilt. There is no probability that any plot had been formed, although some of those who received punishment may have been guilty of incendiarism.

The history of Connecticut, during the first half of the eighteenth century, presents little of historical importance, except its connection with the other provinces in military operations, elsewhere briefly described. The most important local measure of the period was the establishment of "the Saybrook Platform," by an ecclesiastical convention, called in 1708, by a legislative act. "At a subsequent session of the legislature, it was enacted that all the churches united according to the Platform, should be owned as established by law, allowing, however, to other churches the right of exercising worship and discipline in their own way, according to their consciences."†

In the frontier war with the French and Indians, which lingered through the latter portion of the seventeenth century, and after a short interval of peace, broke out again in 1704, the border towns of Massachusetts suffered severely. In February of the latter year, a party of three hundred French and Indians, the former under command of Hertel de Rouville, attacked the town of Deerfield in the night. The place had been partially protected by palisades, and about twenty soldiers were quartered there, but these had been

\* Hildreth's History of the United States.

† Hale's History of the United States.

grossly negligent in not mounting guard, and the surprise was complete. The popular narrative of Mr. Williams, the minister, gives a vivid description of the calamity. "Not long before the break of day," he says, "the enemy came in like a flood upon us, our watch being unfaithful." The inhabitants made what resistance they could, but such was the suddenness of the assault, and the superiority of the enemy's force, that the strife was soon at an end. The town was burned; forty-seven of its defenders perished on the spot; and a great number of prisoners—men, women, and children—were marched off through a deep snow towards Canada—"nineteen of whom," says the narrator, "were afterwards murdered by the way, and two starved to death near Coos, in a time of great scarcity or famine the Indians underwent there." Mrs. Williams was among the victims on the route. Those who finally reached their place of destination, were kept prisoners for several years. Fifty-seven of them were sent back to Boston in 1706.

The operations against Canada, in which the New England colonies were jointly engaged, during the few years succeeding this period, have already been described in the history of the French Canadian settlements. The long-continued war had greatly checked the growth of the exposed colonies, and, at the conclusion of peace in 1713, Massachusetts was left burdened with a heavy debt.

For many years thereafter, the general assembly of this colony was in continual controversy with a succession of royal governors respecting the establishment of a fixed salary, which should render the position of the latter more independent. The demand for this measure was firmly refused, and it was finally settled that the governor should be paid only by an annual appropriation.

For the important colonial expedition against Canada in 1745, and the fall of Louisburg, see the articles upon Acadia, the settlement and history of Canada, &c., under the title of the French in America.

We find little of public interest to record of the sparsely populated colony of New Hampshire from the time of its separation from Massachusetts, at the close of Andros' administration, up to the events which immediately preceded the American revolution. Many strange tales are told of incidents connected with the Indian wars, the frontier position of the colony rendering it peculiarly liable to hostile incursion. Among these is the account given of the attack upon Cochecho, or Dover, in 1689. One Major Waldron had com

mand of a garrison sufficient to protect the post, if due care had been taken to guard against surprise.

The enemy were let in, in the night, by two squaws who had obtained permission to sleep in the fortified houses. "The English were completely overpowered, fifty-two were killed or carried away captive; among the former was Major Waldron. The old warrior (he was eighty years of age) defended himself with astonishing strength and courage, but was finally struck down from behind. Bruised and mangled, he was placed in a chair upon a table, and the savages, gathering round, glutted their long-cherished vengeance by cutting and torturing the helpless captive. He was in bad odour with the Indians for having, as they alleged, defrauded them in former trading transactions. It was reported among them that he used to 'count his fist as weighing a pound, also that his accounts were not crossed out according to agreement.' Placed, as above-mentioned, upon a table, some of them 'in turns gashed his naked breast, saying, I cross out my account. Then, cutting a joint from his finger, would say: will your fist weigh a pound now?' They continued these cruelties until he fainted from loss of blood, when they dispatched him."\*

The expeditions of this period against the eastern Indians and French, are described in the quaint narrative of Colonel Benjamin Church, who closed his military career in these services. In the three years' Indian war, which broke out in 1722, the settlements in New Hampshire were constantly endangered, and on many occasions suffered severely from savage depredations. Of all the events of the war, none was more celebrated in its time, than the expedition under Captain John Lovewell, and the fight at Pigwacket, on the Saco, in which he and more than half his companions perished.

The colony of Rhode Island, under the charter of 1663, resumed upon the deposition of Andros, continued to prosper. Its position secured it against danger from Indian invasion, and its excellent harbours gave opportunity to the enterprising population for extensive commercial operations. A large back country was supplied with foreign goods from Newport. It is even said to have been a matter of serious question, in early times, whether New York could ever compete with this prosperous sea-port; so true it is that a stimulus to enterprise and exertion is far more important to the welfare of a country than the greatest natural advantages. The

\* Indian Races in America.



ugged soil of New England has nourished a race, the field of whose exertions is boundless: the inhabitants of the barren island of Nantucket have been, so to speak, driven to employ their energies in enterprise, than which none has proved more permanently profitable.

New Jersey was among the foremost and most earnest of the northern colonies, in resistance to arbitrary power on the part of her governors. The imposition of a duty, and the levy of a tax by Andros, when he was first commissioned by the Duke of York, was the occasion of a remonstrance, in which the standing claim, that taxes should not be imposed without the people's assent, was strongly and successfully urged.

Under the management of Penn and his associates, a new impetus was given to the prosperity of the colony by the immigration of a vast number of the persecuted Presbyterians from Scotland. They formed a sober and industrious population, well fitted to mingle upon terms of sympathy and brotherhood with the Quaker inhabitants and the descendants of the Puritans, by whom the country was peopled. Glowing accounts are given of the rapidity with which the lands were brought under cultivation, of the efficient means which were taken to secure the blessings of free education, and of the general thrift and prosperity of the colony.

New Jersey, together with New York and the New England colonies, was brought under the domination of Sir Edmund Andros in 1688. For many years after the revolution of that date, its affairs remained in an unsettled state; but in 1702, a surrender of their legislative powers by the proprietors, resulted in the temporary union of the province with New York, then under the government of Cornbury.

Gov. SALTONSTALL.—This appears to be the proper place to give some account of a man who wielded, for many years, an influence in the colony equaled only by that of our first Winthrop. Gurdon Saltonstall was born at Haverhill, Massachusetts, in 1666, and graduated at Harvard in 1684. He was ordained at New London, on the 25th of November, 1691. His reputation soon spread through the colony, and his influence over the clergy finally became almost absolute. They appeared to regard him with sentiments akin to idolatry. The structure of his mind and character was such as led him inevitably to cling to strict ecclesiastical discipline, and, feeling few of the infirmities of our nature, he had little patience with the faults of others. His personal appearance, as has been before remarked, was so striking and imposing that the Earl of Bellamout regarded him as better representing the English nobleman than any other gentleman whom he had seen in America. He was more inclined to synods and formulas than any other minister of that day in the New England colonies. The Saybrook platform was stamped with his seal, and was for the most part an embodiment of his views. In an episcopal country he would have made a bishop, in whose presence the lesser lights would scarcely have been seen to twinkle.

On the death of Gov. Fitz John Winthrop, in 1707, he was chosen governor of the colony, and continued in office until his death, which took place on the 20th of September, 1724.—*Hollister's History of Connecticut.*

# THE SOUTHERN COLONIES, CONTINUED.

## CHAPTER I.

CHARTER OF THE COLONY OF GEORGIA.—FIRST ARRIVAL OF COLONISTS.—SETTLEMENT OF SAVANNAH.—INDIAN NEGOTIATIONS.—MARY MUSGROVE.—CESSION OF INDIAN CLAIMS.—CHARACTER OF IMMIGRANTS TO GEORGIA.—TRAFFIC IN NEGROES PROHIBITED.—FREDERICA FOUNDED.—WAR WITH SPAIN.

As late as the year 1732, when plans for the settlement of the country included between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers were first actively undertaken, the whole district, together with the adjoining territory, now included in the state of Georgia, remained untenanted, except by savages, and a debatable ground between the English colonies and those of Spain. In the month of June, in the year above-mentioned, James Oglethorpe, with twenty associates, in England, obtained a charter from George II., for the foundation of a colony in this unoccupied region—the special object of the grantees being to provide an asylum for poor and imprisoned debtors, for the subjects of religious persecutions, and for all standing in need of charity, who might, by removal to a new country, be rendered eventually self-dependent, useful, and prosperous.

The leader in this enterprise was a soldier and a scholar, and, although yet a young man, was possessed of experience in public life, and maturity of judgment, which well qualified him for his responsible undertaking. He had been for several years engaged in efforts for the amelioration of the condition of the multitudes confined for debt, in Great Britain, and his exertions had awakened much attention among the benevolent and philanthropic. He met with a ready response to his call for funds to aid in the transportation and establishment of the members of his new colony.

Oglethorpe sailed for America in November, 1732, with one hundred and thirteen emigrants. He first landed at Charleston, where provisions were provided by the inhabitants for the present support of the voyagers, and boats for their conveyance to their new homes.

The site occupied by the present city of Savannah, on Yamacraw Bluff, was fixed upon for the first settlement. Elevated above the surrounding level, a few miles from the entrance of the river, this position commands a beautiful and extensive view in the direction of the sea. A tribe of the Muscogeans, or Lower Creeks, dwelt in the vicinity. These "were peaceably disposed towards the white settlers, but the governor of the infant colony thought it advisable to put himself upon safe ground as regarded the Indian claims. He therefore secured the services of a half-breed woman, named Mary Musgrove, who could speak English, and, by her mediation, brought about a conference with the chiefs of the tribe.

Mary had formerly married a white trader from Carolina. Besides her usefulness as an interpreter, she had such influence over her tribe, that Oglethorpe thought it worth his while to purchase her services at the rate of one hundred pounds a year. She became, afterwards, a source of no little danger and annoyance to the English.

Fifty chiefs of the Creek nation were assembled at the place of conference, and Tomochichi, the most noted among those then known to the settlers, made an amicable speech, proffering, at the same time, a present of a buffalo-skin, adorned with eagles' feathers.\* By the terms of the treaty, the king of England was acknowledged by the Indians as their sovereign, and provisions were made for the preservation of peace and quiet between them and the settlers.

"The lands lying between the Savannah and Altamaha were made over to the English, with all the islands on that coast, except St. Catharine's and two others, which were reserved for the use of the Indians as bathing and fishing stations. A tract was also set apart for the latter to encamp upon when they visited their white friends, a little above the Yamacraw Bluff."

The liberal offers of the patrons and proprietors of the new colony of Georgia—religious freedom, (to the exclusion, however, of Papists,) personal security, free grants of land, free passage, and a temporary supply of provision—proved strong inducements to

\* Indian Races of America.

immigration. Not only the poor outcasts who had gladly availed themselves of the assistance of the charitable, thronged to the settlement, but a thrifty and industrious population poured in from Scotland, Switzerland, and Germany. A considerable body of Moravians, from the latter country, arrived in March, 1734, and with the assistance cordially proffered by Oglethorpe, commenced a settlement at the mouth of Ebenezer creek, which empties into the Savannah, a considerable distance above the capital. The Scotch, who arrived in the following year, settled at Darien, called by them New Inverness.

In February, 1736, the governor, returning from England, whither he had voyaged to procure contributions and recruits for his colony, brought with him about three hundred immigrants. A portion of these were Moravians, and among them was the celebrated John Wesley, who came out fired with religious zeal for the conversion of the Indians.

A general spirit of good-will, peace, and content, seemed to pervade the community. The powers of government were, it is true, vested in the trustees, under the charter, but these benevolent individuals, who received no emoluments for their services, appear to have had the interests of the colony at heart. A vain attempt was made, indeed, to secure the settlement against the evils of slavery, the importation of negroes being forbidden; but within a few years the inhabitants became convinced that the condition of their neighbours, who availed themselves of the labour of blacks, was more prosperous and promising than their own, and the natural result of this conclusion, was the permanent establishment of the present servile system.

In February, (1736,) the town of Frederica, on St. Simon's Island, was laid out, under the superintendence of the governor, in person, advantage being taken of an old Indian clearing in that locality. From St. Simon's, Oglethorpe extended his journey southward, through the inland channels, which border the whole coast, taking possession of the country in the name of the king, and marking out sites for defensive posts. The English claim included all north of the St. John's, while, on the other hand, the Spaniards asserted title to the whole of Georgia, and even included in their demands a portion of South Carolina, limiting their territory by St. Helena Sound.

These, and other conflicting claims, resulted in war between the two nations. Oglethorpe having received a military commission

as brigadier-general over the forces of Georgia and South Carolina, busied himself in precautionary measures for the defence of the colonies. The fort at Frederica was completed and strengthened, as forming one of the most important strongholds on the coast. His special attention was devoted to a confirmation of the good-will of the natives, among whom Spanish agents had been for some time occupied in sowing distrust and suspicion. The Creeks, however, still retained the greatest personal attachment to Oglethorpe. He was among the few officials who kept faith with them, and they could not fail to appreciate his heartiness and sincerity. In 1739, he attended a great meeting of the chiefs, far in the interior, on the Chattahoochee, where he smoked the calumet of peace with the assembly, and renewed the old treaties of friendship and mutual protection.

---

## CHAPTER II.

OGLETHORPE'S EXPEDITION AGAINST ST. AUGUSTINE: SIEGE OF THE TOWN: FAILURE AND RETURN OF THE EXPEDITION.—SPANISH INVASION IN 1742.—DEFENCE OF FREDERICA.—STRATAGEM OF OGLETHORPE.—THOMAS BOSOMWORTH: HIS INTRIGUES WITH THE INDIANS: LITIGATION WITH THE COLONY.—GEORGIA A ROYAL PROVINCE.

WITH the commencement of the year 1740, an expedition was undertaken by General Oglethorpe against St. Augustine. He readily reduced two small Spanish outposts, and encamped his forces in the vicinity until he could procure reinforcements from Carolina. These arrived about the close of May, and, with no less than one thousand regular troops and militia, and a considerable body of Creek allies, he laid siege to the town. The undertaking resulted in disappointment. St. Augustine was well garrisoned and fortified; the besieging troops were reduced in numbers and efficiency by desertion and by the diseases incident to the season, and the general was compelled to raise the siege and to retreat into Georgia.

No further hostile demonstration, of any importance, was made by either colony for a space of two years, at the end of which period the inhabitants of Carolina and Georgia were alarmed by reports of the approach of a large Spanish fleet. The force embarked at the West Indies for the conquest of the Southern English colonies, is set down at some three thousand men; the fleet numbered over thirty sail. Oglethorpe, who could procure no aid from Carolina, exhibited great bravery, energy, and good generalship in the defence of Georgia. He reinforced the garrison at Fort William, on Cumberland island, already beset by the enemy, and then betook himself, with his main force—greatly inferior to that of the assailants—to his most defensible position, at Frederica.

Thither he was pursued by the Spanish fleet, which entered the inlet on the 5th of July, (1742,) in spite of the English batteries, and effected a landing on the island. Fortunately, the only road leading to Frederica, was defensible, being flanked by a swamp on one side and a thick forest on the other. Several attempts to force a passage were met by an obstinate and successful resistance. Some days later, by a pretended dispatch, designedly allowed to fall into the hands of the enemy, Oglethorpe succeeded in deceiving the Spanish commander into a belief that large reinforcements were momentarily expected from Carolina. This idea was strengthened by the appearance of some small vessels off the coast.

The Spaniards made one more vain attack upon the position of the English, and then reembarked—the invasion having proved as fruitless as that against St. Augustine, in 1740. Oglethorpe bade a final adieu to the colonies in the year following these events. He lived to a venerable old age, respected and admired for every quality, moral and personal, that can command esteem and conciliate good-will.

After his departure, the provisions against slavery soon became a dead letter, and there were not wanting advocates of the system among the most noted religionists of the day. George Whitefield, whose preaching had already given him a wide celebrity, expressed himself in its favour, trusting that the negro race might be benefitted by translation from a savage life to the society of Christians. The number of white colonists, at this period, was probably not far from three thousand.

“The year 1749 was memorable for a most audacious attempt on the part of one Thomas Bosomworth to aggrandize himself by

and South Carolina, the defence of the and strengthened, as on the coast. His of the good-will of been for some time he Creeks, however, to Oglethorpe. He with them, and they sincerity. In 1739, in the interior, on the of peace with the friendship and mutual

I.  
 AUGUSTINE: SIEGE  
 OF THE EXPEDITION.  
 DEFENCE OF FRED-  
 ERICA.—THOMAS  
 OGLETHORPE WITH THE IN-  
 TERIOR COLONY.—  
 VINCE.

1740, an expedition was sent to St. Augustine. He was met by reinforcements from the coast in May, and, with no less success, he repulsed the Spaniards from the town. The undertaking was well garrisoned and supported in numbers and efficiency. In the season, and he was obliged to retreat into

attaining a supremacy over the Creeks. He had been, formerly, a chaplain in Oglethorpe's regiment, and had married Mary Musgrove, his half-breed interpreter. In December, of 1747, this man fell in with a company of chiefs, belonging to the nation, then on a visit to Frederica; and persuaded them to sign certain articles, acknowledging one of their number, named Malatche Opiya Meco, as rightful king over the whole Creek nation. Bosomworth then procured from Malatche a conveyance, for certain considerations—among other things, a large quantity of ammunition and clothing—of the islands formerly owned by the Indians, to himself and his wife Mary, their heirs and assigns, 'as long as the sun shall shine, or the waters run in the rivers, for ever.' This deed was regularly witnessed, proved before a justice of the peace, and recorded in due form. Bosomworth made some efforts to stock and improve these islands, but, his ambition becoming aroused by success in his first intrigue, he entered upon one much more extensive. By his persuasions, his wife now made the extraordinary claim that she was Malatche's elder sister, and entitled to regal authority over the whole Creek territory."\*

No matter how shallow a claim may be, if openly and obstinately persisted in, it will generally obtain credit with some. A great disturbance ensued, and, at one time, the town of Savannah was in no small danger from the Indians of Mary's party, who appeared in defence of her asserted rights. A long and wearisome litigation in the courts of Great Britain was maintained by Bosomworth and his brother, Adam, the Indian agent in Carolina, with the colony of Georgia. Final decision was not rendered until 1759, when Mary and her husband had their title to St. Catharine's island confirmed. They passed the remainder of their lives in quiet possession of the property.

Prior to this period, in 1754, a royal government had succeeded the surrender of their chartered rights by the trustees. The colony was not exempt from the usual difficulties, jealousies, discontent, and hardships which so generally beset new settlements, and to which Georgia was peculiarly exposed from the heterogeneous character of its inhabitants. The only important events in which she bore a part during the further continuance of the colonial system, are connected with the Cherokee wars, of which a brief account will be given hereafter.

\* Indian Races of America.

## CHAPTER III.

**SOUTH CAROLINA: RELIGIOUS CONTROVERSIES: ARCHDALE'S ADMINISTRATION: MOORE'S EXPEDITION AGAINST ST. AUGUSTINE: INVASION OF INDIAN TERRITORY: FRENCH FLEET ON THE COAST: CULTURE OF RICE: INDIAN CONSPIRACY: REVOLT AGAINST THE PROPRIETORS: THE CHARTER DECLARED FORFEIT: SOUTH CAROLINA A ROYAL PROVINCE.—NORTH CAROLINA: POLITICAL DISTURBANCES: A PROSPEROUS ANARCHY: SEPARATION FROM SOUTH CAROLINA.**

FROM the period of the revolution, in 1688, until about the close of the century, South Carolina, although steadily increasing in population, wealth, and political importance, was much disturbed by religious dissensions. The sober and peaceable Huguenots were in favour with the colonial proprietors, but a strong opposition arose in the province to the admission of these foreigners to equal privileges with those of English descent and attached to the established church. This controversy distracted, in a greater or less degree, the successive administrations of Sothel, Ludwell, and Smith. The appointment of John Archdale, a Quaker, and a man of generosity and liberality, in the year 1695, gave promise of a better state of things.

This worthy governor, by moderate but effective regulations, succeeded in quieting the turbulent factions of the colony, and in conciliating, by protection and kind offices, the neighbouring tribes of Indians and the Spanish colonists of Florida. The dangerous shoals of Cape Fear, lying nearly out of sight of the low shore, have always been the dread of navigators upon the coast, and in these early times the want of proper instruments for determining the longitude, rendered their condition much more perilous. It was no small blessing to the unfortunate mariners who, at this period, from time to time, suffered shipwreck on the cape, to meet with kind treatment, shelter, and assistance from the coast Indians. From first to last, the aborigines of America have shown themselves ready to reciprocate kindness and good-will. In almost every instance when they have made unprovoked attacks upon the whites, the cause can be traced to some error or misconception.



When Archdale left the colony, former dissensions were revived, although he still exerted all his influence with the proprietors for the maintenance of religious liberty. The appointment of James Moore, represented as a grasping and selfish man, to the office of governor, was not conducive to quiet and prosperity.

Under his administration, war having broken out between England and Spain, a colonial expedition was planned against St. Augustine. Bound on this enterprise, Moore sailed for Florida, in the month of September, 1702, at the head of about six hundred volunteers. He succeeded in capturing the town, but the strong military fortress constituted a safe and defensible place of retreat for the Spaniards. While waiting the arrival of artillery for the reduction of the fort, several Spanish vessels arrived off the harbour, and Moore was obliged to beat a retreat by land, leaving his vessels, stores, &c., to the enemy. The expence of the fruitless undertaking was defrayed by a large issue of colonial bills of credit.

In the month of December, of the same year, Governor Moore retrieved his credit as a general, by a successful march through the extensive intervening wilderness, and a descent upon the Indians and Spanish, on the coast of Appalache. The hostile settlements of that whole neighbourhood were broken up. The Spaniards were enabled to defend the fort of Ayavalla, but the assailants burned the adjoining church. Between one and two hundred Indians were carried off captives, to be afterwards sold as slaves.

In 1706, the Episcopal establishment was extended to South Carolina, but the condition of dissenters was, at the same time, rendered more safe by a definite toleration in their religion, and security of their civil rights. Sir Nathaniel Johnson at this time held the office of governor, and had an opportunity to distinguish himself by a brave and determined defence of the coast against a French fleet sent out from Cuba to invade the country. The enemy met with heavy loss at every attempt to land, and one of their vessels fell into the hands of the colonists.

The culture of rice, introduced a number of years previous, had by this time become extensive, and proved a source of profit to the planter unequalled by any previous agricultural enterprise. Indigo, an article which has been of late years neglected, was also found a profitable crop by the early planters of the southern colonies.

In the spring of 1715, the machinations of the French and Spaniards stirred up a most dangerous conspiracy of the Yemassee,

Uches, and other Southern tribes, against the English settlements. The detached and unprotected villages and plantations of the frontier were ravaged, and some four hundred of the inhabitants perished, or were reserved for the worse fate of prisoners to the savages. The main body of the Indian confederates was finally defeated by the colonial forces, under Governor Charles Craven, near the Salkichachie.

The neglect of the proprietors to furnish any means of defence for the colony, their refusal to make remuneration for the heavy expense of the late Indian war, oppressive regulations, opposition to necessary enactments, and the maintenance in office of obnoxious individuals, resulted in a popular out-break against their authority. The assembly, in 1719, chose James Moore as governor, and openly defied the proprietary officers. In the year following, the matter was examined into by the English government; the charter to the proprietors was declared forfeited; and Francis Nicholson received the appointment of governor. The colony continued, thenceforth, a royal province. All the claims of the proprietors to rent and other perquisites were, some years later, acquired by purchase on the part of the crown. Friendly relations with the neighbouring Indian tribes were solemnly established in 1730. The Cherokees, at a great council held at Nequassee, in the Tennessee valley, concluded and signed, by the marks of their principal chiefs, a treaty of alliance with the English. Seven of their number were taken to England, that their reports, on their return, might impress the tribe with some adequate conception of the number and power of their allies.

The scattered population of North Carolina, which was first included under the same grant with the southern province, was governed, if government it could be called, by a deputy from the governor of South Carolina. The greatest freedom of opinion and liberty of action prevailed, but affairs went on very quietly until the beginning of the eighteenth century, when an attempt at the establishment of the Church of England aroused an extremely hostile spirit among the Quakers and other dissenters, who constituted no small portion of the inhabitants. A conflict of claims, in 1705, between Glover and Cary, for the executive office—the one being chosen directly by the proprietors, the other by the governor of South Carolina—gave fresh impetus to a party strife theretofore unknown in the colony.

For a number of years, the community appears to have existed

almost without law; but an immigration of industrious and frugal Swiss, Germans, and other Europeans, continued to extend civilization through the comparatively barren district. The province was already noted for its large exportation of lumber, pitch, tar, and turpentine. In 1729, when, as before mentioned, the disputes between the inhabitants of Carolina and the proprietors were settled by an assumption, or purchase, of the rights of the latter by the crown, North Carolina was first constituted an entirely separate province, the governor being selected by royal appointment, and the legislative assembly being chosen by the people.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

VIRGINIA UNDER ROYAL GOVERNORS: STATE OF THE COLONY: CHURCH CONTROVERSIES.—PENNSYLVANIA A ROYAL PROVINCE: THE PROPRIETOR REINSTATED: POLICY OF PENN.—DELAWARE: DEATH OF PENN: HIS SUCCESSORS.—MARYLAND: ITS CATHOLIC POPULATION: GOVERNMENT OF THE ASSOCIATION: OPPRESSIVE ENACTMENTS: THE PROPRIETORS RESTORED.

VIRGINIA, subsequent to the English revolution, remained a royal province during her continuance as a colony. Legislation was confided to a governor appointed by the crown, assisted by a council of his own nomination, and to an assembly elected by the people. The first successive incumbents of the highest office in the province were Francis Nicholson and Sir Edmund Andros; the same whose tyranny and exactions had previously exasperated the New England colonies.

These officials were invested with high, and even arbitrary powers, but the character of the people with whom they had to deal, compelled moderation in their exercise. The population, although quite numerous, was extensively scattered, and the isolated position of the planters and farmers tended to develop a strong sense of personal freedom and independence. The administration of government was not carried on without considerable conflict between the different departments, but no very serious difficulties arose. The

Church of England was the established religious system, so far as any parochial system could be established over so wide an extent of scattered hamlets or detached plantations. Tobacco was the great staple production of the province, and served for the principal circulating medium. Taxes and church dues were specifically payable in tobacco. From a complaint, on the part of the clergy, that they were made losers by a legislative provision for compounding the latter assessment by a payment in paper money, arose that celebrated controversy relative to the "parson's money," in which the eloquence of Patrick Henry, then a young advocate, prevailed against a plain legal claim (1763).

Pennsylvania, in consequence of domestic disturbance, fomented by George Keith, a seceding Quaker, and because of suspicions which had fallen upon the proprietor, was subjected, in 1693, to a governor holding commission from the crown, and became, for a short period, a royal province. Benjamin Fletcher, governor of New York, received the appointment. His brief administration was marked only by strife with the assembly. In the summer of the following year, Penn, having regained the favour of the king, was reinstated in his colonial rights.

In reëstablishing his prerogatives, with a new settlement of the government of his colony, after restoration of the proprietary government, William Penn took every precaution to secure the full acquiescence of the inhabitants. The powers of the governor—a deputy of the proprietor—were not very dissimilar to those now conferred upon the governor of either of the independent states. The council was simply advisory, and the principal legislation was confided to the popular assembly.

The inhabitants of the present state of Delaware, then known as "The Territories," conceiving that they were insufficiently represented, had, some years previous, moved for a separation. This had been accorded by the proprietor, but the two provinces were reunited during Fletcher's administration. A final separation was effected in 1702. The governor of Pennsylvania still retained a nominal authority, but the new assembly had, in effect, entire control over the province of Delaware.

Although Penn had ever pursued a far more generous policy than any other of the colonial proprietors, and, with opportunities for enriching himself which few would have had the self-denial to neglect, was growing old in poverty, all could not shield him from

ous and frugal  
extend civiliza-  
e province was  
pitch, tar, and  
ne disputes be-  
ors were settled  
e latter by the  
ntirely separate  
ntment, and the

OF THE COLONY:  
A ROYAL PROV-  
ICY OF PENN.  
CESSORS.—  
: GOVERN-  
SIVE EN-  
STORED.

ation, remained a  
. Legislation was  
sisted by a council  
ted by the people.  
ice in the province  
s; the same whose  
ted the New Eng-

ven arbitrary pov-  
they had to deal,  
population, although  
he isolated position  
strong sense of per-  
stration of govern-  
onflict between the  
culties arose. The

suspicion and ill-will on the part of a portion of the colonists "From various causes, principally a neglect of his own interests in extending civilization in America, he became so far involved, that he was for a time compelled to reside within the rules of the Fleet Prison. In 1709 he mortgaged his province of Pennsylvania to relieve himself from the pressure of debt. During the last six years of his life his bodily and mental faculties were greatly impaired; he died, after a gradual decline, on the 30th of July, 1718." His rights as proprietor were exercised, subsequent to his death, by his widow and afterwards by his sons. This form of government was continued until the commencement of the American revolution.

The province of Maryland, on the accession of William and Mary, was under the administration of deputies commissioned by the proprietor, Lord Baltimore, (son of the original patentee.) So large a number of the inhabitants were of the Catholic persuasion—the proprietor holding to the same faith—that, although the English church had been already established, it was hardly to be expected that a Protestant succession in England should be looked upon with general favour in the colony.

The proprietary government neglected to conform to the new order of things until compelled by a self-constituted association of the colonists. A provisional government was formed, which obtained the royal sanction, and existed until 1692, when a governor was appointed directly by the crown. Maryland became a royal province, and remained such for a period of twenty-three years. The general assembly confirmed the church establishment, and many disenfranchising regulations were passed for the suppression of papacy. Catholics were not only compelled to contribute to the support of the established church, but were subjected to the most galling disabilities. The legal successors of the proprietor were restored to their rights in 1715, and maintained their authority until the general overthrow of the old governments at the revolution.

the colonists  
own interests in  
involved, that  
es of the Fleet  
ennsylvania to  
e last six years  
y impaired; he  
8." His rights  
e, by his widow  
it was continued

of William and  
ommissioned by  
l patentec.) So  
olic persuasion—  
ough the English  
y to be expected  
looked upon with

form to the new  
ted association of  
rmed, which ob-  
when a governor  
d became a royal  
venty-three years.  
shment, and many  
e suppression of  
contribute to the  
ected to the most  
e proprietor were  
eir authority until  
the revolution.

## INDIAN WARS, ETC.

### CHAPTER I.

COMMENCEMENT OF THE CHEROKEE WAR: TREATY AT FORT  
ST. GEORGE: SIEGE OF THAT FORT: MURDER OF HOSTAGES:  
MONTGOMERY'S CAMPAIGN: DESTRUCTION OF THE LOWER  
CHEROKEE SETTLEMENTS: RETREAT: MASSACRE OF  
THE GARRISON OF FORT LOUDON: THE TOWNS  
OF THE MIDDLE CHEROKEES DESTROYED  
BY THE FORCES UNDER GRANT.

HAVING thus given a brief sketch of the affairs of the separate colonies, up to the occurrence of events which called for their united action, we may revert to matters of more general concern, in which the provinces, irrespective of political connection, were only united by a common necessity. The most important transactions in which the northern colonies were jointly engaged, were the early Indian wars, and the protracted contests with the French and Indians. Of these we have already spoken, as far as our limits would permit, in treating of English colonization, and of the French in America. It remains to notice, in military affairs, the Indian campaigns in the south and west, and to touch upon some topics of general interest to the colonies, before proceeding to the causes of discontent and the political issues which resulted in the war of the revolution.

After the abandonment of Fort Duquesne, by the French, a party of Cherokee Indians, who, during the campaign, had served in the English army, under General Forbes, set out upon their return to their own tribes and country. Impelled by necessity, they committed various depredations upon the property of the German settlers in Virginia. In some instances, they made use of horses which they found at large in the woods, and, as they were nearly destitute of

provisions, we may suppose that they occasionally made free with whatever might supply their wants.

These injuries were revenged by the backwoodsmen in the most violent and cruel manner. If we may credit Adair, an historian who had greater opportunities than any other writer of his time to acquaint himself with Indian character and the history of the southern tribes, they indulged their malice by tormenting and scalping their victims. He adds, that "those murderers were so audacious as to impose the scalps on the government for those of the French Indians; and that they actually obtained the premiums allowed at that time by law in such a case."

These outrages were not immediately resented by the nation, but after vain application for redress, and the experience of further wrongs and insults, the revengeful spirit of the Indian was fully aroused. The French and their Creek allies took the opportunity to lend their influence in exciting hostility. A war-party was accordingly dispatched to commence retaliation upon the western settlements of North Carolina. Many of the whites were put to death, and much injury was done upon the frontier.

These events took place in 1759, and, as it was now evident that a general disaffection existed among the Cherokees, active exertions were made by the governor of South Carolina, William Lyttleton, to avert the calamities of an Indian war, as well as to prepare measures for defence in case of extremity. A conference was brought about, towards the close of the year, at Fort St. George, on the Savannah. Six of the Indian chiefs, claiming authority to act for the tribe, appeared, and concluded a treaty of peace, surrendering thirty-two hostages, as security for their good faith.

This treaty was not considered binding by the nation, and a formidable body of Indians, led by Oconostota, a noted war-chief, laid siege to this fort in the month of February (1760). Coytmore, the commander of the garrison, who had, by some former transactions, acquired the special ill-will of the natives, was decoyed without the works, and shot by concealed marksmen. Several of his companions were wounded. The Indian hostages, from their place of confinement within the fort, hearing the report of fire-arms, shouted encouragement to their people. An order was accordingly given to put them in irons. To this they refused submission, making desperate resistance, and wounding three of the soldiers who were endeavouring to carry out the order. It was then concluded to put

them all to death, which was done accordingly, in a manner as cowardly as the design was base, viz: by firing down upon them, through a hole in the roof.

The whole frontier was, immediately subsequent to this outrage, involved in a general war. The British commander-in-chief of the regular forces in America, detached a regiment of Scotch Highlanders, under Colonel Montgomery, with other troops from New York, to the seat of disturbance. The legislatures of North and South Carolina offered premiums for scalps, and raised sums of money to purchase the assistance of the Creeks and other southern tribes.

In the course of the spring, Colonel Montgomery, with the regular and provincial troops under his command, overran the whole territory of the Lower Cherokees, laying waste every Indian settlement. The towns of Keowee and Estatoe, the latter containing two hundred houses, were destroyed, together with great quantities of stored provisions. Before the end of the campaign, there was not an Indian village left east of the Blue Ridge.

The Cherokees, instead of being disheartened by their reverses, refused to listen to any overtures of pacification, and prepared themselves to resist the advance of the troops into the interior. Near their principal town of Etchoe, they prepared an ambush in a narrow pass, where a muddy stream took its course between high and steep banks, nearly impassable from tangled undergrowth. In forcing this defile, the assailants met with heavy loss, and the commander, seeing that the Indians had made a new stand a little in advance, and were determined to resist to the last, concluded to retreat. This was in the month of June.

Immediately upon his return to the coast, Montgomery, in pursuance of orders, sailed for New York, leaving Major Hamilton, with but a small force, for the protection of the exposed districts. The failure of this second expedition revived the spirits of the Indians, and spread universal terror and consternation among the colonists of the frontier. At Fort Loudon, the garrison under Captain Stuart, after sustaining a long siege, evacuated the place, upon conditions conceded by Oconostota, of free and safe passage to Fort St. George, or into Virginia. They had not, however, proceeded far, before they were set upon by the enemy, and all killed or taken prisoners.

Captain Stuart owed his life and liberty to the benevolence of an old chief, named Atakullakulla, a man of great influence in his



tribe, and peaceably disposed towards the colonists. The safety of Fort St. George was secured by a timely warning from Stuart of an intended attack by the Indians. An attitude of hostility was still maintained by the Cherokees, and constant efforts were made by French agents among them to avert any prospect of a peaceable settlement of difficulties.

In the spring of 1761, a force of more than two thousand British regulars, provincial troops, and friendly Indians, under command of Colonel James Grant, was marched into the interior. Old Attakulla-kulla made vain interposition in behalf of his people. On the 10th of June, a desperate effort was made by the main body of the Indians to check the advance of the enemy. The battle took place near the spot whither Montgomery had penetrated on his last expedition. The Cherokees were totally defeated; the town of Etchoe was burned; and "all the other towns in the middle settlement, fourteen in number, shared the same fate: the corn, cattle, and other stores of the enemy, were likewise destroyed, and those miserable savages, with their families, were driven to seek shelter and subsistence among the barren mountains."\*

The Indians were, of course, obliged to accept such terms as their conquerors saw fit to impose, but it does not appear that any ungenerous advantage was taken of their helpless condition. Indeed, after the conclusion of peace, efforts were made for the protection of the Indians in their landed rights, and to regulate the traffic with them so as to secure them against deception.

The whole of the southern tribes remained, comparatively, at peace with the colonies from this period until they became involved in the general Indian wars of the early part of the present century. "By a steady increase of numbers, and the adventurous spirit of pioneers, the white settlers every where made advances upon the Indian territory. Sometimes large acquisitions would be made by a government purchase; but, to no small extent, the opinion that the occupation of a few roving savages could give no natural title to lands, as opposed to the claims of those who had reclaimed, enclosed, and improved the wilderness, satisfied the consciences of the encroachers. The argument in favour of this conclusion is by no means without force; but who can take upon himself to draw the line of demarcation which shall decide, upon any principles of universal application, the bounds of so artificial a right as the ownership of land?"†

\* McCall's History of Georgia.

† Indian Races of America.

## CHAPTER II.

ENGLISH OCCUPATION OF THE WESTERN TRADING POSTS.—  
CONSPIRACY OF THE NORTH-WESTERN TRIBES, UNDER PON-  
TIAIC.—DESTRUCTION OF THE ENGLISH FORTS.—TAKING  
OF MICHILLIMACKINAC.—SIEGE OF DETROIT.—LOSS  
AT BLOODY-RUN.—CLOSE OF THE WAR.—MASSA-  
CRE OF THE CANESTOGA INDIANS.

By treaty, in 1760, the extended line of stations upon the western lakes, belonging to the French, were to be put into possession of the English. The long friendship that had subsisted between the former and the Ottawas, Chippewas, Pottawatomies, &c., who inhabited the country, caused these tribes to look with jealous eyes upon the proposed English occupation. They were united in a sort of confederation, at the head of which, in influence and authority, was Pontiac, the renowned Ottawa chief. Although he had formed the determination of restoring his old allies, the French, to the possession of their established trading posts, this bold, but crafty leader, suffered the first English detachment, under Major Rogers, to enter the country without molestation. In an interview, held with the commanding officer, he exhibited the pride and dignity of a monarch, expressly asserting his own rights of territory.

His plans being perfected, and the coöperation of other tribes—among them, the Miámis, Sacs and Foxes, Hurons, and Shawanees—being secured, the month of June, 1763, was appointed for a simultaneous attack upon all the English strongholds at the west. So extensive were the preparations for this outbreak, that entire secrecy could not be preserved respecting it, and intimation was, from time to time, given by white traders of the storm that was brewing. Either these reports were not fully credited, or the garrisons felt themselves strong enough to defy any attack from the Indians, for no extraordinary precautions were taken for defence.

When the blow fell, the Indians appeared in such numbers that, although divided into as many parties as there were points of attack, they overpowered the garrisons, and destroyed the works of nearly all the English forts. Nine of these were taken by force or fraud, and the defenders slain or carried away captive. The manner in

which Michillimackinac was seized, is thus described: "Hundreds of Indians, mostly Chippewas and Sacs, had been loitering about the place for some days previous, and, on the 4th of June, they proceeded to celebrate the king's birth-day by a great game at ball. This sport, carried on, as usual, with noise and tumult, threw the garrison off their guard, at the same time that it afforded a pretext for clambering into the fort. The ball was several times, as if by accident, knocked within the pickets, the whole gang rushing in pursuit of it with shouts. At a favourable moment, they fell upon the English, dispersed and unsuspecting of intended harm, and before any effectual resistance could be made, murdered and scalped seventy of the number. The remainder, being twenty men, were taken captive."\*

Early in May, Pontiac, in person, with a chosen body of warriors, laid siege to Detroit, the principal military post and trading station at the far west. The place was garrisoned by an hundred and thirty men, of whom Major Gladwyn had command. A plan was formed by the Indians to gain admission within the fort, on pretence of a conference, and then, with concealed weapons, (rifles, shortened, so as to be hid by the blanket,) to fall upon the garrison at a disadvantage, admit the main body from without, and, after a general massacre, to seize upon the valuable stores collected for protection. This device was betrayed to Gladwyn by a squaw to whom he had shown some kindness. The Indians were accordingly admitted without hesitation, but the troops were drawn up ready for an attack. Pontiac "heard the drums beat, and saw every soldier's musket levelled, and the swords of the officers drawn and ready for use. Major Gladwyn, stepping to the warrior nearest him, lifted his blanket, and disclosed the shortened rifle. He then upbraided the sachem for his intended villany, and, taking no advantage of the opportunity for securing him, gave proof of his own high-minded sense of honour by dismissing the whole party unharmed."

This magnanimity availed but little. The Indians, to the number of nearly a thousand, laid close siege to the fort, and, for months, it was only by hard fighting, and with heavy loss, that provisions and stores could be furnished from without. Many of the captives taken by the Indians, were put to death with savage barbarity. Three hundred men, commanded by a Captain Dalyell, were sent to Detroit to reinforce the garrison, in the month of July. With this additional

\* Indian Races of America.

force it was thought practicable to commence offensive operations. A sally was made accordingly, but Pontiac had by some means gained intelligence of what was about to take place, and had prepared an ambush near the bridge over Bloody-Run. Instead of surprising the enemy, the whites were taken at a complete disadvantage, and retired with the loss, in killed and wounded, of more than one hundred men.

All throughout the north-western frontier, from the lakes to the Ohio river, this conspiracy of the Indian tribes spread desolation and distress for a whole year. Of the great leader of the confederation, we learn very little after his operations against Detroit. In the summer of 1764, a powerful force, under General Bradstreet, was marched into the Indian territory, and, by force or treaty, peace was established with the various tribes of the north-west.

Connected with the events of Pontiac's war, is the account of a barbarous outrage committed at Canestoga, near Lancaster, Pennsylvania. The settlers of this portion of the country were less exposed to savage incursions than those established further towards the north-west, but the reports constantly received of Indian massacres upon the frontier, excited their minds to the highest pitch of fear and hatred towards the natives. Heckewelder speaks as follows of the character of but too many of the rough pioneers of the western wilderness: "I have yet to notice a class of people generally known to us by the name of 'backwood's-men,' many of whom, acting up to a pretended belief that 'an Indian had no more soul than a buffalo;' and that to kill either is the same thing; have, from time to time, by their conduct, brought great trouble and bloodshed on the country. Such, then, I wish to caution not to sport in that manner with the lives of God's creatures. \* \* Believe that a time will come when you must account for such vile deeds! When those who have fallen a sacrifice to your wickedness, will be called forth in judgment against you! Nay, when your own descendants will testify against you." The truth of this prediction is strikingly manifest from the popular feeling at the present day respecting the Indians, their rights, and the treatment which they experienced at the hands of the early settlers.

At Canestoga, a small and peaceable body of Indians had been long established, under the care and teaching of the Moravian mission. As far as appears, they had not the slightest connection with the general conspiracy, nor had they given any provocation for the

wanton attack which was made upon them. A mob of more than fifty men, from Paxton, fell upon the settlement, in November, 1763. A portion of the inhabitants fled to Lancaster, where they sought an asylum in the jail-yards. Those who were left at Cancestoga—men, women, and children—fourteen in number, were brutally murdered. The white savages, their cruelty unsatiated, then hastened to Lancaster, and, breaking open the jail, completed their work of destruction. From fifteen to twenty perished in the jail-yard, where they were seen by one whose account has reached us. "Men, women, and children, spread about the prison-yard; shot—scalped—hacked—and cut to pieces."

JONATHAN EDWARDS.—In 1735 there began a most remarkable religious awakening under the preaching of the celebrated Jonathan Edwards, at Northampton, which has since been designated as the "great revival."\* It spread into many towns in Connecticut, and the feeling and interest manifested on the great themes of religion were intense and absorbing. This appears to have been followed by a period of great religious declension and formality, until 1740, when a still more general and extraordinary revival commenced, which spread throughout New England and some of the more southern and western colonies. Childhood, manhood, old age—the learned and the ignorant—the moralist and the skeptic—men of wealth and the highest official position, as well as paupers and outcasts—were numbered among its converts. We are told that even the Indians, on whom no impression could previously be made, became humble inquirers after the truth.

Among the most zealous and efficient laborers in the work were Whitefield, Edwards, and Tennant, from abroad; and Wheelock, Bellamy, Pomeroy, Mills, Graham, Meacham, Whitman, and Farrand, among the pastors of Connecticut. Many of the clergy of the colony, however, strenuously opposed the measures employed and the effects produced; and many of the magistrates and other leading men joined with them in denouncing the "itinerating clergy" and their converts as enthusiasts, new lights, and ranters. Laws were passed, with severe penalties, against any clergyman or exhorter who should attempt to preach in any parish or town without the express desire of the pastor or people thereof.

\* At the request of Dr. Watts and other English divines, Mr. Edwards wrote a narrative of the "great revival," which was published in London, and has since been frequently republished.

... of more than  
November, 1783.  
... ere they sought  
... at Canestoga—  
... were brutally  
... tiated, then has-  
... pleted their work  
... in the jail-yard,  
... nched us. "Men,  
... rd; shot—scalped

... ole religious awakening  
Northampton, which has  
... ny towns in Connecticut,  
... eligion were intense and  
...reat religious declension  
...inary revival commenced,  
...ro southern and western  
...norant—the moralist and  
...well as paupers and out-  
...ven the Indians, on whom  
...ers after the truth.

... were Whitefield, Edwards,  
... Mills, Graham, Meacham,  
... Many of the clergy of the  
... and the effects produced;  
... h them in denouncing the  
... lights, and ranters. Laws  
... shorter who should attempt  
... re of the pastor or people

... Edwards wrote a narrative  
... has since been frequently



wanton attack upon the slaves upon them. A party of more than fifty men from Passaic, led upon the 26th of March, 1773, to an asylum of the inhabits to East-Lancaster, where they were an asylum in the jail-yard. Those who were left in the jail-yard, women, and children, - hurried in numbers were not numbered. The white savages, their cruelty most unchristian has resorted to Lancaster, and, breaking open the jail, completed their work of destruction. From fifteen to twenty perished in the jail-yard, where they were seen by one whose account has reached us. "Men, women, and children, spread about the prison-yard, shot and cut to pieces."

JERAMIAN - PART - In 1735 they began a most remarkable work. Under the protection of Jonathan Edwards of Northampton, who since had been designated as the great revivalist of the country, and the teacher of the students of the college, they began a series of sermons. The first was on the "Wickedness of the heart," and was an "formality" of the kind which had been common in the colonies. When spread over the country, it was a most successful work. Childs, Edwards, and others learned and learned, and the skeptics - men of a more liberal and liberal position, and who were not so fastidious - were here and there converted. We are told that even the "no impression could possibly be made by any humble inquirers into the work."

Among the more zealous and diligent laborers in the work were Whittier, Bellamy, Pomeroy, Miss Gorton, Newell, and Parrish, being the pastors of Connecticut. Most of the "evangelical" however, strenuously opposed the measures employed and the results produced. Many of the magistrates and other lay men joined with them, the "evangelical clergy" and their converts as enthusiasts, new lights, and fanatics. They were passed, with severe penalties against any layman or sexton who should attempt to preach in any church, without the express decree of the pastor or people thereof.

\* At the same time, Mr. Edwards wrote a narrative of the great revival, which has since been frequently republished.





In  
the F  
nics,  
impo  
have  
whiel  
betwe  
affect  
ship,  
for m  
We  
the in  
nies ;  
comm  
isted  
differ  
jealou  
resour  
duce ;  
sought  
ments  
pursua

## EUROPEAN COLONIAL POLICY.

---

SPANISH AND ENGLISH RESTRICTIONS UPON TRADE AND COMMERCE.—CONTRABAND TRAFFIC.—THE "ASSIENTO" TREATY.—THE SLAVE-TRADE: ITS GENERAL POPULARITY: CAUSES WHICH LEAD TO THE ABOLITION OF SLAVERY: MANNER OF PROCURING NEGROES FROM AFRICA: PROFIT OF THE TRADE: NUMBERS BROUGHT OVER: ENGLISH LAW UPON THE SUBJECT OF SLAVERY.—INTRODUCTION OF WHITE APPRENTICES, OR "REDEMPTIONERS."

It is difficult, at the present day, to comprehend the blindness of the European nations to their own interests, and those of their colonies, as exhibited in the prohibitions and restrictions once universally imposed upon trade and commerce. Experienced politicians must have foreseen the probable tendency of that short-sighted policy which, for the sake of present gain, was willing to destroy all identity between the parent states and their colonies, and to alienate the affections of a vast population, whose loyalty, gratitude, and friendship, by the exercise of a little forbearance, might have been retained for many generations.

We have had occasion, elsewhere, to speak more particularly of the insufferable tyranny of Spain in all the dealings with her colonies: in those of England, although the domestic privileges of the community were not so openly and grossly violated, there yet existed restraints on manufactures and trade, which, considering the difference in natural character, were hardly less galling. The most jealous care was taken to discourage the development of all internal resources which might interfere with British manufacture or produce; British vessels must be employed, and an English market sought, regardless of the interests of the merchant and the requirements of trade. Individual selfishness alone can account for the pursuance of such a policy, and we must conclude that those in

power foresaw the consequences of their proceedings, but trusted to reap the benefits in their own persons, leaving retribution to be visited upon their posterity.

The temptations held out to the contraband trader were sufficiently great for the incurrence of heavy risks, and the connivance of the home government at such irregularities, so far as they only affected the interest of a rival nation, gave special impetus to their commission. Severities practised upon offenders when detected, and mutual hostility engendered by continual conflict of claims, resulted in wars between the old countries, the burden of which fell most heavily upon the infant colonies, whose whole energies were required to overcome the natural difficulties of their situation.

By the "assiento" treaty, the privileges of which were made over to the celebrated South Sea Company, Spain conceded to England a limited right to transport slaves into the colonies of the former nation. This gave great impetus to the traffic, and so far was the community blinded by present interest to the claims of humanity and true policy, that it was generally "accounted a genteel employment," reflecting no discredit upon those who systematically pursued it. It is a singular thing how far the opinions of men, and how much farther their conduct, receive direction from custom. However much we may condemn the evils of a system, before denouncing its individual supporters, we should do well to inquire what would have been our own course of conduct had we passed our lives subject to the same influences, and dependent upon the same interests. Statistics of the proportion of those who have freed their slaves, *during their own lives*, from conscientious scruples, as compared with the whole slave-holding population, would furnish every man with a fair criterion for estimating the extent of his own disinterestedness. The treatment of slaves is, of course, as variant as the character of their owners, but where the institution of slavery exists, all, with a few rare exceptions, who can avail themselves of its convenience, openly support it.

In the Northern United States it existed until the influx of free labourers reduced the value of slave-labour, and created a majority in the community of those whose interests were directly opposed to the continuance of the system. We may venture to predict that no other influence than this will ever avail to produce a similar result in the southern states. Self-interest, when directly appealed to, must ever prevail with the majority, until mankind shall have

\*A  
brought  
howeve  
brother  
Rev. Jo  
says: "  
bought  
week is

made an advance in benevolence and a sense of justice, beyond any present indications.

The manner of procuring negroes on the African coast, and of their conveyance to the shores of America, has undergone no material change from the period of their first introduction to the present day. The extent of coast upon which they can be procured, and the convenience of legal markets, have indeed been curtailed; but the unfortunates now brought over to the island of Cuba, are procured by the same species of traffic, confined in the same limited space on their passage, and subject to the same sufferings from short allowance and tempestuous weather, as in former times. Still are children kidnapped by strangers or sold by their relations; the same rude regulations still render one negro a slave to his fellow in his native land;\* one tribe may yet, as of old, make war upon another, upon the annual unfolding of a certain flower, for the sake of procuring prisoners.

The trade, carried on mostly by British merchants, proved as profitable to the ship-owners as acceptable to the colonists. It is computed that no less than three hundred thousand negroes were imported into the original states during their continuance as colonies. A vastly larger number were brought over in English bottoms, to the French and Spanish colonies. Mr. Bancroft's estimate is as follows: "We shall not err very much, if, for the century previous to the prohibition of the slave-trade by the American congress, in 1776, we assume the number imported by the English into the Spanish, French, and English West Indies, as well as the English continental colonies, to have been, collectively, nearly three millions; to which are to be added more than a quarter of a million purchased in Africa, and thrown into the Atlantic on the passage. The gross returns to English merchants for the whole traffic in that number of slaves, may have been not far from four hundred millions of dollars."

The question as to the exact bearing of the laws of England upon

\* A negro having a lien upon his own brother, for a debt, or some other cause, brought him on board a slaver, and concluded a bargain for him. As the vendor, however, was about to leave the vessel, he was informed that he might keep his brother company, and was presently elapped under hatches with the rest. The Rev. John Newton, who was long engaged in the slave-trade, as master of a vessel, says: "It often happens that the man who sells another on board a ship, is himself bought and sold in the same manner, and perhaps in the same vessel, before the week is ended."

the subject of slavery, was long a *questio vexata*. The institution had a gradual origin by custom, scarcely recognized, and never directly supported by legislative enactments. In the courts great difference of opinion prevailed, but the general legality of the system was maintained by their decisions, it being declared a valid custom. As has been remarked, such a custom would hardly possess all the requisites for validity laid down by Blackstone, viz: that it should be a "good custom," for "*malus usus abolendus est*," that it should have existed "so long that the memory of man runneth not to the contrary;" that it should have been "continued," without interruption; that it should be "peaceable," "reasonable," "certain," "compulsory," and "consistent."

About the middle of the past century, the slave-trade, freed from restrictive laws, recognized in its legality by decisions of courts, and open to every adventurer, flourished to an extent never known before or since. The trade was the object of special attention to the British government, by which the forts on the coast of Africa were maintained. Slaves were even allowed to be taken to England, and the right of their masters to hold them in servitude on British soil was definitely acknowledged by the most able judicial authorities.

Notwithstanding the immense importation of negroes, the constant call for labourers was met, especially in Virginia and Pennsylvania, by the immigration of apprentices, or "redemptioners," being whites of the poorer class, who were bound to service for a term of years. To these, grants of land and temporary supplies were secured by law at the end of their term, but during its continuance they were substantially in the condition of slaves.

The institution  
ized, and never  
the courts great  
ality of the system  
ed a valid custom.  
ly possess all the  
viz: that it should  
est;" that it should  
unneth not to the  
ed," without inter-  
onable," "certain,"

ve-trade, freed from  
visions of courts, and  
never known before  
tention to the British  
f Africa were main-  
e on British soil was  
cial authorities.

negroes, the constant  
ia and Pennsylvania,  
tioners," being whites  
e for a term of years.  
plies were secured by  
ontinuanee they were

# THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

## CHAPTER I.

GENERAL RIGHTS OF COLONIES.—EARLY CAUSES OF COMPLAINT  
IN AMERICA.—ARBITRARY CUSTOM LAWS.—ILLEGAL  
CONDUCT OF ENGLISH OFFICIALS.—ACTS IN REGULA-  
TION OF TRADE.—EXPENSES OF THE LATE WARS IN  
AMERICA.—THE "SUGAR-ACT."—OPPOSITION  
AND REMONSTRANCE IN THE COLONIES.

How have words been multiplied in vain attempts to apply principles of abstract right to political movements, and how much more vainly has the search been made for principles of universal application in that uncertain code of maxims known as the law of nations. In a question between two communities, there is usually no tribunal, and they must severally do what is "right in their own eyes," provided it be, at the same time, practicable. Of all political questions, perhaps the most unsettled, is that concerning the rights of colonies.

It was said by Hutcheson, in 1755,\* that colonies "have a right to be released from the dominion of the parent state," "whenever they are so increased in numbers and strength as to be sufficient by themselves for all the good ends of a political union." Simply, that whenever they have the will, and, in their own opinion, the power, to stand alone, the right follows, of course. The case is similar to that of a child seeking release from parental control: in a state of nature he will do this when he has attained sufficient strength and self-dependence; but, for convenience and certainty, a time has been arbitrarily set by society for his emancipation. As regards states, no such time has been, or can be established, because its occurrence must always depend upon questions of fact, for the decision of which there is, as before mentioned, no tribunal. The question must

\* Bancroft's History of the United States.

always remain merely a question of ability, until the Utopian theory of an international code and court shall have been reduced to practice.

The opinion of the world has seldom, if ever, been called to be passed upon the violent rupture of the connection between a parent state and its colony, while the inhabitants of the latter were in the enjoyment of equal privileges and favour with those of the former. A feeling of affection and natural pride commonly causes them to cling to the land of their parentage until a long course of extortion and oppression has rendered the tie too onerous to be endured.

In America, the English colonies had submitted—not, it is true, without murmurs—to the most arbitrary restrictions upon manufactures in which they might profitably have engaged, imposed simply to compel importation from England. A steady, and, in most cases, an effectual stand had been made against the reiterated demand of a fixed salary for the royal governors. Burdensome restrictions upon foreign trade were protested against, and extensively evaded by contraband traffic. This gave occasion for arbitrary proceedings by the officers of the customs in searching for smuggled goods. Their conduct, in this respect, appearing to be illegal, they sought the aid of the superior courts of law, and “writs of assistance,” in the nature of search-warrants, were accordingly issued. The power of the court to issue these writs was called in question, and tested in Massachusetts, in 1761. The eloquent James Otis, and the learned jurist, Oxenbridge Thatcher, argued successfully against their validity.

The question, by this time, had come to be widely agitated, as to the probable tendency of the continual encroachments upon the liberties of the colonies. The legislatures of the different provinces, elected by a system more nearly approaching universal suffrage than any ever known in England, indulged in freedom of thought and expression, denounced as treasonable and rebellious in the parent-country. The duties and imposts which had been submitted to for a long term of years as being “regulations of trade,” for the protection of the British West India islands, and other collateral purposes, and, therefore, within the proper jurisdiction of the board of trade, when directed immediately towards the enlargement of revenue, excited universal disaffection and indignation.

The recent wars had enormously increased the public debt, and English politicians were busily engaged in framing schemes by which the American colonies should share the burden of expense

incurred, as was averred, expressly for their benefit. On the other hand, it was claimed that the colonies had already contributed more than their proportion towards these expenses; that, being frequently the seat of war, they had, in other respects, felt its calamities far more heavily than the people of England; and that the latter country, by reason of its immense income from the restricted colonial trade, was as directly and pecuniarily interested in maintaining and protecting the provinces from foreign encroachment as were the inhabitants themselves.

It was, moreover, evident that it would be impossible for any man to foretell to what extremes government might eventually proceed in the imposition of taxes upon a distant community, in no way represented in the legislature, whose condition and capabilities could never be fully understood in England, and whose growing resources would indubitably be met by a still more rapid increase of exaction. What had been accomplished, had been by sufferance, and under protest; it remained for the open extension of duties for revenue purposes, and the attempted imposition of a direct tax, to rouse to flame the discontent already kindled.

In the spring of 1764, George Grenville, chancellor of the exchequer, introduced and carried an act in alteration of the former rate of imposts upon West India goods, &c., by which, while the duties on certain articles were reduced, the restrictions were extended to French and East India produce, and to various foreign articles of luxury. The anticipated difficulty of enforcing the new tariff, was met by a provision extending the powers and jurisdiction of the courts of admiralty. At the same time, he laid before parliament a proposal, to be acted upon at a future session, for the enlargement of the revenue by the collection of duties upon stamped paper. There seems, at this period, to have been scarcely the shadow of opposition in the British legislature, to the general principle of the right to impose discretionary taxes upon the colonies. One principal object in the scheme for levying a direct and additional assessment, was to provide means for the permanent support of a military establishment in America; thus to compel the people to furnish means for their own enslavement, and for the enforcing of whatever future tyrannical enactments might result from the necessities or avarice of the British government.

The "sugar-act," as the new law respecting customs was called, excited the utmost dissatisfaction, especially in the northern colonies—



a feeling heightened and extended by the intimation of the intended stamp act, which accompanied its passage. The subject was discussed in the colonial legislatures, and letters of instruction were prepared for their agents in England, breathing the strongest spirit of opposition. In these debates, in the petitions and remonstrances forwarded to the home government, and in the writings of Otis, Thatcher, and other distinguished or rising politicians, the same principles were strenuously maintained and ably argued. Appeals to every man's individual sense of justice; reference to rights secured by magna charta, by the special charters of the provinces, and by the maxims of English common law; and representations of the extent to which experience had shown that the colonies would assume their just share of the burden of government, were urged with zeal, energy, and ability.

Few, if any, yet spoke of open resistance to the power of parliament, but succeeding events proved that public sentiment must have been rapidly preparing for such an extremity.

---

## CHAPTER II.

THE STAMP ACT: ARGUMENT IN THE HOUSE OF COMMONS: PASSAGE OF THE BILL: ITS EFFECT IN THE COLONIES.—RESOLUTIONS IN THE VIRGINIA ASSEMBLY.—PATRICK HENRY.—PROCEEDINGS IN MASSACHUSETTS: POPULAR TUMULTS: RESIGNATION OF THE STAMP OFFICERS.

In the month of February, 1765, the important act, providing for the increase of revenue by stamp duties in America, was introduced into the House of Commons. By its provisions all legal documents, promissory notes, deeds, commercial papers, official certificates, &c., &c., must be written upon paper that had received a government stamp, and on which fixed duties had been paid. Of all that was said in argument upon the merits of the bill, nothing excited more general attention, in the community, than a short speech by Colonel Isaac Barré.

This member had seen service in America, during the French war, and, familiar himself with the character and condition of the people,

he expressed a becoming disgust at the ignorance in regard to the colonies which characterized the speeches of several supporters of the bill. The eloquent Charles Townshend spoke in its favour, and concluded his remarks with an inquiry, whether the colonists could presume to refuse aid to the parent-country, by whose protection they alone had maintained their existence, and arrived at a position of comparative wealth and importance.

Barré rose, and, with great animation, exposed the fallacy of the declaration. He pointed out briefly the real origin of emigration to America, the unaided efforts and sufferings of the early colonists in establishing a civilized community in the wilderness, the neglect that they had experienced at the hands of the home government, their readiness in taking up arms in a national cause, their expenses and their losses by the continued wars. "I claim," continued he, "to know more of America than most of you, having seen and been conversant with that country. The people, I believe, are as truly loyal as any subjects the king has; but a people jealous of their liberties, and who will vindicate them if ever they should be violated."

The stamp act passed the house of commons on the 27th of February; a few days later, the house of lords concurred without debate; and the bill received a *quasi* assent from the deranged intellect of George III. To make the obnoxious measure more tolerable, it was provided that all revenues to be derived from it, should be expended exclusively for colonial purposes. Other conciliatory enactments, in the form of bounties upon importations, and the removal of sundry burdensome restrictions, were also resorted to as an offset to the first imposition of a direct tax. It was generally supposed, in England, that the measure would be carried out without a sign of forcible opposition.

The tone of public procedures in the colonies, upon receipt of intelligence that the act had passed, was generally moderate; but the passions and indignation of the people, fully aroused, were only awaiting fit opportunity to break forth in overt resistance. In Virginia, the legislature was in session at the time, but its leading members held aloof from taking active measures in opposition. It was reserved for a young man, who had but recently taken his seat in the house, to introduce and support a series of resolutions, setting forth colonial rights, and protesting against their proposed invasion. It is a singular fact, concerning those who, in all times, have possessed to the greatest extent the wonderful gift of eloquence, that little or noth-

of the intended  
subject was dis-  
struction were  
strongest spirit  
l remonstrances  
writings of Otis,  
icians, the same  
rgued. Appeals  
to rights secured  
provinces, and by  
sentations of the  
e colonies would  
ment, were urged

e power of parlia-  
c sentiment must  
y.

OF COMMONS: PASS  
ONIES.—RESOLU-  
TRICK HENRY.—  
ULAR TUMULTS:  
FICERS.

nt act, providing for  
erica, was introduced  
all legal documents,  
icial certificates, &c.,  
eived a government  
aid. Of all that was  
othing excited more  
rt speech by Colonci

ring the French war,  
dition of the people,

ing has been recorded which may enable us to judge of their powers, excepting the effect of their speeches. An audience carried away by admiration and sympathetic excitement, is in no condition to remember and perpetuate the form of expression by which the tumult of feeling is aroused. It has been reserved for those who, like Cicero, have nicely remodelled their productions to meet the cool criticism of a reader, to be held up as patterns for imitation. The flow of forcible and unpremeditated words, by which a crowd of men, possessing every variety of character and temperament, is moved to unanimity, if here and there reported in detached sentences, loses all the force lent by the occasion, the state of mind of the auditory, and the manner of the speaker.

Such has been the case, in many instances, with the most celebrated efforts of Burr, Randolph, and others; such, upon the occasion of which we have just spoken, was that of Patrick Henry. We are only told that, in tones of bold warning, he broke forth, in the heat of argument, with the expressions: "Cæsar had his Brutus—Charles the First his Cromwell—and George the Third" (here he was interrupted by a cry of Treason! from the speaker and many members, but he firmly continued)—"may profit by their example. If that be treason, make the most of it!"

The resolutions were passed, after vehement debate: the concluding section, which read as follows, by a majority of one only: "Resolved, therefore, that the General Assembly of this colony have the sole right and power to lay taxes and impositions upon the inhabitants of this colony; and that every attempt to vest such power in any person or persons whatsoever, other than the general assembly aforesaid, has a manifest tendency to destroy British as well as American freedom." This resolution was afterwards struck out upon a reconsideration, during the absence of Henry, but it had already gone abroad, and was circulated throughout the colonies.

In Massachusetts, a more important measure was adopted, at the suggestion of James Otis. Letters were dispatched to the general assemblies of all the separate colonies, requesting and advising the appointment of a committee from each, to meet at New York in the ensuing month of October, and deliberate upon what could be done for the general good of the country. No allusion was made to any proposed union for purposes of resistance, other than the organization of a "united representation to implore relief." The call was first responded to by the legislature of South Carolina.

By this time, the speeches of Barré, of Henry, of Otis, and others, the Virginia resolutions, the call of Massachusetts, and the reiterated arguments of political writers on both sides the question, were familiar to the whole people of America, and occupied universal attention. A question, at first committed to the management of the learned and intelligent, assumed a new aspect when brought home to the minds of an excited populace.

Those residents of the colonies who had favoured the passage of the act, and those who had received appointment to the office of distribution of stamps, first felt the weight of lawless popular indignation. It seemed to be generally determined that all the stamp officers should be compelled to resign, by personal violence, should persuasion fail.

The first of a succession of mad scenes—conducted, however, systematically, and with deliberate purpose—took place at Boston, on the 14th of August, (1765.) Andrew Oliver, the appointed stamp distributor, was hung in effigy upon a noted tree, known as the Boston elm. In the evening, the image was burned, with the fragments of a building, supposed to be in process of erection for a stamp office, in the presence of an immense concourse. Oliver perceived, from the demeanour of the crowd, that his only safety consisted in compliance with the popular demand, and he resigned his office accordingly.

The office of the court of admiralty, rendered obnoxious by the provisions of the "sugar act," was next attacked. On the night of the 26th, the records were destroyed, and the house of Story, comptroller of customs, was broken open, and his furniture demolished. Hutchinson, the lieutenant-governor, suffered similar outrage upon his property on the same night. This officer had become unpopular from various circumstances, but the principal cry against him, at this time, was for having favoured the stamp act.

The example of Massachusetts was followed in Rhode Island, New York, and New Jersey, and with similar results. The stamp distributor of Maryland fled from popular violence to New York. On many of these occasions, the active agents were not the most respectable portion of the community, but, except where they overstepped the bounds of reason, and wantonly invaded private property, their proceedings met with general favour. All attempts at bringing individuals of the rioters to account for the outrages committed, were soon abandoned.

The other colonies exhibited the same state of public sentiment, and the officers commissioned to distribute stamps, either declined serving, or gave such public pledges as satisfied the people. It was plain that no stamps would be allowed to be sold. Ingersoll, the stamp officer for Connecticut, at first refused to submit to the popular requisition, announcing his intention of submitting the matter to the general assembly. He was on his way to Hartford, for that purpose, when he was intercepted, near Wethersfield, by a body of some hundreds of the substantial inhabitants of the colony, who, in military array, although armed only with staves, required of him an immediate resignation. The object of the company was to avoid the disagreeable consequences of any action by the assembly—as the colony might be held responsible for its public acts, while, as individuals, they felt little apprehension of any dangerous results from their proceedings. Ingersoll betrayed no unworthy pusillanimity; but when he perceived the determination of the people to prevent him from communicating with the assembly, and even to proceed to personal violence, should he refuse to accede to their demands, he signed a written resignation, and, at the direction of the crowd, shouted for "Liberty and property."

Of the packages of stamped paper which arrived in the country, some were seized and destroyed by the populace, and the rest remained packed and unnoticed.

---

### CHAPTER III.

SESSION OF THE FIRST AMERICAN CONGRESS: MODERATE TONE OF ITS PROCEEDINGS: CONCURRENCE OF THE SEPARATE COLONIES.—THE STAMP ACT NULLATORY.—THE ENGLISH MINISTRY.—DEBATE IN PARLIAMENT.—SPEECH OF PITT.—EXAMINATION OF FRANKLIN.—REPEAL OF THE STAMP ACT.

On the 7th of October, 1765, the first American congress assembled at New York. A regular delegation was present from six of the colonies, viz: Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and South Carolina: New York, Delaware, and

New Jersey were also represented, although not by a regular appointment of their houses of assembly. The legislature of North Carolina, not having been in session, could make no delegation, but the cooperation of this colony, as well as that of New Hampshire, could be depended upon, in the work to be accomplished. The assent of Georgia was obtained during the session.

It was agreed that the votes should be taken by colonies, neither claiming preëminence by virtue of superior extent or population. The congress sat about three weeks, during which time a declaration of rights, and petitions and memorials to the king and parliament, were drawn up, debated, and finally agreed to, nearly unanimously. All question of proposed admission to representation in the English parliament was abandoned as impracticable, and the colonies, without menace or unseemly violence, recapitulated the claims so often urged, that, by natural right, by magna charta, and their own private charters, the right of taxation, as well as that of the management of all internal government, was vested in their own houses of assembly. The infringement of the right of trial by jury, in the extension of admiralty jurisdiction, by the provisions of the sugar act, was also animadverted upon.

The spirit of the resolutions and memorials adopted by congress, met with a hearty response from the people. The New York merchants agreed to discontinue all importation from England until the repeal of the obnoxious act. Their example was followed extensively in many of the other colonies, and plans were set on foot for the encouragement and support of domestic manufactures, and for devising substitutes for articles of luxury, comfort, or necessity, hitherto imported from the old country. Several of the colonial legislatures commented upon and approved the doings of the congress of deputies, and those few members who had stood aloof from or opposed the proceedings, received tokens of marked displeasure from their fellow-members and constituents.

All attempts to enforce the stamp act (which was to go into operation on the 1st of November) proved utterly vain. Business was conducted without the use of the stamps, in defiance of the restrictive provisions of the law, and where this could not be done in safety, as in some of the courts, various evasions were resorted to, and suits were continued or referred to arbitrament. As yet, all efforts pointed simply to the repeal of the law, and a modification of the obnoxious features of the provisions for the levy of customs.

public sentiment,  
either declined  
people. It was  
Ingersoll, the  
nit to the popu-  
ing the matter to  
artford, for that  
d, by a body of  
colony, who, in  
required of him  
any was to avoid  
assembly—as the  
ts, while, as indi-  
erous results from  
hy pusillanimity;  
people to prevent  
d even to proceed  
to their demands,  
tion of the crowd,

ved in the country,  
ce, and the rest re-

S: MODERATE TONE  
THE SEPARATE  
Y.—THE ENG-  
NT.—SPEECH  
NKI.IN.—  
CT.

can congress assem-  
present from six of  
Connecticut, Penn-  
York, Delaware, and

News of these proceedings, and of the turn of public affairs in America, reached England during the administration of Rockingham. Grenville and his companions in the cabinet, who might have felt bound to make use of every expedient, violent or politic, for the maintenance of an act so deliberately framed, and passed with so little opposition as the one in question, were out of office, and the new incumbents were in a position to look dispassionately at the consequences of persistence in carrying out the arbitrary principles recently adopted. The question was, indeed, argued rather as one of policy than of right, for the great majority in parliament, and in the cabinet, had hitherto looked upon the power of the former to lay and enforce discretionary taxes as beyond dispute. It was easy to point to the gross inequality of representation in England, where populous towns and districts had no share in the electoral privilege, for precedents. The colonies of the continental nations of Europe presumed to make no question as to the right and power of the home governments to impose burdens far heavier, and of a far more arbitrary and oppressive character, than those now complained of; and it would be to the last degree humiliating to England, if, while deaf to the respectful entreaties of the provinces, she should be swayed from her course by the first threats of forcible opposition.

In December, (1765,) parliament met, and the whole subject was reconsidered and debated at length. No determinate conclusion was arrived at during the short session, and an adjournment for a few weeks gave opportunity for the transmission of further intelligence from the seat of disturbance. It became matter of notoriety that, in America, the power of parliament was universally questioned, often defied, and that people began to speak "in the most familiar manner" of the possibility of open rupture, and the probable consequences of war with the parent-country.

At the January session, the aged William Pitt was present, and, notwithstanding his infirm health, took an open stand in opposition to the Grenville schemes of taxation—and to all direct taxation of the colonies by parliament—arguing the questions at issue with his usual power and perspicuity. He pointed out the sophistry of the supporters of the measures under examination; in reply to invectives, he uttered the most biting sarcasms; and, in plain terms, free from technicalities, he maintained the rights of the colonies, and approved their opposition. "I rejoice," said he, "that America has

resisted. If its millions of inhabitants had submitted, taxes would soon have been laid on Ireland; and if ever this nation should have a tyrant for its king, six millions of freemen so dead to all the feelings of liberty, as voluntarily to submit to be slaves, would be fit instruments to make slaves of the rest."

That America could effectually resist the power of England, he thought grossly improbable. "In a good cause, on a sound bottom," he proceeded, "the force of this country can crush America to atoms." \* \* "The will of parliament, properly signified, must for ever keep the colonies dependent upon the sovereign kingdom of Great Britain. But, on this ground of the stamp act, when so many here will think it a crying injustice, I am one who will lift up my hands against it. In such a cause your success would be hazardous. America, if she fell, would fall like the strong man; she would embrace the pillars of the state, and pull down the constitution along with her."\*

He coupled these strong denunciations of the proposed direct taxation with complete approval of the exercise of jurisdiction by parliament over all matters of trade and the regulation of manufactures, claiming to perceive "a plain distinction between taxes levied for the purposes of raising revenue, and duties imposed for the regulation of trade for the accommodation of the subject, although, in the consequences, some revenue may accidentally arise from the latter."

A large majority, both of the commons and of the house of lords, still favoured the English claims in their broadest extent, and a resolution was prepared, declaring that the powers of the king and parliament, in legislating for the colonies, were absolutely without limit. When the question of the stamp act was brought directly before the house of lords, those opposed to repeal, prevailed by a small majority. In the other house, the motion to repeal was considered, rather as a question of present policy, than as a test of future rights and powers. Benjamin Franklin, at this time one of the most prominent among the public supporters of freedom in America, underwent a long examination at the bar of the house. His clear and lucid exposition of the American claims, his accurate statistical knowledge, and his acquaintance with the character, spirit, and local politics of the colonies, enabled him to throw much light upon the question, and appear to have produced a powerful effect. He positively insisted that the enforcement of the stamp act was

\* Bancroft.



physically impossible. "Suppose," said he, "a military force sent into America; they will find nobody in arms. What are they then to do? They cannot force a man to take stamps who chooses to do without them. They will not find a rebellion: they may, indeed, make one." When the attempt was made to remove all distinction between direct taxes and imposts on importations, by the suggestion that these were often articles necessary for life; he replied, "The people may refuse commodities, of which the duty makes a part of the price; but an internal tax is forced from them without their consent." And again: "I do not know a single article imported into the northern colonies, but what they can either do without or make themselves."\*

The repeal—coupled, however, with the declaration before referred to, that parliament still retained absolute power in this as in all other colonial legislation—was carried by a very decided majority. The house of lords reluctantly concurred, and the bill received the royal assent on the 18th of March, 1766. The result gave great satisfaction to the commercial portion of the inhabitants of England; and the receipt of the intelligence in America was a signal for universal acclamation and rejoicing.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

INTERVAL OF QUIET.—NEW TAXES ON IMPORTATIONS.—NON-IMPORTATION AGREEMENT.—CIRCULAR OF MASSACHUSETTS.—RIOTS AT BOSTON.—ASSEMBLIES DISSOLVED.—TROOPS ORDERED TO BOSTON.—MEASURES OF THE BRITISH GOVERNMENT.—FATAL ENCOUNTER BETWEEN THE TROOPS AND POPULACE AT BOSTON.—CONCESSIONS OF PARLIAMENT.

A SHORT period of comparative repose ensued upon the settlement of the stamp question. Those who had suffered in the popular disturbances in New York and Massachusetts, were indemnified for their losses by the acts of the general assemblies. In the latter colony, however, this concession to the royalists was accompanied

\* Bancroft.

by a general act of amnesty for the protection of the individual rioters. The "sugar act," somewhat modified during the late session of parliament, still remained a bone of contention.

Under the Pitt administration, which succeeded that of Rockingham, Townshend, Grenville's staunchest supporter, held the office of chancellor of the exchequer. In this capacity, he introduced and carried through a new system of duties for the colonies, which imposts were laid upon various articles hitherto exempt. Some of these were of British production, as paints, paper, &c. A specific duty of three pence a pound was laid on tea. This was, avowedly, for the sole purpose of obtaining revenue by indirect or external taxation. This and other odious measures, previously passed, respecting the maintenance of a standing army, and the quartering of troops upon the inhabitants during their removal from place to place, stirred up all former ill feelings. The ground was now generally taken by political agitators in America, that a tax on importations, if for revenue purposes merely, was no more defensible than a direct tax.

In October, 1767, a movement was commenced at Boston, at a public meeting, for the encouragement of native manufactures, and the organization of a system of non-importation from England. A more important step was taken at the session of the general assembly for Massachusetts, in the year succeeding; a circular-letter being, by a vote of the house, prepared, and dispatched to all the other colonial legislatures, urging the necessity for union in support of the rights of the provinces.

Foremost in these popular proceedings, were two men of widely different character, age, and worldly condition. Samuel Adams, the poor but uncompromising patriot, whose bold, energetic and able disquisitions upon American rights and policy had already gained him wide celebrity, and John Hancock, who possessed youth, fortune, and an ardent temperament. A small vessel belonging to the latter was seized, in the month of June, 1768, as having been engaged in smuggling wines from Madeira. This gave occasion for an outbreak, and the commissioners of revenue—officers recently appointed by parliament, for the superintendence of customs, &c.—were forced to seek protection from the mob in one of the forts of the harbour.

The assembly of Massachusetts was required by the governor, Bernard, to rescind the circular before mentioned, and, upon refusal

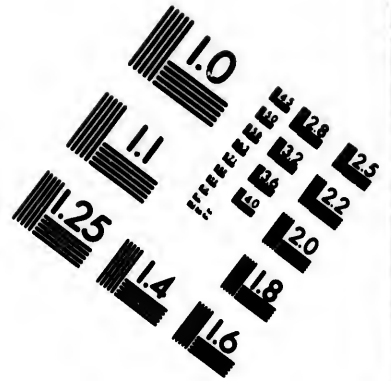
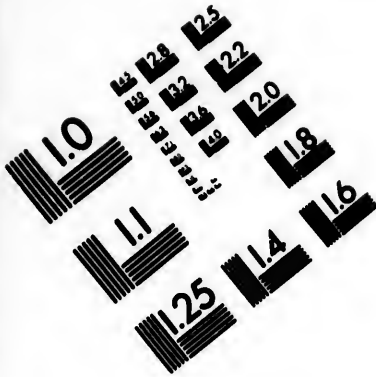
ary force sent  
t are they then  
o chooses to do  
y may, indeed,  
e all distinction  
y the suggestion  
o replied, "The  
makes a part of  
m without their  
article imported  
er do without or

on before referred  
this as in all other  
ed majority. The  
received the royal  
gave great satisfac-  
s of England; and  
signal for universal

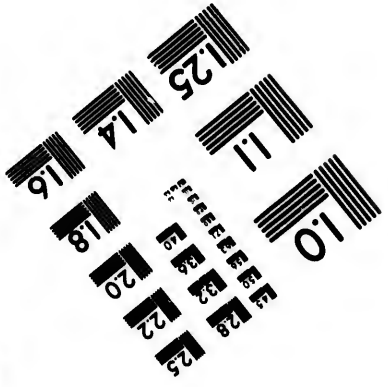
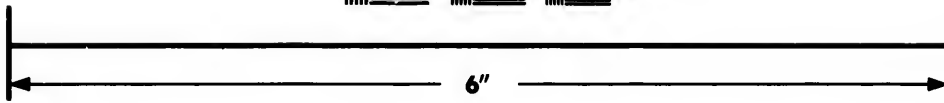
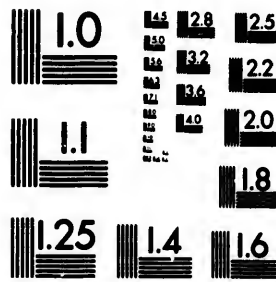
IMPORTATIONS.—  
ULAR OF MAS-  
SEMBLIES DIS-  
—MEASURES  
AL ENCOUN-  
ULACE AT  
TAMENT.

d upon the settlement  
ed in the popular dis-  
were indemnified for  
mbles. In the latter  
ists was accompanied





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

10  
16  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32

10  
16  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32

by a large vote, was dissolved. A favourable reception of the rebellious message, produced similar results in Virginia, Maryland, and Georgia. The New York assembly, proving refractory upon the question of quartering British troops, was also dismissed by the governor. In Massachusetts, the inhabitants of the several towns, unable to speak through legal representatives, elected delegates to a convention, whose proceedings, if unaccompanied with legitimate authority, might, at least, show to the world the true sentiments of the people.

For enforcing the revenue laws, as well as for the preservation of order in the turbulent city of Boston, General Gage, commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, ordered thither two regiments of regulars from Halifax. He had received previous instructions to this effect from government, but it was not then supposed that so large a force would be necessary to effect the purpose. The authorities refused to provide quarters for the troops, alleging that there was accommodation for them at the regular barracks; but Gage was determined to quarter them within the town, and accordingly a portion encamped on the common, and most of the others took possession of the state-house. Cannon were planted in front, and an ostentatious display of military force served to enrage and embitter the feelings of the inhabitants.

Accommodations for the soldiery could only be procured by an appropriation of the army funds, which was accordingly made, and full accounts of the fractious spirit of the colony were forwarded to England. The news excited a great degree of public indignation; parliament proceeded to pass resolutions of censure against the colonies, and—a matter of graver importance—voted instructions to the respective governors, for the seizure and transportation to England, for trial, of the leaders in disloyalty.

The legislature of Virginia, at the session in May, 1769, remonstrated against this infringement of the rights of persons, which, although sanctioned by an ancient law respecting treasons committed abroad, was opposed to all principles of liberty and justice. Resolutions upon this topic, embracing also a general proclamation of colonial rights, were transmitted to the other colonies. The consequence was a speedy dissolution of the assembly by the governor, Lord Botetourt. The non-importation agreement was, shortly after this, extensively adopted, both in Virginia and other of the southern provinces.

The Massachusetts legislature, at the same period, refused positively to appropriate funds for the army expenses. Requisition was made for the removal of the troops, and upon the governor's response that this was beyond the pale of his authority, all legislative business was stayed, with the exception of indignant discussion of the public wrongs. In March of the following year, the mutual hatred between the citizens of Boston and the hired soldiery quartered among them, aggravated by insults and injuries on either side, broke out in open hostilities. On the evening of the 5th of the month, a small body of soldiers, commanded by a Captain Preston, was attacked by a mob, and, without orders from their officer, fired upon the crowd, in self-defence. Four persons were killed by the discharge, and a number were wounded. The rage of the citizens, at this occurrence, was so great, that it was deemed advisable to remove the troops from the town to the barracks at Castle William. This being effected, those who had perished in the riot were buried with great ceremony, the whole population taking part in the exercises of the occasion, as if in commemoration of some national calamity.

The soldiers implicated in the alleged massacre were indicted for murder. They received a fair and impartial trial, being ably defended by John Adams and Josiah Quincy, both of whom were known as ardent advocates of the popular cause. Conclusive evidence was found against two only of the accused; these were convicted of manslaughter, and received but a light punishment.

In New York, the temporary ascendancy of the "moderate party" resulted in submission to the requisitions of the quartering act, but the same state of feeling existed there as in Boston between the troops and the populace.

Some concession was made by parliament, in 1770, to the demands of the colonies and the petitions of the English merchants. The duties on articles of British produce, &c., included in the list of commodities taxable under the regulations introduced by Townshend, were all removed, on motion of Lord North, with the exception of that on tea. This was retained simply as an assertion of principle; for, while parliament evidently desired to conciliate and assist the American colonies, it was plain that the great majority of the people of England and their representatives still retained all their former ideas respecting the sovereign power of the home government.

on of the rebel-  
Maryland, and  
ctory upon the  
mitted by the  
several towns,  
d delegates to a  
with legitimate  
e sentiments of

e preservation of  
e, commander-in-  
er two regiments  
ous instructions to  
supposed that so  
ose. The author-  
lleging that there  
racks; but Gage  
and accordingly a  
of the others took  
anted in front, and  
to enrage and em

be procured by an  
accordingly made,  
ony were forwarded  
public indignation;  
ure against the colo-  
d instructions to the  
ortation to England,

May, 1769, remon-  
of persons, which,  
g treasons committed  
and justice. Resol-  
eral proclamation of  
colonies. The conse-  
by the governor,  
ent was, shortly after  
other of the south-

## CHAPTER V.

PARTY SPIRIT IN THE COLONIES.—WHIG AND TORY.—THE REGULATORS OF NORTH CAROLINA.—HUTCHINSON, GOVERNOR OF MASSACHUSETTS.—DESTRUCTION OF THE GASPEE.—SYSTEM OF POLITICAL COMMUNICATION BETWEEN THE COLONIES.—TEA DISPATCHED TO AMERICA BY THE EAST INDIA COMPANY.—REFUSAL OF THE COLONISTS TO RECEIVE IT.—VIOLENT PROCEEDINGS AT BOSTON: CLOSURE OF THE PORT.—EXTENSION OF CANADA.

THE bitterness of party spirit, by this time, throughout the colonies, was added to that of jealousy and resistance to oppression. The loyalists, under the name of tories, and the whigs, who constituted the popular party, looked upon each other with distrust and indignation. Between neighbours and former friends, and between members of the same family, a strife was engendered, rancorous in proportion to the depth of either party's convictions.

The names of whig and tory were applied, at this period, to two parties in the Carolinas; the first, self-styled regulators, who originally organized themselves as a party for the summary punishment of criminals, in a country where the population was sparse, and the course of justice tardy; the second, their opponents, known also by other titles. In North Carolina, those calling themselves "regulators," consisted of ignorant inhabitants of the more barren districts, and were simply combined to resist all civil authority. The difficulties which arose from the existence of such a party, resulted in actual, though brief, civil war. In May, 1771, "Governor Tryon at the head of a body of volunteers, marched into the disaffected counties. The regulators assembled in arms, and an action was fought at Alamance, on the Haw, near the head-waters of Cape Fear river, in which some two hundred were left dead upon the field. Out of a large number taken prisoners, six were executed for high treason."\* The good-will of this turbulent faction was conciliated by a subsequent governor, Joseph Martin.

In the north, causes of discontent with English authority were

\* Hildreth's History of the United States.



multiplied, notwithstanding the concessions of parliament. Hutchinson, upon receiving the appointment of governor of Massachusetts, in 1771, was made independent of the colony by the settlement upon him of a large salary to be paid by the crown. This gave great dissatisfaction, inasmuch as the governor and colony were no longer bound by a common interest. The measure, it is true, had been provoked by a neglect on the part of the assembly to make the usual appropriation for the governor's salary.

Fulfillment of the non-importation agreement had been gradually relaxed in most of the colonies, except in regard to the one article of tea, which, being alone retained of that list made out for revenue purposes merely, stood as a representative of all the rest. The old regulations of trade, as provided for in the "sugar act," were still enforced, and a number of vessels, armed for the revenue service, were employed on the coast. One of these, named the Gaspee, had become particularly obnoxious to the people of Rhode Island. She interfered most inconveniently in their smuggling transactions; and her officers, moreover, in carrying out their instructions, had, by arrogance and arbitrary conduct, excited popular ill-will. While stationed in Narragansett Bay, this vessel, by a stratagem, was decoyed upon a shoal, and, as she lay aground, was attacked and burned by a party from Providence, on the night of June 10th, 1772. Great efforts were made to secure the punishment of the perpetrators of this act of violence, but they were so shielded by the favour of the people, that no conclusive evidence could be obtained against them, although they were identified by common report. The appointment of a special court for their trial, and the offer of a large reward for evidence, alike failed to bring the offenders to punishment.

Agitation of political questions, throughout this period, was continually kept up by private associations and corresponding committees of different towns and districts. This movement, originating in New England, led to a more general system of union, in consequence of action by the Virginia legislature. A copy of the proceedings in the Massachusetts assembly, in which the controversy with the governor also involved general discussion of grievances, having been forwarded to that body, a committee was regularly appointed to inquire into the questions at issue, and to communicate thereupon with the other colonies. The assembly was, in consequence, dissolved by the governor, but the committee proceeded,

TORY.—THE  
GOVERNOR  
GASPEE.—  
BETWEEN  
ERICA BY  
OF THE  
PRO-  
THE

throughout the colo-  
oppression. The  
who constituted  
trust and indig-  
s, and between  
red, rancorous in  
s.  
his period, to two  
ctors, who origin-  
ary punishment  
sparse, and the  
es, known also by  
hemselves "regu-  
more barren dis-  
l authority. The  
a party, resulted  
Governor Tryon,  
to the disaffected  
and an action was  
ad-waters of Cape  
ft dead upon the  
were executed for  
faction was concil-  
sh authority were  
es.

notwithstanding, to fulfil their instructions. This example was followed by the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, Pennsylvania, and Maryland. Such an organization proved of inestimable service at the commencement of the contest upon which the country was about to enter. A publication, by Doctor Franklin, then agent for Massachusetts, as well as for several other of the colonies, in England, of certain letters written by Hutchinson and other loyalists, excited great indignation. These letters, which were never intended to meet the public eye, spoke contemptuously of the popular party, and recommended stringent measures for coercion.

Opportunity was not long wanting for open demonstration of the true state of feeling in the colonies. As already mentioned, the agreement to import no tea had been generally observed, and the East India Company, receiving no orders from American merchants, made the necessary arrangements for carrying on the trade by their own agents. Consignees were appointed in the more important seaports, and a number of vessels were freighted and dispatched. In New York and Philadelphia, these agents, alarmed at the threats of the people, thought it the part of safety not to enter upon the duties of their appointment, and the vessels were obliged to return to England with their cargoes. In Boston the consignees refused to resign their agency, and in the midst of the excitement attendant upon their contumacy, several vessels arrived loaded with tea.

A considerable body of citizens stationed themselves as a watch, to preclude the possibility of a secret landing, and the captain and consignees were notified that the only safe course for them to pursue, was immediately to comply with the popular demand, that the tea be sent back to England. But upon application at the custom-house, no clearance could be effected without a landing of the cargo, and the governor refused a permit to pass the defensive works of the castle.

The citizens held repeated mass meetings, in which the question was fully discussed, and nearly unanimous resolutions were adopted to resist to the last extremity all attempts at landing the tea. They were in session (December 16th, 1773) when the definitive reply of the governor, respecting a pass, was received. "A violent commotion instantly ensued. A person disguised after the manner of the Indians, who was in the gallery, shouted at this juncture the cry of war: the meeting was dissolved in the twinkling of an eye. The

multitude rushed in mass to Griffin's wharf. About twenty persons, also disguised as Indians, then made their appearance; all either masters of ships, carpenters, or caulkers. They went on board the ships laden with tea. In less than two hours, three hundred and forty chests were staved, and emptied in the sea. They were not interrupted: the surrounding multitude on shore served them as a safe guard. The affair was conducted without tumult: no damage was done to the ships, or to any other effects whatever.\*\*

The consequence of these acts of violence was the immediate passage, by parliament, of the act known as the "Boston port bill," by which the port was closed against all importations, the custom-house being removed to Salem. This restriction was not to be removed until full compensation should be made for the damage done by the populace. On motion of North, a further enactment passed, by a very large majority, for giving the appointment of all civil and judicial officers in Massachusetts directly to the crown. It was also enacted that, at any future prosecution for "homicide or other capital offence" committed in support of lawful authority, the governor might send the accused out of the colony for trial, either to another province, or to England, if it appeared to him necessary so to afford security against popular prejudice.

In anticipation of the possible result of such violent measures, acts were passed for the further regulation of government in Canada, the bounds of which province were extended "so as to embrace the territory situated between the lakes, the river Ohio, and the Mississippi."

\* Otis' Botta.

example was  
New Hamp-  
such an organ  
ement of the  
A publication,  
as well as for  
letters written  
nation. These  
olic eye, spoke  
ended stringent

stration of the  
mentioned, the  
served, and the  
ican merchants,  
e trade by their  
e important sea-  
dispatched. In  
d at the threats  
o enter upon the  
obliged to return  
onsignees refused  
itement attendant  
ed with tea.  
selves as a watch,  
d the captain and  
e for them to pur-  
demand, that the  
on at the custom-  
nding of the cargo,  
defensive works of

which the question  
tions were adopted  
ing the tea. They  
definitive reply of  
A violent commo-  
the manner of the  
s juncture the cry  
ng of an eye. The

## CHAPTER VI.

GAGE, GOVERNOR OF MASSACHUSETTS: MILITARY PREPARATIONS: MINUTE-MEN.—DISTRESS IN BOSTON: SYMPATHY OF OTHER TOWNS.—CONVENTION PROPOSED BY VIRGINIA: DELEGATES CHOSEN BY THE COLONIES.—THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS: RESOLUTIONS AND DECLARATION ADOPTED.—VIOLENT MEASURES OF PARLIAMENT.

IN May, 1774, General Gage, having received the appointment of governor of Massachusetts, in place of Hutchinson, arrived in Boston. He was, personally, held in much greater esteem than his predecessor, and met with a suitable reception, notwithstanding the general state of disorder and indignation at the speedy enforcement of the port bill, which was to go into operation on the 1st of June. A number of regiments of regulars were concentrated at the town for the purpose of overawing the inhabitants, and, under the directions of the general, defensive works were erected on the neck by which the peninsula of Boston is connected with the main land.

These precautions were by no means premature or unnecessary, for, every where throughout the colony, appearances grew more and more ominous. The new officers, of royal appointment, were impeded in the exercise of their duties, by threats or violence; the organization and training of the militia was carried on with great zeal and perseverance; meetings were every where held, and resolutions were passed breathing the spirit of the most determined resistance. At a general meeting of Massachusetts delegates, at Salem, of which Hancock was president, "They enrolled twelve thousand of the militia, whom they called *minute-men*; that is, soldiers that must hold themselves in readiness to march at a minute's notice." Directions were openly and boldly given for the storing of provisions, the collection of ammunition, &c., as if the country were already involved in civil war.

The city of Boston necessarily suffered severely from the total cutting off of its commercial resources. The most hearty sympathy was expressed by the towns of Massachusetts, and by the other colonies, both in the form of resolutions of encouragement, and, more substantially, by subscriptions for the relief of the poor. At Salem

and Marblehead, the merchants proffered the use of their warehouses to the Boston importers, and the inhabitants of the former made public profession of their determination not to take advantage of the position in which they were placed, to enrich themselves at the expense of those who had exposed their property and personal safety for the general good.

In the neighbouring colonies, the same state of affairs existed as in Massachusetts. Not only were the people busily engaged in preparing arms and ammunition, but, in several instances, they violently plundered the public stores. The legislative assemblies generally responded to the exigency of the occasion, by resolutions of sympathy and encouragement. In Virginia, it was resolved, that attempts to coerce one colony to submit to measures which all had expressed a common interest in opposing, were to be resisted by the others, and it was recommended that an annual convention should be held by deputies from all the colonies, to take counsel for the general good.

In accordance with this proposal, all the colonies except Georgia made choice of delegates, in number from two to seven, according to the population of each, who were to convene at Philadelphia. At the same time, resolutions to cease all commerce with Great Britain were renewed. Agreements to that effect were signed by immense numbers, and those who did not readily concur with the proposal, were effectually overawed by a threat of the publication of their names. A time was fixed for the agreement to go into operation. The state of public feeling was also demonstrated by acts of violence committed upon the persons of obnoxious Tories, many of whom were "tarred and feathered," or otherwise so persecuted as to be obliged to place themselves under the protection of the authorities at the fortified posts.

The continental congress met at Philadelphia, on the 5th of September, 1774. All were present except the deputies from South Carolina, who arrived on the 14th. Of the fifty-three delegates to this convention, nearly all were men of property and high standing in society: many of them—as Patrick Henry of Virginia, Samuel and John Adams of Massachusetts, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and others—were already celebrated for eloquence, legal attainments, or for an active share in the first patriotic movements. It was no assembly of reckless political adventurers, but consisted of men who truly represented the intelligent portion of the community, and who

ARY PREPARA-  
SYMPATHY OF  
IRGINIA: DEL-  
CONTINENTAL  
N ADOPTED.  
MENT.

the appointment  
hinson, arrived in  
ter esteem than his  
otwithstanding the  
speedy enforcement  
on the 1st of June.  
ntrated at the town  
nd, under the direc-  
ted on the neck by  
h the main land.  
ture or unnecessary,  
ances grew more and  
pointment, were im-  
ats or violence; the  
arried on with great  
where held, and reso-  
he most determined  
hachusetts delegates, at  
they enrolled twelve  
ute-men; that is, sol-  
o march at a minute's  
given for the storing  
c., as if the country

verely from the total  
most hearty sympathy  
and by the other col-  
aragement, and, more  
the poor. At Salem

felt that their own good fame, their lives, property, and personal safety depended upon the performance of their duty to their constituents, in a manner as prudent and cautious, as firm and uncompromising. It was agreed that each colony should have but one vote, and the proceedings of the assembly were only to be made public so far as permitted by its own resolutions. The session was held with closed doors.

The first proceedings were the adoption of resolutions expressive of approval of those passed by the Massachusetts convention; a declaration of rights, accompanied by a specific enumeration of the instances in which these had been infringed by the British government; and a more efficient organization of the system of non-importation, which was to go into general operation on the 1st of the ensuing December, and to which was appended an agreement not to export goods to England or its dependencies, if, at a future period, redress should not have been obtained for injuries already committed. Incidentally to this agreement, the importation of slaves was condemned, and was prohibited by the articles of compact.

A petition to the king, and addresses, letters, and memorials to the people of Great Britain, and of the northern American provinces, were subsequently prepared, debated, and adopted. An unavailing communication had been previously addressed to General Gage, remonstrating against the military operations at Boston. Congress adjourned in the latter part of October, after providing for a future meeting, to take place in the following year.

During the winter, the colonies had opportunity to express their separate opinion upon the doings of Congress, either by their assemblies or by popular conventions. The acts passed generally met with hearty approval and concurrence. The sect of Quakers, at their yearly meeting, carrying out their principles of peace, condemned every thing that should tend to bring down upon the country the calamities of war; but, on the other hand, the eloquence and ardour of New England divines, especially of the Congregational societies, were lent, with little scruple or concealment, to the popular cause. The association for non-intercourse with England experienced more opposition in New York than elsewhere: the Tories of that colony, by reason of wealth, influence, and numbers, occupied a more independent position than in either of the other provinces, and the self-interest of the large number of those dependent upon the commerce of New York, strengthened their opposition.

cer  
An  
iate  
and  
ishr  
to i  
that  
also  
and  
was,  
whic  
neces  
tions  
York  
and a  
by lar  
oppon  
and in  
penden

WARLY  
PATCH  
AT LE  
BOST  
—  
RY  
O

THE in  
acts of pa  
insulted  
diary; we  
difficult

The parliament of Great Britain, upon receipt of intelligence concerning the American congress and the disorderly state of affairs in America, determined on violent coercive measures. The conciliatory and moderate policy of the elder Pitt was rejected; Franklin and the other colonial agents were refused a hearing; and, as a punishment to the colonies for their resistance to authority and refusal to import goods from Great Britain, all other foreign trade, except that to the British West Indies, was absolutely prohibited, as was also the prosecution of the fisheries on the banks. A large military and naval reinforcement was also ordered to America. A provision was, indeed, made for the exemption from taxation of any colony which should, by its own act, appropriate a "sufficient" sum for the necessary expenses of government and defence. In the new restrictions upon trade, exceptions were introduced in favour of New York and North Carolina, these being considered the most loyal and amenable of the colonies. The acts were passed in both houses by large majorities, notwithstanding the able argument of eloquent opponents, and a crowd of petitions from merchants, manufacturers, and inhabitants of other colonies, whose interests were directly dependent upon prosperous commerce with America.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

WARLIKE PREPARATIONS IN MASSACHUSETTS.—TROOPS DISPATCHED TO SEIZE MILITARY STORES.—FIRST BLOOD SHED AT LEXINGTON.—DISASTROUS RETREAT OF THE BRITISH TO BOSTON.—PROCEEDINGS IN THE NEIGHBOURING COLONIES.—BOSTON BESIEGED BY THE PROVINCIALS.—CONCURRENCE OF THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.—SECOND SESSION OF CONGRESS.—APPOINTMENT OF OFFICERS.—SEIZURE OF CROWN POINT AND TICONDEROGA.

THE inhabitants of Massachusetts, denounced as rebels by the late acts of parliament, cut off from all sources of former prosperity, and insulted by the presence of overbearing military officials and soldiery, were now ready for any extremity. It was with no small difficulty that supplies could be procured for the troops at Boston,

and the commanding officer heard, with alarm, of the unceasing preparations for war that were going on in all the neighbouring districts. The precarious position of the inhabitants of Boston excited universal concern, and various plans were suggested for their relief. Among others, it is said to have been seriously proposed, that "a valuation should be made of the houses and furniture belonging to the inhabitants, that the city should then be fired, and that all the losses should be reimbursed from the public treasure." The provincial congress of Massachusetts ordered the procurement of large quantities of ammunition and arms, which, as fast as they could be collected, were privately stored at different dépôts in the country towns. Cannon, balls, &c., were smuggled out of Boston, over the fortified neck, in manure-carts, and various other devices were successfully resorted to for deceiving the guard.

General Gage, having now nearly three thousand men under his immediate command, thought that the time had arrived for a forcible check upon the movements of the rebels. He had learned that arms and ammunition, belonging to the provincials, were collected in large quantities at Concord, about eighteen miles from Boston. These he determined to seize, and, having taken every precaution to prevent intelligence of the movement from being known, he dispatched several companies of grenadiers and light infantry, numbering about eight hundred men, upon this service, on the night of April 18th, (1775.) Doctor Joseph Warren, one of the most prominent of the Boston patriots, had, by some means, become acquainted with the intended attack, and sent messengers forthwith to spread the news through the country.

Early on the following morning the troops, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Smith, entered Lexington, a few miles from Concord. A company of provincial militia, to the number of little more than seventy, was under arms upon the green, near the meeting-house. Major Pitcairn, leader of the van-guard, called out, "Disperse, rebels! lay down your arms and disperse." The order not being obeyed, he immediately discharged a pistol, and, waving his sword, gave the command to fire. Several fell at the first volley, and, although the militia immediately retreated, they were fired upon in the act of dispersing. Eight were killed.

The troops then marched on to Concord. At that town the minute-men endeavoured to keep possession of a bridge, but were charged and driven from their position. The object of the expedi-



tion was accomplished, by the destruction of a quantity of ammunition and provisions, and the spiking and dismounting of two pieces of artillery. By this time the whole country was up in arms, and, as the troops commenced their retreat, they were exposed to a galling and destructive fire from places of concealment on either side of the road, while a large and constantly increasing force of the provincials hung upon their rear.

To protect the retreat, General Gage had, fortunately for the expedition, sent on a reinforcement of sixteen companies, who met the first detachment at Lexington. Wearied by their long night march and the fatigues of the morning, and with their ammunition nearly spent, the whole of the first detachment, it was thought, might have perished or fallen into the enemies' hands but for the aid thus opportunely afforded. After resting and recruiting their strength, the whole army marched towards Boston.

Harassed throughout the entire distance by an irregular but deadly fire from concealed marksmen, the worn-out troops reached Charlestown about sunset. They had sustained a loss, in killed and wounded, of not far from three hundred men: the provincials lost less than one-third of that number. What added to the difficulty of the march, was the intense heat of the weather, and a high wind, which raised clouds of dust.

The first blood had now been shed; the country was actually involved in war; and Massachusetts called upon the other colonies for assistance. Connecticut, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, made response by raising troops and commissioning officers. In anticipation of this more regular levy, a large army of volunteers had collected and encamped around Boston. Generals Ward and Thomas received the highest commission under the provision of the Massachusetts provincial legislature. The volunteers from Connecticut were commanded by General Putnam, an old soldier, and a true man of the times. There was no difficulty, at this period, in procuring men: more, indeed, flocked in than could be supported, and upon the arrival of the regular provincial forces, great numbers of the volunteers disbanded and returned home. The universal indignation was increased by reports of British cruelties during the brief period of hostilities. These stories, it is said, the leaders of the people "never failed to propagate and exaggerate, in every place, repeating them with words of extreme vehemence, and painting them in the most vivid colours," thereby producing "an

incredible fermentation, and a frantic rage in the minds of the inhabitants."

The middle and southern colonies, as soon as the news of the opening of the campaign in the north could reach them, generally gave expression to the popular feeling of sympathy with the patriots, and of their conviction that the questions in dispute were of common interest. Military organizations, associations for purposes of defence, and seizures of public stores and funds for the popular cause, were the order of the day.

On the 10th of May, (1775,) in accordance with former provisions, the continental congress assembled, the second time, at Philadelphia. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, who had presided at the first meeting, was reelected; but upon his departure to attend the meeting of the Virginia assembly, his place was taken by Thomas Jefferson. The first proceedings were to prepare a further petition to the king, and addresses to the inhabitants of Great Britain and the American colonies. It was then voted, that war had been commenced by England, and that active measures should be taken for defence; but, at the same time, a nominal allegiance was professed to the parent-country.

Continental officers were next chosen—the office of commander-in-chief being bestowed upon George Washington, one of the members from Virginia; Artemas Ward, Philip Schuyler, Israel Putnam, and Charles Lee, were chosen major-generals; Horatio Gates received the appointment of adjutant-general. The two officers last mentioned had both held commissions in the British service.

These proceedings occupied some time, and, meanwhile, important scenes were enacting at the seat of war. On the very day that congress assembled, a bold and successful adventure was achieved by a volunteer force of the "Green Mountain Boys," commanded by Ethan Allen, one of the most active and enterprising of the popular leaders at the north. At Crown Point and Ticonderoga, fortified posts upon Lake Champlain, on the Canadian frontier, it was known that there was great store of artillery and ammunition, and a design was formed simultaneously in Connecticut and Vermont to accomplish its seizure. Colonel Benedict Arnold, of New Haven, at the time connected with the besieging army at Boston, was commissioned by the former. He is described as having been "possessed by nature of an extraordinary force of genius, a restless character, and an intrepidity bordering upon prodigy." Finding that Allen had already raised a force for the same object, Arnold joined the expedition as a subordinate.

The garrisons at the forts were grossly insufficient in numbers for their defence, and were, moreover, taken completely by surprise. When the commander of Ticonderoga, roused from sleep, and summoned by Allen to surrender, "in the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," was informed that he was "prisoner of America, he was much confused, and repeated, several times, 'What does this mean?'" About two hundred and twenty pieces of artillery, with a great quantity of ammunition, and a number of howitzers and mortars, were secured at these two posts. Proceeding down the Sorel in a schooner, Arnold surprised and captured a British corvette which lay at Fort St. John. The captured fortresses on Champlain were garrisoned and put under his command.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

CONDITION OF THE BRITISH ARMY IN BOSTON.—BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.—WASHINGTON AT THE CAMP.—CONGRESSIONAL PROCEEDINGS.—THE INDIAN TRIBES.

—JOSEPH BRANT.—MILITARY PREPARATIONS IN THE SEPARATE COLONIES.

EARLY in June, the British forces in Boston had been increased by fresh arrivals of troops, under Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Clinton, to more than ten thousand disciplined soldiers. It was with great difficulty that supplies of provisions could be procured for so large an army, beleaguered as was the town by a superior, although undisciplined force of the provincials. General Gage, therefore, first issued a proclamation of free pardon to all who would lay aside their attitude of rebellion, and submit to the royal authority, excepting, however, the prime movers of sedition, John Hancock and Samuel Adams. He then formed a plan to penetrate the enemies' lines, and open a free communication with the country.

The intended movement became known to the American commanders, and orders were immediately given for the erection of fortifications on Bunker hill, an elevation commanding the neck. Colonel William Prescott, with a body of one thousand men, was commissioned upon this service, on the night of the 16th of June.

Mistaking his point of destination, this officer commenced operations at Breed's hill, a position nearer to the town, and overlooking Charlestown, at that time a place of considerable size. Labouring with great diligence and silence, the provincials had thrown up, before day-break, a low earthen redoubt in the form of a square, sufficiently substantial to afford some protection for the troops.

As soon as these operations were discovered from the harbour, a tremendous fire was opened upon the works from the men-of-war which lay at anchor, from the city artillery, and from floating batteries. Notwithstanding the storm of shells and balls, the provincials continued their labour, and carried a trench and embankment from the redoubt down the north-eastern slope of the hill, nearly to the water's edge. A reinforcement of several companies had, meanwhile, been thrown into the intrenchment. As the height commanded the city, it was absolutely necessary to prevent the establishment of a battery there, in order to maintain possession of Boston; Gage, therefore, determined upon an immediate attempt to storm the redoubt.

Three thousand men were transported from the city to the foot of the hill, in boats. Major-General Howe and General Pigot were in command. The most exposed point was the interval between the trench and Mystic river, at the north-east: this was partially defended by a temporary breast-work of hay and fencing stuff. "The troops of Massachusetts occupied Charlestown, the redoubt, and part of the trench; those of Connecticut, commanded by Captain Nolton, and those of New Hampshire, under Colonel Starke, the rest of the trench." Generals Putnam and Warren were both present, and assisting in the directions of the defence. The troops were very scantily furnished with ammunition, and very few had bayonets.

Towards the middle of the afternoon, the arrangements for attack being perfected, the regulars marched up the hill; their officers were surprised at the silence from within the redoubt, for the provincials reserved their fire until a very near approach of the enemy. When the word was at last given, so heavy and destructive was the discharge, that the British fell back in disorder, and retreated to the foot of the hill. A second charge, to which the troops were, with difficulty, marshalled, resulted in a similar disaster. The number of officers who fell in these two first attempts is astonishing. "General Howe remained for some time alone upon the field of battle; all the officers who surrounded him were killed or wounded."

The town of Charlestown had been fired by order of Gage, at the

time of the first repulse, and, consisting chiefly of wooden buildings, was soon reduced to ashes. The scene had now become one of intense interest. Every hill and house-top from which a view of the field could be obtained, was thronged with spectators. General Clinton, who had witnessed the second charge from Cop's hill, a neighbouring height, hastened up, with additional forces. The columns were again formed, and marched up to the redoubt, suffering little from the slackened fire of the provincials, whose powder was now nearly spent. At the same time, the lateral trench was swept by several pieces of artillery, which the British had succeeded in posting at its extremity.

From three several quarters, the regulars poured into the enclosed space of the redoubt, from which the Americans were driven at the point of the bayonet, defending themselves lustily with their muskets clubbed. Their retreat was effected, with little further loss, across Charlestown neck, although the passage was exposed to a heavy fire from the floating batteries, and from one of the armed vessels. The English immediately fortified Bunker hill, to secure command of the neck for the future.

In this battle more than one-third of the entire British force were either killed or wounded. The loss of the provincials a little exceeded four hundred and fifty. Doctor Joseph Warren, recently commissioned as a general officer, perished during the retreat. He was shot down, it is said, by an English officer, who borrowed a musket from a private for the purpose.

The provincial congress of Massachusetts had, ere this, declared the colony absolved from all allegiance to Gage, who, in the resolution, was pronounced "a public enemy." After communication with the continental congress, a provisional government was organized, consisting of town deputies and a council. It was, indeed, plain to all that there was no choice between a sanguinary contest and a humiliating submission. In England, the popular feeling, where not affected by the personal interest of commerce, was most decidedly inimical to the rebellious colonies, who had presumed to defy the power and question the authority of the British government, and the coercive measures adopted met with general approbation. It is true that there were not a few who foresaw the possible consequences of the war, and deprecated the violence that might cause the loss of England's most valuable foreign possession; others, of yet more liberal sentiments, felt and expressed a noble sympathy with their

transatlantic brethren throughout the long and arduous struggle upon which they had now entered.

About the 1st of July, General Washington arrived at the camp, near Boston, and assumed command. The presence of an experienced commander-in-chief was absolutely requisite in the existing state of the army. About fourteen thousand men, new to the discipline of a camp, and very insufficiently provided with necessary accommodations, stores, and ammunition, were posted so as to guard the approaches to the city: this line extended over a space of not far from twelve miles. Washington's head-quarters were at Cambridge. Generals Ward and Lee were stationed at Roxbury and Prospect hill. The latter position had been fortified by the provincials immediately subsequent to the battle at Breed's hill.

The more important congressional proceedings during the months of June and July, in addition to those already briefly mentioned, were the issue of bills of credit, redeemable by apportionment among the colonies, to the amount of three millions of dollars; the establishment of a post-office system (at the head of which was Benjamin Franklin); and the commission of emissaries to treat with the Indian tribes. These, and various minor arrangements, being concluded, congress adjourned until September. The attempt to gain over the powerful confederacy of the Six Nations, proved a signal failure, except so far as related to the tribe of the Oneidas, over whom Mr. Kirkland, a missionary, had great influence. The munificence and crafty policy of the English Indian agent, Sir William Johnson, had for many years secured the admiration and affection of the rest of the Iroquois; and, upon his death, they proved equally loyal to his son-in-law and successor, Guy Johnson. Their most celebrated chief, Joseph Brant, Thayendanagea, who had been brought up and educated under Sir William's patronage, received a commission in the British service, and took, as we shall have occasion to notice, an important part in border hostilities. The character of Brant has been generally mistaken by historians, and it is only by the research of modern writers that his abilities and good qualities have been brought to light, and the popular slanders, which pronounced him a monster of cruelty, refuted.

The spirit which actuated the general congress was also evinced in the separate colonies, either by popular movements, or the action of the provincial assemblies. The authority of the royal government was, in many instances, set at naught: troops were raised, and

colonial bills were issued to defray the expense of their maintenance. As heretofore, the greatest conflict of public opinion was in New York, where the loyalists were enabled to make a stronger stand than elsewhere. The members for New York, at the late session of congress, were chosen, not by the assembly, but by a self-organized provincial congress elected by the people at large.

## CHAPTER IX.

FACILLITATING POLICY OF ENGLAND.—PROVISIONS BY CONGRESS FOR CARRYING ON THE WAR.—NAVAL OPERATIONS.—EXPEDITION AGAINST CANADA.—SIEGE OF FORT ST. JOHN.—ALLEN'S ATTEMPT UPON MONTREAL.—THE CITY OCCUPIED BY MONTGOMERY.—MARCH TOWARDS QUEBEC.

THERE is much wisdom in the criticism of Botta, upon the general policy of the British government during these early hostilities. In speaking of Gage, he says: "He arrived in America accompanied with general affection: he left it abhorred; perhaps less through his own fault than that of the ministers, who, in place of rigorous decrees, should have sent powerful armies; or instead of armies, conciliatory conditions, consonant with the opinions of Americans. But men commonly know neither how to exert all their force, nor to surmount the shame of descending to an accommodation: hence delays, hesitations, and half measures, so often prove the ruin of enterprises."—(*Otis' Translation.*)

The whole proceedings of the British military and naval forces at this time were calculated rather to annoy and enrage, than to overawe. There were many cruisers busied upon the coast in hindering the American commerce, and in procuring supplies for the beleaguered garrison at Boston. The sea-port towns suffered from their depredations; and, in one especial instance, the action of the provincials in preventing the procurement of provisions, &c., by a British vessel, was punished by bombardment. This was at Falmouth, afterwards Portland, which was destroyed in the month of October (1775).

Congress was at this time in session, having come together early

in the preceding month. Delegates from all the original thirteen colonies were present; Georgia had elected deputies since the last meeting. The principal attention of this body was necessarily directed to the maintenance of the army, the difficulty of procuring ammunition and military stores being very great. Privileges of trade were granted to vessels in which gun-powder should be imported, and ships were dispatched to distant foreign ports, even to the coast of Guinea, for the purchase of this grand desideratum of modern warfare.

The three New England colonies, at an early period in the war, commenced retaliations upon British commerce, for the injuries committed at sea. The first step taken by the Massachusetts assembly, was to direct the arming of several vessels to protect the sea-coast. From this they proceeded to authorize private adventure, by the issue of letters-of-marque, and the allowance of reprisals. Courts of admiralty were also instituted to decide prize claims. The privateers thus commissioned were, however, restricted to the seizure of vessels containing supplies for "the soldiers who made war against the Americans."

The general congress adopted, soon after, substantially the same course. A fleet of thirteen vessels was ordered to be fitted out in the northern and middle colonies. Continental courts of admiralty were also created, and the public vessels received a general commission to "capture all those which should attempt to lend assistance to the enemy, in any mode whatever." It is singular to observe the manner in which congress, previous to the declaration of independence, while adopting every measure of open hostility, still aimed at a nominal distinction between rebellion against the British government and the resistance of illegal demands—still professing loyalty to the king, but denouncing his civil and military officials in the colonies as public enemies.

In the autumn of 1775, a plan was consummated for the invasion of Canada. It was supposed that the French inhabitants of that province would rejoice at an opportunity for successful resistance to an authority always galling to their national pride, and recently rendered more odious by the arbitrary provisions of the "Quebec act." The regular force at this time stationed in Canada was very small, and the opportunity seemed peculiarly favourable for a bold and unexpected offensive demonstration. Information had already been received by congress, that, with the opening of spring, the



British government "was to make a grand effort in this province; that numerous forces, arms, and munitions, would be poured into it, in order to attack the colonies in the back: an operation which, if not seasonably prevented, might have fatal consequences."

A detachment of three thousand men, from New York and New England, under command of General Schuyler, was ordered to penetrate Canada by the route of Lake Champlain, passing down the Sorel to the St. Lawrence. Brigadier-Generals Montgomery and Wooster held subordinate commands; but, upon the detention of Schuyler at Albany, by sickness, the direction of the expedition devolved upon the former.

General Carleton, governor of Canada, receiving intimation of the approach of the enemy, endeavoured to secure the entrance of the Sorel, by dispatching thither several armed vessels; but the Americans were in advance of the movement. Montgomery entered the river, and, landing his forces, laid siege to Fort St. John, which commanded the passage, and was garrisoned by a considerable force. Advance parties were sent, by land, into the neighbouring Canadian districts, to circulate a proclamation of the Americans, setting forth the object of the invasion, and calling upon the inhabitants to join in driving the British garrisons from the country.

Many, accordingly, enlisted, and the scouting parties were generally received with kindness and hospitality. Arms and provisions were also furnished by the Canadians. Colonel Ethan Allen and Major Brown, in command of one of these advanced detachments, undertook the bold enterprise of an assault upon Montreal. Brown was unable to pass the river in time to cooperate with Allen, and the latter, at the head of a very small party, was overpowered by a superior force, under command of Governor Carleton. He was sent to England in irons.

Carleton next endeavoured to relieve Fort St. John, but, on his way thither, he met with so warm a reception from troops posted upon the river-bank, that a retreat was ordered. The fort surrendered on the 3d of November. A number of pieces of artillery fell into the hands of the Americans, and a considerable supply of shells and balls, but the provisions and powder of the garrison were nearly spent.

Upon the approach of the invading forces, Carleton fled from Montreal, which was untenable against a superior force, and Montgomery entered the city, without opposition, on the 13th. He took great

pains to conciliate the inhabitants, and succeeded in raising a body of volunteers to supply, in some measure, the diminution of his forces, by the return home of those whose term of service had expired. A necessary supply of warm clothing was also procured to protect the troops from the severity of the approaching winter. The establishment of garrisons at the captured posts, together with the defection alluded to, had reduced the effective force of the invaders to about three hundred men; but, with this handful of troops, Montgomery commenced his march towards Quebec, exposed to the rigours of a Canadian winter.

---

## CHAPTER X.

ARNOLD'S EXPEDITION AGAINST QUEBEC: PASSAGE OF THE WILDERNESS: FAILURE OF PROVISIONS: DEFECTION OF ENOS, WITH HIS COMMAND: ARRIVAL AT THE CANADIAN SETTLEMENTS: PROCLAMATIONS: ARNOLD AT THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM: UNION WITH MONTGOMERY: ATTACK ON QUEBEC: DEATH OF MONTGOMERY: MORGAN'S RIFLE CORPS. AMERICAN FORCES DRAWN OFF.

IN accordance with the plan of the campaign, while Montgomery seized upon Montreal, Quebec was to be attacked from a most unexpected quarter. Fourteen companies, amounting to about eleven hundred men, were put under command of Colonel Arnold, in the month of September, with instructions to force a passage through the wilderness, by proceeding up the Kennebec river, in Maine, thence across the mountains to the head waters of the Chaudiere, and down that stream to its entry into the St. Lawrence, near Quebec.

To estimate the difficulties of such an undertaking, it must be considered that the whole route lay through an uninhabited country; that every natural obstacle of a rough, uncultivated region, must be overcome; that no provisions could be procured on the way; and that all supplies, arms, and camp furniture, must be transported by hand around the *portages*, or unnavigable places on the rivers, and over the highlands to be passed before reaching the Chaudiere.

As the detachment approached the sources of the Kennebec, the

supply of provisions was nearly exhausted. The soldiers, worn out by exposure, hardship, and toil, and compelled to resort to crude and unnatural aliment, suffered much from sickness. Colonel Enos, being in command of one division of the army, was ordered to select the sick and unserviceable, who were to be sent back to Boston. This officer accordingly withdrew his entire command—a species of desertion, which was afterwards excused upon a trial by court-martial, on the ground that provision for the sustenance of the whole body could not by possibility have been procured.

Before reaching the Chaudiere, the scant remains of food were divided among the soldiers, and, at a distance of thirty miles from any settlement, the whole store was exhausted. A small scouting party, led by Arnold in person, succeeded in procuring a sufficient quantity of provision to recruit the strength of their companions, and enable them to continue their march. Upon reaching the Canadian settlements, after more than a month spent in the wilderness, Arnold issued proclamations, drawn up by the commander-in-chief of the American army, disclaiming all hostile intent towards the people of Canada, and exhorting them to join as brothers in a cause of common interest.

The Americans were hospitably received and entertained; and, pursuing their march, they arrived, on the 9th of November, at Point Levy, nearly opposite the Canadian capital, on the right bank of the St. Lawrence. Unfortunately for the success of the expedition, no boats could be procured for the transportation of the army across the river.

“It is easy to imagine the stupor of surprise which seized the inhabitants of Quebec, at the apparition of these troops. They could not comprehend by what way, or in what mode, they had transported themselves into this region. This enterprise appeared to them not merely marvellous, but miraculous; and if Arnold, in this first moment, had been able to cross the river, and fall upon Quebec, he would have taken it without difficulty.”\*

Opportunity was given, by the delay thus occasioned, for strengthening the defences, and for organizing the citizen-soldiery. On the night of the 13th of November, Arnold crossed the river, and ascended the heights at the spot memorable as the scene of the decisive engagement between the French and English in the late war. The American general had hoped to come upon the city by surprise, but

\* Otis' Botta.

raising a body  
of his  
service had ex-  
so procured to  
g winter. The  
gether with the  
of the invaders  
of troops, Mont-  
ed to the rigours

ASSAGE OF THE  
CTION OF ENOS,  
NADIAN SET-  
THE HEIGHTS  
Y: ATTACK  
MORGAN'S  
AWN OFF.

while Montgomery  
from a most unex-  
g to about eleven  
nel Arnold, in the  
a passage through  
ec river, in Maine,  
f the Chaudiere, and  
nce, near Québec.  
rtaking, it must be  
nhabited country;  
ated region, must be  
ed on the way; and  
t be transported by  
s on the rivers, and  
the Chaudiere.  
f the Kennebec, the

he ascertained, upon a nearer approach, that the garrison was under arms and on the alert. His own ardent feelings impelled him to an immediate assault, but he abandoned the rash design upon consideration of the unserviceable condition of the arms of his troops, and their very scanty stock of ammunition. He drew off his forces, and retired to Point au Tremble, twenty miles from the city, there to await the arrival of Montgomery.

The two detachments met on the 1st of December. United, they formed a body of less than one thousand men, but with these the commanding officer determined to attack the capital. Carleton had, in the mean time, made his way to the anticipated scene of conflict, and so disposed his available force of regulars and of the provincial militia, as to constitute an adequate garrison. Arriving at Quebec, on the 5th, Montgomery summoned the city to surrender, but the demand was treated with contempt, and the bearer of the flag was fired upon. For several days, the general then attempted to produce an impression by playing upon the city with a few pieces of artillery, planted behind an embankment of ice.

The weather now became intensely cold, and frequent and heavy falls of snow added to the discomfort and suffering of the invaders. The small-pox, moreover, broke out among them, and spread, in spite of all practicable precautions. Every day the chances of success were diminishing, and it was decided to assault the city without further delay. The little army, in two divisions, led by Montgomery and Arnold, made the attack before day-light, on the 31st of December. The garrison had obtained intimation of the design, and preparations were completed for the reception of the enemy. Montgomery was killed, at the first discharge of artillery, and his division fell back. Arnold entered the city from the opposite quarter, marching at the head of his troops. Upon approaching a barricade, defended by two pieces of artillery, he received a severe wound in the leg from a musket-ball, which entirely disabled him. The barricade was forced by the exertions of the intrepid and active Morgan, commander of the rifle corps; but further defences appeared, well guarded. A heavy fire, opened upon their front and rear, compelled the little band of assailants to disperse, and seek shelter in the buildings. Some three hundred of them fell into the hands of the enemy. The remainder of the army of invasion was drawn off, and encamped a few miles from the city.

WA  
R  
I  
  
T  
in the  
positi  
minis  
Believ  
passe  
conten  
force  
United  
sevent  
The w  
Canada  
The  
interco  
ants we  
under t  
ican cre  
on boar  
eloquent  
jority in  
was conf  
récalled.  
manded  
the rebel  
The co  
most imp  
forces, by  
the troops

## CHAPTER XI.

WARLIKE PREPARATIONS IN ENGLAND.—GERMAN MERCENARIES.—PROCEEDINGS OF CONGRESS: ENLISTMENTS: ISSUE OF BILLS: DEFENCES IN NEW YORK.—CONDITION OF THE BRITISH IN BOSTON.—OCCUPATION OF DORCHESTER HEIGHTS.—EVACUATION OF THE CITY.—HOPKINS' CRUISE AMONG THE BAHAMAS.—AFFAIRS AT THE SOUTH.—ATTACK UPON CHARLESTON.—RETREAT OF THE AMERICAN TROOPS FROM CANADA.

THE state of feeling in England at the aspect of American affairs, in the autumn of 1775, was one of mingled mortification, at the bold position taken and maintained by the colonies, and discontent with a ministry which had "done too much to irritate, too little to subdue." Believing that the time for the adoption of conciliatory policy had passed, the government treated the late petition of congress with contempt, and hastened forward measures for increasing the regular force in America. Enlistments were encouraged throughout the United Kingdom, and, by arrangement with the German princes, seventeen thousand mercenaries were engaged to serve in America. The whole force expected to be raised, including those enlisted in Canada, was, numerically, over fifty thousand.

The colonies were proclaimed as being in a state of rebellion; intercourse with them was forbidden, and the effects of the inhabitants were declared liable to seizure. In the case of vessels captured under this act, an infamous provision was added, by which the American crews were made liable to impressment and compulsory service on board British armed vessels. Notwithstanding a vehement and eloquent opposition, these measures were sanctioned by a large majority in parliament. The chief command of the army in America was conferred upon General Howe, in place of Gage, who had been recalled. The brother of the former, Admiral Lord Howe, commanded the fleet destined to cooperate with the land forces against the rebellious colonies.

The continental congress, meanwhile, had not been idle. The most important proceedings related to the details of enlisting regular forces, by apportionment among the provinces. Great numbers of the troops stationed before Boston, unaccustomed to the hardships

and tedium of military life, had become completely disheartened; and, upon expiration of the short term of their enlistment, refused to continue longer with the army upon any promises, or any representations of necessity. To meet the increasing expenses of the war, an additional issue of three millions in bills of credit was resolved upon, redeemable, like the former, by instalments, payments to commence at the expiration of eight years.

Precautions were also taken, at the opening of the year 1776, for the defence of the city of New York, where the number and influence of the tories rendered dependence upon the local militia unsafe. Troops from New Jersey and Connecticut were introduced into the city, and the command was bestowed upon General Lee. Many acts of violence were committed at this time upon the persons and property of adherents to the royal cause.

At Boston, the British garrison suffered much hardship throughout the winter, from deficiency of fuel and provision. Many English vessels, freighted with stores, were taken by the colonial privateers, and others were lost on the coast. The army, encompassed by a superior force, was entirely unable to carry on any offensive operations against the enemy. As spring approached, it appeared necessary, to congress and to the officers of the continental army, that a decisive blow should be struck in this quarter, that the besieging forces might be free to act wherever occasion should require.

The heights of Dorchester commanded the city and harbour from the southward, and the attention of the commander-in-chief was directed to the occupation of that important position. On the night of March 4th, 1776, a force of about two thousand, men well provided with carts of fascines, &c., and all necessary working implements, was dispatched upon this service. A cannonade was kept up from batteries sufficiently near to throw shells into the city; and, favoured by the darkness of the night and the direction of the wind, the troops accomplished the important movement without discovery or suspicion. By day-light, when the British garrison first had information of the proceeding, substantial works had been already erected, and the business of intrenchment and fortification was going on with uninterrupted ardour.

A storm opportunely prevented the British general from crossing with his forces to attack the redoubt, and the delay thus incurred gave sufficient time for completing the intrenchments, and making all needful preparations for defence, and for a bombardment of the

city. Howe saw that his position was untenable, and avowed his determination to evacuate the city quietly, if undisturbed in his retreat. Some of the principal inhabitants of Boston waited upon General Washington, with representations of the condition of the city, and requests that he would comply with this proposal. His assent was obtained, and the whole British army, crowded on board of ships and transports which lay in the harbour, was allowed to set sail unmolested. The place of their destination was unknown to the Americans, and it was feared that a descent would be made upon some other portion of the coast. Fifteen hundred of the inhabitants of the city, who, having openly taken part with the loyalists, feared to remain after the evacuation, embarked with the British troops, leaving their property subject to seizure and confiscation.

The fleet sailed for Halifax, the condition of the troops being entirely incompatible with any immediate hostile demonstration. Washington entered the city with his army, on the 27th of March, and was received with great enthusiasm and rejoicing. The embarkation of the British troops had occupied nearly a fortnight, during which period, the inhabitants had suffered considerable injury from the depredations of the more lawless and disorderly, who wantonly destroyed great quantities of provisions, &c. The British artillery and munitions of war were abandoned to the Americans, whether by private agreement, as a condition upon which a peaceable evacuation was permitted, or because of insufficient means of transportation, does not distinctly appear. Two hundred and fifty pieces of artillery—mostly spiked—were secured at Boston and the neighbouring fortifications.

Ere this period, congress had commenced operations at sea. Two frigates, three corvettes, and a number of gun-sloops were fitted out and manned. With eight of these vessels, Commodore Hopkins sailed upon a cruise among the Bahamas, in the month of February. The special object was the seizure of munitions of war known to be stored there. At New Providence a seasonable supply of gun-powder, to the amount of one hundred and fifty kegs, was secured.

The southern colonies, meanwhile, were not exempt from the calamities of war. The coasts of Virginia were harassed by a force under Lord Dunmore, the former governor, who, at the commencement of the year, made an attack upon the thriving town of Norfolk. A portion of the place was burned by the attacking party, and the remainder was fired by its defenders when no longer tenable. In

North Carolina severe contests took place, in the month of February, between the provincials and loyalists.

It was supposed in England that if a strong force were once landed in the southern colonies, those of the inhabitants who favoured the royal cause would hasten to join it, and that a permanent stand might be effected in that quarter. In North Carolina, the tory interest was known to have many adherents. A considerable fleet, with more than two thousand soldiers on board, was, therefore, sent, under command of Sir Peter Parker, to seize upon the more important sea-ports. The squadron was joined by Sir Henry Clinton, who took command of the land forces: the city of Charleston was selected as the first point of attack.

Timely notice of these preparations had been obtained by the Americans, and a fort was erected on Sullivan's island to protect the harbour. General Lee was entrusted with the principal command. On the 28th of June, the British fleet entered the harbour, and commenced bombarding the fort. A small regiment, under Colonel Moultrie, was stationed at that important post. The fire was returned with great effect, and the plans of the admiral being thwarted by the grounding of several of his vessels, the attempt was abandoned. No landing was effected, and the fleet set sail for New York, the appointed rendezvous for the reinforcements ordered from England and the German states.

Every thing had been prepared at the city of Charleston to give the invaders a warm reception. Great numbers of the militia had been called in to increase the garrison, and such measures were taken for the defence of the place as time and opportunity permitted. The enemy's loss, during the cannonade, could not have been much less than two hundred; that of the garrison at the fort was very trifling.

In Canada, the American forces effected nothing. Reinforcements were repeatedly sent out to the camp, but when British forces began to pour into the country, the troops, after several disastrous attempts to retrieve their fortune, were drawn off, and retreated homeward by Lake Champlain. The loss of several valuable officers, of a great number of men, and a great expenditure of money—not continental bills, but hard cash—were the only results of the Canadian expedition, concerning which such sanguine expectations had been formed. The remnant of the army of invasion returned in miserable plight, nearly destitute, and, worse than all, utterly discouraged and dispirited.



## CHAPTER XII.

STATE OF FEELING IN THE COLONIES.—PAINE'S WRITINGS  
 --DEBATES IN CONGRESS.—THE DECLARATION OF INDE-  
 PENDENCE: ITS EFFECT UPON THE PEOPLE.—THE  
 BRITISH AT STATEN ISLAND.—PROCLAMATION  
 OF GENERAL AND OF ADMIRAL HOWE.

THE formation of independent systems of government in the separate colonies, familiarized the minds of the American people with the idea of a permanent disconnection with the British government. While the thought of state sovereignty was flattering to the pride of the provincials, it was evident that, without some established political connection, no great national object could be obtained. Long before the revolution, it is said that the chiefs and orators of the Iroquois, or Six Nations, advised the adoption, by the colonies, of a federal union similar to their own, proving, from their individual experience, the practicability of union for all purposes of common interest, without infringement of the rights of each distinct tribe.

In the winter of 1776, a work, entitled "*Common Sense*," written by Thomas Paine, an Englishman, residing in Pennsylvania, made its appearance. By shrewd reasoning, logical argument, and popular declamation, the author endeavoured to establish the practicability, and even necessity, of American independence, at the same time that he excited the feelings of the people, by a vivid representation of the disgrace and misery that must follow close upon submission to England. The book was extensively circulated, and exercised, beyond question, a most powerful influence.

The late action of parliament, in the employment of Hessian mercenaries to serve in America, and the enlistment of the Indian border tribes in favour of the royal cause, produced a storm of popular indignation. The petition of congress had been spurned with disdain; no measures but those of force had met with favour in England; and it was now plain that nothing was left to the colonies but an open declaration to the world of their determination to sunder for ever all ties with a government whose protection had only been extended for selfish ends.

"At this epoch," says an early writer, "America was found in a

strange situation, and actually unheard of till then. The war she had carried on with so much vigour, now, for more than a year, was directed against a king to whom she incessantly renewed her protestations of obedience; and the same men who committed all the acts of rebellion, would by no means be called rebels. In all the tribunals justice was still administered in the name of the king; and in the churches prayers were continually repeated for the preservation and happiness of that prince, whose authority was not only entirely rejected, but also fought against with incredible obstinacy."

The first step taken by congress in furtherance of the popular cause, was a recommendation to such of the colonies as had not already adopted a provisional, independent, civil government, to proceed to the establishment of "such governments as, according to the opinion of the representatives of the people, should be most conducive to the happiness of their constituents, and of America in general." This proposal was generally acted upon, and, in many instances, the congressional delegates were formally invested by the colonial assemblies with power to act upon the anticipated question.

A motion in favour of American independence was made in congress on the 7th of June, and, on the following day, was debated with great ability and eloquence. Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, who advocated the motion, and John Dickinson, of Pennsylvania, who argued in opposition, were the principal speakers. The decision of the question was postponed until July, that full opportunity might be given to the members to receive instructions from their constituents.

On the 4th of July, 1776, that memorable instrument, known as the "Declaration of Independence," was signed by delegates from the thirteen original colonies, thenceforth the United States of America. It was understood to have been principally drawn up by Thomas Jefferson, who, with John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Philip Livingston, had been appointed to prepare it, previous to the late adjournment.

The preamble commences: "When in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent regard to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation." Then follow a

declaration of rights, natural and political, a forcible recapitulation of wrongs inflicted by the British government, with a reference to the neglect or contempt with which all petitions for redress had been received, and, in conclusion, it is boldly asserted, "that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connexion between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved." The sense of personal responsibility felt by the fifty-five members who signed the document, is expressed in the closing words: "And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honour."

In all the principal cities, the intelligence of this act of congress was received with the most extravagant expressions of joy. The exultation of the army was boundless, and the populace, mad with excitement, celebrated the event with noisy demonstrations. Royal statues and insignia were every where thrown down and destroyed. At New York, an image of George III., formed, by a felicitous propriety, of lead, was converted into musket-balls. The condition of all acknowledged or suspected tories was lamentable, and to correct and moderate the excesses committed upon this class of inhabitants, congress took the matter in hand, instituting committees to exert a constraining power over those who were suspected of favouring the enemy. "The most obnoxious tories had already emigrated; and, for the present, the new governments contented themselves with admonitions, fines, recognizances to keep the peace, and prohibitions to go beyond certain limits."\*

The recommencement of hostilities was followed by a long succession of most disheartening reverses. The British forces had already effected a landing upon Staten Island, where they encamped and opened communications with the loyalists in the adjoining provinces. Strengthened by arrivals from England, and by the return northward of the troops embarked under Sir Peter Parker, for the southern expedition, to a force of more than twenty thousand men, General Howe prepared for a descent upon New York. An attempt to open negotiations with congress, and with the commander-in-chief of the American army, had previously failed, from the refusal of the British officials to treat otherwise than as with private individuals.

\* Hildreth.

The result of an interview, afterwards brought about, between General and Admiral Howe, and deputies commissioned by congress, was only to convince the former that no terms would be listened to which they were empowered to grant.

The two brothers Howe were commissioned by the king to grant discretionary pardon to all in the colonies who would consent to renew their allegiance. Proclamations were issued in accordance with this commission, calling upon all loyal subjects to separate themselves from the rebels, and representing to the malcontents the desperate condition to which further resistance must reduce them, while, on the other hand, submission would ensure present safety, and the royal promise for a future redress of all grievances.

---

### CHAPTER XIII.

LANDING OF THE BRITISH ON LONG ISLAND.—BATTLE OF BROOKLYN.—THE AMERICAN FORCES DRIVEN FROM LONG ISLAND.—OCCUPATION OF NEW YORK BY THE BRITISH.—WASHINGTON'S ENCAMPMENT AT HARLEM HEIGHTS: AT WHITE PLAINS.—STORMING OF FORT WASHINGTON.—THE RETREAT THROUGH NEW JERSEY.—CAPTURE OF GENERAL LEE.—CONDITION OF PRISONERS.—LAKE CHAMPLAIN: DESTRUCTION OF THE AMERICAN VESSELS.—GENEROUSITY OF CARLETON.—RHODE ISLAND SEIZED BY THE BRITISH.

ANTICIPATING an attack by way of Long Island, General Washington posted a force of about nine thousand men, under General Putnam, at Brooklyn. The approach to the American camp from the point where the British were expected to land, was by four roads, two leading over the intervening hills, and the others, less direct, deviating in opposite directions, one along the western shore, the other eastward. These avenues, owing to some misapprehension or bad management, were insufficiently guarded.

The British having landed on the 22d of August (1776), commenced their march towards Brooklyn, on the night of the 26th. Upon the first intelligence of their approach, two divisions of the

about, between Gen-  
eration by congress,  
would be listened to

y the king to grant  
o would consent to  
sued in accordance  
subjects to separate  
the malcontents the  
must reduce them,  
sure present safety,  
grievances.

I.

AND.—BATTLE OF  
GIVEN FROM LONG  
Y THE BRITISH.  
RLEM HEIGHTS:  
RT WASHING-  
JERSEY.—  
DITION OF  
DESTRUC-  
.—GEN-  
ISLAND  
I.

land, General Wash-  
men, under General  
American camp from  
o land, was by four  
and the others, less  
g the western shore.  
ome misapprehension  
d.

August (1776), com-  
e night of the 26th  
two divisions of the



The ... afterwards brought about, between Gen-  
 ... Howe; and deputies commissioned by congress,  
 ... the former that no terms would be listened to  
 ... empowered to grant.

... others Howe were commissioned by the king to grant  
 ... pardon, to all in the colonies who would consent to  
 ... Proclamations were issued in accordance  
 ... this commission, calling upon all loyal subjects to separate  
 ... from the rebels, and representing to the malcontents the  
 desperate condition to which further resistance must reduce them,  
 while, on the other hand, submission would ensure present safety,  
 and the royal promise for a future redress of all grievances.

## CHAPTER XIII.

LANDING OF THE BRITISH ON LONG ISLAND.—BATTLE OF  
 BROOKLYN.—THE AMERICAN FORCES DRIVEN FROM LONG  
 ISLAND.—OCCUPATION OF NEW YORK BY THE BRITISH.  
 —WASHINGTON'S ENCAMPMENT AT HARLEM HEIGHTS.  
 AT WHITE PLAINS.—STORMING OF FORT WASHING-  
 TON.—THE RETREAT THROUGH NEW JERSEY.—  
 CAPTURE OF GENERAL LEE.—CONDITION OF  
 PRISONERS.—LAKE CHARLAIN: DESTRU-  
 CTION OF THE AMERICAN VESSELS.—GEN-  
 ERAL ... RHODE ISLAND  
 ... BY THE BRITISH.

ANTICIPATING the success of Long Island, General Wash-  
 ington posted a force of about ... men, under General  
 Putnam, at Brooklyn. The approach of the American camp from  
 the point where the British were expected to land, was by four  
 roads, two leading over the intervening hills, and the others, less  
 direct, deviating in opposite directions, one along the western shore  
 the other eastward. These avenues, owing to some misapprehension  
 or bad management, were insufficiently guarded.

The British having landed on the 22d of August (1776), com-  
 menced their march towards Brooklyn, on the night of the 26th.  
 Upon the first intelligence of their approach, two divisions of the

between Gen-  
by congress,  
be listened to

king to gran-  
d consent to  
in accordance  
to separate  
contents the  
at reduce them,  
present safety,  
vances.

D.—BATTLE OF  
EN FROM LONG  
THE BRITISH.  
THE HEIGHTS.  
WASHINGTON  
NEW JERSEY.—  
DESTRUCTION OF  
THE BRITISH  
FLEET AT  
RED BANK

d, General Wash-  
ton, under Genera  
American camp from  
and, was by four  
and the others, less  
the western shore  
the misapprehension

August (1776), occu-  
pied the night of the 20th  
two divisions of the



n  
c  
c  
T  
e  
p  
sh  
on  
in  
re  
lo  
ab  
aw  
of  
the  
to  
acc  
tag  
det  
fron  
F  
pass  
rive  
The  
Am  
by  
and  
after



American army, under Sullivan and Stirling, were dispatched to repel the advance over the hills and by the western road. The opposing forces were already engaged, when the Americans were thrown into confusion by an attack in the rear—Clinton, with the most efficient portion of his troops, having made a detour for that purpose, by the unguarded eastern approach. Stirling's division, by hard fighting, mostly regained the camp, but that of Sullivan was destroyed or compelled to surrender. Both these generals were made prisoners, together with not far from one thousand of their men. A heavy loss was also sustained in killed and wounded.

On the night of the 29th, the American troops effected a retreat across the East river, to New York, leaving the enemy in possession of Long Island. The main force of the continentals was now encamped at the heights of Harlem, or within the city of New York. The British had control of the surrounding waters, the defences erected upon the Hudson having proved insufficient to prevent a passage up the river. Under protection of a heavy fire from the shipping, a landing upon the island was effected by General Howe on the 15th of September. The troops drawn up in opposition, fled in the most cowardly manner, and an evacuation of the city was rendered absolutely necessary. The Americans sustained severe loss in artillery and stores, which, upon their hasty retreat, were abandoned to the enemy.

Washington's forces, securely posted upon the heights of Harlem, awaited the movements of the British. The latter kept possession of the North river, and made advances down the northern shore of the Sound. It became necessary to occupy a position further north, to avoid being cut off from supplies, and a new camp was formed, accordingly, at White Plains. The enemy gained a further advantage in a partial engagement on the 28th of October, in which a detachment of between one and two thousand Americans was driven from its position near the main camp, with great loss.

Forts Washington and Lee, which were intended to command the passage of the Hudson, being situated upon opposite banks of the river, a few miles above New York, were the next objects of attack. They had been strongly garrisoned, when the main body of the American army moved northward. The first of these was taken by storm, not without severe loss on the part of the assailants, and two thousand prisoners were secured. Fort Lee was soon after hastily evacuated; the artillery of both strongholds, to-

gether with a great amount of valuable stores, was lost to the Americans.

This was in the middle of November: the continental army, reduced by these losses, by desertion, and by the expiration of the terms of enlistment, to between three and four thousand men, was driven from post to post in New Jersey. Slowly retiring before a greatly superior force, Washington occupied in succession the towns of Newark, Brunswick, Princeton, Sterling, and Trenton. His troops, disheartened by defeat, and worn out by marching and exposure, were in a condition of miserable destitution, while the pursuers were well supplied with the necessaries and conveniences of a campaign.

Lord Cornwallis, with an overwhelming force, continued to press upon the retreating army, and, on the 2d of December, Washington transported his troops across the Delaware, taking the usual precautions to arrest the progress of the pursuers by the destruction of bridges and the removal of boats. The British took possession of Trenton and the adjoining country, but neglected to push their advantage by an immediate passage of the river.

Washington, anxious to recruit his forces, had issued orders to other divisions of the army to join him with all expedition. General Lee, from a spirit of insubordination or self-sufficiency, was dilatory in obeying the order. Avoiding the British army, by a detour, he occupied the highlands at the westward, apparently in hopes of effecting some bold manœuvre on his own account. Exposing himself carelessly, with an insufficient guard, he was betrayed by Tories, and fell into the hands of the enemy. The refusal of the British authorities to consider him a prisoner of war, on the ground that, having been an officer in the English service, he was only to be looked upon as a traitor, led to retaliation upon prisoners in the hands of the Americans. Exchanges were impeded, and a sense of mutual injury led to lamentable results.

Of the American prisoners in New York, it is said that, "they were shut up in churches, and in other places, exposed to all the inclemencies of the air. They were not allowed sufficient nourishment; their fare was scanty, even of coarse bread, and certain ailments which excited disgust. The sick were confined with the healthy, both equally a prey to the most shocking defect of cleanliness. \* \* A confined and impure air engendered mortal diseases more than fifteen hundred of these unfortunate men perished in a

few weeks." Lee was afterwards exchanged for General Prescott, who was surprised and captured at his quarters, on Rhode Island, by a small party of Americans.

During the autumn of 1776, and the early portion of the ensuing winter, fortune seemed to frown upon the American cause in every quarter. At the north, the possession of Lake Champlain was an object of eager contention. Both parties busied themselves in the construction of vessels, for which the British, under Carleton, had far greater facilities than the Americans. The little squadron of the latter, commanded by Arnold, was defeated on the 6th and 7th of October. One of the vessels was taken, and the others were destroyed, to prevent their falling into the hands of the enemy. The Americans, however, still held Fort Ticonderoga.

The British, having possession of the lake, made no further attempt upon the American fortifications, but mostly retired to Montreal, a garrison being left at Isle au Noix. It is pleasing to revert to acts of kindness and generosity in the midst of scenes calculated to arouse every bad passion in the minds of men. Such are recorded of Carleton, of whom it is said, that "prior to his retreat, from the singular courtesy and humanity of his character, he sent to their homes the American officers who had fallen into his power, administering generously to all their wants. He exercised the same humanity towards the common soldiers. The greater part were almost naked: he caused them to be completely clothed, and set them at liberty, after having taken their oath that they would not serve against the armies of the king."—(Bolla.)

Early in December, the British secured another important position in New England. A fleet, under Sir Peter Parker, with large forces of English and Hessians, commanded by General Clinton, entered Narragansett Bay. The island of Rhode Island, with those of Conanicut and Prudence, were occupied without resistance; the excellent harbour of Newport afforded admirable facilities for future operations by sea; and, as the entrance to the bay was commanded, the American squadron, under Commodore Hopkins, together with a number of private armed vessels, was prevented from putting to sea, and rendered, for the time, useless.

So dark were the prospects of the patriots, at this crisis, that many among the most sanguine were discouraged; and, of the wavering, and of those who, at heart, favoured the royal cause, great numbers availed themselves of the offers proclaimed by the Howes, by ac-

knowledging allegiance to the king, and the acceptance of a British protection. Allen and Galloway, former members of the continental congress, from Pennsylvania, were among the number of those who thus avowed their disapproval of the revolution, or their distrust in the ability of its advocates to carry out the great design.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

CONGRESS AT BALTIMORE.—ARMY ORGANIZATION.—POWERS CONFERRER UPON WASHINGTON.—PASSAGE OF THE DELAWARE, AND RECOVERY OF TRENTON.—BATTLE OF PRINCETON.—END OF THE CAMPAIGN.—MARAUDING PARTIES.—NEGOTIATION WITH EUROPEAN POWERS.—FOREIGN OFFICERS IN THE AMERICAN SERVICE.

CONGRESS, being in session at Philadelphia when the continental army was driven across the Delaware, found itself in too dangerous proximity to the British army, and an adjournment to Baltimore speedily followed the establishment of the latter at Trenton. The details of military organization necessarily occupied almost the undivided attention of this body. The straits to which the continental army was reduced, by the diminution of its numbers, consequent upon the expiration of terms of enlistment, rendered the establishment of a more permanent force a matter of pressing necessity. This measure had, all along, been vehemently urged by Washington, who had fully experienced the difficulty of preserving discipline in an army whose materials were subject to constant change. Provision, therefore, was made for the enlistment, by apportionment among the provinces, of troops to serve during the war, or for a period of three years. The first, in addition to a present bounty in money, were to receive each one hundred acres of public land on retiring from service.

Absolute discretionary powers were, at the same time, bestowed upon the commander-in-chief, for the six months succeeding, "to call into service the militia of the several states; to form such magazines of provisions, and in such places as he should think proper; to displace and appoint all officers under the rank of brigadier-general,

and to fill up all vacancies in every other department in the American armies; to take, wherever he might be, whatever he might want for the use of the army, if the inhabitants would not sell it, allowing a reasonable price for the same; to arrest and confine persons who refused to take the continental currency, or were otherwise disaffected to the American cause; returning to the states of which they were citizens their names and the nature of their offences, with the proofs to substantiate them." Very large additional issues of paper money had been made during the session, and the most stringent regulations soon followed to enforce its receipt.

Never were the powers of a dictator more worthily bestowed than in this instance. General Washington exhibited, in the melancholy state of affairs consequent upon the capture of New York, an energy corresponding to the requirements of his position. The army had been reinforced by the arrival of Lee's division, under Sullivan, and by the militia from the adjoining counties. Thus strengthened, he determined to enter at once upon offensive operations.

The enemy's force being widely extended along the left bank of the Delaware, a division of fifteen hundred men, mostly Hessians, under Ralle, constituted the entire army of occupation at Trenton. On the night of December 25th, Washington crossed the river, with twenty-five hundred men, nine miles above the city. The cold was severe, and the stream being blocked with floating ice, nearly the whole night was consumed in the business of transportation.

At four o'clock, on the following morning, the army was put in motion, in two divisions—one following the river, the other proceeding by the Pennington road, further to the left. Although it proved impracticable, from the state of the roads, and the difficulty of a night march—rendered doubly arduous by an inclement wintry storm—to arrive before day, the surprise was no less complete. The Hessians were overpowered, and driven in on all sides; their retreat was cut off in the direction of Princeton; their commander was slain; and two-thirds of the whole force surrendered at discretion. The remainder escaped by the Bordentown road. The Americans recrossed the river, with their prisoners, having sustained but a trifling loss—only about ten, in killed and wounded.

A few days subsequent, Washington having again occupied Trenton, a powerful army, under Cornwallis, approached the town from the direction of Princeton. One-half of the American forces were undisciplined militia, and all were ill prepared for the hardships of a

of a British  
e continental  
of those who  
eir distrust in  
n.

ON.—POWERS  
F THE DELA-  
OF PRINCE-  
G PARTIES  
RS.—FOR-  
ERVICE.

a the continental  
in too dangerous  
ent to Baltimore  
at Trenton. The  
d almost the un-  
ch the continental  
nbers, consequent  
ered the establish-  
pressing necessity.  
ed by Washington,  
yving discipline in  
ant change. Pro-  
by apportionment  
the war, or for a  
a present bounty  
eres of public land

ame time, bestowed  
succeeding, "to call  
orm such magazines  
ink proper; to dis-  
f brigadier-general,

winter campaign. A general engagement would have been hazardous in the extreme, and, at a council of the American officers, it was concluded to make an attempt at turning the enemies' flank. Precautions were taken to leave the impression that active preparations were in process for intrenchment, while the main army (on the night of January 2d, 1777,) silently defiled upon the Allentown road, towards Princeton.

At the latter place, three British regiments, left in the rear by Cornwallis, were encountered. One of these, after some hard fighting, pushed on towards Trenton: the other two, having sustained considerable loss, retreated to Brunswick. Some three hundred prisoners were taken by the Americans.

The British, at Trenton, deceived by the continuance through the night of the patrol within the American lines, and by the camp-fires, which had been replenished before the march commenced, had no intimation of the state of affairs until they heard the sound of artillery in their rear. Cornwallis immediately marched for Brunswick to protect his military stores at that place, and Washington, still anxious to avoid a general engagement, moved towards Morristown, where he established the army in winter-quarters.

Nearly the whole of New Jersey was thus recovered from the enemy, and detachments were quartered at different points to retain possession. Through the remainder of the winter and spring, neither army was engaged in any general military operation. The British army was stationed at Amboy and Brunswick, suffering no small inconvenience from failure of provisions. Frightful outrages were committed by small marauding parties of soldiery. The Hessians, in particular, were stigmatized as monsters of cruelty. A bloody retaliation was not slow to follow, and many of the loyalists of New Jersey, even such as had held aloof from all share in political controversy, and could be accused of no overt act of opposition to the patriots, too often were compelled to suffer for wrongs in which they had no share.

While the national forces were thus in comparative repose, the calamities of a state of war were still widely felt. Privateers scoured the sea, and their crews and commanders, growing bolder by experience, pushed their adventures in waters where, at first, it was deemed rashness to intrude. Prizes taken by American vessels were disposed of without trouble in France. Old national feelings of jealousy and antipathy caused the government of that

country to wink at irregularities which operated only to the injury of her rival.

Congress had not failed, ere this, to commission ambassadors to various European courts, to solicit political aid and acknowledgment of the independence of the states. Those who filled this important office at the court of France, were Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee. The favour with which the American claims were regarded in that quarter was manifest, and had been substantially shown, even before the declaration of independence, by an ingenious and secret operation for furnishing military supplies to the colonies. These had been forwarded to islands in the West Indies, as by private adventure, thence to be dispatched for the use of the colonies. France, however, was not as yet prepared to enter into open controversy with England, by an acknowledgment of the independent existence of the American republic.

Many military officers, from France and other European nations, were anxious to procure commissions in the American service. Many were sent over through the agency of Mr. Deane, in the expectation of receiving high commissions. Some of these proved worthy of the confidence placed in them, particularly those employed in the engineer department; others, although doubtless men of capacity and competent military education, were entirely unfitted to deal with a soldiery of the character of the continental army. Among those whose services were accepted, the most celebrated, were the German Baron de Kalb, the Polish officers Kosciusko and Palaski, and the young Marquis de la Fayette. The latter came over from France at his own expense, and volunteered to serve without pay. He was made major-general, and became the intimate friend and companion of the commander-in-chief.

Gov. TRUMBULL.—Pre-eminent in the roll of our patriots and statesmen stands the name of *Jonathan Trumbull*. His position as governor of the state during the war, united with that rare combination of powers which made him second only to Washington in executive abilities, not second even to him in the maturity of his wisdom and the depth of his moral nature, and greatly his superior in intellectual culture, constituted him the principal character in our colony and state during the period occupied by his administration. It is true of Trumbull, as of Washington, that the perfect symmetry of his character has induced many to lose sight of the vast scale on which it was constructed, and the elevation with which it towers above the level of other public men of that day. The term "Brother Jonathan" was frequently applied by Washington to Governor Trumbull. When he wanted honest counsel and wise, he would say, "Let us consult Brother Jonathan." Such was the origin of the name as applied to the nation.—*Hollister's History of Connecticut*.

## CHAPTER XV.

EXPEDITIONS AGAINST PEEKSKILL AND DANBURY.—BRITISH PLAN OF CAMPAIGN.—HOWE'S DEPARTURE FROM NEW YORK.—BURGOYNE'S ARMY: HIS PROCLAMATION.—SIEGE OF TICONDEROGA.—RETREAT OF ST. CLAIR.—BURGOYNE ON THE HUDSON.—SIEGE OF FORT SCHUYLER.—BATTLE OF BENNINGTON.—INDIAN WARFARE.

THE spring of 1777 passed by without any important operation on the part of either of the main contending armies. The English succeeded in destroying large quantities of American stores at Peekskill, on the Hudson, and at Danbury, in the western part of Connecticut. The latter expedition was intrusted to governor, then General Tryon, with a detachment of no less than two thousand men. His retreat was not accomplished without loss, the militia of the vicinity, under Arnold and Wooster, harassing him by repeated attacks. Wooster received a fatal wound in one of these encounters. The bravery of Arnold, on this occasion, was highly commended, and rewarded by promotion.

On the other hand, a small force from Connecticut, crossing over to Long Island, proceeded to Sag-harbour, destroyed British stores and vessels, and took nearly a hundred prisoners.

The important events of the summer and autumn, transpiring in different portions of the country, and connected with distinct military operations, must be examined without reference to the date of their occurrence. The British plan of campaign was, that Howe's army should engage the attention of the main body of the continentals, threatening Philadelphia and other important towns in the middle states, while a powerful force, under Burgoyne, was to invade New England, seizing and occupying the military posts on Champlain and the Hudson, effecting a junction with the forces at New York, and cutting off communication between the north and south.

Howe, after various manœuvres, intended to bring about a general engagement—the result of which could hardly be doubtful, considering the difference in numbers and equipments between the opposing forces—crossed over to Staten Island, embarked with six-



teen thousand men, and made sail, in the month of July, without any intimation of his destination having transpired.

In Canada, Burgoyne, who had received the chief command of the army of the north, commenced preparations in May. He was enabled to marshal a fine army of seven thousand regulars, British and Germans, an artillery corps of five hundred, and seven hundred Canadians, destined for the various duties of rangers, woodmen, &c. In addition to this, a grand meeting of the Iroquois Indians was called, and their services were secured by additional promises of reward and protection. A flaming proclamation was next issued, for the encouragement of the New England loyalists, and the intimidation of the rebels. He promised protection to those who should "quietly pursue their occupations," and full pay for all that should be furnished for the army; the contumacious were threatened with the "thousands of Indians that were under his direction," and whose fury was to be let loose upon those who should take part against the king.

Passing the lake, Burgoyne laid siege to Ticonderoga, at the commencement of the month of July. The garrison, under St. Clair, was entirely insufficient for the protection of the fort. It numbered, including militia, about three thousand men, but the works were very extensive, and the troops were ill provided with arms. A retreat was effected on the night of the 5th, but the Americans were unable to gain sufficient time upon the enemy. The baggage and stores were dispatched up Wood Creek, towards Skeenesborough, now Whitehall, which place was appointed for general rendezvous. A bridge and other obstructions were soon removed by the British, and free passage was opened to the creek. The boats containing the stores were pursued and captured.

The army, retreating in the same direction by land, was hotly pursued by a detachment of the enemy, under General Fraser. The rear division was overtaken, on the 7th of July, and completely routed. The main body, led by St. Clair, reached General Schuyler's head-quarters, at Fort Edward, on the Hudson river, after a toilsome march over rough roads through the wilderness.

Notwithstanding every effort made to delay and obstruct the advance of the enemy, by blocking up the forest-roads, and choking the channel of the narrow creek which connects with the southern extremity of Lake Champlain, Burgoyne penetrated to the Hudson, before the close of the month. Evacuating Fort Edward, on the

Y.—BRITISH  
NEW YORK.  
—SIEGE OF  
BURGOYNE  
TYLER.—  
BFARE.

ortant operation  
es. The English  
n stores at Peek-  
ern part of Con-  
o governor, then  
an two thousand  
loss, the militia of  
g him by repeated  
f these encounters  
highly commended,

icut, crossing over  
oyed British stores

umn, transpiring in  
with distinct mili-  
ence to the date of  
n was, that Howe's  
dy of the continent-  
rtant towns in the  
oyne, was to invade  
ary posts on Cham-  
h the forces at New  
he north and south.  
bring about a gen-  
hardly be doubtful,  
pments between the  
embarked with six-

approach of the British, General Schuyler retreated to Saratoga, thence to Stillwater, and, the enemy continuing to press onward, he finally encamped near the mouth of the Mohawk.

These disasters, at the north, were popularly attributed to incompetency on the part of the commanding officers, who were accordingly superseded by Generals Gates, Arnold, and Lincoln. Reinforcements, including the body of riflemen, under the redoubted Morgan, were also ordered, in all haste, to the seat of war at the north.

Before proceeding down the river, Burgoyne was desirous of collecting stores and provisions at his camp on the Hudson, by the route laid open from the head of Lake Champlain. Meanwhile, two excursions were planned and attempted at the west and east. General Barry St. Leger, with several companies of regulars, and a large body of Indians, under command of Joseph Brant, early in August, besieged Fort Schuyler, an important military post, situated near the head-waters of the Mohawk. General Herkimer, with nearly a thousand of the provincial militia, endeavoured to relieve the fort, but fell into an ambuscade prepared by Brant with his followers and an English detachment. A bloody but indecisive engagement ensued, known as the "battle of Oriskany." Herkimer was killed, together with several hundred of his followers. The enemy's loss was probably about the same; and, although no communication was opened with the fort, the commandant, Willett, was enabled to make a sally, and to plunder the British encampment of stores and provisions.

A detachment, principally Hessians, under Colonel Baum, was also dispatched by Burgoyne, to procure cattle and other plunder in the eastern settlements. The seizure of stores accumulated at Bennington, was the special object of the expedition. Colonel Stark, having command of the militia in that quarter, learning the approach of the enemy, made every effort to prepare for resistance.

Baum, finding himself opposed by a superior force, halted near the town, and commenced throwing up intrenchments. On the 16th of August, he was attacked, and utterly defeated by the provincials. Reinforcements arrived simultaneously on either side—Colonel Warner making his appearance with a regiment of continental troops, from Manchester, at the same time that a strong force, under Colonel Breyman, sent to support Baum's division, was engaged with the American militia. The Americans maintained their advantage; the British effected a retreat at nightfall, having sustained

a loss of about eight hundred in killed and prisoners. A most seasonable supply of arms and artillery fell into the hands of the provincials. Of the latter, only about sixty were killed or wounded.

A few days later, Arnold relieved Fort Schuyler, and seized upon the tents and stores of the besieging army, abandoned in hasty retreat. Many of the Iroquois allies of the English became disheartened at these reverses, and drew off. Generally, however, they were proof against the efforts of agents in behalf of the Americans to secure their services, or promises of neutrality. Outrages committed by the savages on the march, their cruelty to prisoners, and their ferocious manner of warfare, excited universal indignation against Burgoyne, who was considered responsible for all the enormities committed. We are informed that he used what influence he possessed over the chiefs, to induce conformity with the rules of civilized warfare; but what would previous exhortation or threats avail, in the midst of the dangers and excitement of actual conflict? The check given to the British at Bennington and Fort Schuyler, gave great encouragement to the Americans; and it was now seen that the provincial militia, under brave and energetic commanders, was a more effective force than it had generally been considered.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

BATTLES AT BEHMUS' HEIGHTS.—BURGOYNE'S RETREAT TO SARATOGA: HIS SURRENDER.—DETENTION OF PRISONERS.—EXPEDITION FROM NEW YORK UP THE HUDSON.—HOWE'S MARCH UPON PHILADELPHIA.—BATTLE AT BRANDYWINE CREEK.—BRITISH OCCUPATION OF PHILADELPHIA.—BATTLE OF GERMANTOWN.—REDUCTION OF FORTS MIFFLIN AND MERCER.—WINTER-QUARTERS AT VALLEY FORGE

BURGOYNE, having procured provisions for a month's campaign, crossed the Hudson, and continued his progress southward. The American army, numbering about six thousand men, and commanded by General Gates, lay encamped upon Behmus' heights, on the west bank of the river. The place presented natural facilities

for defence, of which due advantage had been taken in the disposition of the camp, and the formation of batteries and intrenchments.

On the 19th of September, an indecisive battle was fought, in which, although the British remained masters of the field, at night-fall, they sustained much the heaviest loss, the number of killed and wounded on either side being, respectively, less than three hundred and over five hundred. Two days previous to this event, communication with Canada had been cut off, by the surprise and capture of the British forts on Lake George, so that nothing but brilliant success could now enable Burgoyne to maintain himself in the enemy's country. He anxiously awaited promised reinforcements from New York.

On the 7th of October, the British troops again offered battle. The American forces had been increased by new recruits, and, exhilarated by the remembrance of recent successes, and the reputed destitution of the enemy, they fought with courage and impetuosity. Arnold exhibited his usual energy and bravery. The enemy were driven back to their camp, and a portion of their intrenchments was forced and held by a Massachusetts regiment, under Colonel Brooks.

Burgoyne drew off his forces during the night, and took up a new position, which he held during the day ensuing. On the 9th, he retreated to Saratoga. He was here, in a manner, surrounded by the Americans, who had occupied the only passes by which a retreat northward could be effected, and who pressed upon him in his position, the British camp being within reach of their artillery. Provisions could no longer be procured, and the supply on hand was nearly expended. Communications were therefore opened, and a capitulation was agreed upon, by the terms of which the whole British army, to the number of more than five thousand men, became prisoners-of-war.

It was agreed that they should be allowed to leave the country, but that none of them should serve further in the war, unless made subjects of exchange for American prisoners. All their artillery, arms, and munitions of war, fell into the hands of the Americans. Upon various pretexts, a compliance with the agreement for the embarkation of these prisoners, was delayed and evaded by congress. Burgoyne was permitted to sail for England, but his army was detained, a resolution being passed that no further action should be taken upon the premises, until the Saratoga convention should be expressly ratified by the British government, and a notification to

that effect be forwarded to the American congress. The result was, that none of these prisoners obtained their liberty except by regular exchange.

The forces dispatched by Clinton, from New York, to force a passage up the Hudson, and cooperate with Burgoyne, although unable to effect the main purpose of the expedition, did much mischief to the Americans. Obstacles to navigation, in the shape of huge chains, sunken impediments, &c., were successfully overcome, and the forts on the Highlands were stormed or abandoned. All the artillery at these important strongholds became prize to the enemy. A great amount of damage was wantonly inflicted upon the settlements near the river. Not content with plunder, the invaders burned and destroyed every thing within their reach.

We will now revert to the operations of the main continental army, guided by Washington in person. Towards the close of August (1777), Admiral Howe entered the Chesapeake, and disembarked the entire force on board his fleet at Elk Ferry, the nearest available landing to the city of Philadelphia, which was now obviously the object of attack. Upon the first intimation of the enemy's approach, Washington had marched to intercept his advance, and had taken up his quarters at Wilmington, on Brandywine creek, in the direct route from Elk Ferry to Philadelphia. He had collected a force of fifteen thousand men; that of the British was superior in numbers, and in far better condition for service.

On the 11th of September, the American army, having taken a new position on the left bank of the creek, was attacked by the enemy. Cornwallis, by a circuit, and by passage of the creek a considerable distance up the stream, succeeded in turning the American flank. Sullivan's division, in that quarter, was driven in, and, at the same time, a division, under Kniphausen, crossed the shallow river, and fell upon the central division of Washington's army. The latter was defeated, with a loss of not far from twelve hundred men. That of the enemy was reported to be six hundred. A retreat was effected to Chester, and thence, passing through Philadelphia, the army marched to Germantown, where an encampment was formed. In the action on the Brandywine, several foreign officers distinguished themselves. La Fayette was wounded in the engagement. The services of Count Pulaski were rewarded by immediate promotion.

On the 16th, Washington crossed the Schuylkill, and endeavoured

to check the advance of the enemy. A violent rain storm came on just as the armies were engaging, by which the arms and ammunition of the Americans were rendered unserviceable: they, therefore, retreated, and encamped on the left bank of the river, some distance above Philadelphia. A portion of the army, under Wayne, endeavoured to gain the enemy's rear; but, on the night of the 20th, the position of its encampment became known to the British commander, and it was attacked and driven off with heavy loss.

A few days later, Howe crossed the Schuylkill farther down, and entered Philadelphia without opposition. Congress, having extended and enlarged the dictatorial powers confided to the commander-in-chief, and, having passed laws rendering it a capital offence for residents in the vicinity of towns occupied by the enemy to furnish them with provisions, &c., had adjourned to Lancaster. The principal British camp was formed at Germantown.

Communication was not yet opened between the city and the tide-waters of the bay, strong fortifications and obstructions having been planted by the Americans at the entrance of the Schuylkill from the Delaware. While a portion of the enemy's force was detached to make an attempt upon these works, and to protect the transportation of stores, by land, from Chester, Washington undertook to surprise the main body at Germantown. The very circumstances that enabled him to come upon the enemy unperceived, proved disastrous for the success of the enterprise. The morning of the 4th of October, when the attack was made, was unusually dark and foggy. The American troops, after a long and toilsome march, fell upon the British camp about sunrise. All, for a time, was confusion, in which the assailants gained a temporary advantage. The British soon rallied, and availed themselves of the protection afforded by the buildings to form, and to pour a heavy fire upon their opponents. The Americans were driven off, with a loss of more than a thousand men; that of the British was less than two-thirds of that number.

It now became all important for the army of occupation at Philadelphia, to reduce the forts by which it was cut off from the fleet in the Delaware. The first attempt was made upon Fort Mercer, on Red bank, which was defended by troops from Rhode Island, under Greene. The storming party consisted of twelve hundred Hessians, led by Count Donop. A complete repulse, with the loss of four hundred of the assailants, including the commanding officer, demon-

strated the necessity for more deliberate and systematic approaches. Batteries were erected to play upon Fort Mifflin, situated upon a low mud-flat, which was reduced, after a brave defence of several days. The ships-of-war were now enabled to bring their guns to bear with effect upon Fort Mercer, and its evacuation soon followed. Thus, on the 18th of November, the British secured complete command of the approaches to Philadelphia by water.

Washington soon after retired with his army to a strong position at Valley Forge, on the right bank of the Schuylkill, twenty miles above Philadelphia. Here he established winter-quarters for the troops, consisting of regularly arranged rows of cabins. The greatest destitution and misery existed in the army, most of the men being ill supplied with clothing—especially shoes—and provisions were often to be procured only by forcible seizure. The supply was very irregular, and, at times, the condition of the camp fell little short of actual famine.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

DIFFICULTIES OF CONGRESS.—ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.—RECOMMENDATIONS TO THE STATES.—INTRIGUES AGAINST WASHINGTON.—TREATIES WITH FRANCE.—BRITISH COMMISSIONERS IN AMERICA.—EVACUATION OF PHILADELPHIA.—BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.—ARRIVAL OF A FRENCH FLEET.—ATTEMPT ON NEWPORT.—WINTER-QUARTERS.—MARAUDING EXPEDITIONS.—DESTRUCTION OF WYOMING.

It were difficult to conceive a more embarrassing position than that of the continental congress at this juncture. The army was reduced in numbers, dispirited, discouraged, and in a condition of physical want and suffering. The immense issue of paper money, amounting already to thirty or forty millions, had necessarily induced so rapid a depreciation in its value, that it was not available for purchases, at a higher rate than twenty-five per cent. upon its nominal value; and yet there appeared no resource for government, other than continued issues. Loans could be effected but slowly,

and to amounts miserably insufficient for the exigencies of the occasion. The numerous laws and regulations for fixing and establishing the prices of goods, for rendering distinction between gold and continental bills a penal offence, and for the preventing of "forestalling and engrossing," (viz: the buying up and retention of necessaries on speculation,) were exceedingly difficult to enforce, and were generally evaded, or made a handle for the gratification of private enmity.

Congress had already submitted a series of "Articles of Confederation" to the separate states, which were subjects of long and vexatious dispute; a great hesitation being felt at the relinquishment of individual sovereignty, in exchange for the benefits and permanency of a centralized government. It was now earnestly recommended that available funds should be raised by the states, resort being had for this purpose to direct taxation, to meet the expenses of the coming year; that stringent provisions—the arbitrary nature of which was acknowledged and lamented—should be enforced against forestallers and engrossers, by seizure of the accumulated property; to be paid for at specified rates in continental money, and for general regulation of trade; and that the property of absent loyalists be confiscated for public purposes.

The series of disasters which had befallen the main army, had given rise to doubts in the minds of many, as to the vigour and capacity of the commander-in-chief. Occasion was taken by those among the officers of the army and leading politicians, who were jealous of his ascendancy, to conspire for effecting his removal from office. This movement failed to affect the general popularity of Washington, or to shake the confidence of congress in his abilities or patriotism.

The close of January, 1778, was marked by the conclusion of two separate treaties with France. No event since the commencement of the war had given such strength to the patriotic cause as this. The independence of the states was acknowledged, and a treaty for trade and commerce negotiated. Still more important were the provisions of the second treaty, which contained stipulations for mutual defence, in anticipation of the course which England, if consistent in her plans, must necessarily adopt.

News of the negotiation of these treaties, was brought over to America in the spring, about the same time that intelligence was transmitted of a willingness on the part of the British government



to effect a reconciliation with the colonies, by the renunciation of all claims to impose taxes, &c. The three commissioners, deputed to conduct negotiations for this purpose, after a vain address to congress, in which the most liberal offers were made in behalf of the crown, resorted to every species of intrigue to bring about their ends. Manifestoes, calculated to excite prejudice against the French, appeals to the separate states, slurs upon the motives and principles of the leading patriots, and even the more reprehensible course of attempting the integrity of individuals by the offer of bribes; all resulted in signal failure. The treaties were ratified by congress, and no proposal for any thing short of absolute independence was longer entertained.

In parliament it was now openly advocated that submission to the necessities of the case, by an acknowledgment of American independence, would only be a timely anticipation of an inevitable result. National pride, and a jealousy of French interference prevailed, however, against every argument founded upon policy or right: the British minister was recalled from Paris, and the attention of government was devoted to the detail of warlike operations. Sir William Howe, recalled at his own request, was superseded in the chief command by Sir Henry Clinton. Orders were given for an abandonment of the positions at and near Philadelphia, and a concentration of forces at New York.

The evacuation of Philadelphia was effected on the 18th of June, the principal stores and baggage of the army having been forwarded to New York by sea. The American forces were immediately put in motion, to harass the enemy in the rear, and to watch for a favourable opportunity for a general engagement. Such an occasion presented itself, in the estimation of Washington, on the 28th, the enemy being encamped near Monmouth court-house. At the council in which an attack was decided upon, General Lee, then second in command, had opposed the plan. He was now intrusted with the command of the advance.

Early in the morning, upon the first movement of the British, who were about to take up their line of march towards New York, Lee received orders from his superior to open the attack. Coming up with the main army, Washington met the advance in full retreat, and pressed upon by the enemy. In the heat of the moment, he addressed Lee with terms of reproach, which rankled in the remembrance of that proud and eccentric officer, but which did not

prevent him from lending his utmost exertions, at the time, in carrying out the orders of the commander-in-chief.

During the remainder of the action, which lasted until nightfall, neither party obtained any decisive advantage. The British sustained the heavier loss, their killed and wounded amounting to about three hundred men; that of the Americans, probably, fell short of two hundred. The former continued their retreat during the night, and pushed on unmolested to the Navesink highlands, where they occupied an unassailable position. It does not appear that General Lee was guilty of any dereliction from duty in this engagement: his retreat, at the commencement, was before a superior force, the British having assumed an offensive attitude with remarkable promptitude and good order, and his own position being unfavourable from the nature of the ground. In consequence of two disrespectful letters, subsequently written to Washington, respecting the affair, as well as for alleged disobedience of orders, and an unnecessary retreat, he was tried by a court-martial, and suspended from command for the term of one year. He took no further part in the war.

Early in July, a powerful French fleet, commanded by Count D'Estaing, arrived on the coast, bringing over the French ambassador, Gerard, and about four thousand troops. Washington's army had, by this time, moved towards the Hudson, and, to cooperate with the French fleet in a proposed attack upon New York, now crossed over to White Plains. The British forces had removed from Navesink to the city.

The larger French men-of-war, from their great draught of water, could not be safely taken into New York harbour, and it was determined to commence operations by an attempt at the recovery of Newport, still in the possession of the British, and protected by a force of six thousand men. A violent storm disconcerted the arrangements for a joint attack by land and sea. D'Estaing, in endeavouring to engage the English fleet, suffered so much injury in his shipping, that he was compelled to sail for Boston to repair damages. The American forces, under Sullivan, which had landed on Rhode Island, and advanced towards Newport, were compelled to abandon the attempt. In this retreat, they were pursued and attacked by the enemy, whom they repulsed, not without considerable loss on both sides.

The remaining events of the year, although replete with local

interest, were of little importance, as connected with the result of the war. The French fleet, on the approach of winter, sailed for the West Indies, and the main continental army went into winter-quarters for the season, in New Jersey and the western portion of Connecticut, their line extending across the Hudson at West Point. The head-quarters of the commander-in-chief was at Middlebrook.

At no period of the war were evidences given of more bitter and relentless enmity between the patriots and loyalists, than during the summer and autumn of 1778. The predatory excursions of the British troops were also marked by unusual ferocity and needless cruelty. Not content with plunder, they generally glutted their malice by wanton destruction of all that they were unable to remove. In the month of July, a party of about three hundred tories and regulars, with a still larger number of Indians, under command of Colonel John Butler, marched into Pennsylvania from western New York, and ravaged the beautiful valley of Wyoming. It has been usually reported that Joseph Brant headed the Indians in this excursion. This seems to be an error: it is true, that throughout no small portion of the war, he and his warriors were a terror to the north-western frontier. He was faithful to the last to the cause which he had espoused, and his name came to be coupled with every tale of Indian violence and outrage. From all that we can learn, Brant was of a more humane disposition than many of his white associates, even among those who held high positions in the army.

At Wyoming, although the destruction of the settlement was principally effected by the ferocious and uncontrollable horde of Indians, the most revolting instances of blood-thirsty cruelty occurred in combat between the whites. In addition to the party strife between whig and tory, this community had been long distracted by bitter enmity between two distinct classes of settlers, holding their estates, respectively, under the conflicting grants of Connecticut and Pennsylvania. Opportunity was taken at the time of this invasion for the revenge of old family and clannish quarrels.

Upon a reoccupation of Philadelphia, the severe and sanguinary enactments against those who should assist the enemy, were enforced against some of the prominent tories. Two Quakers, convicted of treason under the laws lately enacted, were executed.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

INVASION OF GEORGIA.—OCCUPATION OF SAVANNAH.—BRITISH DIVISION UNDER PREVOST.—LINCOLN IN COMMAND AT THE SOUTH.—DEFEAT OF ASHE AT BRIAR CREEK.—ATTACK ON CHARLESTON.—SULLIVAN'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE IROQUOIS.—NAVAL OPERATIONS OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND.—ATTEMPT AT A RECOVERY OF SAVANNAH.—FURTHER NAVAL PROCEEDINGS: PAUL JONES.—CONDITION OF THE AMERICAN ARMY.

UPON the departure of D'Estaing for the West Indies, the English fleet, under Admiral Byron, immediately made sail in pursuit. It was resolved, at the same time, to open a winter campaign in a new quarter, and a large force of English and German troops, under command of Colonel Campbell, was embarked at New York for an expedition against Georgia.

The continental forces stationed at Savannah, amounting to less than a thousand men, were under command of the American General Howe. Upon the approach of Campbell, who arrived on the coast at the close of December, 1778, a defensible position was taken for the purpose of intercepting his advance. The British, in greatly superior force, were successful in turning the American flank. A negro piloted one detachment through a swamp, between which and the river the continental army was stationed. In an engagement which ensued, the Americans were completely routed; five or six hundred were taken prisoners or killed. The British loss was trifling, and their success was rewarded by an immediate occupation of Savannah.

Campbell was soon joined by General Prevost, who, in accordance with the plan of the southern campaign, had been ordered to march from his quarters in Florida, to assume command in Georgia, and cooperate with the troops from New York. Georgia thus fell into the hands of the British.

At this period, General Lincoln, by whom Howe had been superseded in command, arrived in South Carolina, and took command of the continental army at the south. The regular forces under his command, together with militia from North Carolina, were sufficient

to hold the enemy in check, and prevent a passage of the Savannah. There existed, however, an uninterrupted communication between the British head-quarters and the interior, where a strong tory interest predominated, and where the Indian tribes were generally favourable to the royal cause.

Lincoln commenced active operations by detaching fifteen hundred men, under General Ashe, to occupy an intermediate position, and intercept this communication. Ashe crossed the river near Augusta, from which the British retired towards the capital, and passing down the right bank, posted his forces on Briar creek, in the present county of Scriven.

In this position, the flank of the American army was again successfully turned by the enemy. Prevost made a distant, but rapid circuit, and falling upon the rear, gained a complete victory. A great number of the Americans were killed or taken prisoners, and the remainder were dispersed.

Lincoln's head-quarters were at Purisburg, about fifteen miles above Savannah, on the Carolina side of the river. In the month of April, 1779, leaving a portion of the militia at this post, he marched up the river, with the intention of effecting a passage, and making a descent on the British encampments. While on the route, he received intelligence that Prevost had taken the opportunity to cross the river, and was in full march upon Charleston. Lincoln immediately hurried to its defence, and arrived in time to save the city. The British army retreated, carrying away a large amount of plunder, gathered on the march, and taking with them an immense number of slaves, seized upon the coast plantations. The concluding events of the campaign took place in the month of June, by which time the season was unfit for further military operations.

During the preceding month of May, the coast of Virginia, and all districts easily accessible by the larger rivers, were ravaged by a detachment of between two and three thousand men, sent out by Clinton from New York. There was no military force to oppose these marauders, and, with scarce a show of resistance, they carried out the general orders to burn and destroy the property of the rebellious colonists. Not only vessels belonging to the confederacy, but a fleet of merchant vessels were burned or sunk in the rivers and bay. A great amount of plunder was seized and carried off, but its value bore no proportion to that of the property destroyed.

The most noticeable military operations of the summer, were the

ASHE.—BRITISH  
COMMAND AT THE  
K.—ATTACK  
AGAINST THE  
AND ENG-  
SAVANNAH.  
L JONES.  
ARMY.

Indies, the Eng  
de sail in pursuit  
inter campaign in a  
erman troops, under  
t New York for an

, amounting to less  
e American General  
arrived on the coast  
sition was taken for  
e British, in greatly  
American flank. A  
p, between which and

In an engagement  
routed; five or six  
The British loss was  
immediate occupation

prevost, who, in accord-  
had been ordered to  
command in Georgia.  
rk. Georgia thus fell

Howe had been super-  
na, and took command  
regular forces under his  
Carolina, were sufficient

expedition against the Iroquois, and the contests for the possession of the American fortifications at Verplank's Point and Stony Point, on the Hudson. Much damage was done by a marauding expedition down Long Island Sound, led by General Tryon. On the northeastern coast, the Americans also met with heavy loss in an unsuccessful expedition against a military post of the enemy on the Penobscot.

The Indian campaign of the season was conducted by General Sullivan. With a force of five thousand men, concentrated at Tioga, he entered the territory of the Six Nations. The Indians, under Brant, assisted by a body of Tories, commanded by the Butlers and by Sir John and Guy Johnson, made a strong stand at Newtown, on the bank of the Chemung river, but their position was not tenable against a force so superior as that now brought to bear upon them. No further resistance was offered to the advance of the invaders, and the month of September was occupied in the destruction of Indian villages and harvests.

"These Indian tribes had made no little advance in the arts of civilization. The Mohawks had mostly fled to Canada in the early times of the revolution, but others of the Iroquois, particularly the Cayugas and Senecas, had continued to cultivate their fields and maintain possession of the homes of their forefathers. Immense orchards of apple and other fruit trees were growing luxuriantly around the habitations, but all fell beneath the axe of the destroyers. The movement of so large a body of troops was necessarily slow, and, as no precautions were taken to conceal their operations, the Indians were every where enabled to escape to the woods. It must have been with feelings of the bitterest rage and despair that they saw the labour of so many years rendered useless, and thought of the coming winter, which must overtake them, a wandering and destitute people, who must perish, or rely for aid upon their Canadian allies."\*

The French and English fleets, under D'Estaing and Byron, were occupied during the winter, spring, and summer of this year, at the West Indies, and in the convoy of fleets of merchant vessels, bound homeward from the islands belonging to these nations respectively. The most important naval engagement of this period, was upon the occasion of the capture of the island of Grenada, by D'Estaing, in the month of July. In this action, the British

\* The Iroquois.—"Indian Races of America."

sustained a very heavy loss, both in men and in damage done to their ships.

D'Estaing appeared on the coast of Georgia in the month following, with the design of cooperating with the continental forces in an effort to recover the territory then in occupation of the enemy. Siege was laid to Savannah by the French and American forces, in September, and was continued until October 9th, when an attempt was made to storm the British outworks, and take the town by assault. A most gallant defence was made, and the assailants were driven off with the loss of more than a thousand men. This disastrous failure is attributed to the impatience and impetuosity of the French admiral, who had become weary of the protracted operations of a regular siege. He immediately afterwards returned to the West Indies.

Notwithstanding the powerful aid already furnished by France, and the expected assistance of Spain—that nation, during the summer, having virtually declared war against England—the affairs of the United States were, at this period, far from prosperous. The finances of the confederacy were in a most ruinous condition; continental paper money was nearly worthless, from the enormous issue, already amounting to more than one hundred and fifty millions, from the distant period when payment was provided for, and from the great uncertainty of any future redemption. The main army, suffering from insufficient and irregular supplies, and unoccupied in any important movement, was reduced in numbers, and dispirited by a series of reverses. Recruits were obtained with difficulty, and, to maintain a respectable force, resort was necessarily had to a draught upon the militia. Throughout the year, neither Washington nor the British commander-in-chief considered it advisable to measure the strength of their respective forces in any general engagement.

At sea, operations against England were mostly conducted by the fleets of France and Spain. The small naval force of the states had little opportunity for any effective service. Privateers were still in a measure successful, and it was in revenge for injuries committed upon British commerce by this class of vessels, that the seaports on Long Island Sound were plundered and burned, as before mentioned. The daring achievements of John Paul Jones, a Scotchman, holding a commission from congress as a naval commander, were matters of wide celebrity. In September, 1779, being in command

of a French and American squadron, fitted out from France, he fell in with a British fleet of merchant vessels, under convoy of two vessels of war. The larger of these, a frigate of forty-four guns, named the *Serapis*, engaged the *Bonne Homme Richard*, commanded by Jones, and carrying forty-two guns.

The combat was conducted, for the most part, while the ships were lashed together, each pouring in a heavy fire and making desperate attempts to carry the enemy by boarding. Both vessels repeatedly took fire during the engagement, and, when the *Serapis* finally struck, the *Bonne Homme Richard* was in a sinking condition, and was presently abandoned.

The American army—quartered for the winter near West Point, on the Hudson, and in the neighbourhood of Morristown, New Jersey—was with great difficulty furnished with provisions, and was poorly prepared to encounter the inclemencies of the season, much less to operate against troops superior in numbers and discipline, and better provided with needful supplies and munitions of war.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

SIEGE OF CHARLESTON: SURRENDER OF THE CITY.—SOUTH CAROLINA OCCUPIED BY THE BRITISH.—TARLETON'S LEGION: HIS VICTORY AT WAXHAW.—CORNWALLIS IN COMMAND.—DEFEAT OF THE AMERICANS AT CAMDEN.—GUERRILLA OPERATIONS OF SUMPTER AND MARION.—INVASION OF NORTH CAROLINA.—FERGUSON'S DEFEAT AT KING'S MOUNTAIN.

THE year 1780 was, almost throughout, a season of distress, defeat and disaster, for the continental armies. The principal theatre of action was at the south. In the month of February, General Clinton, with a large force brought from New York in December, sailed from Savannah, upon an expedition against Charleston. Blockading the harbour with his fleet, he landed his troops on the island of St. John's, and prepared to lay siege to the city.

General Lincoln, in concert with Governor Rutledge, made every



exertion to increase the garrison, and to erect defensive works. Rutledge, in pursuance of extensive discretionary powers conferred upon him by the legislature, compelled the service of a great number of negro slaves for this purpose. The forces finally concentrated at Charleston amounted to about seven thousand, but more than half of these were inhabitants of the city, and a considerable portion of the remainder were militia from North Carolina.

In the month of April, Clinton's fleet passed Fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's island, without material damage, and entered the harbour. Works were constructed for the prosecution of the siege by regular military approaches; communication from the north was cut off by a detachment of British troops; Fort Moultrie was taken by the enemy; and before the middle of May, it was plain that the city was no longer tenable. A capitulation was proposed and accepted: the militia were to return home upon parole; the regular continental soldiers to become prisoners of war; and the British were to have possession of the city, the public stores, &c.

Clinton did not fail to follow up his advantage, by taking secure positions for his troops at the more important posts throughout the state. His most efficient force for carrying on the skirmishing and irregular warfare which attended the occupation of South Carolina, was a legion of cavalry, under command of Colonel Tarleton, an officer of great energy and ability.

During the siege, this corps defeated two regiments of the American forces, at Monk's Corner, thirty miles from Charleston, and, about the close of the month following, the like success attended an attack upon Buford's regiment, from Virginia. The victory was gained at Waxhaws, in the northern part of the state, whither Tarleton had hastened by a forced march. The Americans were completely routed, and a bloody massacre ensued. No quarter was given, and more than three hundred were killed or taken prisoners, while the assailants lost but eighteen men.

Clinton resorted to violent measures for the maintenance of British rule in South Carolina. Administration of the oath of allegiance to malcontents, rendered compulsory by confiscations and other punishments, and a careful organization of the tories, gave a general aspect of quiet submission to the country. Resistance was out of the question, but the patriotic portion of the inhabitants looked anxiously for promised aid from the north.

Regiments from Delaware and Maryland, led by Baron De Kalb,

nce, he fell  
roy of two  
-four guns,  
hard, com-

le the ships  
making des-  
Both vessels  
the Serapis  
nking condi-

West Point,  
ristown, New  
sions, and was  
season, much  
and discipline,  
ons of war.

CITY.—SOUTH  
RLETON'S LE-  
WALLIS IN  
CAMDEN.—  
ARION.—  
GUSON'S

ason of distress,  
The principal  
ath of February.  
n New York in  
pedition against  
et, he landed his  
d to lay siege to  
edge, made every

were on march for the scene of action, but their progress was slow on account of difficulty in procuring provisions. In the month of July, they were reinforced by General Gates, to whom the chief command at the south had recently been intrusted. A Virginia regiment, the only remaining continental force in that quarter, joined a junction with the army, which now amounted to five or six thousand men. In the month of August, a most unfortunate season for a southern campaign, Gates reached Clermont, near Camden, S. C., where he encamped on the 14th.

Cornwallis was, at this period, in command of the British forces at the south, Clinton having returned to New York. Such troops as he could raise to oppose the advance of Gates, were encamped at Camden.

A simultaneous attempt at a surprise, on the part of both armies, led to an unexpected night encounter. After some unimportant skirmishing, the respective leaders occupied themselves in preparations for a decisive battle. The fighting recommenced at day-break: the British, although outnumbered in the ratio of about two to one, were completely victorious. The American militia fled at the first charge, but the regular forces, under De Kalb, fought bravely, until the fall of their leader. Nearly two thousand of the Americans were killed or taken prisoners, during the engagement, or in their disastrous and confused retreat. The enemy lost but a little over three hundred men.

A few days subsequent to this battle, a body of patriots, raised and commanded by Colonel Sumpter, which had done much damage to the British outposts, by an irregular warfare, was attacked by Tarleton and his legion, some distance farther up the Catawba. Sumpter's forces were surprised and utterly routed; a number of British prisoners were set at liberty, and four or five hundred of the Americans were killed, or fell into the hands of the enemy.

No course was now left to the patriots but submission, or the life of outlaws. A number of prisoners, convicted of treason in having borne arms against the king, after professing allegiance, or accepting British protection, were executed, by order of the British commander. Those who, not being implicated in the open hostilities, had favoured the patriotic cause, were punished by seizure of their property for the use of the army. The few who still maintained a hostile attitude, were obliged to resort, for safety, to forests and marshes inaccessible to any but those familiar with the country.

Sumpter, notwithstanding his defeat, had again collected a band of followers, and established himself in the mountainous inland country, whence he made incursions upon the enemy.

General Marion, who had held a continental commission, as colonel, did distinguished service in this species of warfare. His haunts were the swamps of the Lower Pedee; and such was the security of his place of retreat, and the celerity of his movements, that his plans could never be anticipated. He would suddenly appear, at night, with his band of rough and rudely-armed horsemen, in the midst of a British encampment, and before the alarm was fairly given, would be beyond the reach of pursuit, having accomplished the purpose of his incursion—whether it were the release of prisoners or the collection of booty.

The tide of British successes began to turn in the month of October. Cornwallis had made extensive preparations for an invasion of North Carolina; Major Ferguson, with a considerable body of troops, effected a junction with the Tories in the western portion of that state. A superior force of militia and volunteers, including many from Virginia, was collected by the patriots of that vicinity to oppose the invasion. Retreating hastily before their advance, Ferguson took a position on King's mountain, at the border of South Carolina.

An attack was made by the Americans, in three columns, from opposite quarters. Notwithstanding repeated repulses, they returned again and again to the charge; and, finally, Ferguson having fallen, with a great number of his men, the remainder, numbering about eight hundred, surrendered at discretion. The victors immediately gratified a spirit of retaliation for the severity of the English, by putting to death a number of particularly obnoxious Tories, found among the prisoners. Cornwallis, who had already entered North Carolina, retreated southward upon receiving intelligence of Ferguson's defeat. Large reinforcements from New York arrived in Charleston early in the winter.

## CHAPTER XX.

NORTHERN OPERATIONS.—SPRINGFIELD BURNED.—ARRIVAL OF THE FRENCH FLEET AND FORCES: BLOCKADE AT NEWPORT.—TREASON OF ARNOLD.—TRIAL AND EXECUTION OF MAJOR ANDRÉ.—CAUSES OF ARNOLD'S DEFECTION.—INDIAN RAVAGES: INVASION OF THE MOHAWK VALLEY BY JOHNSON AND BRANT.

At the north, little was effected by either army during the spring and summer of 1780. The British, from New York, made two incursions into New Jersey, in the month of June. Upon the first of these occasions nothing was accomplished, but upon the second, the village of Springfield, garrisoned by a continental force, under Greene, was destroyed. The main American army remained in the vicinity of its previous winter-quarters, occupied only in opposing a check to the marauding expeditions of the enemy. Such was the destitution at the camp, that some of the troops were driven to open expressions of mutiny.

Great expectations were formed upon the reported approach of a French fleet and army; which arrived in the month of July, at Newport, then abandoned by the British. Six thousand troops, under Count Rochambeau, were brought over, and preparations were made by Washington for active operations against New York. Unfortunately, the British, having received accessions to the naval force on the coast, were enabled to blockade the French fleet in the harbour of Newport. The whole army of auxiliaries, together with a body of American militia, was, therefore, kept idle, being necessarily employed in defence of the shipping in harbour.

Between the lines of the British and Continental armies, above New York, an intervening space, occupied by neither, formed a convenient resort for lawless depredators, who took advantage of the distracted state of affairs, for purposes of private plunder. To cut off the supply of provisions from the British army, cattle were made liable to seizure, upon the road to New York, within certain limits, in this debatable ground, and arrests of suspicious characters were permitted and encouraged.

On the 23d of September, three New York militia-men, named

Paulding, Williams, and Van Wert, were watching the road near Tarrytown, from a place of concealment. They stopped a solitary horseman, who, supposing them to be of his own party, announced himself as a British officer. Discovering them to be Americans, he made large offers of reward if he might be allowed to pass. These were refused; and, upon searching his person, papers were found concealed in his boots. He was carried by his captors before the American Colonel Jamison. The papers secured were found to contain plans of the fortifications at West Point, with the numbers of the garrison, and descriptions of the defences.

Notice was immediately dispatched to Arnold, who commanded at that post, and also to Washington, then on his return from Hartford to head-quarters. The former, upon the receipt of the intelligence, instantly hastened to the river, and, taking his barge, went on board the British sloop-of-war Vulture, which lay at anchor a little below the forts.

A scheme of treachery was now apparent, and the whole plan was soon exposed by the confessions of the captive at Tarrytown, who proved to be Major André, adjutant-general of the British army, a young man universally admired for talents and courage, and beloved for his amiable and gentlemanly disposition. It appeared that Arnold had, for some time past, been in communication with Sir Henry Clinton, and that the command at West Point had been solicited and obtained by him, with the sole object of its surrender to the enemy.

To treat with him for this purpose, André had proceeded up the Hudson in the Vulture, and a meeting was effected. From some unforeseen difficulty, he was unable to return on board, and was compelled to pass the night at a house within the American lines. Attempting to make his way to New York by land, in disguise, and bearing a pass from Arnold, he was arrested in the manner before related.

Upon a trial by court-martial, he was condemned as a spy, and suffered death, in accordance with the severe requirements of martial law, notwithstanding the vehement exertions of Clinton for his release, and the general sympathy in his behalf, awakened by his high character and noble demeanour.

Arnold's disaffection appears to have resulted, principally, from pecuniary embarrassments, the consequence of his own reckless extravagance. He thought himself neglected in some early military

appointments, and, subsequently, the partial disallowance of an unreasonable claim upon congress, made by him in relation to the expenses of the Canadian expedition, mortified and enraged him. He had also been tried by court-martial for alleged peculation in his management of public funds, while in command at Philadelphia, and had received a reprimand from the commander-in-chief.

No officer in the American army exhibited more remarkable abilities as a commander than Arnold, and in personal prowess and courage, he was, perhaps, unequalled by any of his associates. His important services had induced his countrymen to look with leniency upon failings which would have endangered the popularity of another. In proportion to the former complacency of the community, was their indignation at this exhibition of unprincipled depravity—an indignation destined to be immeasurably heightened by the subsequent conduct of its object, who devoted his brilliant talents to the service of the enemy, in active warfare against his countrymen.

The autumn passed away with no farther warlike incidents of much public importance. A savage *guerilla* contest desolated portions of the Carolinas; and at the north-west, the exasperated Iroquois still continued to send out war-parties for the plunder and destruction of the frontier settlements. In October, the valley of the Mohawk was desolated by a mixed party of whites, under Johnson, and Indians led by Brant and the Seneca half-breed, Corn Planter. A letter, written by Brant on this occasion, speaks with indignation at cruelties practised by his associates, particularly the Butlers, whose names are connected with every atrocity in the conduct of this predatory warfare.

EZRA STILES.—In 1777, the Rev. Ezra Stiles, D. D., a native of North Haven, and formerly a tutor in the college, was chosen president of the institution, and remained in office until his death, May 12, 1795. He was one of the most learned and patriotic men of the age. He appears to have been one of the first persons in the country who anticipated and predicted the independence of the American colonies. In 1772 he wrote to a friend:—"When Heaven shall have doubled our millions a few times more, it will not be in the power of our enemies to chastise us with scorpions." In 1774 he addressed one of his English correspondents as follows:—"If oppression proceeds, despotism may force an annual congress; and a public spirit of enterprise may originate an American *Magna Charta* and *Bill of Rights*, supported with such intrepid and persevering importunity as even sovereignty may hereafter judge it not wise to withstand. There will be a *Wang-mede* in America." The Rev. Richard Price, in allusion to a letter received by him from Dr. Stiles, just at the beginning of the Revolution, assures us that he "predicted in it the very event in which the war has issued; particularly the conversion of the colonies into so many distinct and independent states, united under congress." He published several ordination, funeral, and other occasional sermons, and the "History of the three Judges of King Charles I.—Whalley, Goffo, and Dixwell."—*Hollister's History of Connecticut.*

## CHAPTER XXI.

REVOLT OF THE PENNSYLVANIA TROOPS.—ARNOLD'S EXPEDITION INTO VIRGINIA.—GREENE IN COMMAND OF THE SOUTHERN ARMY.—MORGAN'S DETACHMENT: BATTLE OF COWPENS: PURSUIT OF MORGAN BY CORNWALLIS: PASSAGE OF THE CATAWDA: RETREAT INTO VIRGINIA: BATTLE OF GUILFORD COURT-HOUSE.—GREENE'S MARCH INTO SOUTH CAROLINA.—CORNWALLIS IN VIRGINIA.—BATTLE AT HOBKIRK'S HILL.—SEIZURE OF BRITISH PORTS BY MARION AND LEE.

THE year 1781 opened unpromisingly for the Americans. A dangerous disaffection in the camp at Morristown broke out at this period in open revolt. The causes of complaint, were unpaid arrearages, and a dispute respecting the terms of enlistment. The regiments from Pennsylvania claimed their discharge at the end of a three years' term, although, according to the representation of their officers, the whole period of the war was included in their engagement to serve.

Thirteen hundred men, defying the authority of their commanders, one of whom was killed in the attempt to reduce them to obedience, marched off, under arms, in the direction of Philadelphia, with the expressed purpose of compelling compliance with their demands. General Wayne in vain attempted to recall them to a sense of duty, and was forced to content himself with procuring such supplies for their use on the march as should preclude the necessity for plundering the inhabitants. At Princeton, commissioners from congress, and from the state authorities, held a conference with the malcontents, and, after some discussion, the main points in dispute were yielded by the former. Several messengers, sent by Sir Henry Clinton to persuade the mutineers, by handsome offers, to enlist in the king's army, were seized and hanged as spies. A similar outbreak among the New Jersey troops, was quelled by force—two of the ringleaders being shot. These movements had the effect to rouse congress and the states to a sense of the necessities of the army, and a large sum of money was promptly raised, in specie, for part payment of arrearages.

Early in January, Arnold, who had received, as the reward of his intended treachery, the sum of ten thousand pounds, and a commission as a brigadier-general in the British army, commenced active operations in Virginia. He passed up James river, with a considerable force, and after plundering Richmond, and doing much damage by the destruction of buildings, together with valuable public stores, he entered upon the occupation of Portsmouth.

A great effort was made to outnumber and overpower this detachment. La Fayette, with a body of troops from New England and New Jersey, was dispatched against it; and the French fleet, then free to put to sea, made sail for the Chesapeake, for the purpose of cutting off retreat. This movement was anticipated by the British squadron, which took possession of the bay, after an engagement with, and discomfiture of the enemy.

The command of the continental army at the south, previous to this period, had been conferred upon General Greene, in place of Gates, recalled. The small force under his command, consisted of but two thousand men, notwithstanding endeavours made, during the early part of the winter, to procure recruits from Virginia and elsewhere. Against a detachment of about one thousand of these troops, under General Morgan, while on their march into western South Carolina, Cornwallis dispatched Tarleton, with a force about equal in numbers. His own plan was to intercept communication between the divisions of the American army, by marching northward from his camp at Winnsborough.

Hotly pursued by Tarleton, whose movements were always rapid and prompt, Morgan made a stand at the Cowpens, in the present county of Spartanburgh, near the North Carolina border. Deceived by a pretended or apparent retreat of the advanced lines, the British rushed to the attack without due precaution for the preservation of order, and when they found themselves coolly withstood by the continentals, who poured in a heavy and destructive fire at close-quarters, their line was broken, and a complete rout ensued. More than half of the entire force were taken prisoners or killed. The battle was fought on the 17th of January, 1781.

Marching with great celerity, Morgan gained the fords of Catawba on the 29th, his object being to take his prisoners to a place of security in Virginia. Immediately after the battle at Cowpens, Tarleton, with the remainder of his detachment, effected a junction with Cornwallis. Strengthened by reinforcements from Charleston, under



the reward of his  
la, and a commis-  
sioned active  
r, with a consider-  
ing much damage  
able public stores,

power this detach-  
New England and  
French fleet, then  
for the purpose of  
ted by the British  
er an engagement

south, previous to  
Greene, in place of  
mand, consisted of  
ours made, during  
from Virginia and  
thousand of these  
march into western  
with a force about  
cept communication  
y marching north-

were always rapid  
pens, in the present  
border. Deceived  
ed lines, the British  
the preservation of  
y withstood by the  
ructive fire at close  
rout ensued. More  
ers or killed. The

the fords of Catawba  
ers to a place of secur-  
Cowpens, Tarleton,  
junction with Corn-  
Charleston, under



... who had received, as the result of the  
 ... of ten thousand pounds, and a commis-  
 ... general in the British army, contained native  
 ... Virginia. He passed up James river, with a consider-  
 ... and after ordering Richmond, and doing much damage  
 ... by the destruction of buildings, together with valuable public stores,  
 ... entered upon the occupation of Portsmouth.

A great effort was made to outnumber and overpower this detach-  
 ment. La Fayette, with a body of troops from New England and  
 New Jersey, was dispatched against it; and the French fleet, then  
 fit to put to sea, made sail for the Chesapeake, for the purpose of  
 cutting off retreat. This movement was anticipated by the British  
 squadron, which took possession of the bay, after an engagement  
 with, and discomfiture of the enemy.

The command of the continental army at the south, previous to  
 this period, had been conferred upon General Greene, in place of  
 Gates, recalled. The small force under his command, consisted of  
 but two thousand men, notwithstanding endeavours made, during  
 the early part of the winter, to procure recruits from Virginia and  
 elsewhere. Against a detachment of about one thousand of these  
 troops, under General Morgan, while on their march into western  
 South Carolina, Cornwallis dispatched Tarleton, with a force about  
 equal in numbers. His own plan was to intercept communication  
 between the divisions of the American army, by marching north-  
 ward from his camp at Winstanborough.

Hastily pursued by Tarleton, whose movements were always rapid  
 and prompt, Morgan made a stand at the Cowpens, in the present  
 ... near the North Carolina border. Deceived  
 ... the advanced line, the British  
 ... for the preservation of  
 order, and ... wholly withstood by the  
 continentals, who ... destructive fire at close  
 quarters, their loss was ... rout ensued. More  
 than half of the entire ... prisoners or killed. The  
 battle was fought on the 17th of January, 1781.

Marching with great celerity, ... gained the fords of Catawba  
 on the 29th, his object being to take his prisoners to a place of secur-  
 ity in Virginia. Immediately after the battle at Cowpens Tarleton  
 with the remainder of his detachment, effected a junction with Corn-  
 wallis. Strengthened by reinforcements from Charleston,

and a ...  
menced active  
with a consider  
the much damage  
to public stores,

lower this detach-  
ew England and  
rench fleet, then  
r the purpose of  
ed by the British  
r an engagement

south, previous to  
ere me, in place of  
mand, consisted of  
ours made, during  
from Virginia and  
thousand of these  
march into western  
with a force about  
ept communication  
by marching north

s were always rapid  
ens, in the present  
t border. Deceived  
ed lines, the British  
the preservation of  
y withstood by the  
ructive fire at close  
rout ensued. Many  
ers or killed. The

the fords of Charle  
ers to a place of  
at Cowpens- Tarleton  
a junction with  
in Charle-



I  
tu  
th  
up

ar  
wi  
con  
of  
the  
of g  
pun  
divi  
T

Virg  
ceede  
in sa  
and n  
severe  
suitab

Cor  
measu  
and en  
of the  
opport  
army f  
first co  
A part  
detach  
it to be  
own ch

Large  
lina, Gr  
15th of  
ratio of  
inexper  
no servi  
arms, an  
exhibited  
their pos

Vo

Leslie, the whole army was put in rapid motion to intercept or overtake the victorious continentals. Morgan had effected a passage of the Catawba but two hours before the arrival of Cornwallis' advance upon the bank.

Night coming on, a sudden rise of water delayed the pursuing army, and secured the escape of the Americans. General Greene, with a few attendants, joined this division on the 31st, and assumed command. As soon as the British could pass the river, (on the 1st of February,) the pursuit recommenced. The Americans reached the Yadkin, with the enemy close upon their rear, and there a piece of good fortune, similar to that experienced at the Catawba, checked pursuit for a time, and gave opportunity for a junction of the two divisions of the army at Guilford court-house.

The endeavour of Cornwallis was now to cut off their retreat into Virginia, at the ford of Dan river. The retreating army still succeeded in maintaining its advanced position, and reached Virginia in safety, leaving the British masters of the Carolinas. In the long and rapid march from South Carolina, the American troops suffered severely from over-fatigue, and from the insufficiency of clothing suitable to the severity of the season.

Cornwallis took up his quarters at Hillsborough, and resorted to measures similar to those enforced in South Carolina, for organizing and encouraging the tories, and for the punishment and humiliation of the patriots. The latter were not slow in retaliation whenever opportunity offered. Greene, having received some addition to his army from the Virginia militia, reentered North Carolina. He at first contented himself with checking the movements of the tories. A party of these, numbering two or three hundred, falling in with a detachment of cavalry, under the American Colonel Lee, supposed it to be Tarleton's legion, and, in perfect confidence, exposed their own character and position. They were all massacred on the spot.

Largely reinforced by volunteers from Virginia and North Carolina, Greene finally offered battle near Guilford court-house, on the 15th of March. His forces out-numbered those of the enemy in the ratio of more than two to one, but a large portion of them were inexperienced volunteers and militia. The latter were of little or no service in the engagement, many of them throwing down their arms, and dispersing at the first discharge. The continental troops exhibited both courage and firmness, but were finally driven from their position at the point of the bayonet, and made an orderly

retreat. The loss on both sides was heavy, but that of the victors was the greatest, amounting to more than five hundred. The British troops were in a state of extreme suffering from want of food and from the fatigues of the engagement; advantage could not, therefore, be taken of the victory.

No pursuit was ordered, and Cornwallis, finding great difficulty in procuring supplies for his army, took up his march down Cape Fear river, towards Wilmington. In the month of April, General Greene, with nearly two thousand men, marched into South Carolina, where the British army of occupation was so far reduced by the detachment for invasion of North Carolina, that a fair opportunity offered for a recovery of the state, or, at least, for compelling Cornwallis to move southward for its protection. The latter general, instead of adopting that policy, marched into Virginia, and united his forces with those before sent into the country, under Arnold, and now commanded by Phillips.

The state of affairs in the Carolinas, throughout these campaigns, was that of civil war in its worst and most ferocious aspect. Such disregard for human life was, perhaps, exhibited at no other period, and in no other quarter, during the war. Whigs and Tories rivalled each other in sanguinary retribution for mutual wrongs. It is impossible to ascertain, with any approach to certainty, the number of those who perished in skirmishes, at the hands of the lawless mobs, or victims of private malice, in this fratricidal contest, but it must have been very large, and by some is computed by thousands.

Greene, entering South Carolina, posted himself upon Hobkirk's hill, in the vicinity of Camden, then occupied by an inferior force of the enemy, under Lord Rawdon. His cavalry was on march, by a detour, to join the partisan forces of Marion, and intercept communication with Charleston. He was attacked at his position on the 25th of April. The Americans fought bravely, but were unable to resist the charge of the British bayonet. Obligated to retreat, Greene fell back to Rugely's mills, several miles distant.

The mounted forces, under Marion and Lee, succeeded in occupying the passes on the north of the Santee, and in seizing upon several defensive posts. Sumpter and his followers were no less successful in attacks upon detached garrisons, stationed to maintain lines of communication. Forts Watson and Motte, with Orangeburgh, Georgetown, and Augusta, were soon in the hands of the Americans. The British fort, "Ninety-Six," held out against every effort

to take it by siege or storm. The heat of the season suspended further active operations. The great effort of the campaign had been so far accomplished, that the British had been obliged to concentrate their forces, and abandon further attempts at extended occupation.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

WAR BETWEEN ENGLAND AND HOLLAND.—SEIZURE AND PLUNDER OF ST. EUSTATIUS.—THE ARMED NEUTRALITY.—RECOVERY OF WEST FLORIDA BY SPAIN.—CONTINENTAL CURRENCY.—PLAN FOR THE RECOVERY OF NEW YORK.—VIRGINIA RAVAGED BY PHILLIPS AND CORNWALLIS.—ENCAMPMENTS AT YORKTOWN AND GLOUCESTER POINT.—WASHINGTON'S MARCH SOUTHWARD.—ATTACK ON NEW LONDON AND GROTON.—CAMPAIGN IN SOUTH CAROLINA.—BATTLE NEAR EUTAW SPRINGS.

BEYOND the limits of the United States, during the winter and spring, important events had transpired, at which, although connected with the difficulties between England and her colonies, we can barely glance. During the autumn of 1780, the British government obtained information of a correspondence between the United States and Holland relative to a commercial treaty. An arrogant demand upon the latter for explanation or atonement, not receiving the attention required, was soon followed by a declaration of war. The opportunity presented for the acquisition of an enormous booty, was too tempting to be resisted, and, doubtless, occasioned this precipitancy of action. The Dutch possessions in the West Indies were seized by a fleet, under Rodney, in the month of February, 1781. At the island of St. Eustatius, an immense number of ships and an accumulation of merchandise, valued at fifteen millions of dollars, were taken as lawful prize. This island had been one of the principal places of deposit for goods intended to be shipped to the United States. England was thus involved in war with France and Holland. Her claim of the right to interfere with the commerce of neutral nations, had also caused the formation of a coalition by the principal

northern powers of Europe, known as the "Armed Neutrality," for the purpose of mutual protection in their commercial rights against the injurious assumptions of Great Britain.

Spain, besides uniting her powerful fleet to that of France, for operation against the common enemy, took the occasion to recover the settlements of West Florida from the British. This was effected in the spring of 1781, by a force from Louisiana, under Galvez, the Spanish governor, with the coöperation of a fleet from Havana.

An important change, introduced by congress during the summer of this year, in the conduct of financial operations, by which the government refused to deal further with the depreciated paper currency, rendered this entirely worthless. Much of the paper was taken up by individual states—by which it was to be redeemed according to the provisions accompanying its issue—at an enormous depreciation, as an equivalent for taxes, but an immense amount remained upon the hands of private holders. Various schemes for replacing it, at its market value, by a "new tenor" of bills, bearing interest, proved failures, as nothing, at this period, could sustain the value of any public issue, either by the union, or by states in their separate capacity. Nearly all of the latter had pursued a course similar to that of the confederation, in this respect, and their paper had experienced a steady and hopeless decline in value.

At the opening of the campaign of 1781, extensive preparations were made by the United States for a systematic effort at the recovery of New York. For this purpose, forces were gradually concentrated in that vicinity; but the events of the spring and summer gave a new aspect to the campaign, and changed the scene of action.

The British forces, under Phillips, in Virginia, greatly outnumbered any which, at that time, could be brought to oppose them. The only effective American troops in this quarter, were La Fayette's continentals. Phillips, with little opposition, sent detachments up the James and Appamattox rivers, and plundered and destroyed property to the amount of millions. Joined by the forces of Cornwallis, in the month of May, and by troops sent round from New York, the army of invasion amounted to about eight thousand men; that of the Americans, in Virginia, including raw recruits and militia, little exceeded three thousand. A little later, the Pennsylvania regiments, under Wayne, effected a junction with La Fayette's army, increasing it to about four thousand.



Cornwallis, after destroying a valuable collection of arms and stores at the armory on the James river, in Fluvanna, and driving the state legislature precipitately from Charlottesville, then the place of session, moved with his whole army towards the coast. He had received instructions to this effect from Clinton, who, having obtained intimation of the intended attack upon New York, desired to dispose the Virginia division where it could be made available in case of necessity.

Early in August, a position was accordingly taken at Yorktown and Gloucester Point, on either side of York river, at its debouchement into Chesapeake bay. Every effort was made to strengthen and fortify these posts: a considerable naval force was also at hand in the river and bay, to cooperate in any future movement.

The northern army, under Washington, was joined by the French forces, so long stationed at Newport, in the month of July. While preparations were actively going on to prosecute the siege of New York, information was received that a powerful French fleet from the West Indies, commanded by Count de Grasse, was momentarily expected in the Chesapeake. Determined to seize so favourable an opportunity for the annihilation of the army of Cornwallis, Washington abandoned, for the time, his designs against New York, and hastened to put the main army *en route* for the south. He was careful to conceal this change of operations from the enemy, and so successfully was the movement planned and conducted, that Clinton had no intimation of the new turn of affairs until the army was safe from interception or pursuit.

Advantage was now taken of the withdrawal of the continental and French armies, for an expedition into Connecticut. The traitor Arnold, to whom the command was intrusted, shaped his course for New London. On the morning of September 6th, a fleet of twenty-four sail was seen off the harbour. About sixteen hundred troops were landed, in two divisions, one led by Arnold in person, on the New London side, the other by Colonel Eyre, at Groton.

Fort Griswold, on the heights at the latter place, was garrisoned by one hundred and sixty volunteers, commanded by Colonel Ledyard. With the expectation of receiving an immediate reinforcement of militia, it was determined to defend the post. This expectation proved vain; the fort was carried by storm, and most of the garrison, in accordance with the cruel usage of war, were cut to pieces for defending an untenable position. An eye-wit

ness\* thus describes the catastrophe: "Colonel Ledyard, seeing the enemy within the fort, gave orders to cease firing, and to throw down our arms, as the fort had surrendered. We did so, but they continued firing in platoons upon those who were retreating to the magazine and barrack-rooms for safety. At this moment, the renegade colonel commanding, cried out, 'Who commands this garrison?' Colonel Ledyard, who was standing near me, answered, 'I did, sir, but you do now,' at the same time stepping forward, handing him his sword, with point towards himself." The narrator was, at this moment, wounded by a bayonet thrust; he continues: "The first person I saw afterwards, was my brave commander, a corpse by my side, having been run through the body with his own sword by the savage renegade. Never was a scene of more brutal, wanton carnage than now took place. The enemy were still firing on us by platoons, and in the barrack-rooms. \* \* All this time the bayonet was freely used, even on those who were helplessly wounded, and in the agonies of death." Those of the wounded who escaped the general massacre, were treated with great brutality and neglect.

Arnold's division met with similar success in the attack upon New London. The town was plundered, and, at the same time, set on fire, and reduced to ashes. Nothing further was attempted: the country adjacent presented little temptation to the marauders, and they immediately reëmbarked, and set sail for New York with their booty and a number of prisoners.

While these events were taking place at the north, General Greene had been actively engaged in preparing for the renewal of hostilities in Carolina. Towards the close of August, having procured reinforcements of militia, and a supply of horses for his cavalry corps, he left his quarters among the hills of the Santee, and marched in pursuit of the enemy, then under command of Lieutenant-Colonel Stewart. An indecisive and bloody battle was fought, on the 8th of September, in the neighbourhood of Eutaw Springs. The American forces rather exceeded those of the enemy in point of numbers, amounting to more than two thousand men.

After this engagement, Greene drew off his forces to his former place of encampment, at the Santee hills; the British moved towards Charleston. The latter, although so frequently victorious throughout these southern campaigns, and although favoured by a large party among the inhabitants, had failed to gain any important

\* Stephen Hempstead.

advantage by their conquests. It was comparatively easy to overrun the country, and to inflict incalculable injury upon the property of the scattered population; but they always left enemies in their rear, and the obstinacy of the Anglo Saxon disposition, duly inherited by the Americans, and losing nothing of its force by translation to the New World, continually strengthened the antagonistic spirit of the people. The operations of Stewart were thenceforth confined to the vicinity of Charleston.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

FRENCH FLEET IN THE CHESAPEAKE.—SIEGE OF YORKTOWN  
—SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.—WINTER-QUARTERS.—  
PROCEEDINGS IN THE ENGLISH PARLIAMENT.—NEGO-  
TIATIONS FOR PEACE.—TERMS OF TREATY.—CESSA-  
TION OF HOSTILITIES.—DISAFFECTION IN THE  
CONTINENTAL ARMY.—EVACUATION OF NEW YORK  
—POSITION OF THE UNITED STATES.

ABOUT the 1st of September, 1781, after a long series of manœuvres, in which he wisely avoided any general engagement with the British fleet, the Count de Grasse brought twenty-four ships of the line safely into the Chesapeake, thus securing complete possession of the bay, and precluding all possibility of Cornwallis' effecting a retreat by sea. The fleet was soon after joined by the French squadron from Newport, commanded by Du Barras.

The American army, concentrated for the purpose of laying siege to Yorktown, including continentals, militia, the French previously stationed at Newport, and those newly landed by De Grasse, amounted to sixteen thousand men. That of Cornwallis did not exceed eight thousand. After detaching a force to hold in check the British at Gloucester Point, Washington entered vigorously upon the systematic prosecution of the siege. The first works were thrown up on the night of the 6th of October: three days afterwards, they were so far completed that heavy artillery was planted, and brought to bear, at a distance of but six hundred yards from the British line. A second parallel was commenced on the night of the 11th, at an intermediate distance between the first and the enemy's

position. The work could not be safely carried on, in consequence of a heavy fire from two advanced redoubts, which were, therefore, stormed, and connected with the second line of fortifications. This service was accomplished by two distinct detachments, one American, the other French—the efforts of either were thus stimulated by an ardent spirit of emulation.

The Americans, being well supplied with battering artillery, now opened so heavy a fire upon the British fortifications as to disable many of the guns, and effect breaches in the works. Yorktown was no longer tenable, and Cornwallis, on the evening of October 16th, endeavoured to escape by crossing to Gloucester Point. Failing in the attempt to transport his troops over the river, in consequence of a severe storm, he had no resource but a capitulation. Proposals to this effect were made on the day following, and the terms were speedily arranged. The whole British army, more than seven thousand men, became prisoners of war; the naval force surrendered to the French admiral.

This victory was the crowning event of the war. Although hostilities still lingered throughout the succeeding year, prior to the conclusion of negotiations for peace, they involved no extensive military operations. A partisan warfare still desolated some of the southern and western districts, and the frontier was, from time to time, harassed by incursions of the savages. The main French and continental armies went into winter-quarters in November. Greene, with the remains of the southern army, took a station in the neighbourhood of Charleston, to restrain foraging expeditions of the enemy.

The tone adopted by the British ministry at the winter session of parliament, 1781-2, gave no token of any probable concessions to the American demands. In the house of commons, after repeated failures, a motion passed, at the close of February, calling for the adoption of measures which should put an end to hostilities. A change in the cabinet, at this juncture, favoured the projects of the friends of peace. Negotiations were speedily opened with Adams, the American minister at Holland, and with Franklin, then in France, for a pacific arrangement. With these ministers were associated John Jay of New York, and Henry Laurens of South Carolina. Mr. Richard Oswald conducted the preliminary arrangements in behalf of Great Britain: Franklin and Jay, in the absence of the other commissioners, opened the negotiation at Paris in the month of April, 1782.

Jealousy of secret influence unfavourable to the interests of the United States, on the part of the French minister, induced the American commissioners to depart from their instructions requiring that he should take part in their negotiations, and a provisional treaty was signed, without his intervention, at the close of the following autumn. This great delay resulted from the difficulty of settling questions of boundary, of the privileges of fishery on the northern coast, and of the rights of tory refugees. In favour of the latter, the American commissioners would agree to nothing farther than a proposed recommendation from congress to the states, that confiscations should cease, that restitution should be made for former seizures, and certain personal privileges, as to right of residence, should be conceded. The former customs relative to the Newfoundland fisheries were substantially confirmed; and, respecting boundary, the states retained their former territory, extending westward to the Mississippi, and southward to latitude thirty-one—leaving Spain in possession of the wilderness at the west, and of the mouth of the great river. England retained the Canadas: toward the northwest the extent of the American claims remained still unascertained.

The treaty was not made definitive until September of the following year, its conclusion being contingent upon an establishment of peace between France and England, by virtue of the former treaty of alliance between France and the United States. At the first opening of pacific negotiation in April, ministers from all the belligerent nations of Europe had met for the purpose of concluding arrangements for a general peace. These were settled in the spring of 1783, and, upon the transmission of the intelligence to America, a formal proclamation was made by congress, of a termination of hostilities.

During the spring of 1782, an alarming disaffection exhibited itself among some portions of the continental army, arising from an anticipated failure in payment of their arrearages. This feeling extended to many of the officers, and, but for the firmness and wisdom of the commander-in-chief, might have led to lamentable results. The army was disbanded, by order of congress, in the month of November; and, within a few weeks, an evacuation of New York and its adjacent strongholds was completed by the British.

On Christmas day, in the following month, General Washington appeared before congress, in session at Annapolis, and tendered a resignation of his commission as commander-in-chief.

The war was now at an end; the United States, acknowledged independent by the nations of Europe, were free to adopt a form of government of their own choosing, untrammelled by the restrictions of ancient customs or the claims of hereditary right. But the position of the country, if no longer critical, was embarrassing in the extreme. The burden of an enormous debt, the poverty consequent upon the expenditure of little short of two hundred millions of dollars in carrying on the war, the failure of public credit, the existence of sectional jealousies, the great territorial extent of the country, the mixture of races—all combined to oppose obstacles to the establishment of a new and complicated scheme of government.

BISHOP SEABURY.—As soon as peace was restored, the clergy of Connecticut and those of New York held a private meeting in that city, and chose the Rev. Dr. Learning bishop of the diocese of Connecticut. Dr. Learning did not accept the place assigned him; and, on the 21st of April, 1783, a second vote resulted in the unanimous choice of Dr. Seabury. A letter was immediately addressed to the archbishop of York, reiterating the old request that an American bishop might be consecrated. "The person," say they, "whom we have prevailed upon to offer himself to your grace is the Rev. Dr. Samuel Seabury, who has been the society's worthy missionary for many years. He was born and educated in Connecticut; he is every way qualified for the episcopal office, and for the discharge of those duties peculiar to it in the present trying and dangerous times."

The archbishop of York raising objections, he repaired to Scotland, where, on the 14th of November, 1784, the ceremony took place at Aberdeen, under the direction of Robert Kilgour, bishop of Aberdeen, *Primus*, with the assistance of Arthur Petric, of Ross and Moray, and John Skinner, coadjutor of Bishop Kilgour. It was an occasion of the deepest interest, and called forth many warm congratulations and fervent prayers.

Thus, by the kindly aid of Scotland, after a struggle of so many years, the victory over English exclusiveness was won, and Connecticut, let us rather say the western world, had, at last, a bishop.

Hastening homeward, with a heart buoyant as the wave that flouted and the wind that wafted him, Bishop Seabury repaired immediately to New London, and, on the 3d of August, 1785, entered upon the discharge of his high and responsible duties. Nobly did this great and good man hew wide and deep the walls that were to stand around the diocese of Connecticut and Rhode Island. Brave without any ostentatious show of moral courage, modest without the least abatement of self-possession or firmness, with all the lofty zeal of a martyr tempered with the forbearance that is the fruit only of Christian charity; discreet in counsel, with a hand that never trembled in executing his ripe purposes; never advancing faster than he could fortify his progress, Bishop Seabury had no superior, probably no equal, among the episcopal dignitaries of his generation.—*Hollister's History of Connecticut.*

# THE UNITED STATES.

## CHAPTER I.

POSITION OF THE UNION AT THE CONCLUSION OF PEACE.—  
EXISTING DIFFICULTIES WITH GREAT BRITAIN.—WEAKNESS  
OF CONGRESS.—LOCAL DISTURBANCES: SHAY'S REBELLION.  
—CONVENTION FOR ENLARGING CONGRESSIONAL POWERS:  
OPPOSING INTERESTS OF THE STATES.—THE PRESENT  
CONSTITUTION: FEDERAL LEGISLATURE: POWERS OF  
CONGRESS: RESTRICTIONS: LIMIT OF STATE POW-  
ERS: THE EXECUTIVE: THE JUDICIARY: MU-  
TUAL GUARANTEES: AMENDMENTS.

For several years immediately following the establishment of American independence, the affairs of the country remained in confusion, from the incapacity of congress, under the old articles of confederation, to bind the states by its dealings with foreign powers. Restrictions upon commerce, which the congress had no power to mitigate by treaty, retarded the development of the national resources. The West India trade, so lucrative before the war, even under the old "sugar act," was now cut off. The mouth of the Mississippi was closed, by Spain, to all entrance or egress of American vessels, leaving the growing settlements of the west without the means for disposing of their produce.

Great Britain could hardly be expected to look with favour upon the confederation, and in defiance of the provisions of the treaty, she maintained possession of the strongholds on the western lakes. The reason given for this retention, was a non-compliance, on the part of the Union, with provisions securing to British subjects the right to recover debts contracted before the war. Many minor points of dispute also remained unsettled. With respect to the losses sustained by the loyalists, in consequence of confiscations, the recom-

mentation of congress had as little effect upon the action of the states in this as in most other particulars. A great number of these claims to indemnity were subsequently examined and partially satisfied by act of parliament.

The weakness of congress was made repeatedly the subject of earnest exhortation to the states and the people. Unless its powers could be enlarged, and a willingness be induced, on the part of the state., to abandon some portion of their sovereignty for the sake of greater centralization of power, there seemed but faint prospects of future prosperity. At the commencement of the year 1786, an effort was made to bring about a convention from the states, for the purpose of establishing a general commercial system, but the attempt fell through for want of full representation. Those members who attended, earnestly recommended a meeting of delegates from all the states, to alter and amend the articles of confederation, so as to define, confirm and enlarge the jurisdiction of the central government. This proposal received the sanction of congress in the month of February of the following year.

If the power of congress was fast becoming a nullity, since a change of circumstances had diminished the respect paid to its decrees and recommendations during the dangers of actual war, the state authorities experienced nearly equal difficulties in carrying on the necessary operations of government. The people were in a condition of great destitution and distress. Scarce able to procure the necessaries of life, they were continually called upon to provide funds for public purposes, and, as these were collected by direct taxation, the burden, if in reality no greater than that attached to imposts, was more severely felt by the individual. Nothing was more natural than that they should attribute their suffering and poverty to mal-administration of state affairs, nor that a popular cry should be raised for impolitic or impracticable schemes of amendment.

In the autumn of 1786, this feeling broke out into open rebellion in New Hampshire and Massachusetts. The most extensive and dangerous outbreak occurred in the latter state. One Daniel Shays, who had held office in the continental army, headed the movement, and, before any effective steps were taken to suppress it, collected an armed body of malcontents, about a thousand in number. The immediate object appeared to be the obstruction of the sessions of the courts. A greatly superior force of militia was called out, and put under command of General Lincoln. The rebellion was quelled



with very little bloodshed, and those concerned in it, in accordance with good policy, were treated with lenity.

The convention, for the purpose of remodelling the powers of congress, met at Philadelphia on the 14th of May, 1787. Delegates were present, or arrived soon after the opening of the assembly, from eleven states, Rhode Island and New Hampshire having alone neglected to make choice of members. The number commissioned by each state, was about the same as that of its representatives in congress. Washington was chosen president, on motion of Robert Morris—a distinguished financier, to whom the management of the monetary affairs of government had been principally entrusted for several years, during the period of greatest difficulties, before and subsequent to the close of the war.

Among the members of the convention, were many who had taken part in most of the great political movements from the commencement of the contest with England. Franklin, Rutledge, Sherman, Livingston, Gerry, and others of the early patriots, were present; the existing congress was largely represented; and the general character of those assembled, was marked by zeal, earnestness, and ability.

The proceedings were not made public for a period of more than thirty years. It was wisely concluded that harmony of feeling would be promoted by the promulgation of the results arrived at, unaccompanied by discussions in which the opposing interests of the different states were set forth and enlarged upon. It was found casier to prepare an entirely new constitution, than to alter and amend the old articles of confederation so as to meet the exigencies of the times. Various plans were framed and rejected, and it was not until the middle of September, that a scheme was completed which the convention was willing to send forth to the people for ratification.

The claims of the smaller states to equal representation with the larger, the commercial interests of the north as opposed to those of agriculture in the south, the apportionment of representatives, the modes of election, the character of the two proposed legislative bodies, the authority and duties of the executive, the general limitation of congressional powers, the formation of a judiciary department, and many minor details, gave rise to long, and, frequently, to excited debate. Prominent among the vexed questions of the day, were those growing out of a difference of opinion and interest with respect to the institution of slavery. Upon this topic, while some northern

members—especially Gouverneur Morris— inveighed against the system with extreme warmth, those from the southern states supported its interests with less heat, but greater determination.

The Constitution of the United States, as it at present exists, (with the exception of a few amendments, chiefly relative to the rights of persons, to the manner of choosing president and vice-president, and to the release of the separate states from liability to be sued in the federal courts by citizens of any other state or foreign nation,) was signed on the 17th of September, 1787, by thirty-eight members of the convention, representing twelve of the original states. New Hampshire had chosen delegates during the session; Rhode Island alone took no share in the proceedings.

By the provisions of this instrument, all legislation is committed to a senate and house of representatives. The first consists of two members from each state—their election to be made by the legislature. They are chosen for six years, but are so classified that one-third of the whole number are elected every second year. The second is composed of members chosen for two years, by the people, in proportion to the population, (originally one for every thirty thousand, with a provision securing to each state at least one representative,) in computing which, three-fifths of all slaves are included. The word slave is avoided by circumlocution. As an offset to this concession to the slave-holding states, direct taxes are decreed to be apportioned in the same manner.

Bills, in order to become laws, must pass both houses, and receive the signature of the president, or, in case of his refusal, must be reconsidered and approved by a two-thirds vote in each house. The house of representatives has the privilege of originating all revenue bills. Provisions are made, for an annual session on the first Monday in December, for the conduct of proceedings, trial of impeachments, rules relative to adjournment, discipline of members, supply of vacancies, census returns, and other details; after which the general powers of the federal legislature are enumerated substantially as follows:

Congress is empowered to levy uniform taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to regulate foreign commerce, and commerce between the states; to coin money, and provide punishments for counterfeiting; to establish a post-office system; to make regulations respecting copy-rights and patents; to create inferior federal courts, and pass laws for the punishment of offences on the high seas; to declare war,

and to raise and support armies and a navy; to provide for requisitions upon the militia in case of public necessity; to exercise jurisdiction over the district occupied as the seat of government; and, generally, to provide for the common welfare and defence.

Finally: "To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof."

Congress was restrained from prohibiting the importation of slaves prior to the year 1808. There exist, moreover, general restrictions forbidding the suspension of the privilege of *habeas corpus*, except in times of public danger, the passage of *ex post facto* laws, the imposition of export duties, the requisition of duties, clearances, or entries, in commerce between the states, the draught of public funds except to meet regular appropriations, and the grant of any title of nobility.

By section X., "No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility." The power to levy imposts is confined to provisions of absolute necessity for the execution of inspection laws. States are also prohibited from maintaining armed vessels or a standing army, and from engaging in hostilities, except in cases of invasion or imminent danger.

The executive power is vested in a president, who, together with a vice-president, is chosen for four years, by electors from all the states, equal in number to the entire representation in both houses of congress. These electors meet in their several states, and forward returns of their ballotings to the federal seat of government. The votes for president and vice-president are taken separately. If no candidate has a majority of all the electoral votes, in the case of president, the house of representatives, voting by states, elects to that office one of the three candidates who have received the greatest number of votes. On failure to elect a vice-president, the senate makes choice from the two highest numbers on the list.

The vice-president, *virtute officii*, is president of the senate, and upon the death or disability of the president, he succeeds to his duties and responsibilities. In case of further lapse, congress has power to declare upon what officer the presidency shall devolve.

The president is commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, including the militia, when in service of the Union. He may grant reprieves or pardons for offences against the laws of the United States. With the concurrence of two-thirds of the senate, he is empowered to make treaties; and all public ministers, judges of the supreme court, and other officials of the United States, whose appointment is not otherwise provided for, are chosen by the senate upon his nomination. He may fill vacancies in the senate, occurring during recess, for one term only. He is generally charged with the execution of the laws, the commission of officers, and the reception of foreign ambassadors.

The judicial power of the United States is vested in one supreme court, and in courts established by act of congress. The judges of both hold office during good behaviour. Their jurisdiction extends to all cases in law or equity arising under the constitution, or the laws of the United States, &c.; to cases affecting foreign ministers; to matters of admiralty; to cases where the United States is a party; to controversies between different states, between citizens of different states, or those claiming under grants of different states, and between citizens and foreign states, citizens or subjects. The original jurisdiction of the supreme court is confined to cases affecting foreign ministers, and cases where a state is a party.

A republican government is guaranteed to each state, and the United States is pledged to protect each of them against invasion and domestic violence. Each state is bound to give full faith to the public acts of the others, and to accord equal privileges with its own citizens to all citizens of the United States. Fugitives from justice are to be delivered up, on requisition of the executive of the state where the crime has been committed: those "held to service or labour in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another," shall be restored "on claim of the party to whom such service or labour may be due."

Amendments to the constitution are to be proposed by two-thirds of both houses of congress, or by a convention called on application of two-thirds of the states; to be ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, according to the decision of congress. In conclusion—the debts of the old confederation are assumed; the United States constitution and laws are declared supreme; and an oath to support the constitution is required of public officers, either in the service of the Union

or of individual states. The original establishment of the constitution was contingent upon its ratification by nine states, upon which event it was to be binding "upon the states so ratifying the same."

---

## CHAPTER II.

RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION BY THE STATES.—WASHINGTON ELECTED PRESIDENT.—THE FIRST CONGRESS: PROVISIONS FOR REVENUE: FORMATION OF A CABINET: POWER OF REMOVAL FROM OFFICE.—WASHINGTON'S TOUR THROUGH NEW ENGLAND.—SECOND SESSION OF CONGRESS: DEBATE RESPECTING THE PUBLIC DEBT: FOREIGN LIABILITIES: PUBLIC CERTIFICATES: ASSUMPTION OF STATE DEBTS: THE PUBLIC DEBT FUNDED: MISCELLANEOUS ENACTMENTS.—CONSTITUTION RATIFIED BY RHODE ISLAND.

THE new constitution, upon its reference by congress to conventions of the separate states, gave rise to great discussion and dispute. Two political parties were formed, taking issue upon the subject of its adoption; those in favour of the measure received the title of federalists. However great might be the disapproval of some of the details of the new system, by individual states, sections or parties, it was altogether outweighed by a perception of its general importance. This is sufficiently manifest from the circumstance that it received unconditional ratification in eleven states before the close of the following summer. North Carolina appended conditions to an acceptance; and Rhode Island, as she had taken no share in the constitutional convention, still continued recusant.

Upon a meeting of the presidential electors, George Washington was unanimously elected first president of the United States. In accordance with the original provisions of the constitution, the recipient of the next highest number of votes, John Adams, was elected to the office of vice-president.

Some delay occurring in the arrival of a quorum of members to the first congress (the city of New York being the place of session),

the president was not inaugurated until the 30th of April, 1789: the fourth of the month preceding had been appointed for this purpose. In the full flush of success and popularity, with all eyes turned upon him as the man whose firmness and political integrity fitted him no less for civil office than for military command, he felt great reluctance at entering upon this new sphere of duties.

Immediately upon organization of congress, the business of provision for the expenses of government, and for the payment or funding of the public debt, was opened. It was readily perceived that the most available method of raising revenue was by the imposition of customs upon importations. A tonnage duty upon foreign vessels was at the same time proposed and carried, not without great opposition from the purely agricultural states, who were jealous of a provision which would directly protect and encourage the interests of the commercial portion of the Union, at the same time producing, as they conceived, an injurious effect upon the price of freights. An attempt to draw a distinction between those European nations who had previously entered into commercial arrangements with the United States, and those who had refused so to do, by extending superior privileges to the commerce of the former, was approved in the house, but defeated in the senate.

The operations of government were next systematized by the regular organization of distinct departments for the management of the treasury, of state affairs, foreign and domestic, and of war; an arrangement analagous to the regular European cabinet system. The first incumbents of these offices were Alexander Hamilton, Thomas Jefferson, and General Henry Knox. John Jay, Franklin's former colleague in diplomacy at the French court, was chosen chief-justice. An important prerogative, upon a point in respect to which the constitution was silent, after much debate, was secured to the president. This consisted in the power to remove from office, without action of the senate, either of the heads of department, and other officials whose appointment was by presidential nomination.

Upon the adjournment of congress, towards the close of September, the president undertook an excursion through the New England states. It is said that when he first forsook the retirement of private life to enter upon the duties of his office, his "progress from his seat of Mount Vernon to Philadelphia was a triumphant procession, such as few conquerors have known." Throughout this northern tour the popular expression of admiration and gratitude was carried to an

extent still greater. This enthusiastic reception must have been the more grateful to Washington from the consciousness that it was simply a tribute to the acknowledged worth of his character and the value of his public services. He had never mingled with the people upon terms of familiarity: of a reserved and dignified demeanour, he had never courted popularity by any of the arts of a demagogue, nor was he gifted with that versatility which has enabled other great men to secure unbounded personal attachment by accommodating themselves to every class of people into whose society they might be thrown.

The second session of congress was held in the month of January, 1790. During the recess, North Carolina had ratified the federal constitution, and, in common with the other states, had ceded to the Union her claims upon a great extent of western territory.

The secretary of the treasury, Mr. Hamilton, on the opening of congress, made a written report upon the state of the public debt. Long and vehement discussions ensued, and the subject was from time to time postponed and resumed throughout a period of six months. Little opposition was made to provisions for the full payment of foreign debts, amounting to about twelve millions of dollars; but when the questions arose respecting the funding of the depreciated certificates of debt held against the federal government, and the assumption of liabilities incurred by the separate states in carrying on the war, a vast variety of opinion was found to exist.

A large party was opposed to the redemption of the public securities at a rate above their marketable value, being what the holders had, for the most part, paid for them, and which was now less than one-sixth of their nominal value. The principal expenses of the war had been defrayed by the issue of paper money to the amount of two hundred millions, or thereabout, and the subsequent redemption of the major portion of it, at the rate of forty for one. It was claimed that the speculators who now claimed by public certificates deserved no better terms than those who held the old continental currency, originally forced upon its holders by penal enactments.

The idea was also enlarged upon that the existence of a great funded debt would render the central government too powerful for the interests and sovereignty of the states, by making its support a matter of pecuniary interest to so large a portion of the population. The party styling itself republican, in opposition to the federalists, strongly maintained this ground of objection. The same argument

was urged against the assumption of state debts. This clause of the proposed financial arrangement was rejected upon the first trial in the house, but was afterwards carried, as we are led to believe, by a somewhat corrupt political bargain. The votes of two members were changed by a promised arrangement respecting the location of the future seat of government, which was fixed for ten years at Philadelphia, and thenceforth at some spot upon the Potomac—arrangements to be made by the president for a commission to decide upon the precise spot.

According to the bill, as formerly enacted, a loan was to be effected for the payment of the foreign debt in full; the domestic debt was to be funded by the receipt of subscriptions in certificates at their nominal value, and in old Continental bills at the rate of one hundred for one! Certificates for arrearages of interest were to be renewed by others bearing three per cent. interest; those for the principal being entitled to six per cent. The debts of the individual states were specifically assumed, to the amount of twenty-one millions five hundred thousand dollars; for which a loan was to be opened, receivable in state certificates for debts incurred to meet the expenses of the war, or directly issued for services during hostilities.

In pursuance of constitutional provisions, congress, at this session, passed laws regulating the naturalization of foreigners, the grant of patents and copy-rights, the duties and privileges of seamen, and the manner of trading and negotiating with the Indian tribes. Provisions were also made for establishing regular diplomatic intercourse with foreign nations. Various crimes against the United States were defined, and punishments affixed to their commission. A small standing army was organized, and specific appropriations were made to meet all necessary civil and military expenses of the current year.

In the month of May, Rhode Island had finally ratified the constitution, and representatives from that state took their seats in congress during the session.



## CHAPTER III.

INDIAN NEGOTIATIONS: THE CREEKS: THE NORTH-WESTERN TRIBES.—HARMAR'S UNSUCCESSFUL CAMPAIGN.—THIRD SESSION OF CONGRESS: THE EXCISE LAW: A NATIONAL BANK.—SETTLEMENT OF KENTUCKY: ITS ADMISSION TO THE UNION.—ADMISSION OF VERMONT.—SITE OF THE FEDERAL CAPITOL.—THE NORTH-WESTERN INDIANS: ST. CLAIR'S EXPEDITION: HIS DISASTROUS DEFEAT.—POLITICAL PARTIES.—THE CENSUS.

EARLY attempts were made, under authority of the federal government, to effect amicable arrangements with the great Indian tribes of the west and south, by which the continued disputes between them and the frontier settlers might be set at rest. Friendly relations were established with the Creeks; their principal chief, M'Gillivray, a half-breed, with several of his tribe, was escorted to New York, the temporary capital, for the purpose of concluding terms of treaty. The president held a personal conference with these wild warriors, who departed highly satisfied with presents, promised annuities, and guaranties of possession in their lands. The concessions accorded to the Indians by this arrangement gave great dissatisfaction to some of the inhabitants of Georgia.

With the north-western tribes no arrangements could be made. Stimulated by British agents, they claimed exclusive right to all their old territories north of the Ohio. They still retained former feelings of hostility, and cherished hopes of revenge for the destruction of their towns on the Miami, Old and New Chillicothe, Peccaway, Willis' Towns, &c., laid waste by an expedition under General Clarke nine years previous. In the autumn of 1790, more than a thousand men, under General Harmar, were dispatched upon an Indian campaign in the north-western territory. In every skirmish with the natives, the latter had the advantage from their superior knowledge of the country. They avoided any general engagement, but, by laying ambuscades for detached parties, succeeded in cutting off a large number of the whites. The expedition was signally unsuccessful.

At the third session of congress, in December, 1791, one of the

earliest subjects of debate was a proposition to increase the revenue by additional duties upon spirituous liquors, and by the establishment of an excise upon those of domestic manufacture. A bill for this purpose finally passed—not without very violent opposition. Another, and more important source of contention, was the institution of a national bank. This was strenuously opposed, both upon grounds of public policy, and the alleged defect of constitutional power in congress for the organization of such an establishment. The measure was carried, in spite of all opposition: a bank was chartered, with a capital of ten millions of dollars, one-fifth of which was to be subscribed for by the United States. Private stockholders had the privilege of paying three-fourths of their subscriptions in United States' stocks.

The only further proceedings of importance during the session, were the adoption of resolutions for an increase of the army, in anticipation of an Indian war, and the admission of two new states into the Union. The settlement of Kentucky had been commenced, not long before the breaking out of the revolutionary war, by the bold and enterprising pioneer, Daniel Boone, who, with a few associates, allured by the fertility and beauty of the country, had ventured to brave the dangers of an isolated position in the remote wilderness. Indian traders, in early times, reported of this country, that "No Indians dwelt there, but the various tribes made it their hunting-ground, and in their encounters, waged such fierce and desperate battles, that the whole region was known among them by the name of "The Dark and Bloody Ground."

Kentucky had increased so fast in population, that it was judged expedient, both by the inhabitants and by the legislature of Virginia, in the territory of which state it was included, that the former should be set off as a separate state. A convention, called for the consideration of the question, had fixed upon the 1st of June, 1792, as the period for the commencement of the new organization, contingent upon the action of congress. The assent of the latter was given, prospectively.

Between Vermont and New York, a contention of some standing had existed. The latter claimed jurisdiction over the former, as included within her own territory; Vermont resisted, and organized a separate government. An accommodation was effected at the time of which we are now speaking, and Vermont was admitted as a new state on the 18th of February (1791).

The president, in the course of the spring, made an excursion through some of the southern states, and, on his route, made selection—in accordance with provisions before mentioned—of a site for the federal capital. A city was laid out, for this purpose, upon a grand scale, and much speculative enterprise was displayed in the purchase of lands and erection of buildings. The increase of the city, and, consequently, of the value of property within its extensive limits, have fallen far short of the sanguine expectations of its founders. Great commercial facilities can alone be enjoyed in large cities in a new country.

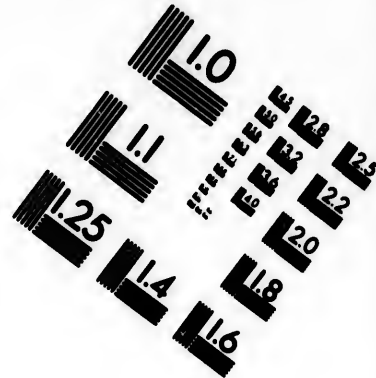
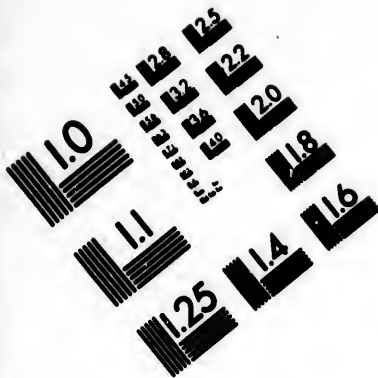
During the summer of this year, several attempts were made to check the depredations of the Indians on the Ohio, but nothing was accomplished further than the destruction of a few villages and corn-fields. Expeditions on so small a scale only served to irritate the savages, and to render the condition of the frontier more unsafe.

Upon the conclusion of peace with Great Britain, a considerable portion of the Iroquois retired into Canada, where lands were appropriated to their use on Grand river; those remaining within the limits of the United States, by solemn treaty, at Fort Stanwix, ceded their claims in eastern New York. The noted Seneca chief and orator, Red-Jacket, strenuously opposed this treaty, but was overruled by the influence of his superior in age and authority, O'Bail, or Corn-Planter. The Six Nations continued in communication with the western tribes, and were generally inimical to the American settlers.

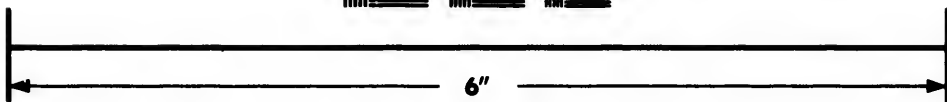
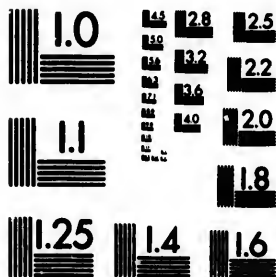
In the autumn of 1791, General Arthur St. Clair, with more than two thousand men, marched from Fort Washington, the site of the present city of Cincinnati, into the Indian territory. Having established and garrisoned two forts, on his route, he encamped fifteen miles from the Indian towns, on the Miami, on the 3d of November. The movements of the army had been slow, and the confederate tribes of the west—Hurons, Potawatomes, Ottawas, Chippewas, Miamies, Delawares, Shawanees, Iroquois, and others—under the guidance of Michikinaqua (Little Turtle), and, as is supposed, of Joseph Brant, had full opportunity to collect their warriors and form their plans for defence.

"Before the rising of the sun, on the following day (November 4th), the savages fell upon the camp of the whites. Never was a more decisive victory obtained. In vain did the American general and his officers exert themselves to maintain order, and to rally the





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18  
20  
22  
24  
26  
28

01  
02  
03  
04  
05  
06  
07  
08  
09  
10

bewildered troops. The Indians, firing from covert, thinned the ranks, and picked off the officers by a continuous and murderous discharge. A disorderly retreat was the result: artillery, baggage, and no small portion of the arms of the militia, fell into the hands of the exultant pursuers. Fort Jefferson was nearly thirty miles distant, and thither the defeated army directed its flight. The Indians followed close upon the fugitives, cutting down and destroying at will, until, as is reported, one of their chiefs called out to them 'to stop, as they had killed enough.'

"The temptation offered by the plunder to be obtained at the camp, induced the Indians to return, and the remnant of the invading army reached Fort Jefferson about sun-set. The loss, in this battle, on the part of the whites, was no less than eight hundred and ninety-four in killed, wounded, and missing. Thirty-eight officers and five hundred and ninety-three non-commissioned officers and privates were slain or missing. The Indians lost but few of their men—judging from a comparison of the different accounts, not much over fifty."\*

Upon the coming together of congress, in October of 1791, the condition of Indian affairs was brought before that body, and representations of the necessity for an increase in the army were urged. Party spirit, at this time, was growing more virulent; the republicans, at the head of whom stood Secretary Jefferson, eyed the movements of the federalists with great suspicion, continually discovering or imagining a tendency towards a monarchical system in all their plans and operations. Of Hamilton, secretary of the treasury, and leader of the federal party, an English writer observes: "Each step, indeed, which this minister took, seemed in the traces of British policy; and, however salutary or requisite they may have been, he certainly showed little caution in the manner of adopting, successively, the several parts of machinery belonging to a monarchical government."

A strong effort was made at this session, to increase the number of members in the house of representatives, by including in the computation of population the fractional remainder which existed in each state after a division by thirty thousand. The bill passed both houses, but, being sent back with objections, by the president, was reconsidered and lost. The census returns of the first enumeration of the population, exhibited a total of 3,921,326, of which nearly seven hundred thousand were slaves.

\* Indian Races of America.

thinned the  
d murderous  
ery, baggage,  
to the hands of  
rty miles dis-  
The Indians  
destroying at  
ut to them 'to

obtained at the  
f the invading  
in this battle,  
ed and ninety-  
fficers and five  
d privates were  
men—judging  
a over fifty."\*  
er of 1791, the  
ody, and repre-  
ny were urged  
he republicans,  
the movements  
discovering or  
n in all their  
e treasury, and  
s: "Each step,  
aces of British  
have been, he  
opting, success-  
a monarchical

se the number  
cluding in the  
hich existed in  
bill passed both  
president, was  
st enumeration  
f which nearly





have seized troops. The Indians, rising from covert, seized the ranks and picked off the officers by a continuous and murderous discharge. A general retreat was the result; artillery, baggage, and the arms of the militia, fell into the hands of the savages. Fort Jefferson was nearly thirty miles distant, and the defeated army directed its flight. The Indians followed upon the fugitives, cutting down and destroying at will, until, as is reported, one of their chiefs called out to them 'to stop, as they had killed enough.'

"The temptation offered by the plunder to be obtained at the camp, induced the Indians to return, and the remnant of the invading army reached Fort Jefferson about sun-set. The loss, in this battle, on the part of the whites, was no less than eight hundred and ninety-four in killed, wounded, and missing. Thirty-eight officers and five hundred and ninety-three non-commissioned officers and privates were slain or missing. The Indians lost but few of their men—judging from a comparison of the different accounts, not much over fifty.\*"

Upon the coming together of congress, in October of 1791, the condition of Indian affairs was brought before that body, and representations of the necessity for an increase in the army were urged. Party spirit, at this time, was growing more virulent; the republicans, at the head of whom stood Secretary Jefferson, eyed the movements of the federalists with great suspicion, continually discovering or imagining a tendency towards a monarchical system in all their plans and operations. C. Hamilton, secretary of the treasury, and leader of the federal party, an English writer observes: "Each step, indeed, which this minister took, seemed in the traces of British policy; and, however salutary or requisite they may have been, he certainly showed little caution in the manner of adopting, successively, the several parts of machinery belonging to a monarchical government."

A strong effort was made at the session, to increase the number of members in the house of representatives, by including in the computation of population the fractional remainder which existed in each state after a division by thirty thousand. The bill passed both houses, but, being sent back with objections, by the president, was reconsidered and lost. The census returns of the first enumeration of the population, exhibited a total of 3,921,326, of which nearly seven hundred thousand were slaves.

\* Indian Races of America.

obtained the  
and plunderous  
ry, baggage.  
the hands of  
erty under dis-  
The Indians  
destroying at  
at to them 'to

obtained at the  
of the invading  
in this battle,  
ed and ninety-  
officers and five  
d privates were  
men—judging  
h over fifty.”  
ber of 1791, the  
body, and repte-  
my were urged  
the republicans,  
the movements  
discovering or  
em in all their  
he treasury, and  
res: “Each step,  
traces of British  
y have been, he  
adopting, success-  
o a monarchical

ease the number  
including in the  
which existed in  
e bill passed both  
e president, was  
first enumeration  
of which nearly



GENERAL JACKSON

A  
' men  
of op  
office  
and  
great  
not s  
repub  
is said  
break  
he ha  
resign  
he ha  
had re  
yet th  
In  
repub  
larger  
leading  
preside  
depart  
At t  
trovers  
excited  
a matte

## CHAPTER IV.

WASHINGTON'S SECOND TERM: HIS DISINCLINATION TO OFFICE  
—THE FRENCH REVOLUTION: ITS POLITICAL INFLUENCE  
IN THE UNITED STATES.—ARRIVAL OF GENET, AS MIN-  
ISTER OF THE FRENCH REPUBLIC: HIS PROCEEDINGS AT  
CHARLESTON.—NEUTRAL POSITION OF THE UNITED  
STATES.—COMMERCIAL RESTRICTIONS BY FRANCE  
AND ENGLAND.—IMPRESSMENT OF AMERICAN  
SEAMEN.—RETIREMENT OF JEFFERSON.—  
ALGERINE DEPRIDATIONS.

At the election of president and vice-president, for the term commencing in March, 1793, Washington was reelected without a shadow of opposition. He felt great disinclination to continue longer in office, and only consented to comply with the wishes of the electors and the people, for the purpose of calming the turbulence of the great political parties. His high character and popularity could not shield him entirely from the animadversions of those of the republican party who suspected him of aristocratic predilections. It is said that, on one occasion, subsequent to his reelection, in an outbreak of feeling, excited by some personal attack, he declared, "that he had never repented but once the having slipped the moment of resigning his office, and that was every moment since; that by God he had rather be in his grave than in his present situation; that he had rather be on his farm than be made emperor of the world; and yet that they were charging him with wanting to be a king."

In opposition to Adams, the candidate for vice-president, the republicans set up George Clinton: the federalists obtained the larger vote. This defeat aggravated the rancour of some of the leading liberals, and it was with difficulty that the influence of the president could calm unseemly strife between the opposing heads of departments.

At this period, a new and important element in the political controversy of America, arose from a difference in feeling and sympathy excited by the stormy events of the French revolution. It became a matter of deep interest to inquire how far the United States should

allow themselves to be implicated in the general agitation which threatened Europe. One of the first questions to be decided was, what force did a treaty, concluded with the king of France, possess upon the overthrow of his government, and under the rule of the republic. Popular enthusiasm was strongly aroused in favour of the revolution, a feeling not to be effectually damped by intelligence of the blood-thirsty fanaticism which was exhibited by too many of its supporters.

The arrival at Charleston (in the month of April, 1793) of Genet, the first ambassador commissioned by the republic to negotiate with the United States, rendered some decisive action imperative. After consultation with the cabinet, in which views diametrically opposite were entertained by the leaders of the opposite parties, the president issued a proclamation of neutrality, expressly forbidding citizens of the United States to fit out vessels for the purpose of lending aid to either of the belligerent nations, or in any other manner to take share in hostilities so long as this neutral position should be maintained.

The French minister was enthusiastically received at Charleston, where he spent some time in the preparation of two cruisers, to the commanders of which he filled out commissions, under authority of the republic, to prey upon British commerce. After this high-handed proceeding, Genet travelled by land to Philadelphia, welcomed at every town, on his passage, by the most flattering exhibition of popular feeling. His conduct at Charleston, after a cabinet consultation, was declared illegal by government; the service of American citizens, under French commissions, was pronounced a public offence; and restitution was ordered of prizes taken in American waters.

So far was the French minister encouraged by the sympathy of the powerful republican party, that, in many instances, he set at nought the claims and decisions distinctly made by the American government. His reception by the president was courteous, but the avowed neutrality of the United States was carefully guarded in all diplomatic intercourse. Disinclination to break with an old and powerful ally, the force of national antipathies and predilections, and the influence of the popular feeling, checked that exertion of executive power which the occasion seemed to require. Privateers were fitted out at various ports in the United States; numerous prizes were brought in openly, and condemned by the decisions of the

French consuls, acting under powers granted by Genet, on behalf of his own government.

In one case, a British vessel, the *Little Sarah*, seized by the French frigate in which Genet had first come over from France, was fitted out as a privateer at Philadelphia, and, after being rechristened, the *Little Democrat*, proceeded to sea, notwithstanding a promise, virtual or expressed, on the part of that minister, that she should remain until the claims of those interested in the vessel could be adjusted.

The government moderately, but firmly, persisted in maintaining a neutral position, and in respecting the rights of Great Britain. Toward the close of the summer, guaranty of indemnity was formally announced for all losses by British owners from previous illegal seizures within the waters of the United States, the distance thenceforth protected being fixed at one league from shore, and including, of course, all bays and harbours within the federal jurisdiction. The French government, at the same time, was required to give up all prizes already illegally taken, and a direct requisition was made for a recall of the arrogant Genet.

The violence and insolence of this official had greatly diminished the popular favour which greeted him on his first arrival. The wiser and more far-sighted politicians looked upon him as a dangerous man; his course of conduct tended to involve the states in unnecessary difficulties with England; and he was, undoubtedly, engaged in machinations for the organization of expeditions against the Spanish possessions in Louisiana and Florida. Any movement towards the effecting of a free exit from the Mississippi met with great favour from the settlers on the western waters.

To add to other difficulties in maintaining a position of neutrality, the commerce of the states began to suffer severely from the effect of regulations instituted both by France and England respecting the rights of neutrals to carry on trade with the enemy. By the law of nations, supplies destined for a blockaded port may be liable to seizure; but the declaration that all the ports of an enemy are in a state of blockade, affords but a shallow excuse for the plunder of a neutral nation. Against Great Britain another cause of complaint existed, if of less political importance than this interference with trade, yet of a nature to excite far greater bitterness of private animosity. This was the continual impressment of British seamen, serving on board of American vessels, and—either through error or

pretended mistake—the seizure of Americans, by the same arbitrary and summary powers. It is fully established that many citizens of the states were subjected to this indignity and outrage.

Shortly after the coming together of congress in December, 1793, Jefferson retired from office, and was succeeded as secretary of state by Randolph, former attorney-general. A report upon the commercial relations of the United States, carefully prepared by the retiring secretary, and exhibiting his political views respecting the policy to be pursued towards France and England, was submitted to the consideration of congress. This document urged a discrimination in favour of France, and met with the more favourable reception in consideration of both real and fancied aggressions on the part of England. Among other grounds of dissatisfaction the continuance of Indian disturbances at the north-west was prominent, these being attributed to the influence of British emissaries, encouraged by the Canadian governors.

The first important action of congress related to the means to be adopted for opposing a check upon the depredations of piratical cruisers from Algiers and other portions of the Barbary states, by which the navigation of the Mediterranean was rendered unsafe, and for the release of prisoners taken by the pirates, and still held in captivity. A considerable sum of money was appropriated for the purpose of purchasing terms of treaty, while, at the same time, in anticipation of a failure in this attempt, congress ordered the preparation of a naval armament adequate to enforce the claims of the United States.

the  
vel  
the  
the  
tow  
bilit  
seri  
S  
argu  
at g  
of d  
comm  
State  
to ot  
at th  
restr  
ain, N  
which  
indee  
Britai  
repea  
chief  
ing, to  
In all  
the ric  
the en

## CHAPTER V.

AMERICAN POLITICS.—DEBATE IN CONGRESS UPON FOREIGN RELATIONS.—FURTHER AGGRESSIONS OF ENGLAND.—COMMISSION OF JAY AS AMBASSADOR EXTRAORDINARY TO GREAT BRITAIN.—RELIEF OF IMMIGRANTS FROM ST. DOMINGO.—THE NEUTRALITY LAWS.—RESISTANCE TO THE EXCISE: REBELLION IN WESTERN PENNSYLVANIA: ITS FORCIBLE SUPPRESSION: OPINIONS OF THE REPUBLICAN PARTY.

THE introduction, by Mr. Madison, of resolutions in support of the views entertained in Jefferson's report, gave rise to lengthy and vehement discussion. The two great parties had taken issue upon the subject of the policy to be pursued towards France and England: the sympathy of the democratic republicans was exclusively extended towards the former nation, while the federalists, questioning the stability and good faith of the new republic, were anxious to avoid serious collision with the government of Great Britain.

Smith, of South Carolina, took the lead of the opposition, and argued at length upon the futility as well as injustice of any attempt at governing the foreign policy of England by a discriminating scale of duties and tonnage. The resolutions, by virtue of which the commerce of nations under no commercial treaty with the United States was to be subjected to restrictions or burdens not extended to others, passed by a small majority. They were avowedly aimed at the trade with England. "Of the efficacy of these commercial restrictions," says Mr. Hildreth, "as a means of coercing Great Britain, Madison and his party entertained very extravagant ideas, of which they had afterward ample opportunity to be cured. What, indeed, could be more extravagant than the statement that Great Britain imported necessaries from us, and we only luxuries from her, repeated over and over again by the representatives of a state whose chief export was tobacco, and whose imports were principally clothing, tools, and other manufactured articles of daily use and necessity? In all these commercial struggles, nothing is more certain than that the richest party can endure the longest, and is sure to triumph in the end."



The measures adopted against Great Britain were rendered still more popular upon the arrival of intelligence that orders had been issued by the admiralty in November previous, by which neutral trade with French colonies was as arbitrarily dealt with as that with France direct. It was also reported that the British governor of Lower Canada, Lord Dorchester, at an Indian council, had delivered an address breathing a hostile spirit towards the United States.

The anticipated danger was met by appropriations—on rather a small scale, considering the supposed necessities of the case—for fortifying various sea-ports, and for organization and training of the militia. A temporary embargo was also decided upon. So strong was the hostile feeling, that a motion was made, and warmly urged, for the sequestration of debts due to British creditors, for the purpose of applying them to indemnify those who had sustained losses by seizure of property under the obnoxious laws restraining neutral trade. It was also proposed that all trade with Great Britain should cease until reparation should be made for these illegal seizures, and until an evacuation of the western military posts should be ordered.

The English ministry, on the other hand, seemed to incline to pacific and conciliatory measures, being "too fully and deeply occupied with treasons at home, and the menace of invasion from abroad, to answer this waspishness of America in a similar tone. On the contrary, the last obnoxious order of the admiralty was recalled, and the federal party were able to rally, and entertain hopes of avoiding a rupture."

Washington was anxious to preserve peaceable relations with Great Britain, and, foreseeing the possible results of heated and angry debate in congress, with the recurrence of successive hostile enactments passed upon the spur of the occasion, and insufficiently digested, he fixed upon a plan to set the matter temporarily at rest. In the month of April, 1794, he proposed to the senate the appointment of a minister extraordinary, empowered to negotiate for the settlement of all existing difficulties with England, and nominated, for this mission, Chief-Justice Jay. The nomination was confirmed, by a very close vote.

These were times of great political excitement. Every arrival from Europe brought news replete with interest, and having a bearing upon American politics more direct than we can well appreciate at the present time. The more violent of the republican party imitated the French organization of political clubs, and in the midst

of the "Reign of Terror," were so far blinded by party zeal as to rejoice over intelligence of proceedings which, if brought nearer home, would have excited unmingled horror and disgust. Others, more moderate, yet with equal sympathy for a nation involved like our own, in a strife between the people and their hereditary tyrants, lamented over the violence which by reaction must eventually prejudice the cause of liberty and of equal rights.

In anticipation of conquest by the English, the French officials at St. Domingo had issued a proclamation by which the slaves on that island were set free. The country became generally unsafe for whites, and many, abandoning all their effects, sailed for the United States. A bill introduced for the relief of these unfortunate immigrants called forth much argument upon the constitutional limits of the power of congress. No authority can be discovered in the constitution for any appropriation for mere purposes of charity, except by a forced implication under the general provisions for foreign intercourse. The measure was, notwithstanding, carried, by virtue of its popularity, and has formed a precedent acted upon at a much later period, upon the occasion of the famine in Ireland. Fifteen thousand dollars were appropriated for the relief of the French immigrants.

Another act, passed at this session, of great present interest, was called forth by the continued efforts of French agents to organize expeditions against the Spanish possessions of Louisiana. The anxiety of the western settlers to obtain possession of the Mississippi rendered it an easy matter to collect adventurers upon such an enterprise, if winked at by government. A bill to restrain American citizens from engaging in hostilities with friendly nations passed both houses early in June. A fine of one thousand dollars and three years' imprisonment were made the penalty for entrance into foreign military service by any persons within the jurisdiction of the United States. This provision was specially aimed at those who should unlawfully enlist recruits; the penalty awarded against those whom they had seduced from allegiance being remitted upon conviction of the former, consequent on their information.

The equipment of vessels, and the organization of expeditions within the United States, for the purpose of carrying on hostilities against any country at peace with the confederation, subjected the offender to a still heavier fine, with the same term of imprisonment. To secure promptitude in the suppression of such unlawful enter-

prise, the president was expressly authorized to exert his powers as commander-in-chief of the military forces of the United States, and in case of necessity to call out the militia.

A serious civil disturbance took place in western Pennsylvania during the summer. The law imposing excise duties on spirituous liquors of domestic manufacture had been, from the first, particularly obnoxious in this section of the country, the difficulty of getting grain to market rendering its consumption for purposes of distillation a matter of great convenience and profit. Process being issued against certain distillers who had neglected to conform to the provisions of the act, the civil officials were resisted, and the rioters, adopting an offensive attitude, assailed the house of the inspector.

The spirit of insurrection rapidly spread throughout the western counties, and the people, inflamed by the speeches and influence of demagogues, set the laws at defiance, maltreated its officers, and held public meetings for organizing a regular system of resistance. The mails were intercepted to cut off communication with the seat of government, and the friends of order and obedience to the laws were completely overawed in all the disaffected districts.

The leaders of this insurrection became the more insolent and exacting from the mild measures at first resorted to for allaying the tumult, and the president found it necessary to exert his constitutional powers for the support of the laws. A requisition was made for fifteen thousand militia, from Pennsylvania and the adjoining states: an overpowering force was marched into the western counties, and every symptom of rebellion speedily disappeared. Those who had taken the most active part in the outbreak made their escape: many arrests were made, but great leniency was exhibited towards the few found guilty upon trial.

It was the opinion of the republican party in general, that this demonstration was uncalled for by the exigency of the circumstances. Jefferson, in a letter, says of the doings of the rebels: "We know of none which, according to the definitions of the law, have been any thing more than riotous. \* \* The information of our militia returned from the westward is uniform, that, though the people there let them pass quietly, they were objects of their laughter, not of their fear; that one thousand men could have cut off their whole force in a thousand places of the Alleghany; that their detestation of the excise law is universal, and has now associated to it a detestation of

the government; and that separation, which, perhaps, was a very distant and problematical event, is now near, and certain, and determined in the mind of every man."

---

## CHAPTER VI.

GENERAL WAYNE'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE NORTH-WESTERN INDIANS.—DEFEAT OF THE CONFEDERATE TRIBES AT THE MIAMI RAPIDS.—NATURALIZATION LAWS.—THE DEMOCRATIC CLUBS.—HAMILTON'S RESIGNATION.—THE BRITISH TREATY: ITS RATIFICATION: POPULAR INDIGNATION.—RANDOLPH'S RESIGNATION

The north-western Indians, unmolested by any important military expedition since their signal victory over St. Clair, had grown continually more insolent and exacting in their demands. The progress of western settlements was impeded by savage inroads: the natives considered all white emigrants from the east as encroachers, and, rendered confident by late successes, seemed rather to court hostilities. It finally became essential to oppose a forcible check to their ravages. To guard against the possibility of a second defeat, the campaign of 1794 was preceded by the fortification of military posts at Greenville, on the Miami, and at the spot rendered memorable by St. Clair's defeat. The latter was named Fort Recovery.

The preceding winter and spring were occupied in these works, and in the collection of an army, the command of which was bestowed upon General Wayne. On the 30th of June, 1794, the strength of the position at Fort Recovery was tested by a fierce attack on the part of the Indians, assisted by a number of whites—English or Canadians. The place was successfully defended, although not without heavy loss.

In the month of August active operations were commenced. "When the army was once put in motion, important and decisive events rapidly succeeded. The march was directed into the heart of the Indian settlements on the Miami, now called Maumee, a river emptying into the western extremity of Lake Erie. Where the beautiful stream Au Glaize empties into the river, a fort was im-

diately erected, and named Fort Defiance. From this post General Wayne sent emissaries to invite the hostile nations to negotiation, but the pride and rancour of the Indians prevented any favourable results. Little Turtle, indeed, seemed to forebode the impending storm, and advised the acceptance of the terms offered. 'The Americans,' said he, 'are now led by a chief who never sleeps: the night and the day are alike to him. \* \* Think well of it. There is something whispers me it would be prudent to listen to his offers of peace.'\* Wayne was commonly called by the Indians the "Black Snake:" another *soubriquet*, bestowed upon him by his own followers, was that of "Mad Anthony."

The American camp was posted in the midst of such extensive and highly cultivated fields of corn as excited the admiration and astonishment of the invaders. The country "presented for miles the appearance of a single village, and rich corn-fields spread on either side." The Indians had retreated down the river from their settlement, upon the advance of the army, and had taken up a position in the immediate vicinity of a British fort, near the Miami rapids. This was one of those posts retained by Great Britain in defiance of former treaties, and constituted, as was generally believed, a *dépôt* where the Indians could procure arms and counsel, if not direct assistance.

General Wayne attacked the enemy in their position, on the 20th of August. The Indians fought bravely: skilled in the use of fire-arms, and somewhat familiar with the tactics of modern warfare, they were far different opponents from what they had been in earlier times. Their array, however, was broken by a charge of bayonets, and an entire rout ensued. The powerful confederacy was, for the time, annihilated; and the Americans, retracing their steps, spent some time in laying waste the fields and settlements of the wretched savages. Garrisons were posted at the forts within the Indian districts, and the army retired to Greenville for winter-quarters.

The more important proceedings of congress, at the winter session of 1794-5, related to the naturalization laws—which were established as at present, requiring five years' residence in the United States, a declaration of intention three years previous to the final application, and one year's residence in the state where the petition is granted;—and the establishment of a system for the appropriation of surplus revenue for the reduction of the national debt.

\* Indian Races of America.

A lengthy and excited debate arose early in the session, upon the question as to what action should be taken in reply to certain remarks in a message of the president, relative to the democratic clubs. In adverting to the circumstances attendant upon the excise tumults, Washington alluded to these associations, as "self-created societies," whose influence had been perniciously extended in opposition to the power and authority of government. The senate concurred in this denunciation; the house of representatives compromised the matter in dispute by a general resolution, condemning the action of individuals or societies, which should have resulted in misrepresentations of the proceedings of government, or have countenanced resistance to lawful authority.

It was at this session that Alexander Hamilton resigned his office as secretary of the treasury, and General Knox that of secretary of war. Oliver Wolcott, an officer connected with the treasury department, succeeded the former; the place of the latter was occupied by Timothy Pickering, former post-master general. It is said that the principal motive for retirement, on the part of both these distinguished officials, was pecuniary necessity, the pay awarded for their public services being grossly inadequate.

A special session of the senate was called early in June, 1795, to deliberate upon a treaty recently arranged between Jay, the American ambassador extraordinary, and the British minister, Lord Grenville. Great Britain, it was found, would consent to few concessions; the most objectionable of her claims were still insisted upon, or left open; and the commercial privileges yielded to America were generally accompanied by onerous restrictions or conditions. She agreed to give up possession of the western posts upon security for payment of debts due to British subjects before the revolution. A reciprocal agreement provided for indemnity in all cases of illegal seizures.

With respect to freedom of commerce, the right to trade with the British West Indies was restricted to vessels not exceeding seventy tons measurement, a privilege counterbalanced by a prohibition of any exportation of articles similar to those produced in those colonies, from America to Europe. A wide discretion was still claimed respecting the right to seize supplies destined for any country with which England should be engaged in hostilities. Such articles as were not clearly "contraband of war," were, it is true, to be paid for if seized. No indemnity could be procured for those who had suffered loss from the abduction of slaves by the British during the

war; and the right to impress subjects of the king, if found on board American vessels, was insisted upon, and remained undecided. Goods belonging to an enemy were still claimed by England to be liable to seizure on board the vessels of a neutral.

The treaty was approved by a two-thirds vote of the senate, (objection being taken to the article relating to the West India trade, upon which action was suspended,) and received the ratification of the president on the 14th day of August, notwithstanding a storm of popular indignation, which had broken out upon its publication. The terms agreed upon fell so far short of the expectations or wishes of the people, that meetings were every where held, and violent denunciatory resolutions passed. A memorial accompanied the ratification, protesting against the claim, enforced by recent orders of admiralty, respecting the indiscriminate seizure of provisions which might be destined for the relief of an enemy.

At this time, certain private communications between Mr. Edmund Randolph, the secretary of state, and Fauchet, the successor of Genet as ambassador from France, having come to the knowledge of the British government by an intercepted dispatch, had been made known to the president. The tendency of these disclosures was to reflect upon the secretary an imputation of double-dealing, and of some unwarrantable propositions. He accordingly resigned his office, at the same time entering into an elaborate defence of his conduct, and indignantly denying the validity of conclusions adopted by his political opponents. A discussion of the merits of the case is entirely beyond our limits, and it may, indeed, be doubted whether we have means for arriving at a determinate opinion respecting the affair.

T  
pow  
Briti  
a wi  
about  
Gene.  
nite a  
ries, d  
in the  
Bel  
also n  
ernme  
States  
in ord  
Algeri  
tivity,  
arrang  
of Flor  
out the  
Thes  
preside  
brough  
for the  
made,  
affairs,  
treaty c

## CHAPTER VII.

INDIAN TREATY AT FORT GREENVILLE.—TREATIES WITH ALGIERS AND SPAIN: THE MISSISSIPPI OPENED TO AMERICAN TRADE.—DEBATE IN CONGRESS UPON JAY'S BRITISH TREATY.—TENNESSEE ADMITTED INTO THE UNION.  
 —FRENCH PROCEEDINGS IN RESPECT TO THE TREATY.—AMERICAN MINISTERS TO FRANCE.  
 —WASHINGTON'S RETIREMENT FROM OFFICE: SLANDERS UPON HIS CHARACTER.  
 —JOHN ADAMS ELECTED PRESIDENT.

THE Indians of the north-west, finally convinced of the superior power of the United States, and learning that their old allies, the British, were about to evacuate the western military posts, expressed a willingness to treat pacifically. A great meeting was brought about at Fort Greenville at the beginning of August, 1795, at which General Wayne, on behalf of the United States, entered into a definite agreement with the principal chiefs respecting future boundaries, &c. The Indians gave up all claim to an immense tract included in the present state of Ohio, together with other lands farther west.

Before the next session of congress very important treaties were also negotiated with the Dey of Algiers, and with the Spanish government. In common with several European nations, the United States submitted to the disgraceful imposition of a heavy tribute, in order to secure safety for her commerce from the attacks of the Algerine corsairs, and for the release of prisoners still held in captivity, victims of former piracies. With Spain more honourable arrangements were established. The boundaries of her provinces of Florida and Louisiana were assigned, and free navigation throughout the Mississippi was secured to the citizens of the United States.

These several treaties having been ratified by the senate and president, together with that concluded with Great Britain, were brought before the house of representatives, at its winter session, for the purpose of such action being taken, and such appropriations made, as should give them full effect. Those relating to Indian affairs, Algiers, and Spain, were readily disposed of: the English treaty called forth all the fury of the opposition. A previous refusal



by the president, on grounds of public policy, upon a call from the house, to lay before that body the diplomatic correspondence, &c., relative to this treaty, had a tendency to aggravate party violence.

The question was debated from April 15th, 1796, until the close of the month. The whole effect of treaties; whether they became binding when ratified, or whether concurrence of the house by necessary appropriations was requisite before the national faith could be considered pledged; and an application of general principles to this particular treaty, formed abundant theme for argument and declamation. A compromise was finally effected, by a passage of the appropriations, as being a matter of present expediency, without any decision of the general position in dispute.

On the 1st of June, just at the close of the session, the state of Tennessee was admitted into the Union. The population of that territory already amounted to about eighty thousand, including negroes.

The conclusion of Jay's British treaty excited great dissatisfaction in France. The Directory, indignant that America should have yielded to the British claims respecting the seizure of French property on board neutral vessels, declared that France was no longer bound by the stipulations of her former treaty with the United States, and, on the 2d of July, 1796, an order was promulgated, "authorizing the ships-of-war of the republic to treat neutral vessels in the same manner in which they suffered themselves to be treated by the English."

Great numbers of American vessels were seized and confiscated under this decree. Mr. Monroe, minister to France, at this period was a member of the republican party, and, as such, warmly favoured the interests of that nation. He had met with an enthusiastic reception, and, through him, a formal exchange of flags had been effected between France and the United States, as a token of mutual respect and amity. With the intention of adopting a stronger tone towards the government of the republic, Washington appointed Charles C. Pinckney of South Carolina, in place of Monroe. The new envoy sailed for France in September.

As the period of his second term of office approached, President Washington, in a farewell address, announced his determination to retire from public life. This valedictory was issued in the month of September, 1796. Throughout his administration his conduct had been marked by firmness and integrity; but his leaning towards the principles of the federalists was an unpardonable sin in the

opti  
bee  
per  
and  
The  
circ  
forg  
of th  
Ti  
ical  
to bl  
in pu  
and  
states  
At  
forwa  
Jeffers  
ceived  
of whi  
ration  
to his  
of his

TREATY  
HOSTI  
FUSA  
MIN  
EX  
T

THE  
plexing  
Soon  
setting f

opinion of too many of the opposition. Every species of abuse had been heaped upon him by ranters in the republican party; ambitious personal views, disregard for popular rights, a tyrannical disposition, and even peculations upon the public funds, were attributed to him. The grossest misrepresentations reflecting upon his character were circulated; his enemies did not even scruple at the publication of forged letters for the purpose of alienating the affection and respect of the people from their former idol.

Time has exposed these falsehoods, and the vituperation of political opponents is forgotten. The acrimony of party zeal has ceased to blind men's minds to the true character of Washington; no man in public life has left behind him a more unblemished reputation, and few have attained equal eminence as a commander and a statesman.

At the second presidential election, the great political parties put forward, as their respective candidates, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. Seventy votes were necessary to a choice; Adams received seventy-one, and the republican candidate sixty-nine by virtue of which he entered upon the office of vice-president. The inauguration took place in the 9th of March, 1797. Washington retired to his estate at Mount Vernon, where he passed the remainder of his life.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

TREATMENT OF UNITED STATES' AMBASSADORS IN FRANCE.—  
 HOSTILE PREPARATIONS IN AMERICA.—NEW EMBASSY: RE-  
 FUSAL OF THE DIRECTORY TO RECEIVE THE AMERICAN  
 MINISTERS.—NEGOTIATIONS WITH TALLEYRAND.—  
 EXTRAVAGANT DEMANDS AND INJURIOUS DECREES OF  
 THE DIRECTORY.—RETURN OF THE AMBASSADORS.—  
 ACTION OF CONGRESS: MILITARY PREPARATIONS:  
 . ALIEN AND SEDITION LAWS. LAND-TAX, ETC.

THE administration of Mr. Adams opened with serious and perplexing difficulties connected with our relations towards France. Soon after the inauguration, dispatches arrived from Pinckney, setting forth the injurious reception that he had met with on the

part of the Directory. Monroe, upon presentation of his own letters of recall, and those relative to the new appointment, was notified that France would receive no other ambassador from the United States until redress should be made for the grievances before complained of as connected with the British treaty.

The retiring minister, at his last audience, was dismissed by the president, Barras, in a speech as flattering to him as insulting to his country. Pinckney could not even obtain a necessary protection for continuing in the country until further orders from home. He was compelled to leave France, and proceeded, accordingly, to Holland.

The late astonishing successes which had attended her arms upon the continent, caused the existing government of France to undervalue the importance of preserving friendly relations with the American republic; and the tone adopted by the Directory was of a character calculated to strengthen the federal party in the states. New and offensive decrees relative to American commerce speedily followed.

President Adams, in a forcible address to congress, set forth the conduct of the French government, as opposed to all rules of national courtesy and right: he recommended the formation of a naval force, with other measures for defence of the commerce of the country, and inveighed against the interference of France with the internal politics of the United States, exhibited in various endeavours to influence the elections, and alienate the people from the government. After long debate in the house, appropriations were made, and loans authorized for the purpose of carrying out the views of the president, and arrangements were made for a draught of militia from the several states in case of emergency.

A new embassy was commissioned, consisting of three persons—Pinckney, Marshall, and Gerry—to make a further attempt at the opening of pacific negotiations. The envoys proceeded to France, and arrived in Paris early in October, 1797. The Directory refused to receive them, but an irregular negotiation was commenced through the intervention of some agents of Talleyrand, then minister for foreign affairs, and protracted, without important issue, until April of the following year. During this period, the American ambassadors were officially authorized to remain at the capital, and, from time to time, held interviews with Talleyrand or his creatures.

The point most insisted on by the latter, was the necessity for

opening the way to a complete arrangement, by a *douceur* or bribe of about two hundred and forty thousand dollars, for the benefit of the minister and directory, and the effecting a loan to the French government of a further sum. This rapacious scheme was urged with the most unblushing effrontery. "The main point," said the Frenchmen, "is *il faut de l'argent—il faut beaucoup d'argent.*" Something in hand, at least, they urged, should be paid them, unnl the matter could be finally arranged. In vain did the envoys protest that they possessed no shadow of authority for such proceedings or undertakings; the matter was again and again reverted to, and suggestions, unworthy of any but the most venal and corrupt, were made respecting the manner in which it might be brought about.

The demands of the Directory, as finally communicated by Talleyrand, could not be listened to for a moment. If granted, they would necessarily involve the United States in an immediate war, for not only was the loan insisted upon, but also an annulment of the late treaty with Great Britain. Desirous to terrify, or force compliance with their unreasonable demands, the government had, during the winter, greatly extended the grounds upon which American vessels were held liable to seizure. It was declared that all produce of any dependency of Great Britain, without regard to existing ownership, should be lawful prize, if found on board a neutral vessel.

After experiencing every slight and indignity, two of the American commissioners, Marshall and Pinckney, returned to the states; Gerry, through whom, individually, many of the previous communications had been made by Talleyrand, and with whom, as being the only republican on the commission, it was intimated that farther negotiations might be continued, remained at Paris.

This treatment of the United States' ambassadors could not fail to weaken the influence of the Gallican party in America. The outrageous demands of France, and the character of the late commercial decrees, could not be sustained by the most ardent of her adherents on this side the water. Congress being in session, April, 1798, dispatches containing a history of the negotiation were brought up for consideration. The most active measures were at once taken to prepare for contingent hostilities, and to furnish present protection to American shipping. Large sums were appropriated for the purchase of munitions of war, for the increase of the naval force, and

for fortifications. A new cabinet department was created for the management of naval affairs.

A succession of important and decisive measures were passed during the spring and summer. Without a direct declaration of war with France, orders were issued for a cessation of all commercial intercourse with that country; former treaties were declared to be of no further effect; the capture of any armed French vessels was authorized, if by private adventure, and directed, on the part of the United States' navy. The latter was greatly increased, and large appropriations were made for building new vessels and enlisting a corps of marines.

Powers were bestowed upon the president, to enlist an army of ten thousand men, in case of urgent necessity, and to immediately appoint military officers, and make arrangements for the enrolment and training of volunteers, in anticipation of such contingency. He also received discretionary authority to order from the country any foreigner who should be suspected of dangerous designs against government; and, in case of hostilities, to banish or arrest all persons belonging to the nation against which war should be declared.

To meet the heavy expense of these defensive measures, a tax was laid upon slaves and real estate. As a check upon the violence of the more turbulent portion of the opposition, and a restraint upon foreign intrigue, an act was passed defining and affixing punishment to seditious or treasonable conspiracies for opposing the authority of government, and to the issuing of any libel upon congress, the executive, or the measures of government, as well as any false and malicious publication, having a tendency to excite domestic disaffection, or to aid or encourage the designs of any hostile nation.

These acts met with a very strong opposition in congress; but the federal party was in a decided majority, and generally succeeded in carrying the measures introduced by its leaders.

The office of commander-in-chief of the provisional army was bestowed upon Washington: his acceptance was conditional that his services should be required only in case of emergency.

PA  
N  
  
TH  
war v  
ence,  
in An  
more  
of Ger  
cated  
from t  
prejud  
renoun  
before  
passed  
by Fre  
In a  
Preside  
ister at  
to unde  
that inti  
before  
North C  
account  
These  
many er  
of the ty  
vice, ge  
congress

## CHAPTER IX.

PACIFIC MOVEMENTS IN FRANCE.—MISSION OF MURRAY.—NAVAL ENGAGEMENTS.—DEATH OF WASHINGTON.—NAPOLEON FIRST CONSUL.—TREATY WITH FRANCE.—FIRST SESSION OF CONGRESS AT WASHINGTON.—PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION: JEFFERSON PRESIDENT, AND BURR VICE-PRESIDENT.—PARTY REMOVAL FROM OFFICE.—ECONOMICAL REFORMS.—OHIO ADMITTED INTO THE UNION.—TRANSFER OF LOUISIANA TO THE UNITED STATES.

THE Directory, finding all efforts to involve the United States in war with England likely to prove futile, and learning by experience, that in naval operations the retaliatory measures lately adopted in America, would tell severely upon French commerce, adopted a more pacific and conciliatory course. Shortly before the departure of Gerry, which took place in August, 1798, Talleyrand communicated to him the willingness of government to receive a minister from the United States, if choice should be made of one free from prejudice against the interests of France; and, at the same time, renounced all the more objectionable preliminaries to negotiations, before so pertinaciously urged. About the same time, decrees were passed for securing American vessels against unauthorized seizures by French privateers.

In answer to these overtures, the senate, upon nomination of President Adams, in February of 1799, appointed Mr. Murray, minister at the Hague, jointly with Judge Marshall and Patrick Henry, to undertake a new mission to France, a condition being annexed that intimation must be given by that nation of a favourable reception before they should enter the French territory. General Davie, of North Carolina, took the place of Henry, who declined serving on account of bodily infirmities.

These negotiations were slowly perfected, and, in the interim, many encounters took place at sea, between private armed vessels of the two nations. Those employed in the American merchant service, generally availed themselves of the permission accorded by congress to carry arms, and the spirit of privateering, perhaps to

be considered a national predilection, was gratified by the seizure of many prizes. In February, 1799, an action was fought at sea, near the island of St. Kitt's, between the United States frigate *Constellation*, and the French frigate *L'Insurgente*, in which the latter after a severe contest, was captured, and sent a prize to America.

Upon communication through Talleyrand, of the readiness of the government to receive American envoys, Marshall and Davie were directed, by the president, to embark forthwith, notwithstanding vehement objections from a portion of the cabinet, grounded upon the uncertainty of affairs in France, consequential upon a recent change in the Directory.

The death of General Washington, which occurred on the 14th of December, 1799, silenced, for a brief period, the clamour of party contention, and all, except a few among the most violent and prejudiced of his former opponents, united to honour his memory by public testimonials of respect and gratitude.

The new revolution of affairs in France, and the elevation of Napoleon to the office of First Consul, occurring at this epoch, augured favourably for the establishment of permanent peace with France. Meanwhile, the national pride of the United States was farther gratified by intelligence of the prowess of the *Constellation* in another engagement with the French frigate *La Vengeance*, a vessel of greatly superior force. Although the latter escaped, in consequence of the loss of a mast by the *Constellation*, she was so much damaged that she was condemned upon arrival at port. The loss of men on board the French vessel was four times greater than that suffered by the Americans, amounting to about one hundred and sixty in killed and wounded. The engagement took place in February, 1800.

The United States' ambassadors were received by the First Consul, with distinguished consideration, in the ensuing month of March. Talleyrand was still at the head of the department for foreign affairs, but a special commission, of which he had no share, was appointed to treat on the part of the French government. Bound down by stringent instructions, the envoys could enter into no conclusive arrangement, but a temporary convention was agreed upon, that, until the negotiation could be completed and a new treaty entered into, the ships of either nation were to be safe from seizure under the late unreasonable decrees.

Provision was also made for reconveyance of prizes not already

condemned, and of captured national vessels, and preliminary agreements were arranged for the future discharge of private claims against either government. These results were not arrived at before the month of October of the same year. They afterwards formed the basis for the conclusion of a satisfactory treaty.

When congress came together in November, the public buildings at Washington were sufficiently advanced to serve the purposes designed, and the session was held accordingly at the new capitol. The approaching presidential election was the all-absorbing topic of interest, inasmuch as a grand trial of strength was expected between the two political parties. President Adams had lost popularity by the strong measures adopted in anticipation of war with France, his course not appearing justified by the subsequent turn of events.

The respective candidates for the offices of president and vice-president, were Adams and Pinckney, on the side of the federals; while Jefferson, and the talented but intriguing and unprincipled Colonel Aaron Burr, stood forth as representatives of the republicans. The latter were successful, but as they received an equal number of votes, by the existing constitutional regulation, selection devolved upon the house of representatives. The votes were taken by states, and it was not until after thirty-five divisions, that either candidate could secure a majority. The contest terminated at the thirty-sixth balloting, on the 17th of February, 1801. Jefferson obtained the majority, and was declared president accordingly. Burr entered upon the office of vice-president.

With the accession of Jefferson commenced that system of removal from office of political opponents to the administration, which, with a greater or less degree of personal favoritism, has been the established policy upon every succeeding revolution of parties. The changes arbitrarily introduced by the new president were mostly such as were absolutely essential for the establishment of a necessary unanimity in the departments, and a cordial coöperation in the new principles of government. The displacement of certain federal incumbents of inferior offices, gave occasion for great complaint, as being uncalled for, and the result of mere party prejudice. With our present experience of what may result from a retaliatory spirit, we must look upon these removals by Jefferson as being conducted with distinguished moderation.

The introduction of economical reform in the expenses of government received the first attention of the new administration.



The navy was reduced, and its place, to a certain extent, supplied by gun-boats, built for harbour defence—the inefficiency of which, afterwards demonstrated, gave occasion for much ridicule. In respect to matters more particularly within the cognizance of a landsman and one unacquainted with the practical conduct of military affairs, the economical policy of Jefferson was wisely and judiciously enforced. The obnoxious excise laws, and the land-tax, were repealed, by means of which a great number of petty but expensive offices were annulled; additional federal courts, created under the former administration, were done away with; and provision was made for the reduction and eventual payment of the public debt—the existence of which was supposed to give undue influence to the treasury department.

In 1802, the state of Ohio, whither a great influx of emigrants had poured since the partial extinguishment of the Indian title, was admitted into the Union by act of congress, and commenced its separate existence as a sovereign state early in the following spring.

The transfer of the immense territory of Louisiana from Spain to France, and the negotiation through which its purchase was effected, by the United States in 1803, have been already detailed in that portion of this work devoted to the French settlements in America. No event could have been of greater importance to our western states and territories than this. The possession by any foreign nation of the outlet to the main channel of communication to this vast region, must have caused continual conflict of interest, and endangered the preservation of friendly relations between the parties concerned. Experience had shown that the binding force of treaties was insufficient to secure our citizens in their stipulated rights, while the mouth of the Mississippi was commanded by the agents of European power.

## CHAPTER X.

AMERICAN FLEET IN THE MEDITERRANEAN.—EXPEDITION OF  
EATON AND HANET AGAINST TRIPOLI.—TREATY CONCLUDED.

—JEFFERSON'S REELECTION.—BURR'S DUEL WITH HAN-  
ILTON: HIS WESTERN ENTERPRISE: HIS TRIAL.

THE most interesting events, connected with foreign affairs, during the first term of Jefferson's presidency, are those relating to difficulties still existing with the Barbary states. That the maritime nations of Europe, and the United States in pursuance of their example, should have so long submitted to the degradation of purchasing peace from the piratical barbarians of northern Africa, seems utterly unaccountable, particularly as such concessions only aggravated their insolence, and encouraged them, from time to time, to increase their demands.

An American frigate, commanded by Bainbridge, in the autumn of the year 1800, was compelled by the Dey of Algiers to serve as a transport for the transmission of presents, &c., to Constantinople; the remonstrances of the captain were met by the most arrogant and insolent expressions of superiority.

The state of Tripoli, in the year following this event, commenced open hostilities against American commerce—the reigning prince having become dissatisfied with the terms upon which his favour had been bought. In the summer of 1802 a squadron under command of Commodore Morris was dispatched against the belligerent nation. A partial blockade and some unimportant captures were the only advantages gained during this season.

During the summer of the following year a larger naval force under Commodore Preble arrived in the Mediterranean, and proceeded to blockade the harbour of Tripoli. The frigate Philadelphia, commanded by Bainbridge, arrived first at the station. Unfortunately, while in pursuit of a Tripolitan vessel, she struck upon a rock. Vain efforts were made to lighten and heave her off, during which operation she was surrounded by gun-boats of the enemy. The frigate heeled so far that her guns were useless, and she became a prize to the Tripolitans. They got her off safely, and took her into

the harbour, making prisoners of all on board. The officers alone were exempted from a condition of slavery.

This capture gave occasion for a brilliant exploit. Lieutenant Decatur, with a small vessel recently taken from the enemy, and manned by volunteers from the American frigate *Enterprise*, then lying at Syracuse, undertook to destroy the *Philadelphia*. On the night of February 16th, 1804, the Tripolitan crew on board the frigate were hailed in their own language from a small craft, apparently of their nation, whose approach was regarded without suspicion. Under the excuse that she had lost her anchors, the stranger was permitted to come alongside and make fast to the ship. Her true character was immediately ascertained: the Americans, rushing on board, in the confusion attendant upon the first alarm, drove the crew overboard, fired the vessel, and effected a safe retreat.

An achievement of a still more remarkable and romantic character was accomplished in the following year by William Eaton, Consul for the United States at Tunis. Jessuf, the Bashaw of Tripoli, was a younger brother; he had driven Hamet, the rightful incumbent of the throne, into exile; and with the latter, Eaton, by authority from the United States, entered into correspondence for the purpose of planning a land expedition from Egypt into Tripoli, and expelling the usurper.

A little band of Arabs, Tripolitan refugees of Hamet's party, and Christian adventurers, numbering in all only about four hundred men, set out from the vicinity of Alexandria, early in the spring of 1805. The passage of the intervening desert was not completed until the latter part of April, the march being attended with extreme suffering and destitution. The invaders arriving at Derne, with the coöperation of American vessels lying in the harbour, took forcible possession of the town, and held it against the main Tripolitan force, by which they were attacked a fortnight later.

While, thus in the full tide of success, the hopes of Hamet and his enterprising ally were crushed by the conclusion of a treaty between the United States and Tripoli, by which Jessuf was left in undisturbed possession of his sovereignty. A large sum was paid for the ransom of captives remaining in the power of the bashaw, after the accomplishment of an equal exchange for those prisoners taken by the Americans.

Prior to the conclusion of these events, a new presidential election in the United States, had resulted in Jefferson's continuance in office.

for  
pr  
rag  
aga  
sou  
due  
cum  
part  
faith  
the s  
tion  
a litt  
In  
prope  
river  
schem  
ment  
Spanis  
men wh  
by mys  
nite hop  
very var  
feverish  
about to  
Being  
address,  
familiar  
own vie  
Perhaps  
as the on  
becoming  
When  
of procur  
iana, to w  
1806, wit  
in the dar  
as the pub  
covered f  
and his pr  
more or le  
V

for a second term. George Clinton of New York was chosen vice-president in place of Burr. The latter, in the summer of 1804, enraged against Hamilton on account of influence brought to bear against him as candidate for the office of governor of New York, sought a quarrel with his political opponent, which resulted in a duel. Hamilton fell mortally wounded at the first fire. The circumstance that Burr was the aggressor, as well as the challenging party, with a general suspicion of his previous integrity and good faith, aroused such public indignation that he was obliged to leave the state. Politically dead in the United States, he turned his attention thenceforth to deeper and more desperate intrigues, to which, a little anticipating the order of events, we may here advert.

In concert with one Blennerhasset, an Irishman of considerable property, who had established himself upon an island in the Ohio river near Marietta, Burr, it would appear, formed magnificent schemes for revolutionizing the western country, and the establishment of a separate government, as well as for an invasion of the Spanish province of Mexico. By personal interviews with leading men who were supposed to be disaffected towards the administration, by mysterious letters, calculated to arouse cupidity and excite indefinite hopes, and by negotiations through agents in whom he placed very variant degrees of confidence, he succeeded in exciting a state of feverish anticipation of some great, but indeterminate political change, about to take place.

Being a man of consummate abilities, and of a remarkably pleasing address, he acquired great influence over those with whom he held familiar intercourse, and while he could mould inferior minds to his own views, he was always able to conceal his own true purposes. Perhaps no political intrigue ever occupied such universal attention, as the one of which we are speaking, without its purport eventually becoming more clearly apparent.

When Burr first began to collect forces, it was under the guise of procuring emigrants to occupy a tract on the Ouachita, in Louisiana, to which he had purchased a doubtful claim. In December, 1806, with about one hundred men—who were probably as much in the dark as to the true destination and purposes of the expedition as the public at large—he passed down the Ohio in a number of covered flat-boats. The agents of government were on the alert, and his projects were by this time universally canvassed, and entered more or less into the political controversies of the day.

At Natchez, Burr submitted to the requisitions of the territorial civil authorities, and the charges against him were investigated by the intervention of a grand jury at Washington, the capital of the Mississippi territory. Nothing could be established by any direct evidence, and he was acquitted. Meanwhile, General Wilkinson, the military commander at New Orleans, to whom Burr had previously made many overtures, had arbitrarily arrested several of the agents commissioned by the latter, and was enforcing a species of martial law, in anticipation of the expected invasion or revolution.

Further conduct of the expedition was unsafe, and Burr, dismissing his followers, attempted to make his escape into Florida. He was arrested near the Tombigbee river, and taken prisoner to Richmond, where he was bailed, upon the charge of violating the neutrality law, by enlisting forces to invade a peaceful nation. He was subsequently indicted by a grand jury for high treason in levying war against the United States. The trial, after much delay in vexatious preliminaries, took place in August, 1807, Chief-Justice Marshall presiding. Sufficient evidence could not be obtained to sustain the charge, and a verdict of acquittal followed. The same result attended the trial upon the charge of a violation of the neutrality act.

All concerned were held amenable to the provisions of the latter law in any district where an overt act, falling within its prohibitions, should have been committed. Held to bail in Ohio, upon the same accusation, Burr and Blennerhasset both forfeited their bonds.

The former soon after sailed for Europe, and passed many years in fruitless endeavours to carry out schemes of personal aggrandizement in France and England. He returned to spend the latter years of his life in the obscure practice of law in his own state.

dis  
in  
ent  
neu  
Sta  
mit  
rese  
brin  
blin  
ener  
belli  
too p  
vess  
with  
and  
inant  
W  
retali  
pronc  
ernme  
depen  
States  
ing ca  
cans,  
aggress  
The

## CHAPTER XI.

ENGLISH AGGRESSIONS.—FAILURE OF NEGOTIATION.—ATTACK ON THE FRIGATE CHESAPEAKE.—EMBARGO.—NON-INTER-COURSE ACT.—ABOLITION OF THE SLAVE-TRADE.—JOHN RANDOLPH.—WEST FLORIDA.—CONCESSIONS OF NAPOLEON.—BRITISH CRUISERS: THE LITTLE BELT.—TECUMSEH: ELISKWATAWA: BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE.—EAST FLORIDA.—DECLARATION OF WAR.

THROUGHOUT the closing term of Jefferson's administration, the disturbed state of affairs in Europe was disastrously felt in America; in carrying out schemes of mutual aggression, the two great belligerent powers were utterly regardless of the rights and interests of neutral nations. "It was in vain that the government of the United States expostulated with them. To England it denied having submitted to the decrees of the French ruler; and to the latter it represented the indefeasible rights of neutrals. 'Join with me in bringing England to reason,' was the reply of Bonaparte, who was blind to all objects and reasons, except that of humbling his arch-enemy. America was, in consequence, left to choose which of the belligerents she should take for foes, since both at once might prove too powerful for her, and neutrality, persevered in, only exposed her vessels to capture, without retaliation—to the disadvantages, in fact, without the advantages of war." "The great powers of the land and sea, unable to measure their strength, since each was predominant on its own element, came to vent their blows on America."\*

When, by the Berlin decree, of November, 1806, the emperor, in retaliation for a similar assumption in respect to France, had pronounced Great Britain to be in a state of blockade, and the government of the latter had extended her former decree to all the dependencies and allies of France, the commerce of the United States was, in effect, annihilated. There were not, however, wanting causes for a strong discrimination, in the minds of the Americans, between the spirit and motives which actuated the several aggressing nations.

The conduct of the naval officers in the British service, generally

\* Lardner's Cabinet Cyclopædia.

insolent and overbearing towards the American marine, had been growing more and more intolerable. The impressment of seamen from United States' merchant vessels continued and increased, notwithstanding the remonstrances of government, and a representation of the fact, that many American citizens were thus enslaved for foreign service.

In hopes to effect some modification in the former treaty, by which these illegal seizures might be checked, and the commerce of America be freed from the more oppressive restrictions, Messrs. Monroe and Pinckney were commissioned as ambassadors to England in 1806. They arranged a treaty accordingly, but, as nothing was yielded by the British government respecting the more important points of controversy, the president, without communicating with the senate, refused to ratify.

While attempts at negotiation failed, the course pursued by the English cruisers, in carrying out their instructions to watch the American coast, assumed an appearance more than ever offensive. A direct attack upon a national vessel, finally called for some decisive action. The Chesapeake, an American frigate, was dispatched in the month of June, 1807, to the Mediterranean. Just without the capes of the Chesapeake, she was hailed by the Leopard, an English man-of-war. Upon heaving to, a boat soon came alongside, and a message was delivered from the captain of the Leopard, demanding permission to search for certain deserters, known or suspected to be on board the American vessel. Specific orders to this effect had been given by the British Admiral Berkeley.

The demand not being complied with, the Leopard, having taken a favourable position, without further parley, first fired two successive single shots, the first, across the bows of the Chesapeake, and then poured in several broadsides, by which three men were killed, a number wounded, and much damage was done to the vessel. The commander, Barron, his ship not being ready for action, was unable to resist, and therefore struck his flag. Several officers from the Leopard then came on board; the crew of the Chesapeake were examined, and four were taken away prisoners, as deserters from the British service. One of them was afterwards hanged for desertion; the three others (coloured men) proved to be American citizens. The Chesapeake immediately returned to Norfolk.

President Jefferson promptly issued a proclamation, ordering British armed vessels to leave the waters of the United States, and

prohibiting further intercourse with them. Demand was made upon the British government for redress, and for future guarantee that American vessels should be no longer searched for purposes of impressment. The attack on the Chesapeake—being totally inexcusable, although similar acts had been previously committed, on several occasions, by British vessels—was at once disavowed, and full reparation was tendered; but upon the other point, no concession whatever was made. New and more stringent orders instead, were issued for the seizure of British mariners in foreign service; and, in case such should be known to be on board national vessels of a neutral, precise instructions were given to make report thereof to the British admiralty.

Congress was called together at an earlier day than the regular commencement of the session, and, after much discussion, a general embargo was laid (December, 1807), to continue indefinitely, by which American vessels were prohibited from leaving port. The enforcement of this system, however necessary, occasioned great commercial distress, and gave much dissatisfaction in New England. The embargo was, to a certain extent, evaded by the more adventurous; but the retaliatory decrees of France and England had been extended to such an extreme of exclusion, that no vessel trading to Europe or the West Indies could be safe from seizure.

The prospect of an amicable arrangement appeared less than ever. Throughout the year 1808, nothing was heard but complaints of the oppressive embargo. At the winter session of congress, in 1808-9, the whole subject was debated, and, in place of the embargo, a prohibition of intercourse with France and England was concluded upon—trade with other countries of Europe being left open. A provision was also appended, giving the president power to suspend this restriction as to either nation which should conform to the requisitions of the United States, by a withdrawal of the obnoxious edicts or orders in council. This change was accomplished just before the close of Jefferson's administration. In accordance with the example of Washington, he had declined being a candidate for a third presidential term. The republican party, retaining their ascendancy, elected James Madison, late secretary of state, to the office of president: Clinton was again chosen vice-president.

One very important event, not noticed in the order of its occurrence, was the passage, by congress, of an act prohibiting the introduction of slaves after the 1st of January, 1808—the constitutional



limit within which no restraining law could be enacted, upon this subject, other than the imposition of a specified duty upon all imported. Severe penalties were affixed to the direct importation of slaves, attaching, although in less degree, to the buyer who should be cognizant of the illegal introduction; and the transportation of slaves by sea from one port to another in the United States, was regulated and restrained. Slaves thenceforth imported, were to be seized, and to "remain subject to any regulation or disposal, not contrary to the provisions of this act, which might be made by the respective states and territories."

In the debate upon this subject, a prominent part was taken, in behalf of the slave-holding interest, by John Randolph, a young member from Virginia, whose remarkable talents and brilliant oratory might have given him a position of great eminence, but for a singular vein of misanthropic eccentricity which pervaded his whole character, and for an unparalleled degree of habitual insolence and assumption. Belonging originally to the republican party, he was of the number of those who seceded from the principles adopted by the administration, and during Jefferson's closing term, headed a powerful opposition to the measures adopted in retaliation for British aggression.

The first communications opened with Great Britain, after Madison's inauguration, gave promise of a speedy settlement of difficulties. Mr. Erskine, the British minister, over-stepping the limits of his instructions from Secretary Canning, stipulated on behalf of his government, that the odious commercial orders in council should be withdrawn, as to United States' vessels, upon revocation of the non-intercourse act. The president, in conformity with the powers expressly conferred upon him, suspended the act accordingly.

Several preliminary conditions, upon which he had received special instructions, were entirely neglected by Erskine in this negotiation. The most important of these related to a matter long in dispute, viz: whether, in time of war, a neutral could carry on a trade with one of the belligerent parties, of a character prohibited by such nation in time of peace.

Erskine's stipulations were, therefore, disavowed, and non-intercourse was reëstablished. Provisions were made by the British government in favour of such vessels as might have availed themselves of the temporary removal of restrictions. Mutual recriminations in respect to this affair, aggravated the hostile dispositions of

the two governments. On the one hand, it was suggested that the United States had been cognizant of the true nature of the instructions given to the British ambassador, while, on the other, the refusal of the ministry to ratify the arrangement concluded, was looked upon as "an act of capricious hostility." Mr. Jackson, successor to Mr. Erskine, upon a renewal of negotiation, conducted the correspondence in a manner so offensive, that his recall was demanded, and all diplomatic intercourse, for the time, was suspended.

During the autumn of 1810, the settlers in that portion of West Florida bordering on the Mississippi, following the example of other Spanish American colonies, took advantage of the embarrassed position of the home government to rebel against the Spanish authorities. This district was soon after occupied by the United States, under claim of title, by virtue of former treaties of transfer. Upon the expiration of the non-intercourse act, in 1810, propositions were made by the United States to France and England for a removal of the onerous restrictions upon trade. To either nation which should comply with this requisition, the inducement of exclusive commercial intercourse was held out. Napoleon, willing to yield a point in his rigid continental system, for the purpose of securing the friendship of the United States, and—a matter still more to his taste—of involving them in war with England, gave notice, through his ministers, that American vessels should be free from the operation of the sweeping decrees of Berlin and Milan.

Commerce was at once opened with France; but the British government, affecting to consider the suspension of the French decrees as irregular, temporary, and illusive, declined yielding to the requirements of the United States. On the contrary, national jealousy being aroused by the prospect of an advantageous trade between this country and France, renewed vigilance was exercised, and a more rigorous search instituted by the numerous British cruisers on the American coast.

The sloop-of-war *Little Belt*, commanded by Captain Bingham, while engaged in this service, fell in with the American frigate *President*, under Commodore Rodgers. The English vessel at first bore down upon the American, until discovering that the latter was of greater force, and that her signals were not answered, she stood away. Pursued by the *President*, she hove to, and both vessels hailed, as appears, nearly simultaneously. Neither replied except by a second hail. Upon this some shots were fired—accounts being

contradictory as to which vessel commenced—soon succeeded by a general cannonade on either side, in which the *Little Belt* was nearly disabled, and lost more than thirty of her crew in killed and wounded. Such discrepancy prevails in the accounts given of this transaction, that we are somewhat at a loss in forming conclusions respecting its merits.

At a special session of congress, in the autumn of 1811, the president set forth, in a message to that body, the futility of all attempts at negotiation with Great Britain, the enormous injury to American commerce effected by her exclusive system, the vast number of vessels in the United States' merchant service which had fallen a prey to her cruisers, and the generally aggressive and ungenerous policy pursued by her government. "With this evidence," proceeded the address, "of hostile inflexibility, in trampling upon rights which no independent nation can relinquish, congress will feel the duty of putting the United States into an armour and an attitude demanded by the crisis, and corresponding with the national spirit and expectations."

This call was responded to, by a decided majority, in a similar spirit. Appropriations were made, and loans authorized, for the enlargement of the army, for fortifications, and the accumulation of military stores. The navy was ordered to be increased, and provisions were made for organizing a militia force. The existence of serious disturbances at the north-west, attributed, in some measure, to British influence over the Indian tribes, added to the hostile feeling entertained towards Great Britain.

A new confederacy had been long forming in that quarter, under the direction, and through the intrigues of the celebrated Tecumseh and his brother Elskwatawa, or the Prophet. The former, at this period, was engaged in gaining over the tribes of the southern states to unite in a magnificent enterprise for the recovery of the entire valley of the Mississippi from the whites. The prophet was established on the Tippecanoe, a tributary of the Wabash, where a horde of his followers encamped about him, and kept the country in terror by their depredations.

To check these ravages, Governor Harrison, with a force of about nine hundred men, regulars, militia, and volunteers, marched up the Wabash from Fort Harrison, at the close of October (1811). He encamped on the 5th of November, within nine miles of the prophet's town, and attempted to negotiate with the Indian chief.

The latter proposed a truce, for the purpose of a conference to take place on the day following. This pacific overture was merely intended to disarm suspicion. On the following morning, a little before day-break—the time always selected by the Indians, for a surprise—the whole force under command of the prophet, fell upon the American encampment.

Fortunately, due precautions had been taken for a timely alarm, and for the preservation of order in case of a night attack. Although the Indians fought with astonishing fury and determination, they were finally driven off and dispersed, not without a loss, on the part of the whites, of one hundred and fifty in killed and wounded. The American troops immediately proceeded to the Indian settlement, and accomplished its entire destruction.

Certain disclosures, communicated to congress by a message of the president, in March, 1812, relative to the secret agency of one John Henry, who, several years previous, had been commissioned by the governor of Canada to attempt negotiation with the New England federalists, excited great indignation among the war party. It would appear that for a time undue importance was attached to this affair. The president paid a large sum of money from the secret service fund, to secure the correspondence between Henry and his employer. The principal matter of the communications related to the extent to which the anti-war party might be willing to push their opposition, and the possibility or probability of a secession from the Union by the commercial states of the north, in the event of their political defeat.

In the month of April, an important accession to the southern interest resulted from the admission of the new state of Louisiana, including that portion of West Florida already occupied by the United States. The Spanish possessions in East Florida were endangered, at the same period, by an outbreak encouraged and promoted by the American general, Matthews. A strong party in congress—even a majority in the house—was in favour of taking forcible possession of this territory; but a bill for that purpose was lost in the senate.

A prospect of speedy hostilities with America, gave rise to a strong opposition in the British parliament, to the measures of government; and strenuous exertions were made to effect a compliance with the principal requisitions of the United States. These movements on the part of the friends of peace and of the rights of neutrals, it has been said, might have terminated in such concession as would have

satisfied the latter, if patience had been a little farther extended. At the close of May, 1812, recent intelligence having been received from England, and no prospect appearing of a disposition on the part of government to yield the questions in dispute, President Madison sent in a message recommending immediate declaration of war.

The senate promptly concurred with the recommendation; in the house, the question, after about a fortnight's consideration, resulted in the same conclusion. The debate was conducted with closed doors. On the 18th of June, war was formally declared with Great Britain! To this act most strenuous opposition was made by the federal party. In those portions of the United States most dependent upon commerce, a violent outcry was raised against a measure, which, although specially called for by foreign aggressions upon their rights and interest, threatened to increase their present difficulties, while it imposed upon the country at large an enormous burden of additional expense.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

RIOTS AT BALTIMORE.—HULL'S INVASION OF CANADA.—REPEAL OF THE ORDERS IN COUNCIL: IMPRESSMENT.—NAVAL OPERATIONS.—MADISON'S REELECTION.—NORTH-WESTERN CAMPAIGN: DEFEAT OF WINCHESTER.—ATTACK ON YORK.—THE BRITISH ON LAKE CHAMPLAIN.

WHILE expressions of indignation and regret were every where heard throughout those portions of the country where the war was unpopular, and signs of public mourning appeared in the flags of a useless shipping hoisted at half-mast, the war-party in other districts exhibited still more violent feeling. At Baltimore, the most disgraceful scenes of brutal outrage occurred, in connection with the suppression by a mob of a federal news-paper, which persisted in opposing popular opinion. The editor, Hanson, with a number of friends, in defence of his house, attacked by an infuriate populace, fired upon the assailants, one of whom was killed.

The municipal authorities at last appeared, with an armed force, and, to appease the mob, Hanson and his companions consented to

be tak  
tiated  
and a r  
were r  
the num  
their h  
from th  
villanou  
the tran  
Upon  
bestowed  
of the rev  
was crea  
that quar  
an exped  
the inhab  
a foothold  
General I  
West on t  
The first  
debouchen  
and Erie.  
given for s  
Whilo t  
American  
and, shortl  
entirely cut  
fore récross  
General Pr  
with his In  
Americans  
Toward t  
Canada, hav  
and advance  
dians, amou  
icans, occupy  
able to susta  
dignation of  
to the assault  
Al! the regu

be taken to prison, to answer to any charge that might be substantiated against them. The following night the jail was broken into, and a number of these prisoners, falling into the hands of the rioters, were most barbarously beaten, wounded, and tormented. One of the number, General Lingan, an old revolutionary soldier, died under their hands; the others were left for dead, and some never recovered from the injuries received. The perpetrators of this cowardly and villanous outrage received no punishment; some of the foremost in the transaction were tried and acquitted by a jury of the neighbourhood.

Upon the organization of the new army, the chief command was bestowed upon General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, an officer of the revolution. At the south, Thomas Pinckney, of South Carolina, was created major-general, and invested with the chief command in that quarter. The first attention of the government was directed to an expedition into Canada, where, it was believed, the disaffection of the inhabitants towards Great Britain would render it easy to obtain a foothold. A force of nearly two thousand men, under Brigadier-General Hull, governor of the territory of Michigan, entered Canada West on the 12th of July, crossing over from Detroit to Sandwich.

The first object of attack was the British fort at Malden, near the debouchement of Detroit river—the strait connecting Lakes St. Clair and Erie. Owing to delay on the part of Hull, opportunity was given for strengthening the garrison at this place.

While the army remained inactive, about the middle of July, the American fort at Michilimackinac fell into the hands of the enemy, and, shortly after, communication by the land route with Ohio, was entirely cut off by a party of Indians under Tecumseh. Hull therefore recrossed the river, with his entire force, and occupied Detroit. General Proctor, in command at Malden, was enabled to cooperate with his Indian allies, and renewed attempts on the part of the Americans to force a passage of the road, only resulted in heavy loss.

Toward the middle of August, General Brock, governor of Lower Canada, having hastened to the scene of action, assumed command, and advanced upon Detroit with his whole army of British and Indians, amounting, in all, to over twelve hundred men. The Americans, occupying a defensible position, entertained little fears of being able to sustain themselves; but what was the astonishment and indignation of the army, when General Hull, as the enemy approached to the assault, entered into a parley, and arranged terms of surrender. All the regulars and volunteers in the American army became pris-

ended.  
received  
the part  
Madison  
ar.  
; in the  
resulted  
a closed  
th Great  
s by the  
depend-  
measure,  
ons upon  
sent diffi-  
enormous

ADA.—BR-  
—NAVAL  
H—WEST-  
ATTACK  
AIN.

every where  
the war was  
ne flags of a  
her districts  
ost disgrace-  
the suppres-  
in opposing  
of friends, in  
e, fired upon  
armed force  
consented to

oners of war, the militia being paroled, and the whole territory of Michigan fell into the hands of the British.

So heavy a loss, and so disgraceful a reverse, at this first opening of the campaign, could not be patiently endured. Every species of opprobrium was heaped upon the commanding officer, to whose indecision or weakness the failure was wholly attributed. Put upon trial, by court martial, long afterwards, he was convicted of cowardice; but his character, at the present day, stands free from aspersions thrown out in the heat of disappointment, and his failings—principally over-caution, and a want of that promptness and energy which are so necessary in a military leader—are looked upon with greater leniency.

The result of this campaign, unfortunately for the American interests, was to give facilities for an easy and constant communication between the British and the confederate tribes of the north-west. The latter were never more dangerous enemies than at this period, provided, as they were, with arms by their English allies, led by a chief of surpassing abilities as a military leader, and excited by superstitious confidence in their Prophet Elskwatawa.

Upon a change of the British ministry, in the month of June, of this year, a repeal of the orders in council as to American vessels was brought about, and it was trusted that negotiations might now be opened for a peaceful settlement of difficulties. The American government, however, declined all proposals for a suspension of hostilities, not based upon a proposed adjustment of other claims against England. The matter of the right of impressment was as far as ever from settlement; the British absolutely refused to yield the point; and the grievance complained of had now become more than ever intolerable. The number of native born American citizens rendering compulsory service in the British navy cannot be ascertained, but those who claimed exemption on this ground numbered between three and four thousand. The great majority of these were doubtless foreigners, but their right to protection, if not British subjects, was as clear as in the case of native or naturalized citizens.

While all the acts of the American government continued to breathe a warlike spirit, many obstacles were experienced in the practical operations of the campaign. It was difficult to procure recruits by voluntary enlistment, and in the raising of a militia force, continual opposition was met by state claims of sovereignty. By a singular transmutation, the federalists at this crisis were the sticklers

for state rights, as opposed to the military authority of the president, and the acts of congress. Several states refused to comply with the requisitions of government, upon the ground that no necessity of the kind contemplated by the act respecting draughts of militia, could be said to exist—that there was no call to “execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, or repel invasion.” Questions respecting the employment of the militia in foreign territory, and their claim to be commanded by their own officers, if of superior rank to any regular officer present, gave rise to great difficulty and dissension.

At the west, early in the autumn, a force of about ten thousand men was collected for the defence of the frontier, and for operations against the British and Indians. Governor Harrison was appointed to the chief command. The impracticable nature of the roads, and the difficulty of maintaining an army in the wilderness, impeded the movement of any large body of troops, and nothing was effected, during the remainder of the year, further than the destruction of several Indian villages, by detached parties.

Upon the waters which separate Canada from New York, a still larger force than that under Harrison was stationed at various points from Niagara to Lake Champlain. On the 13th of October, a party of less than three hundred men, led by Colonel Van Rensselaer, crossed Niagara river and stormed the British fort at Queenstown. They were to have been supported by a large force, sufficient to maintain possession, and resist any reinforcements that could be brought up by the enemy, but during the embarkation, the principal portion of the militia, at first loud in protestations of eagerness to invade the enemy's territory, taken with a panic, refused to cross. In an attempt at recovering the fort, the brave General Brock fell, while leading his men to the assault.

Notwithstanding their success at the first onset, the event proved disastrous to the Americans. A strong reinforcement under General Sheafe came to the assistance of the enemy, and the whole invading division, amounting---with those brought across during the contest---to more than a thousand men, thrown into confusion, and cut off from retreat, was forced to surrender. Nothing further, of any importance, was accomplished upon the frontier, during the remainder of the year. The flaming proclamation of General Smyth, and the patriotic ardour expressed by the militia and volunteers who composed the principal portion of the army of the north, alike ended in smoke. While the soldiers accused their commanders of a lack of energy, and inveighed



against vexatious delays and general mismanagement, the latter had abundant ground of complaint in the turbulence and insubordination of the new recruits.

Experience having proved the necessity of establishing a marine force on the lakes, in order to effect any thing in Canada, a movement for this purpose was commenced in the month of September previous, at Sackett's Harbour, under direction of Captain Chauncey. At this port, situated at the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario, the keel of a ship was laid, and a number of trading schooners were purchased and armed. A small sloop of war, named the *Oneida*, had been previously fitted out, and was also under Chauncey's command. With this little fleet, some bold excursions were made on the lake, a British armed vessel was driven into Kingston harbour, and several small prizes were taken. The new ship, of twenty-four guns, was completed in November, and was called the *Madison*.

Lieutenant Elliot, furnished by Chauncey with a detachment of seamen, in the month of October, succeeded in capturing two small armed vessels belonging to the enemy, and lying in Niagara river. He also commenced preparations for future operations on Lake Erie, by collecting trading vessels at Black Rock, and providing them with suitable armament.

While the foundation was thus laid for further brilliant successes on the lakes, successive reports of the unexpected prowess of the little United States' navy—consisting of but seven frigates, (fit for service), two sloops of war, five brigs, and a fleet of gun-boats—gave rise to great exultation throughout the country.

The first naval engagement of importance, took place on the 19th of August. The American frigate *Constitution*, Captain Hull, cruising off the mouth of the St. Lawrence, fell in with the *Guerriere*, a British frigate of thirty-eight guns, commanded by Captain Dacres. The former, receiving successive broadsides from the *Guerriere*, bore down in silence until close at hand, when she opened such an effective fire as soon to disable and cripple the enemy. The engagement lasted only about half an hour, partly at close quarters, and when the *Constitution* finally cast off, all the masts of the *Guerriere* had gone by the board. The latter presently struck, but she had received irreparable injury, and was set on fire after a transfer of her crew to the *Constitution*. This victory was attributed by the English to superiority in force. The *Constitution*, according to their account, "nominally mounting but forty-four guns,

was  
by  
resu  
subs  
mast  
that  
Th  
chase  
encou  
After  
vessel  
was ab  
ten. T  
gether  
seventy  
A few  
tur, capt  
Western  
force, bu  
account t  
for the fa  
while the  
prize was  
During  
war, the  
by superi  
under com  
thirty-eigh  
ing at clos  
being entir  
was judged  
While th  
ous private  
great succe  
bound from  
without sor  
were armed  
The perio  
was reelecte  
n 1797, was

was, in reality, little short of a seventy-four." The disparity was by no means as great as represented, and could not account for the result of the engagement. The truth seems to be, that in this as in subsequent affairs, the American vessels were manœuvred in a masterly manner, and that their fire was given with better aim than that of their antagonists.

The United States' sloop-of-war *Wasp*, under Captain Jones, in chase of a British fleet of merchant vessels, in the month of October, encountered the *Frolic*, a brig of superior force, acting as convoy. After a most destructive and desperate engagement, the British vessel was carried by boarding. The loss on board of the latter, was about eighty in killed and wounded; the Americans lost but ten. The *Wasp* was so much crippled in her rigging, that, together with her prize, she was shortly after captured by a British seventy-four.

A few days later the frigate *United States*, commanded by Decatur, captured the British frigate *Macedonian*, in the vicinity of the Western Islands. The American vessel was somewhat superior in force, but, as in the case of the *Guerriere*, not sufficiently so to account for the rapidity with which she disabled her opponent, nor for the fact, that of her crew, only twelve were killed or wounded, while the loss of the *Macedonian* was more than one hundred. The prize was taken into New York in safety.

During the summer and autumn, the Americans lost two brigs-of-war, the *Nautilus*, and the *Vixen*, both taken, without resistance, by superior force. On the 29th of December, the *Constitution*, under command of Bainbridge, engaged the British frigate *Java*, of thirty-eight guns. The contest, commencing at a distance, and ending at close-quarters, continued for several hours, when the *Java*, being entirely dismasted, struck. She was so far crippled, that it was judged expedient to destroy her.

While the national pride was gratified by these victories, numerous privateers, mostly fitted out from New England ports, met with great success in plundering the British merchant vessels, homeward bound from the Indies. Many valuable prizes were taken—not without some hard fighting, in cases where the trading vessels were armed.

The period of a presidential election recurring in 1812, Madison was reelected. Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, minister to France in 1797, was elevated to the vice-presidency, by the votes of the

war-party. Notwithstanding a violent opposition, perseverance in hostile measures met with the approbation and support of a majority in congress, and appropriations were made, and acts passed, for the increase of the national force, and for large additions to the navy.

Military operations were renewed at the north-west, early in the winter. Several Indian villages were destroyed in December, but nothing of importance was accomplished. During the month following, a detachment of Kentucky troops, under General Winchester, was sent forward by Harrison to take a position at the Miami rapids. A body of nearly seven hundred of these pushed on to Frenchtown, on the Raisin, then occupied by British and Indians. The first attack was successful; the enemy were driven from the town, and the Americans were reinforced by the arrival of Winchester with additional troops.

On the 22d, General Proctor, having crossed over from Malden, with a strong force of regulars and Indians, fell upon and totally defeated the American detachment. The commanding officer was taken prisoner early in the engagement, while a portion of the American troops yet maintained a defensible position. The general ordered a surrender, upon promises of protection against the savages. Instead of fulfilling his undertaking in this respect, Proctor marched back towards Malden, with such prisoners as were able to travel, leaving the wounded unprotected at the scene of combat. On the following day, no small portion of these were scalped, tomahawked, or burned alive in the houses where they lay disabled, by a party of Indians. Harrison, discontinuing offensive operations, fortified himself at Fort Meigs, on the rapids.

In the month of April, 1813, he was besieged at this post, by a British and Indian force, under Proctor. Relieved by the arrival of reinforcements from Kentucky, led by General Clay, he succeeded in holding the position, but a considerable body of these fresh forces was utterly defeated, after driving the British from a position where batteries were erected to bear upon Fort Meigs. This disaster is attributed to the circumstance, that, instead of maintaining orderly possession of the works, they commenced an irregular skirmish with detached parties of Indians in the surrounding forest.

On the New York frontier, nothing important was effected by either party until the spring was far advanced. Near the close of April, a detachment of sixteen hundred men embarked on board Chauncey's Ontario squadron, for the purpose of an attack upon the

C  
to  
su  
as  
th  
  
for  
sai  
the  
retr  
of  
deta  
of th  
divis  
acqu  
enem  
men,  
A  
in th  
New  
Britis  
force,  
jury t  
shore  
was sa  
time in  
  
INTER  
ton, has  
is now re  
was comm  
lakes, by  
(originally

Canadian town of York. The place, defended by a garrison of six to eight hundred men, was carried by storm, but at the moment of success, the magazine blew up, destroying a large number of the assailants. The American commander, General Pike, was among the killed.

The squadron returning to Sackett's harbour, took on board fresh forces, under the immediate command of Dearborn, and immediately sailed for the entrance of Niagara river. All the British forts in the vicinity were seized, the principal portion of the garrisons retreating to the heights on Burlington bay—the western extremity of Lake Ontario. In an attempt at pursuit, a few days later, a detachment of the Americans sustained considerable loss, and two of their generals, Chandler and Winder, were taken prisoners. The division was presently recalled to Fort George, one of the recently acquired posts on the Niagara. A second expedition against the enemy resulted in the loss of an entire detachment of six hundred men, under Colonel Boerstler.

A vigorous attack upon the American post at Sackett's Harbour, in the latter part of May, was repulsed by the garrison, aided by New York militia, under General Brown. On Lake Champlain the British were more successful. By the creation of a superior naval force, they obtained command of those waters, and did much injury to the neighbouring settlements. Plattsburgh, on the western shore of the lake, was plundered and destroyed, "in revenge," it was said, "for the affair of York;" the latter having been a second time invaded by an American force, under Colonel Scott.

INTERNAL IMPROVEMENTS.—New York, headed by her great statesman, De Witt Clinton, has the honor of taking the lead in internal improvements, from which enterprise she is now reaping an ample reward in her commercial pre-eminence and wealth. In 1817 was commenced the great work of connecting the waters of the Atlantic with the great lakes, by breaking the soil for the Erie and Hudson Canal, which is 364 miles long, and (originally) forty feet wide. It was completed in 1825, at a cost of about \$7,000,000.

VOL. IV.—52.

## CHAPTER XIII.

NAVAL AFFAIRS: PERRY'S VICTORY ON LAKE ERIE.—HARRISON'S CANADIAN CAMPAIGN.—THE NIAGARA FRONTIER.—THE CREEK WAR: JACKSON'S CAMPAIGN.—NEGOTIATIONS FOR PEACE.—BROWN'S INVASION OF CANADA: BATTLE OF BRIDGEWATER.—OCCUPATION OF THE CHESAPEAKE: BATTLE OF BLADENSBURGH: SEIZURE OF WASHINGTON: DESTRUCTION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS: ATTACK ON BALTIMORE.

FROM the opening of the campaign of 1813, the British naval force on the coast, considerably augmented, maintained a partial blockade of many American seaports. Several ships-of-war, entering the Chesapeake, cut off all ingress or egress for American vessels, and, landing parties at different points, did much damage, and kept the neighbouring country in a state of anxiety and alarm.

Upon the ocean, the credit of the American navy, notwithstanding some severe reverses, was fully maintained. The sloop-of-war *Hornet*, under Captain Lawrence, in the month of February, engaged and sunk the British brig *Peacock* of nearly equal force, off the coast of Demerara. After the latter had struck her flag, it was ascertained that she was settling fast. The sea was rough, and, although every exertion was made to save the crew, she went down with twelve men on board, three of whom were Americans, belonging to the *Hornet*.

Captain Lawrence was afterwards promoted to the command of the ill-fated *Chesapeake*, then lying in Boston harbour. On the 1st day of June, the British frigate *Shannon*, Captain Broke, appearing off the port, Lawrence got his vessel under weigh and made sail, to answer the implied challenge. The ships were of equal force, but the American frigate laboured under the disadvantage of having on board an ill-disciplined crew, and a deficiency of competent officers. An engagement—watched from shore with intense interest—took place late in the afternoon. The *Chesapeake*, partially crippled during a heavy fire at close-quarters, was carried by boarding, her commander lying, at the time, mortally wounded. While he retained possession of his faculties, he refused to order the

flag  
"De  
In  
after  
capt  
com  
the I  
of Ar  
by th  
from  
Many  
tection  
The  
while  
vessels  
ment, w  
were en  
for those  
Opera  
on the g  
small cra  
of Comm  
consisted  
sixty-thre  
on either  
better sel  
An eng  
open lake  
light, and  
exposed to  
enemy. I  
come up, a  
an open bo  
agara. Th  
brought up  
with such  
to surrender  
This victo  
instance of s  
of its results

flag to be struck, and among his last words, was the expression, "Don't give up the ship."

In the course of the summer, the American sloop-of-war *Argus*, after taking a great number of prizes in the British channel, was captured by the English sloop-of-war *Pelican*. Captain Porter, in command of the second class frigate *Essex*, did valuable service in the Pacific during the summer and autumn of 1812. The operations of American whalers had been interrupted, and rendered precarious by the general commission and arming as privateers of those vessels from Great Britain, that were engaged in a similar occupation. Many of the latter were made prizes by Porter, and effectual protection was extended to American shipping.

The *Essex* was attacked, in the month of December following, while at anchor in the neutral port of Valparaiso, by two British vessels of war, the *Phoebe* and *Cherub*, and, after a severe engagement, was compelled to strike. The enemy, having heavier guns, were enabled to keep up a destructive fire at a distance too great for those of the *Essex* to be effective.

Operations of far greater importance, meanwhile, had taken place on the great lakes. On Lake Erie a squadron of nine vessels, mostly small craft, carrying in all fifty-four guns, was put under command of Commodore Perry. The British fleet at the lake, under Barclay, consisted of six vessels, the whole number of guns on board being sixty-three. There was no great disparity in the number of men on either side, but those of the American fleet are said to have been better selected and more capable seamen.

An engagement took place, on the 10th of September, in the open lake, between Malden and Sandusky. The wind was very light, and Perry, advancing unsupported, in the *Lawrence*, was exposed to a heavy and disabling fire from the long guns of the enemy. His vessel was completely crippled before the others could come up, and the commodore was compelled to abandon her. In an open boat, exposed to a heavy fire, he went on board the *Niagara*. The wind having freshened, the whole squadron was soon brought up to support the larger vessels, and the action continued, with such energy and effect, that the British fleet was compelled to surrender.

This victory was no less a cause for national rejoicing as another instance of superiority upon the water than for the great importance of its results. The command of Lake Erie rendered practicable the

ERIE.—HAR-  
FRONTIER.  
-NEGOTIA-  
CANADA:  
OF THE  
: SEIZ-  
PUBLIC  
E.

British naval  
ained a partial  
s-of-war, enter-  
American ves-  
ch damage, and  
and alarm.

y, notwithstand-  
The sloop-of-war  
f February, en-  
equal force, off  
her flag, it was  
was rough, and,  
crew, she went  
were Americans,

the command of  
harbour. On the  
n Broke, appear-  
weigh and made  
s were of equal  
disadvantage of  
ciency of compe-  
ore with intense  
Chesapeake, par-  
was carried by  
ortally wounded  
used to order the

transportation of forces to any given point upon an extensive frontier, and made it equally imprevisible by the enemy. At the close of the month, Harrison and his army were conveyed across the lake to Malden, which was abandoned by Proctor at his approach.

The retreating army, pursued up Thames river, made a stand on the 5th of October, near Moravian town, above the forks. Including his Indian allies, led by Tecumseh, Proctor commanded a force of about two thousand eight hundred men; that of Harrison was rather inferior in numbers. The British were posted on the right bank, between the river and extensive swamps—the latter occupied by Indians. The attack was commenced by the charge of a mounted regiment under Colonel Johnson; the British line was broken, and a complete victory obtained by the Americans. The Indians in the swamp held their ground until the fall of their leader—who, it is said, was shot with a pistol by Colonel Johnson.

The greater portion of the British regular force surrendered, as prisoners of war. The great north-western Indian confederacy was broken up by this event, and the separate tribes sent in deputations suing for peace. Treaties were subsequently ratified with most of them.

During the autumn, extensive preparations were made at the north for an attack on Montreal. Dearborn had been succeeded in the chief command by General Wilkinson. Much difference of opinion existed between the latter and the secretary of war, General Armstrong, and to this circumstance the ill-success of the expedition has been partially attributed. A force of seven or eight thousand men, concentrated at Grenadier island, was to descend the St. Lawrence and cooperate with a division of four thousand, under General Hampton, ordered to march from Plattsburgh, on Lake Champlain. The advance of this latter portion of the army was checked by a few militia, whose force was overrated by the American general; and, the approach of winter adding to the difficulties of a campaign, a retreat was ordered, and the army returned to its former quarters.

Wilkinson pushed down the St. Lawrence, greatly annoyed by the enemy, who followed in the wake of his flotilla with gun-boats, and who occupied every convenient stand, on the shore, from which they might command the passage. It became necessary to land a large detachment, to follow the course of the river by land, and open a way for the boats. On the 11th of November, quite a sever-

engagement took place between this division and a body of the enemy, at Chrysler's farm, in which the Americans lost between three and four hundred men.

Arriving at St. Regis, Wilkinson learned the failure of Hampton's attempt at forming a junction with the main force. The lateness of the season was unfavourable for further action, and, although Montreal was defended by a very small force, it was decided to abandon the expedition. The main army went into winter-quarters at French mills.

The frontier, left unprotected by the withdrawal of the regular troops from the garrisoned posts, and by the expiration of the term of service of militia and volunteers, suffered severely from the ravages of the enemy. General M'Clure, compelled to abandon Fort George, on the Niagara, set fire to the village of Newark, which was reduced to ashes, and its inhabitants were left without a shelter, in the inclement month of December. His instructions were to take this course, if necessary for the defence of the fort; but the circumstances warranted no such outrage, and, in retaliation, the Indian allies of the British were encouraged to plunder and lay waste the frontier villages on the American side. On the 30th of December, the towns of Black Rock and Buffalo were entirely destroyed by an invading party of the enemy.

Meanwhile, the machinations of Tecumseh had produced their full effect at the south. The formidable Creek confederacy had commenced open war upon the white settlers. The first important blow struck, was at Fort Mimms, on the Alabama river, in the Tensaw settlement, which was sacked on the 30th of August, by a large body of Indians, under the noted chief Weatherford. The garrison, one hundred and sixty in number, with more than a hundred inhabitants of the neighbourhood, of every age and sex, who had sought protection at the fort, were nearly all killed in the fight, or perished in the burning buildings.

A large force was raised in Tennessee, and put under command of General Jackson, for the purpose of checking the ravages of the Indians. Marching into the Creek territory in the month of October, Jackson beat up the enemy's quarters at Tallusahatchee creek, a tributary of the Coosa, and relieved a post occupied by friendly Indians at Talladega, further down the stream, destroying several hundred of the hostile party. In other engagements, the Creeks were worsted, but their spirit seemed unconquerable, and, as they



had formed an idea that no quarter would be given them, they fought with great courage and desperation.

Little was accomplished during the winter, on account of the extreme difficulty of maintaining an army in the wilderness. The skill and energy displayed by General Jackson, in preserving discipline, and securing supplies for his troops under these trying circumstances, gained him even greater reputation than his brilliant achievements in actual warfare. In the month of March, 1814, about one thousand of the Creek warriors fortified themselves at the Great Horse-Shoe-Bend, in the Tallapoosie.

On the 27th, they were surrounded and attacked by a vastly superior force of whites and friendly Indians. They fought with fury to the last, firing—perhaps through ignorance—upon the bearer of a flag, who was sent forward by Jackson to propose a surrender. More than half their number were killed in the attack; great numbers perished in the river, and but a handful of the whole number effected their escape. Very few of the men were taken prisoners, but, after the battle, several hundred women and children were secured. The various tribes, after this event, were ready to conclude a peace, and to confine themselves within their territory, eastward from the Coosa.

At the winter session of congress, 1813-14, the exigencies of the war were met by the adoption of new schemes for procuring funds. Direct taxes, loans, additional duties, &c., were resorted to. The war-party, still in the ascendency, favoured the views of the president, and, upon his recommendation, an embargo was laid upon all goods, produce, &c., which could be of service to the enemy. Importations of British goods were also expressly prohibited.

Early in January, a proposition to treat for peace, was received from England, and commissioners were appointed to proceed to Gottingen for the purpose. Previous offers of mediation, made by the Emperor of Russia, had been repeatedly proposed to the British government, and as often rejected. Intelligence of Napoleon's reverses, brought over at the same time with the British peace embassy, was not without its influence, in fortifying the policy of pacific measures.

No military movements of importance, took place at the north during the winter and spring. Toward the close of March, General Wilkinson marched from Plattsburgh across the Canadian boundary, with a force of four thousand men, but the invasion resulted in

nothing but loss and defeat. He soon after resigned his commission, and was succeeded by General Izard.

At the instance of the American generals, Brown and Scott, a new army of invasion was collected in the vicinity of Niagara. Between three and four thousand men were transported across the river at Buffalo, on the night of July 2d, and after accomplishing the seizure of Fort Erie, pushed on towards Chippewa, in the immediate neighbourhood of the Falls, where a British army, of equal force, commanded by General Riall, lay encamped. A severe engagement took place on the 5th, in which the British were defeated, with a loss of five hundred men. Riall retreated to Burlington heights. A few weeks later he was joined by large additional forces from York, under General Drummond.

The American army, marching towards Queenstown, (July 25th,) encountered the enemy at Bridgewater, hard by the Falls of Niagara. Although the British had taken a position in which their artillery, posted upon a hill, could command the field, and although the day was nearly spent, the Americans commenced an attack without hesitation.

A regiment under Major Jessup, making a detour, came upon the rear of the enemy, while General Scott, with the advanced division of the army, attacked in front. The main force coming up, the battle became general, and a bloody and desperate conflict was waged through half the night, by the light of the moon. The British battery, which had at first proved terribly destructive, was gallantly stormed by Colonel Miller, with a battalion from the artillery corps. Possession of the hill was maintained against repeated assaults until the fighting ceased.

The Americans kept temporary possession of the field, and therefore claimed the victory. The loss on either side was heavy, amounting to seven or eight hundred. The British general Riall was wounded, and taken prisoner by Jessup's detachment. Generals Brown and Scott were both so severely wounded as to incapacitate them from present service, and General Ripley assumed command. Little advantage was gained in the engagement, further than as it inspired general confidence in the capacity of the American officers, and the bravery of the troops. The battle has commonly received its designation from the neighbouring locality of "Lundy's Lane." It was impossible to remove the cannon from the British battery, and they were therefore recovered upon the departure of the Americans.

The latter retreated to Fort Erie, where they strengthened their position in anticipation of siege by a superior force. The post was beset accordingly on the 4th of August, by General Drummond, with over four thousand men. On the 15th, an attempt to carry it by storm was signally repulsed. In September, General Brown reassumed command of the forces at Fort Erie, and, as the siege had continued for more than a month, and supplies were with difficulty to be procured, he attempted a sortie. So skillfully and boldly was the movement conducted, that the British guns were spiked, their magazines blown up, and some four or five hundred prisoners taken. The whole loss of the besiegers fell little short of a thousand men; that of the sallying party was about five hundred. Drummond shortly after drew off his forces.

Relieved from the burden of maintaining war upon the European continent, and with abundance of veteran troops, and a powerful navy, at liberty for transatlantic service, Great Britain commenced more directly offensive operations in America. A fleet commanded by Admiral Cochrane entered the Chesapeake, and, passing up Patuxent river, reached Benedict on the 10th of August (1814). Between four and five thousand troops, mostly trained in the school of continental service, were landed at this point, and, under command of General Ross, took up their line of march towards Washington.

As the army approached Marlborough, the American fleet of gun-boats, &c., lying at that place, was destroyed, to prevent its seizure by the enemy. General Winder, of Baltimore, who held command in that quarter, with a thousand regulars, and authority to call out the militia within a specified district, made what preparations were practicable to resist the British advance. The whole force that he was enabled to collect and arm, fell short of four thousand men, and these were in the most unserviceable and undisciplined condition—what stand could they be expected to make against a superior force of the "veterans of the Peninsula?"

The British march was unopposed, until the army, on the 24th, reached Bladensburgh, six miles from the capitol, on the East bank of the Potomac. Here the American forces were posted on the right bank, the bridge over the stream being commanded by several pieces of artillery, in charge of Commodore Barney, who was present with his corps of five hundred marines, before attached to the flotilla destroyed at Marlborough. This body of men fought bravely and obstinately, holding the enemy in check after the militia had

ened their  
e post was  
Drummond,  
to carry it  
eral Brown  
e siege had  
th difficulty  
boldly was  
piked, their  
oners taken.  
ousand men;  
Drummond

the European  
d a powerful  
a commenced  
t commanded  
t, passing up  
ugust (1814)  
n the school of  
nder command  
s Washington.  
rican fleet of  
to prevent its  
ore, who held  
and authority  
what prepara-  
e. The whole  
short of four  
ceable and un-  
pected to make  
insula?"  
y, on the 24th,  
the East bank  
posted on the  
nded by several  
who was pres-  
attached to the  
fought bravely  
the militia had



The latter retreated to Fort Erie, where they strengthened their position in anticipation of a siege by a superior force. The post was beset accordingly on the 4th of August, by General Drummond, with over four thousand men. On the 15th, an attempt to carry it by storm was signally repulsed. In September, General Brown reassumed command of the forces at Fort Erie, and, as the siege had continued for more than a month, and supplies were with difficulty to be procured, he attempted a sortie. So skillfully and boldly was the movement conducted, that the British guns were spiked, their magazines blown up, and some four or five hundred prisoners taken. The whole loss of the besiegers fell little short of a thousand men, that of the sallying party was about five hundred. Drummond shortly after drew off his forces.

Relieved from the burden of maintaining war upon the European continent, and with abundance of veteran troops, and a powerful navy at liberty for transatlantic service, Great Britain commenced more directly offensive operations in America. A fleet commanded by Admiral Cochrane entered the Chesapeake, and, passing to Patuxent river, reached Benedict on the 19th of August (1814). Between four and five thousand troops, mostly trained in the schools of continental service, were landed at this point, and, under command of General Ross, took up their line of march towards Washington.

As the army approached Marlborough, the American fleet of gun-boats, &c., lying at that place, was destroyed, to prevent its seizure by the enemy. General Winder, of Baltimore, who had command in that quarter, with a thousand regulars, and authority to call out the militia within a specified district, made what preparations were practicable to resist the British advance. The whole force that he was enabled to collect and arm, fell short of five thousand men, and those were in the most unserviceable and disciplined condition. "How could they be expected to resist against a superior force of veterans of the Peninsula?"

The British march was unopposed, and the army, on the 24th, reached Bladensburg, six miles from the capitol, on the East bank of the Potomac. Here the American forces were posted on the right bank, the bridge over the stream being commanded by several pieces of artillery, in charge of Commodore Barney, who was present with his corps of five hundred marines, before attached to the flotilla destroyed at Marlborough. This body of men fought brave and obstinately, holding the enemy in check after the night of

hened their  
 the post was  
 Drummond  
 pt to carry a  
 neral Brown  
 the siege had  
 with difficulty  
 and boldly wa  
 spiked, their  
 risoners take  
 thousand men,  
 Drummond

n the Europe  
 and a power  
 ain coman  
 ect comman  
 nd, passing  
 August 181  
 l in the schoo  
 under comma  
 rds Washing  
 perican fleet  
 l, to prevent  
 more, who b  
 s, and author  
 do what prep  
 ce. The wh  
 ll short of f  
 viccable and  
 expected to m  
 "singula?"  
 ny, on the 24  
 on the East b  
 e posted on  
 anded by sev  
 y, who was p  
 e attached to  
 n fought brav  
 r the north

BURNED BY THE ENGLISH



be  
the  
par

to  
the  
cap  
This  
stige  
that  
in r  
Park  
Or

—no  
draw  
was e  
havin  
where  
provis

The  
armam  
warned  
North  
the cit  
men.

detach  
compel  
melée  
Brooke  
Owin

gallant  
British  
city app  
attempt  
the 13th

been routed and dispersed. Their flank was finally turned, and they were compelled to join in a general retreat. The loss on the part of the Americans was but about fifty in killed and wounded.

Abandoning the capitol to the enemy, Winder drew off his forces to the heights of Georgetown, and, on the evening of the day of the battle, the British army entered Washington, and burned the capitol, the president's house, and most of the public buildings. This malicious destruction of valuable libraries, records, &c., is stigmatized by one of their own writers as "a piece of Vandalism that covered the expedition with disgrace;" it was excused as being in retaliation for the burning, by the Americans, of the Canadian Parliament House at York.

On the night of the 25th, after accomplishing some further injury—not entirely confined to public property—the invading army was drawn off, and marched back towards Benedict. A reëmbarkation was effected on the 30th. Meantime, some of the larger vessels having entered the Potomac, made their way up to Alexandria; where all the shipping in port was seized, and a large amount of provisions and valuable stores was exacted from the inhabitants.

The vicinity of Baltimore was the next scene of operations by the armament in the Chesapeake. The inhabitants of that city, forewarned of danger, were prepared for defence. Ross landed at North Point, at the entrance of Patapsco river, fifteen miles from the city, on the 12th of September, with a force of five thousand men. The defence was conducted by General Smith. An advanced detachment of three thousand men, under General Striker, was compelled to retire before the invading columns; but in the first *melee* Ross was killed, and the command devolved on Colonel Brooke.

Owing to the shallowness of the entrance of the harbour, and the gallant defence of the protecting forts, M'Henry and Covington, the British fleet was unable to cooperate with the land forces, and the city appearing too well defended to render an attack advisable, the attempt was abandoned. The troops reëmbarked on the night of the 13th, and shortly after, the fleet sailed for the South.



## CHAPTER XIV.

OPERATIONS ON THE COAST OF MAINE.—ATTACK ON PLATTSBURGH: BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN.—NAVAL AFFAIRS: LAFITTE.—NEGOTIATION AT GHENT.—THE HARTFORD CONVENTION.—TREATY OF PEACE.—JACKSON'S DEFENCE OF NEW ORLEANS: BATTLE OF JANUARY 8.—NAVAL ENGAGEMENTS.

IN pursuance of their plans of offence, the British made a descent, in September, (1814), upon the coast of Maine. They took nominal possession of all the eastern district, and seized upon several towns and villages on Penobscot bay; but the most substantial injury inflicted upon the Americans in this quarter was the destruction of the frigate John Adams. This vessel was pursued up Penobscot river by a strong detachment, and, after an attempt at defence, was set on fire, by order of her commander, to prevent her falling into the enemy's hands.

At the same time, Plattsburgh, on Champlain, was threatened by a powerful array of land and naval forces. The former consisted of twelve thousand disciplined troops, mostly veteran soldiers, commanded by Governor George Prevost; the latter under Commodore Downie, numbered sixteen vessels, the largest carrying thirty-seven guns; the whole flotilla, including gun-boats, mounted nearly one hundred guns, and had on board about a thousand men.

Plattsburgh was defended by about six thousand troops—regulars and militia from adjoining states—and by the squadron under Commodore M'Donough, which was anchored at the entrance of the harbour. The American fleet was slightly inferior to that of the British, both in number of vessels, of guns, and of men on board. The Saranac river divided the opposing land forces; the British had been occupied for some days previous to the general engagement, strengthening their position on the left bank.

On the morning of September 11, an attack was commenced by the enemy both by land and water. M'Donough's squadron, lying in a favourable position, had an advantage at the commencement of

the  
cip  
pla  
an  
the  
ves  
gun  
Brit  
less  
elev  
exar  
their  
in se  
Me  
with  
naval  
ended  
wound  
thousa  
Dur  
the sea  
Kingst  
were t  
season.  
two Br  
some u  
Peacoc  
successf  
Anot  
ber, by  
ment o  
distance  
laws pr  
they we  
number  
ble tales  
Ten ves  
deserted  
About  
to treat f

the engagement, which was maintained until its close. The principal encounter, by which the fortune of the day was decided, took place between the *Saratoga*, the American flag ship, and the *Confiance*, commanded by Downie. Pouring in a succession of broadsides, the guns of either, on the exposed side, were mostly silenced. Both vessels then attempted to take new positions, by which their other guns might be made available. The *Saratoga* succeeded; but the British ship, failing to accomplish the intended movement, lay helplessly exposed to a raking fire, and was forced to strike. Between eleven and twelve o'clock, the whole fleet having followed this example, the engagement ceased. The gun-boats, however, made their escape, while the attention of the Americans was occupied in securing their prizes.

Meanwhile, the land division, attempting to ford the Saranac, met with a severe and decided repulse; and upon the conclusion of the naval engagement, a retreat was ordered. The expedition thus ended in signal failure and defeat. The loss of the British in killed, wounded, prisoners, and deserters, is said to have exceeded two thousand men.

During the autumn, the British navy obtained entire command of the sea-coast; and in the Ontario, a large ship, recently fitted out at Kingston, kept possession of the lake. The *Wasp* and the *Peacock* were the last American armed vessels upon service abroad at this season. The first of these, after taking many prizes, among others, two British national vessels, foundered at sea, or went to pieces on some unknown coast, as she was never afterwards heard from. The *Peacock*, eluding the blockade, came safe to port, having made a successful cruise, and captured a number of merchant vessels.

Another piece of service was accomplished in the month of October, by an expedition under Commodore Patterson, against a settlement of French rovers, who harboured at Baratania bay, a short distance westward from the mouth of the Mississippi. These outlaws professed to cruise exclusively against Spanish commerce, but they were considered as little other than pirates. One of their number was the noted Lafitte, concerning whom as many improbable tales have been told as those connected with the piracies of Kidd. Ten vessels, belonging to this fraternity, were seized, after being deserted by their crews.

About this time arrived reports from the commissioners appointed to treat for peace. Negotiations had been opened at Ghent, but the

demands of Great Britain were too extravagant to require a moment's consideration. Among other requisitions, the United States were called upon to forego any future acquisition of Indian lands at the north-west; to abstain from providing for frontier defence by forts, or a flotilla on the lakes; to cede a portion of the north-eastern territory to Great Britain; and to give up their privileges respecting the coast fishery.

The friends of the administration, at this juncture, were alarmed and indignant at a movement in New England, which threatened a more serious rupture between different sections of the Union than any that had preceded it. In response to a call by the legislature of Massachusetts, delegates were appointed from all the New England states—in Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island, chosen directly by the legislatures—to meet at Hartford on the 15th of December, for the purpose of devising and proposing such amendments to the constitution as might secure rights of representation, &c., to the northern states, equal to such as were enjoyed by those of the south, and for general consultation upon the "danger to which the eastern section of the Union" was "exposed by the course of the war."

Notwithstanding a vast amount of obloquy, and wide-spread accusation of treasonable designs, the convention met accordingly, and, after a secret session of between two and three weeks, the delegates submitted an address to the New England legislatures, setting forth the conclusions at which they had arrived. These, in addition to a recitation of grievances, related principally to the disputed question respecting the power of the federal government over the militia; and to the measures requisite for local defence against the enemy. The proposed constitutional amendments were chiefly advisory—that the power of congress in respect to warlike measures should be curtailed by the requirement of a two-thirds vote, and that slaves should be excluded in the representative computation. The general tone of the document was more moderate and less treasonable than had been anticipated.

The cessation of war in Europe having removed all substantial occasion for further collision of interest between Great Britain and the United States, the former abated her demands, and a treaty of peace was signed at Ghent in the month of December. The claims respecting impressment and right of search were left undecided, as only relating to a state of war which it were unnecessary to anticipate; privileges formerly enjoyed by the United States' fishermen

on the British American coast, and a right of navigation in the Mississippi, before secured to Great Britain, were abandoned; in all other respects the parties remained *in statu quo*.

This joyful intelligence did not reach the United States until February, a period when the whole nation was rejoicing over the most brilliant piece of success that had attended its arms on land, throughout the war. In the month of November, General Jackson, being in occupation of Pensacola, temporarily seized from the Spanish authorities on account of the landing of British forces in that quarter, obtained information of an intended attack upon New Orleans. After forwarding orders for raising militia, and for other defensive preparations, he repaired thither in person, and arrived, with a small force of regulars, on the 1st of December.

With all the ardour and energy of his character, he engaged in the difficult work of organizing an army, from materials the most incongruous and ill-suited to regular military operations. Men of different nations and colour, utterly unused to the discipline of a camp; convicts from the prisons; a portion of those pirates or privateers previously ousted from Baratavia; were marshalled and put in such condition for service as time and circumstances would admit. The work of throwing up fortifications was carried on with unintermitting ardour.

In the midst of these preparations, and before the arrival of troops expected from Kentucky and Tennessee, upon which the general placed his chief reliance, a British fleet appeared at the entrance of Lake Borgne. This was the squadron recently occupying the Chesapeake, together with other vessels from England, bringing over large reinforcements of troops. The whole force, including sailors and marines, exceeded fifteen thousand men. Most of the troops had been disciplined and inured to service in the continental war. The American flotilla of gun-boats on the lake made a gallant defence, but was finally captured, and the main British force, passing up in boats, effected a landing at the western shore.

The advanced division of two thousand men, after gaining the bank of the Mississippi, fifteen miles below the city, commenced its march up the river. On the night of December 23d, a spirited attack was made by the Americans upon this detachment, a schooner in the river opening fire at the same time that the engagement commenced on shore. The British, attaining a defensible position, finally maintained their ground, and the assailants drew off.

Reinforcements had meanwhile arrived from Tennessee and Mississippi, until the force at New Orleans amounted to about five thousand men. The emergency of the occasion, and the disturbed condition of the city, induced Jackson to proclaim martial law, and to take such measures as should prevent the legislative assembly from counteracting his plans of defence by any offers of capitulation. The governor, Claibourne, had submitted to Jackson's authority, and, entering with zeal into the plans of the general, he anticipated the danger of any such movement, by a forcible dissolution of the assembly.

The day following the first engagement, Jackson had taken a position some four miles below the city, on the left bank, where a trench was carried across the entire strip of dry land from the river bank down the gradual declivity to the swamp. The embankment was enlarged and strengthened by piles of movables, cotton bales, &c. An armed vessel, lying in the river, was so stationed as to flank the ditch and command the approach from below: works were also erected on the opposite bank of the Mississippi.

The enemy attempted to storm these fortifications on the 28th, and failing in that, they erected batteries to play upon the American works. A heavy cannonade on both sides, on the 1st of January (1815), resulted in the silencing of the British guns. On the 4th, reinforcements arrived from Kentucky.

An interval of a few days was then spent in preparations for a decisive assault. A canal was cut by which a number of boats were transported from the lake to the river, for the purpose of carrying over a detachment to the right bank. This was effected on the night of the 7th, and on the morning of the following day, the main army, under command of Sir Edward Pakenham, assaulted the American entrenchments. The desperate character of an attack, at such fearful disadvantage, is evident from the result. The Americans, firing from covert, lost less than twenty men in killed and wounded, while the loss of the enemy was not far from two thousand men. Among the slain was General Pakenham, who fell leading his men to the charge.

The detachment on the right bank, in the full tide of success, having driven from their entrenchments and defeated a greatly superior force, was recalled, when the fortune of the day was decided, and the whole army, retreating unmolested to the lake, reembarked. The only success that attended this expedition was the subsequent

WAR V  
PRES  
OF  
CO  
T

ALMO  
Britain,  
late out  
clared a  
Decatur-  
patched  
capture

capture of Fort Bowyer, at Mobile, which, being garrisoned by less than four hundred men, surrendered on the 18th of February.

Several naval engagements took place before news of the peace could be generally circulated. On the 15th of January the frigate President, commanded by Decatur, attempting to get to sea from New York, was intercepted by the British blockading squadron, and after a sharp engagement with the Endymion, a frigate of forty guns, was compelled to strike by the advance of other vessels to the support of the enemy. The Constitution, in the month of February, made prize in a single action of the Cyane and the Levant, carrying respectively twenty-four and eighteen guns. This was accomplished by adroit manœuvring, so as to keep beyond reach of their guns, while her own, of heavier metal, could tell with destructive effect. The Hornet and Peacock each captured a British national vessel. The Nautilus, taken by the latter on the 30th of June, 1815, was immediately restored, upon communication of intelligence, satisfactory to the commander of the Hornet, that peace had been concluded.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

WAR WITH ALGIERS.—TARIFF: NATIONAL BANK.—MONROE, PRESIDENT.—JACKSON'S SEMINOLE CAMPAIGN.—CESSION OF FLORIDA BY SPAIN.—ADMISSION OF MISSOURI: THE COMPROMISE.—MONROE'S SECOND TERM.—ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.—ELECTION OF ANDREW JACKSON.—THE TARIFF.—NULLIFICATION IN SOUTH CAROLINA.—THE UNITED STATES' BANK.—INDIAN REMOVALS.—BLACK HAWK.—THE CHEROKEES.

ALMOST immediately after the conclusion of peace with Great Britain, the attention of congress being directed by the president to late outrages upon our commerce by Barbary cruisers, war was declared against Algiers. A squadron of ten vessels, commanded by Decatur—to be followed by another under Bainbridge—was dispatched to the Mediterranean in the month of May following. The capture of two armed vessels, one of them being the largest in his

navy, so alarmed the dey, that he at once concluded a treaty by which the United States were for ever freed from the disgraceful payment of tribute, and all American prisoners were freed without ransom. His vessels were gratuitously returned to him.

From Algiers, Decatur sailed for Tunis and Tripoli, both of which nations were compelled to furnish indemnity for the sufferance of capture by the British of United States' vessels, while in their ports. His whole mission accomplished, the commodore joined Bainbridge at Gibraltar.

At the next session of congress, 1815-16, a long and vehement discussion arose respecting the establishment of the new tariff. All the opposing interests of the producer and manufacturer were brought to bear upon the question. As finally settled, a judicious discrimination was made between those articles which could be produced or manufactured in perfection at home, and those, being at the same time articles of necessity, for which we must still be partially or wholly dependent upon foreign nations.

A new national bank, upon specie-paying principles, and having a capital of thirty-five millions, mostly to be subscribed for in United States' stocks, was also established at this session. The Union was extended, toward the close of the year, by the admission of Indiana, as a separate state. The presidential election again recurring, James Monroe, secretary of state under Madison, was elected to the highest office, and Daniel D. Tompkins to that of vice-president. The inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1817.

During the year, additional treaties were effected with most of the western Indians, by which their title was extinguished to large districts, at this time fast filling up with an enterprising population from the east. At the south, trouble was already brewing between the Seminoles and the white settlers. Spain still retaining her title to both East and West Florida, the chastisement of the Indians by pursuing them into a foreign jurisdiction became a delicate matter, but the necessities of the case seeming to require some action, General Jackson, with a large force of Tennessee volunteers, was dispatched against them. The operations of the campaign in regard to the conquest of Indian territory, will be found briefly recapitulated in a subsequent chapter. A high handed procedure of the general, in the trial by court martial, and execution of two British subjects, Arbuthnot and Ambrister, for inciting the Indians to war, and lending them aid and assistance, has been heavily censured. The seizure of

the Sp  
Florid  
sion fe  
The la

Chan  
acts we  
Seminol  
finally s  
question  
with Sp  
apparen  
the strug  
onies. T  
during th  
of East  
ening the  
slave trad

A treat  
with Spai  
obtaining  
respect to  
prosperity  
civilization  
had been  
the second  
the west ha  
berland ro  
ments mad  
of western  
improvement  
enterprise,  
light-houses  
isfactorily d  
The most  
in 1820 and  
souri into th  
amendment  
as the condi  
entertained,  
that had yet  
Vo

the Spanish capital, Pensacola, and the fort of St. Marks, in West Florida, also accomplished during this winter campaign, gave occasion for much injurious comment abroad upon American policy. The latter event took place early in 1818.

Charges of having exceeded his authority by these unwarrantable acts were brought against Jackson, and the whole subject of the Seminole campaign was debated at length in congress. He was finally sustained by a decided majority in his conduct of the affairs in question. The desire of government to maintain peaceful relations with Spain, and to acquire the Floridas by amicable treaty, had been apparent from the whole policy pursued by the United States during the struggle of the former country with her revolted American colonies. The forces of the United States had also been employed, during the year preceding, to expel from Amelia island, on the coast of East Florida, a band of lawless adventurers, who, while threatening the Spanish possessions on the main, were engaged in the slave trade, in smuggling, and in general depredation.

A treaty, providing for the cession of Florida, was finally concluded with Spain toward the close of the year 1820, the United States thus obtaining an acquisition to its territory of greater importance in respect to position than to intrinsic value. Meanwhile, increasing prosperity attended upon the enterprise of individuals in extending civilization at the west and south. Mississippi, Illinois, and Alabama had been consecutively admitted to the Union—the first in 1817, the second in 1818, and the third in 1819. Communication with the west had been rendered practicable by the opening of the Cumberland road, a national work, carried out in consequence of arrangements made with the state of Ohio, as a consideration for the cession of western lands. The power of congress in respect to internal improvements, other than those necessarily connected with public enterprise, as the construction of military roads, the erection of light-houses, the improvement of harbours, &c., has never been satisfactorily decided.

The most important question brought before congress at its sessions in 1820 and 1821, was upon the admission of the territory of Missouri into the Union as a sovereign state. The introduction of an amendment providing for the exclusion of slavery within its limits, as the condition upon which the application for admission should be entertained, gave occasion for the most excited and angry discussion that had yet resulted from any issue taken between the north and



the south. The matter was finally adjusted, by admission of the new state, with no further restriction than that no act should be passed by its legislature in contravention of the constitutional rights of citizens emigrating thither from other states. This proviso was called for by a clause in a constitution formed by the people of the territory, providing for the future exclusion of free negroes and mulattoes.

On the other hand, those opposed to the extension of southern influence and institutions, succeeded, by a large majority, in appending to the bill a proviso that thenceforth slavery should be prohibited in the territory of the United States lying north of the parallel of thirty-six degrees thirty minutes, the northern boundary of the present state of Arkansas. The separation of Maine from Massachusetts, and its admission to the Union was effected during the discussion of the Missouri question.

Mr. Monroe, shortly after his entry upon a second official term, in 1821, appointed Andrew Jackson to the office of governor of the new territory of Florida. In dealing with the Spanish officials whom he was called upon to supersede, the proceedings of the general were, as usual, rather high handed. The keys of the capitol at Pensacola were formally delivered up by Jose Cavalla, the Spanish governor, on the seventh of July; a refusal or neglect on his part to deliver over certain public documents led to his temporary arrest by order of Jackson.

The principal political events during the closing term of Monroe's administration, were the recognition of the independence of the republics of South America; a treaty with England for the more effectual suppression of the slave trade; a settlement of the boundary on the Pacific, which should limit future settlements by Russia of the United States; and a protective modification of the tariff. The last measure was not carried without vehement opposition.

In 1824, the venerable La Fayette, upon express invitation extended by congress, visited the United States, where he spent nearly an entire year in making a general tour of the country. Throughout his journey he met with the most enthusiastic reception, and, ere his departure, he received substantial tokens of the gratitude of the nation, in the grant of a township of land, and the sum of two hundred thousand dollars, by appropriation of congress.

The ascendancy of republican principles, as opposed to the doctrines of the original federal party, was sufficiently evinced by the

triumphant election of three successive republican presidents, and the retention of office by each of them, for a term of eight years. At the election in 1824, new elements entered into the political controversy. Candidates were brought forward from the four great sections of the Union: New England was represented by John Quincy Adams, son of the second president; Virginia by Mr. Crawford; the south by Andrew Jackson; and the west by Henry Clay. Adams and Jackson were the prominent candidates, but, as neither obtained a majority, the election devolved, a second time, upon the house of representatives. The former was chosen president, although Jackson had received a larger number of popular votes.

During the four years of Adams' administration, the country remained at peace with all foreign nations. The messages to congress and other public addresses of the president, excited general admiration by their ability, and the dignity, integrity, and firmness which they exhibited. In accordance with principles set forth in his inaugural address, President Adams displayed great moderation in the exercise of his powers of removal, considering it a matter of gross impropriety that the offices of government should be bestowed as rewards for party services, or as mere tokens of personal favour.

Toward the close of this administration, the revival of the dispute respecting a protective tariff renewed all the former antagonism between the north and the south. The law passed relative to this subject, was finally so altered and amended as to favour the interests of the manufacturing states. The presidential election, recurring at this period, gave occasion for a display of party violence and animosity seldom before witnessed in America. The result was the choice of Andrew Jackson for president, and of John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, for vice-president. The inauguration took place March 4th, 1829.

A writer in Lardner's Cyclopædia, says of this result, "Jackson had been the rude soldier; ever ready to outstep the bounds of legality; fierce in his manners and declarations; breathing war and defiance. The fears that his election would prove the signal, not only of hostilities with foreign powers, but usurpation or violence at home, were general; yet the same popular breath that wafted Jackson to the presidency, impressed upon him at the same time so strong a sense of his duty, that metal in the furnace could not take a newer or softer temper than the new president." That he had,

however, lost nothing of his former firmness, is evident from the whole course of his administration.

The late amendment in the tariff produced great excitement and opposition throughout the southern states. South Carolina took the lead in denouncing the alleged partiality of the system, and in maintaining the principles of a forcible assertion of rights on the part of those states aggrieved by its operation. The speech of Hayne, in the United States senate, upon this topic, called forth from the great orator and statesman, Daniel Webster, a reply which has ever been considered one of his ablest and most forcible efforts.

When this feeling finally broke out into an open determination, on the part of the state of South Carolina, as expressed by a convention called by a majority of its electors, to resist the authority of the United States in the collection of revenues, the president took a firm and decided position. By his proclamation of December 10th, 1832, he expressed a fixed determination to fulfil the duties of the executive, by carrying out the laws of the United States at all hazards. At the same time, no unnecessary violence of language was made use of, but the state of South Carolina was called upon in persuasive and moderate tones to preclude the necessity for coercive measures, by a voluntary renunciation of the treasonable doctrines recently made manifest.

Immediate preparations were commenced for warlike operations—should such prove inevitable—by garrisoning and strengthening the forts at the entrance of the harbour of Charleston. The party in South Carolina opposed to the attempted nullification of the laws of the United States, being a large minority, made renewed exertions, at this crisis, to avert the threatened calamity. A modification of the tariff, introduced and carried in congress by Mr. Clay, by way of compromise, allayed the angry feeling at the south, and put an end to threats of secession.

Jackson was reelected at the close of his first term, Martin Van Buren being, at the same time, chosen vice-president. During the whole period of his retention of office, the credit of the country was maintained with foreign nations. In July, 1831, an arrangement, long postponed, was concluded with France, by which a specified indemnity was secured for former depredations upon American commerce. The most important domestic transactions of this administration related to Indian affairs. Those which aroused the greatest

degree of party strife were connected with the proceedings of the president concerning the United States Bank.

Deeming this institution, if not of unconstitutional inception, at least a dangerous agent for the management of fiscal concerns, he made use of the veto power to annul the action of congress granting a renewal of its charter. In the year following, (1833), the president ordered a withdrawal of the public funds from this bank, then their place of deposit; they were subsequently intrusted to certain state banks—"pet banks," as they were denominated by the opposition. In carrying out this measure, during a recess of congress, Jackson removed from the office of secretary of the treasury, Mr. Duane, who had declined to second his views, and appointed Mr. Taney. A vote of censure was passed by the senate relative to this proceeding on the part of the executive, but was afterwards expunged, (January 16th, 1837.)

To the president's hostility towards the bank, many have attributed its ultimate downfall, and, in no small measure, the commercial crisis which gave so ruinous—but perhaps beneficial—a check to the speculative mania of the period. The effect of the failure of that institution, has, doubtless, been exaggerated, and, for the cause, we must look rather to the misconduct of its managers, and to immense losses sustained by the refusal, upon various prettexts, of several states to make good their liabilities.

The subject of the removal of the Indian tribes to lands westward of the Mississippi, was long a matter of great difficulty, and, in the districts where these races were located, of engrossing interest. The standing ground of contention was a disavowal by the Indians of the authority of those chiefs who undertook to treat in behalf of the tribes. In 1831, a portion of the tribe of Sacs, of Illinois, headed by their chief, Black Hawk, refused to remove from their settlements on Rock river. They were expelled by force, although without bloodshed, but, in the year following, numbers of them returned to their old quarters.

Blood was first shed by the whites—it appears, upon very insufficient occasion; and, the war once commenced, Black Hawk and his warriors were signally successful in several skirmishes. Finally, worn out by fatigue, hard fare, and exposure, they were cut off and mercilessly massacred by a large force, under General Atkinson. Black Hawk made his escape, but subsequently surrendered himself to the United States' authorities. He was detained as a hostage

until June, 1833, when he was set at liberty. In company with other Indian chiefs, he visited many of the eastern cities, every where exciting much attention and curiosity.

Many of the southern tribes were induced to emigrate peaceably; the greatest difficulty was in dealing with the Cherokees and Seminoles. The former, to the number of about eighteen thousand, were mostly located in the northern part of Georgia. They had made great advances in civilization, and were governed by a legislation of their own. The United States had stipulated, in 1802, with the state of Georgia, to extinguish the title of the Cherokees to lands within that jurisdiction, "as early as the same could be peaceably obtained upon reasonable terms."

Efforts to effect a removal of the tribe had been partially successful, but the Georgia legislature, impatient at delay, in 1824, passed sundry acts—pronounced unconstitutional by many able jurists—encroaching upon the rights and personal privileges of the Indians. Finding their position insecure, a large party of the Cherokees, headed by Major Ridge, favoured an emigration of the whole nation. Those of this opinion attended a council, called in 1835, and concluded a treaty with J. T. Schermerhorn, commissioner on the part of the United States, by which it was agreed that, upon the receipt of reasonable compensation for the losses necessarily sustained upon removal, the whole tribe should emigrate westward of the Mississippi.

A military force was called into requisition to compel submission to the terms of this treaty; but the Indians, although denying the authority of those who had undertaken to act for the tribe, made no overt resistance. The Georgian Cherokees, removed to the western territory, have continued to prosper, pursuing the arts of agriculture, and improving in civilization and education. The Choctaws, Chickasaws, and Creeks, occupying separate tracts assigned them west of the Mississippi, have also, to a greater or less extent, adopted the customs of the whites.

THE  
DIA  
—  
0

FR  
the ter  
ued a  
bloody  
tunate  
suits w  
warfare  
Acco  
tinued  
were no  
From S  
among  
Florida,  
thy miss  
in their  
At th  
tribes of  
Appalac  
overrun  
lina, the  
southwa  
derers").  
the white  
plantatio  
and out  
of the ces  
ishing se

## CHAPTER XVI.

THE SEMINOLE WAR.—EARLY HISTORY OF THE FLORIDA INDIANS.—WAR OF 1818.—INDIAN TREATY OF 1823: OF 1832.—REFUSAL OF THE SEMINOLES TO REMOVE.—DESTRUCTION OF DADE'S DETACHMENT.—MILITARY OPERATIONS OF GENERALS SCOTT AND JESSUP.—UNSATISFACTORY RESULTS OF NEGOTIATION.—EXPEDITIONS OF COLONELS TAYLOR AND HARNEY.—GRADUAL CESSATION OF HOSTILITIES.—RECENT DIFFICULTIES.

FROM the time of the conquest by De Soto, to the acquisition of the territory of Florida by the United States, the peninsula continued a theatre for scenes of desultory but ferocious warfare. In the bloody contests between the French and Spanish settlers, the unfortunate aborigines were ruinously involved; their agricultural pursuits were interrupted, and their numbers were greatly reduced by warfare, and the want attendant upon their unsettled condition.

According to their usual custom, the Spaniards, while they continued to oppress and destroy the original proprietors of the soil, were not wanting in endeavours to promote their spiritual welfare. From St. Augustine, numbers of zealous ecclesiastics were sent forth among the Indians. Both within the limits of the present state of Florida, and far in the wilderness of the north and west, these worthy missionaries devoted their lives to the instruction of the natives in their religious faith, and in the arts of civilization.

At the commencement of the eighteenth century, the principal tribes of Florida were the hostile nations of the Yemassee and the Appaiachees; but after the northern portion of the peninsula was overrun by the invading forces of Governor Moore, of South Carolina, these reduced and scattered natives united and moved farther southward. From this period they were known as Seminoles ("wanderers"). Causes of quarrel continued to exist between them and the white settlers of the border: fugitive slaves from the northern plantations found an asylum among the Indians, and mutual wrongs and outrages kept alive the old feelings of hostility. At the period of the cession of Florida to the United States, the Indians had flourishing settlements in West Florida, particularly upon the St. Marks

and Oscilla rivers, and in the vicinity of the lake of Miccosukie. Their inroads had become so frequent and dangerous, that it was determined to break up their quarters in this region, and in March of 1818, these settlements were laid waste by an army of several thousand men, under General Jackson, and the inhabitants were driven to East Florida and into the interior. Five years later, on the 18th of September, 1823, a treaty, known as the treaty of Moultrie creek, was effected by United States' commissioners with upwards of thirty of the Seminole chiefs, the principal provisions of which were for confining the Indians to a specified district in the interior. Mutual complaints were still made by the Indians and frontier whites of reciprocal injuries, and the removal of the Seminoles from Florida was strenuously advocated.

In 1832, on the 8th of May, another conference was held by United States' agents with about fifteen of the Indian chiefs, at Payne's landing, on the Ocklawaha river. A grant of lands west of the Mississippi was promised by the United States, together with a pecuniary compensation for the loss attendant upon the abandonment of their old settlements, if the Indians would consent to remove; an offer which the Seminole chiefs accepted in behalf of their people, conditionally upon the new lands proving acceptable upon examination, by some of their own emissaries. The removal was to take place in three years' time. The nation at large was averse to this treaty, and as the time for its completion drew near, no disposition was evinced to abide by it. The warriors, denying the authority of the chiefs who had undertaken to bind them, or dissatisfied with the report of the deputation, commenced a systematic purchase and accumulation of arms and military stores, with the determination to maintain possession of the homes of their forefathers.

Open hostilities commenced in the month of October, 1835, when two Indians were killed in a fray near Miccosukie. Their death was revenged by the murder of the mail carrier between Tampa Bay and Fort King, whose mangled body was found, shortly after, upon the road between the stations. The disposition of the Indians was further manifested by their putting to death two chiefs, named John Hicks and Charley Amathla, who had favoured the treaty of Payne's landing. Prominent among the belligerent party, was the young quadroon, Osceola, commonly called by the name of his supposed father, an Englishman, named Powel.

The numbers and warlike character of the Seminoles, seem to

have been greatly underrated, and the lamentable result of the first important engagement excited universal astonishment. Major Dade, with more than one hundred men, including a company of United States' infantry, set out from Tampa Bay, in the month of December, to join the forces of General Clinch, at Fort King, in the interior. Not far from the forks of the Ouithlacochee, the command was beset by a large body of Indians, led by Micanopy, the principal Seminole chief, and his brother-in-law, Jumper. The troops defended themselves with great resolution and bravery, and succeeded in repelling the enemy, and in erecting a slight barricade of pine-logs; but their opponents were in sufficient force to be able to surround and pick them off at their leisure, firing from behind the trees and from their lurking places among the wire-grass. Having, as they supposed, destroyed the entire company, the Indians retired; but shortly afterward a party of negroes arrived at the spot on horseback, and finished the murderous work by knocking the wounded men on the head. Only three of the whole detachment ever reached a place of safety: these had been left for dead upon the field.

The war had now fairly commenced, and the destruction of isolated and exposed plantations speedily followed. Various skirmishes took place, and on the 31st of the month, Osceola, at the head of about six hundred Indians, attacked a body of two hundred regular troops, and a company of Florida volunteers, under command of General Clinch, while on their march from Fort Drane towards his own head-quarters. The Indians were defeated, but not without the loss of over fifty men on the part of the whites. Throughout the remainder of the winter, the Seminoles continued their ravages; the plantations of the interior were mostly destroyed, after being abandoned by their occupants. The settlements of all East Florida were in a condition of great danger and distress. The noted Philip, with a powerful body of warriors, conducted the most important operations in that quarter, and destroyed New Smyrna, upon Mosquito inlet, together with the plantations on Halifax river.

The following spring (1836) was memorable for General Scott's campaign in Florida. With a strong force, he penetrated the northern Seminole districts, sweeping the country in three columns. It was plain, however, that the Indians had no idea of attempting to cope with such formidable enemies in open warfare. They easily avoided coming to any general engagement, and a troublesome, but unimportant skirmishing comprised all the belligerent operations of



the campaign. As the season advanced, the unhealthiness of the climate prevented active operations: volunteers were discharged, forts were evacuated, and the savages were at liberty during the whole summer to continue a debutory system of murder and plunder. In September, a large army, under Governor Call, was again marched against the subtle and fugitive enemy, and they were again driven southward towards the impenetrable asylum offered to them by the unexplored and marshy wilderness of the Everglades. There were, at this time, several hundred Creek auxiliaries in the United States' service in Florida, headed by their chiefs, Paddy Carr and Jem Boy. With a mixed array of these friendly Indians and white soldiery, Colonel Lane undertook a campaign to the southward, in the month of October. He drove the Seminoles from the villages where they had hitherto dwelt secure and unmolested, and defeated and dispersed those who attempted to oppose his progress.

In the following month two engagements took place on the borders of the extensive Wahoo swamp. The American army concentrated in that vicinity numbered more than two thousand men, a force sufficient to overwhelm the undisciplined enemy in open field, but unable, nevertheless, to effect any thing of importance in a district where the Indians could so readily betake themselves to places of retreat and concealment.

Within a few weeks after these events, the main body of the Seminoles were ascertained to have deserted their old haunts, and to have moved southward towards the Everglades. On the 22d of January, (1837,) General Jessup, then commander-in-chief of the forces in Florida, started in pursuit, with a strong force. A number of prisoners were taken at the encampment of the Seminole chief Osuchee, on Ahapopka lake, at the source of the Ocklawaha, and the trail of the fugitives was followed southward. A considerable force of Indian warriors was dispersed, and driven to take refuge in the morass upon the Hatchee Lustee creek, and on the following day, being the 28th of the month, a prisoner was sent to propose to the Seminole chiefs a meeting for conference. This was finally brought about by the influence of Abraham, a quick-witted negro, who officiated as Micanopy's chief counsellor. The 18th of February was appointed for a meeting to be held at Fort Dade, on the Big Outh-lacoochee. Thus ended the campaign, and the invading army proceeded northward.

A truce had been agreed upon until the time for concluding the

tre  
with  
Phi  
the  
and  
the  
abou  
days  
order  
howe  
like  
Mican  
or pe  
Tamp  
nothin  
the tro  
throug  
undisp  
In t  
Philip,  
their co  
warrior  
districts  
States'  
but not  
over th  
seemed  
faith on  
a suffici  
tion aff  
and six  
with ma  
come for  
The m  
Taylor,  
the enem  
Everglad  
shore of  
in a mar  
tained the

treaty, but information as to this arrangement was not disseminated with sufficient promptness to put an immediate stop to hostilities. Philip, with some hundreds of his warriors, made a vain attack upon the encampment at Lake Monroe, in command of Colonel Fanning, and garrisoned by regulars, volunteers, and a party of Creeks. When the meeting appointed at Fort Dade was, after some delays, brought about, the treaty of Payne's Landing was, in effect, renewed, and days were fixed for the assembling of the Indians at Tampa Bay, in order to embark on board government vessels. It was soon apparent, however, that they had no idea of leaving the country. The warlike and subtle Osceola exerted his influence over the old King Micanopy, to prevent compliance with the treaty, and either by force or persuasion induced him to withdraw, with his followers, from Tampa Bay to the interior. The spring had passed away, and nothing was accomplished; the heat of summer began to tell upon the troops, and Forts Mellon and Volusia were abandoned; so that throughout the south-eastern portion of the peninsula the Indians had undisputed possession of the whole country.

In the month of September, active operations were renewed. Philip, his son, the Chief Uchee Billy, and about one hundred of their company, were captured near St. Augustine, and other notable warriors, weary of hopeless warfare, surrendered themselves in other districts. Troops had been poured into Florida until the United States' force amounted to between eight and nine thousand men, but notwithstanding this overwhelming preponderance of numbers over those of the Indians, no prospect of a termination of the war seemed open. Under these circumstances, the repeated breaches of faith on the part of the Indians, appeared to the commander-in-chief a sufficient excuse for treating them as savages unworthy the protection afforded by the rules of civilized warfare. Osceola, Alligator, and six others in authority among the natives were seized, together with many of their followers, near Fort Peyton, whither they had come for the purpose of a parley.

The next expedition of importance was that of Colonel Zachary Taylor, who led a force of about six hundred men into the heart of the enemy's country. He pushed his way to the borders of the Everglades, and encountered the objects of his search on the eastern shore of Kissimee lake. Thus attacked in their own quarters, and in a manner at bay, the savages fought desperately. They maintained their ground with determined courage, and although finally

defeated and driven into the swamps, their loss was smaller than that of their assailants. Twenty-eight of Colonel Taylor's party were killed, and no less than one hundred and eleven were wounded.

In the course of the ensuing winter great numbers of the Indians, worn out by exposure and famine, and hopeless of maintaining their ground, surrendered at discretion. These were, for the most part, shipped westward. Although no longer acting in combined and systematic warfare, those who remained continued to scour the country, and to murder and plunder wherever opportunity offered. This state of things continued through the years of 1838, '9, and '40. In December of the latter year, Colonel Harney penetrated the Everglades by means of boats, and surprised the encampment of the chief Chaikika. The details of the various marauding expeditions of the Indians, and their skirmishes with detached bodies of troops would occupy too much space for further recital. The war did not end by any *coup de main*. The savages were gradually so far reduced in numbers by capture or surrender that they ceased to be formidable. Four hundred were shipped westward in the year 1842.

Those who still remain in possession of the interior of Southern Florida, number, as is supposed, from three to five hundred. With this feeble remnant of the powerful nation which it cost such immense expenditure of life and treasure to subdue, difficulties have recently been renewed, and there is too much reason to fear that our nation will again be disgraced by a war in which the power of the United States may be exerted in vain endeavours to ferret out and extirpate a few miserable savages from an unknown and unexplored wilderness.

AD  
ST  
M  
M  
John  
This  
pecu  
subje  
order  
dues v  
drawn  
payme  
uncens  
encour  
At a  
with t  
represe  
congres  
paying  
known  
of sepa  
tributed  
specie—  
adheren  
A bil  
house.  
orderd  
already  
was long  
tled stat  
payment  
for that  
the prin

## CHAPTER XVII.

ADMINISTRATION OF VAN BUREN: FINANCIAL PRESSURE: THE SUB-TREASURY: CANADIAN REVOLT: THE NORTH-EASTERN BOUNDARY: THE AFFAIR OF THE AMISTAD.—HARRISON AND TYLER: BANKRUPT LAW: PRÉEMPTION: THE VETO POWER: TARIFF.—ADMISSION OF TEXAS.

MARTIN VAN BUREN was elected president, and Richard M. Johnson vice-president, for the term commencing March 4th, 1837. This year was memorable for the most remarkable and extensive pecuniary pressure ever felt by the country, except when directly subjected to the burden of war. In compliance with a circular order issued from the treasury department in 1835, government dues were demanded to be paid in gold or silver. Specie was thus drawn from circulation to a vast extent, and a general stoppage of payment was resorted to by the banks, as the only remedy for the unceasing drain upon their resources. This procedure was directly encouraged by the legislatures of several states.

At a special session of congress, held in September, the president, with the concurrence of Mr. Woodbury, secretary of the treasury, representing the existing impossibility of compliance with the act of congress, which required a deposit of the public moneys in specie-paying banks, proposed a new plan for the security of these funds, known as the "sub-treasury" scheme. This was the establishment of separate places of deposit in different parts of the Union, so distributed as to diminish the expense and risk of transportation of specie—the intention of government still remaining to insist upon adherence to the principles upon which the specie circular was based.

A bill for this purpose was carried in the senate, but failed in the house. To meet the expenses of government, treasury notes were ordered to be issued, and an instalment of the surplus revenue, already ordered for distribution among the states, was retained. It was long before the mercantile community recovered from the unsettled state of affairs at this period. The banks did not resume specie payments until August of the year following, when an agreement for that purpose went into operation simultaneously throughout the principal states. Meanwhile, the ruin of thousands had been

accomplished, and general distrust and uncertainty attended all commercial transactions.

In December, 1837, certain of the inhabitants of the northern frontier became involved in the Canadian revolt which broke out in that year. A large number of those favouring the insurgents occupied and fortified Navy island, in the Niagara river. The steamer *Caroline*, employed to convey stores, &c., to the island, was seized at Schlosser, on the American shore, on the night of December 29th, by a party from the Canadian shore, was set on fire, and sent over the falls. One man attached to the steamer, named Durfee, was killed in the fray, others were wounded, and several were said to be missing. The interference of Americans with Canadian affairs received no countenance from government, but the irregular manner in which retaliation was conducted, and the invasion of our territory by the attack on the *Caroline*, were matters of difficult adjustment.

In the year 1838, serious difficulties arose upon the north-eastern border of New England. The boundary line between the British provinces and the state of Maine was unsettled, and negotiation was then in progress for its final establishment. The state authorities, unwilling to await the protracted action of the general government, resorted to forcible measures for the arrest of encroachment, by individuals, upon that portion of the disputed territory then under their actual jurisdiction.

The state land-agent, despatched, with a small company, to put a stop to the cutting of timber by these trespassers, was taken prisoner by the latter, and carried into New Brunswick. Other officials were promptly commissioned to maintain the rights claimed by the state, and, with a body of armed men, proceeded to the scene of disturbance. The consequence of such belligerent movements naturally was to create great excitement on the border, which soon extended throughout the United States. In the discussion of the question, by correspondence between the governors of Maine and New Brunswick, much exacerbation of feeling was evident.

The matter was laid before congress, in the month of February, in a message from the president, and such action was taken as resulted in averting the threatened hostilities, and in preserving the existing occupation of either party until the whole question in dispute could be definitely settled. General Scott was specially commissioned to proceed to the debatable ground, and take measures for preventing any further collision. Necessary precautions were

allowed to be taken by the authorities of the state of Maine to guard against a continuance of depredation, in the interim; but this was directed to be accomplished by the civil authority, without the intervention of an armed force.

One of the most noticeable occurrences during the following year, (1839,) as connected with our foreign relations, was the seizure of the Spanish schooner *Amistad*. She was captured and brought into New London in the month of August, by a United States' vessel, under the following circumstances: "On board of her were two white men, Spaniards, Jose Ruiz and Pedro Montez, and fifty-four African negroes, under command of one of their own number, whose name was Cinquez. The *Amistad*, it appeared from subsequent investigations, had sailed from Havana, in the island of Cuba, for another port in the West India islands, with a cargo of merchandise, and the Africans on board, claimed as slaves by the two Spaniards, Ruiz and Montez. After having been four nights at sea, the negroes rose upon the whites, killed the captain and crew, took possession of the schooner, and, in endeavouring to return to Africa, were at length found conveyed to the shores of Long Island."\*

Proceedings were instituted against these negroes in the courts of the United States, upon charges of piracy and murder; and also at the suit of the Spanish claimants, Ruiz and Montez. No bill was found against them by the grand-jury, to which the criminal charge was referred; and the question of civil right was finally established in their favour by the supreme court. As native Africans, born free, they were restored to liberty, and finally sent back to their own country. Previous to their departure, great efforts were made by individuals to give them some insight into the advantages of civilization, and such instruction as time and opportunity might admit. The natural inclination of the savage for the free, unfettered life to which he has been accustomed, to a certain extent disappointed the expectations of those who had interested themselves in this matter.

The decision of the federal courts, and the consequent enlargement of the negroes, gave great offence to the Spanish government, and a claim, on behalf of the owners of the vessel and cargo, has been repeatedly pressed in the conduct of later negotiations.

At the close of a four years' term, Van Buren was succeeded by William Henry Harrison, whose popularity at the west had remained undiminished from the period of his military services in the frontier

\* Book of the United States.

war with the British and Indians. The inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1841. One month later, April 4th, the death of President Harrison gave occasion, for the first time, for the application of the constitutional provision for such contingency. The vice-president, John Tyler, of Virginia, entered upon the vacant office.

A special session of congress, called by Harrison during his brief administration, was held at the close of May. During the summer several important acts were passed, mostly having reference to the disturbed state of financial affairs still existing. A general bankrupt law was the first of these; a measure in which congress took upon itself the responsibility of an act retrospective in its character, and in gross violation of contracts. The general dissatisfaction of the people at its unjust operation, was evinced by its repeal at the regular session of 1842-3. Next came the repeal of the sub-treasury law, which had been finally carried through during the previous term. Provision was made for an increase of revenue by additional duties on importations.

To encourage the occupation and improvement of public lands, a right of preemption, at the lowest government prices, was secured to actual settlers upon unappropriated lands, limited, in extent, to one hundred and sixty acres for each individual or family, according to particular provisions. A bill, incorporating a national bank, expressly for the purpose of providing a fit agency for the transaction of the monetary affairs of government, passed both houses of congress; but, to the astonishment and indignation of the party then in the ascendant, it received the presidential veto on the 16th of August. The grounds of objection, submitted by Mr. Tyler, were the absence of constitutional power in congress to create such an institution. Brought up a second time, under a new name, and with greater restrictions in its operation, the bill was again defeated by the president, and, as a two-thirds vote could not be obtained in its favour, the measure fell through.

In the summer of 1842, the return of an exploring expedition fitted out from the United States, under command of Wilkes, for years previous, excited universal interest. The discovery and exploring, for more than a thousand miles, of the Antarctic continent; the assiduous prosecution of philosophical researches, by the naturalists connected with the expedition; and the great addition to the general fund of information respecting countries remote and seldom visited, were matters of national pride and gratification.

In the month of August of this year, the long-disputed question respecting the north-eastern boundary, was finally adjusted. The negotiations were conducted, on the part of Great Britain, by Lord Ashburton, specially commissioned for this purpose, and, on the part of the United States, by Mr. Webster, then secretary of state. This treaty also related to other matters in dispute, or of mutual convenience and necessity. Among these, were regulations for the extradition of fugitives from justice, and stipulations for joint operations in suppressing the slave-trade.

About this time, a further revision of the tariff took place, by which an *ad valorem* duty of thirty per cent. was laid upon articles not specially excepted, and protective imposts were affixed to others specifically designated. As at first carried, the bill did not meet the views of the president, and he did not scruple to make further use of his veto power. After some alterations, with difficulty sustained in congress, it received his assent. The feeling of the house of representatives, respecting the course adopted by the president, was severely expressed in the report of a committee to which the last veto was referred. Mr. Tyler, on the other hand, responded by an indignant protest against the apparent attempt to impugn his motives or to fetter his constitutional prerogative.

Near the close of his official career, in January, 1845, President Tyler succeeded in carrying out a measure of vast future consequence. This was the passage of a joint resolution by congress, providing for the admission of the revolutionized state of Texas into the confederacy of the United States. The terms of admission, cession of public territory, &c., were left open for future negotiation. A cursory view of the early history of this territory, as a Mexican province, and the course of events leading to the establishment of its independence, will form a subject for our separate consideration.

VOL. IV.—54



## CHAPTER XVIII.

TEXAS AS A SPANISH PROVINCE: GRANT TO MOSES AUSTIN'S COLONIZATION: DIFFICULTIES OF THE SETTLERS.—REVOLUTION IN MEXICO: BUSTAMANTE: FIRST REVOLUTIONARY MOVEMENTS IN TEXAS: SANTA ANNA'S PRESIDENCY: HIS USURPATION.—SECOND TEXAN CAMPAIGN: SUCCESS OF THE PATRIOTS: INVASION BY SANTA ANNA: BATTLE OF SAN JACINTO: INDEPENDENCE ESTABLISHED.

THE extensive and fertile province of Texas received but little attention in the early days of Mexican conquest by the Spaniards. It presented no inducement to the gold-hunter, and the invaders were of a different mould from those in after-times destined to develop its unsurpassed agricultural resources. The colonists who succeeded the original adventurers from Spain, were in equal degree neglectful of the field for industry and successful enterprise opened for them in the rolling prairies and rich bottom-lands of Texas. The few white inhabitants of the province resided, for the most part, in or about the small Spanish towns of Nacogdoches and San Antonio. Prior to the revolution in Mexico, the face of this whole country was scarcely changed from its original aspect, notwithstanding the remarkable facility with which it can be brought under cultivation.

A little before the downfall of Spanish power upon the western continent, in the month of January, 1821, Moses Austin, a citizen of Connecticut, concluded a negotiation opened with the colonial government for the purpose of commencing a colonization of the coast district. A tract of land was assigned, extending one hundred miles upon the coast, and still farther inland, into which Austin contracted to introduce three hundred families of immigrants, each family to be secured in possession of a square league of land, and to be allowed extensive specified privileges of exemption from taxation, and the right to free importation of commodities otherwise taxable.

"The privilege and distinction of carrying out this important undertaking devolved upon Stephen F. Austin, a son of the original grantee. After many unsuccessful attempts to induce the embark-

tion  
acc  
per  
eng  
reac  
vari  
sels,  
New  
was p  
"I  
depre  
tenure  
now b  
of the  
ceeded  
of his c  
the uns  
than a  
relieve  
the old  
While  
from the  
uncertain  
complete  
tending  
nucleus o  
quarter.  
The ret  
colony.  
kept the  
absence, w  
gave little  
Texas w  
the republ  
time, in the  
population.  
little frater  
atter, never  
to complain

tion of eastern capital in the new settlements, he proceeded to Texas, accompanied by such adventurers, with their families, as he could persuade to try their fortunes in the new country. Others had engaged to follow at a convenient opportunity. The emigrants reached the Brazos river in the month of December (1821). From various causes, their condition was trying and precarious: two vessels, freighted with provisions and supplies, had been sent out from New Orleans, but one of these was lost, and the cargo of the other was plundered by the Carancahuas, or Coast Indians.

"In addition to their sufferings from destitution and from savage depredations, a new source of anxiety arose in the uncertainty of the tenure by which they held their lands; as the Spanish yoke had now been thrown off by Mexico. In order to obtain a confirmation of the former grant, from the existing government, Austin proceeded, in person, to the city of Mexico, and presented the claims of his colony to the authorities. Such delays were experienced from the unsettled state of affairs in the new republic, that it was more than a year from the time of his departure before he returned to relieve the apprehension of his associates, by the intelligence that the old contract was ratified by the Mexican congress."\*

While the title to the coast grant remained in abeyance, colonists from the United States hesitated to stake their fortunes upon the uncertain action of the republic, and many of them returned home, completely disheartened. Others occupied the unsettled tract extending from the bank of the Sabine to the Brazos, forming the nucleus of the present thrifty and prosperous settlements in that quarter.

The return of Austin gave a new impetus to the operations of the colony. The formidable Carancahua Indians, whose inroads had kept the settlers in continual alarm, throughout the period of his absence, were, by his energetic action, extirpated or overawed, and gave little further trouble to the white inhabitants.

Texas was incorporated with Coahuila as a separate state, under the republican system; but all political influence remained, for the time, in the hands of the latter province, on account of its larger population. The inhabitants of Coahuila, of Spanish descent, felt little fraternity towards the settlers from the United States. The latter, nevertheless, in their isolated position, had nothing of which to complain in their treatment by the central government, prior to

\* Discoverers, Pioneers, &c. of America

MOSES AUSTIN'S  
REVOLUTIONARY  
PRESIDENCY  
CAMPAIGN:  
BY SANTA  
FELIX

received but little  
by the Spaniards.  
and the invaders  
times destined to  
The colonists who  
re in equal degree  
enterprise opened  
m-lands of Texas.  
for the most part,  
nes and San Anto-  
face of this whole  
pect, notwithstand-  
be brought under

upon the western  
s Austin, a citizen  
with the colonial  
olonization of the  
nding one hundred  
into which Austin  
f immigrants, each  
gue of land, and to  
tion from taxation,  
otherwise taxable  
out this important  
son of the original  
duce the embark-

the administration of Bustamente. They enjoyed perfect immunity from any religious restrictions, and were, at least, allowed the privilege of self-protection, both as to person and property. In 1830, their numbers had increased to nearly thirty thousand.

Bustamente, who owed his authority to military usurpation, exhibited a total disregard of the rights of the Texan colonists, either as occupants under the grant of the republic, or as peaceable immigrants engaged in the improvement of unappropriated public lands, in accordance with liberal provisions of former colonization laws. These laws were repealed; the title to lands already appropriated and improved, was called in question; and detachments of armed troops were stationed at various points, to check any resistance to the establishment of a new order of government.

To maintain more efficient control over the inhabitants, the dictator ordered the erection of forts at Nacogdoches, Anahuac, and Velasco, which were garrisoned, and placed under command of military officials. These precautions first taken, a series of tyrannical and arbitrary proceedings against the inhabitants commenced. "Citizens were arrested and confined, in several instances, upon vague charges of disaffection to the existing government; the civil authority in several of the municipalities was declared to be superseded, and in all totally disregarded; in short, the inhabitants of Texas found themselves, in the midst of peace, suddenly subjected to martial law, administered by officers who appeared to have been sent there for no other purpose than to make war upon the rights secured to them by the constitution of the country.

"The inhabitants, scattered over a wide extent of country in isolated settlements and single plantations, and, as yet, without roads or bridges to shorten or facilitate an intercourse between them, were not immediately made acquainted with the nature and extent of these outrages upon their rights. They were not of a mettle, however, to surrender them without an effort for redress."\*

A meeting was called, and it was resolved that the wisest and, indeed, safest policy was an immediate resort to arms. On the 24th of June, (1832,) John Austin, at the head of sixty volunteers, attacked the fort at Velasco, garrisoned by one hundred and fifty men. His first movement was to seize upon a schooner, lying in the river on board of which he embarked his little company, and, anchored opposite the fort, opened fire upon it with a small cannon. The

\* Niles' Historical View of Texas.

from th  
a sally,  
They w  
morning  
to the as

The g  
opponen  
At Naco  
inhabitan  
escape by  
off by a h  
their oppo  
livered up

Fortuna  
mente put  
central gov  
was elevato  
early portio  
affairs. Pr  
obtained fro  
from Europ  
those impos  
unable to f  
public, howe  
representatio  
the result.

The year  
Indians of t  
the white s  
lation contin  
proposals we  
from Coahuil  
confederacy.  
A petition  
congress, but  
tient at delay  
stration on t  
prejudice thei  
of a conventio  
his way home

from the fort was almost entirely ineffective, and the garrison, making a sally, attempted to gain possession of the vessel by boarding. They were driven off, with considerable loss. On the following morning the fort was evacuated; the troops, delivering up their arms to the assailants, were allowed to retire unmolested.

The garrison at Anahuac, espousing the cause of Bustamente's opponents in Mexico, abandoned the fort to the Texan insurgents. At Nacogdoches, the Mexican stronghold was forcibly seized by the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, and the garrison, attempting to escape by a night march, were pursued, and their retreat was cut off by a handful of mounted Texans. Over-estimating the force of their opponents, the Mexicans agreed upon a capitulation, and delivered up their arms.

Fortunately for the inhabitants of Texas, the downfall of Bustamente put an end, for the time, to this unequal contest with the central government. His successful competitor, General Santa Anna, was elevated to the presidency, and the course adopted during the early portion of his administration gave promise of a better state of affairs. Previous to this period, a vast number of grants had been obtained from the Mexican government, by enterprising individuals from Europe and the United States, upon conditions analogous to those imposed upon Austin; but, in most cases, the grantees were unable to fulfil their part of the contracts. The attention of the public, however, was turned to the richness of the country by the representations of these speculators, and a constant immigration was the result.

The year 1832 was memorable for renewed hostilities with the Indians of the interior, and for the ravages of the cholera among the white settlers. Notwithstanding these reverses, the population continued rapidly to increase, and, in the following year, proposals were set on foot for effecting a separation of this province from Coahuila, and its erection into a new state in the Mexican confederacy.

A petition to this effect was presented by Austin to the Mexican congress, but its consideration was neglected and postponed. Impatient at delay, and, as is said, considering that some active demonstration on the part of the Texans might "advance, rather than prejudice their claim," he wrote to his constituents, advising the call of a convention for the organization of a state government. Upon his way homeward, he was arrested and imprisoned by the Mexican

authorities, who had obtained information respecting this letter upon an accusation of carrying on a treasonable correspondence.

The ambitious projects of Santa Anna, aiming at the establishment of military supremacy over the republic, were crowned with success in 1834. The provinces of Zacatecas and Texas alone exhibited a contumacious disposition. The former was reduced to submission by the most sanguinary violence, and its unfortunate inhabitants were subjected to martial law, and placed under the domination of military officials. A similar course was resolved upon in relation to Texas, but the result proved how far the Mexican authorities had miscalculated the temper and capacity of the hardy immigrants who composed its population.

Troops were sent into the province, and an order was issued by the commanding officer, General Cos, for the surrender of all collections of arms. The inhabitants, while they scorned to comply with the requisition, awaited some overt act of military usurpation prior to any armed combination for resistance. A meeting of delegates was called, to hold their session on the 15th of October, and consult as to the most advisable course to be pursued. The first attempt by the Mexican authorities to disarm the Texans, was made at Gonzales, on the Guadalupe, near the north-western limit of the American settlements. One hundred and fifty mounted men, dispatched to take possession of a piece of artillery at this remote village, were opposed and driven off by the inhabitants and those who had assembled for their assistance, on the 30th of September (1835). Strengthened by reinforcements to a company of five hundred men, the Texans at Gonzales, under command of Austin, prepared to march upon San Antonio de Bexar.

About this time, the Mexican fortress at La Bahia, or Goliad, on the San Antonio river, was seized by an independent party of Texans. The garrison, completely surprised by a night attack, were easily overpowered, and a most seasonable supply of arms, ammunition, and stores, was secured for the use of the insurgents.

Considerable time was occupied by the main body of the Texan army in preparations for the reduction of San Antonio, where General Cos was posted with a strong force. Before the commencement of active operations in that quarter, the Texan delegation assembled, and organized a temporary government. Henry Smith received the appointment of governor; Stephen F. Austin was deputed to pro-

cure  
comm  
"G  
Texa  
all th  
lator,  
Equal  
he ha  
their r  
By thi  
that u  
with t  
conduc  
living  
"Ha  
early m  
and res  
the hist  
to the s  
Upon  
commiss  
develope  
was con  
days, at  
able by  
late: th  
disbande  
Texas fe  
Nueces, l  
Grent  
reports c  
mostly y  
during t  
lutionary  
in which  
his appea  
of eight  
advanced  
in person

care aid from the United States, and Samuel Houston was chosen commander-in-chief of the forces.

"General Houston, previous to his connexion with the fortunes of Texas, had led a life of such strange vicissitudes, as must develop all the powers and energies of man. As soldier, lawyer, and legislator, he had exhibited unusual acumen and steady self-reliance. Equally at home in an Indian wigwam or in the halls of congress, he had spent years among the aborigines of the country, sharing their rude accommodations, and pursuing their primitive avocations. By this intimate communion, he acquired not only a sympathy with that unfortunate race, which has ever appeared in all his dealings with them, but an influence and control over their affections and conduct, incomparably greater than that attained by any other living man.

"Having removed to Texas, he entered heart and soul into the early movements of the patriots, and so fully secured the confidence and respect of his associates, that, at the most dangerous period in the history of the country, he was appointed, as before mentioned, to the supreme military command."\*

Upon the departure of General Austin to fulfil the duties of his commission, the command of the army encamped before San Antonio devolved upon Colonel Burleson. On the 5th of December, an attack was commenced upon the town. The contest continued for four days, at the end of which time, the fort of the Alamo was alone tenable by the besieged. General Cos, therefore, consented to capitulate: the Mexican officers were paroled, and their troops were disbanded or drawn off. Thus the last Mexican stronghold in Texas fell into the hands of the patriots; that at Lepanticlan, on the Nueces, having previously surrendered to a volunteer party of Texans.

Great interest was excited, throughout the United States, by reports of the position of affairs in Texas, and many adventurers, mostly young and active men, made their way to the scene of action during the winter ensuing, and proffered their services in the revolutionary cause. Months passed by in uncertainty as to the manner in which Santa Anna would open the campaign. He finally made his appearance, towards the close of February, 1836, with an army of eight thousand men. The right division, under General Urea, advanced along the coast, while the left, commanded by Santa Anna in person, marched through the interior, in the direction of San

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

Antonio. The whole force of the Texans in actual service at this crisis, is said not to have exceeded five hundred men.

The first intelligence of the invasion was coupled with the report that a company of the revolutionists, under Colonels Grant and Johnson, who had undertaken an expedition against Matamoras, on the Rio Grande, had been cut off by the advancing army. Santa Anna, arriving at San Antonio, took possession of the place, but the Texan garrison, occupying the strong fort of the Alamo, refused to capitulate. In expectation of relief from without, they had determined to defend the post to the last. "No very accurate details have been given of the manner in which this band of brave men was destroyed, but it appears that, after a long and desperate defence, the fort was stormed by an overwhelming force, and the garrison perished to a man, either slain in the conflict, or put to death for defending an untenable post."

A detachment was immediately marched from San Antonio against Goliad. The Texans there in occupation, under Colonel Fannin, on their retreat towards Victoria, were pursued and surrounded by a vastly superior force. The whole party surrendered to the enemy upon favourable terms of capitulation. A few days later, on the 27th of March, these prisoners, with others who had fallen into the hands of the invaders, to the number of more than four hundred, were brutally massacred.

While these events were in progress, the Texan delegates had again assembled, and unanimously agreed upon a declaration of independence. A state constitution was formed, and, together with a general declaration of rights, received the signatures of the members on the 17th of March, 1836.

In the month of April, Santa Anna pushed forward to Harrisburg, the temporary capital, with the design of seizing upon the officers of government. "Failing in this, he burned the town, and proceeded down Galveston bay, towards New Washington, where was a *dépôt* of military stores. On his return towards Lynch's ferry, on the San Jacinto, with the intention of pressing on to Anahuac, he encountered the Texan army, ready to give battle.

"The patriot army consisted of less than eight hundred men, of all ranks and occupations, most of them undisciplined, and ignorant of military affairs. The Mexicans, as reinforced by five hundred troops, under Cos, on the morning of April 21st, (the day of battle,) numbered nearly or quite sixteen hundred, most of whom were

veteran troops, under the command of officers of skill and experience. Both armies, after a preliminary skirmish, encamped, on the night of the 20th, upon the right bank of the San Jacinto, just below the mouth of Buffalo bayou. The action commenced at half-past three, P. M., by a most impetuous attack on the part of the Texans, who rushed on, to the war-cry of 'Remember the Alamo!' The rout of the Mexicans was complete, and the pursuit of the fugitives continued until night-fall."\*

According to General Houston's official report, the loss of the Texans, in killed and wounded, was but twenty-five. Nearly the entire Mexican force was destroyed, or surrendered to the victors. Generals Santa Anna and Cos were both taken prisoners, the first on the day succeeding that of the battle, the other on the 25th.

Nothing further was attempted by the division of the Mexican army under Urea. The whole country was abandoned to the possession of the revolutionists, and the new constitution went quietly into effect. General Houston was elected first president of the republic. The constant increase of immigration, subsequent to the establishment of independence, rendered any attempt at a forcible recovery of the valuable province every year more hopeless; but the Mexican government yielded nothing of its claims, and the consequences of a recognition of Texan independence by the United States have been already narrated.

DR. FISK.—In 1831 he was appointed to and accepted the presidency of the Wesleyan University, in Middletown, Connecticut. In 1835 and 1836 he made the tour of Europe, an account of which he afterward published in a large octavo volume. While in Europe, he was appointed by the general conference of 1836 its delegate to the Wesleyan methodist conference in England; and, at the same conference, he was also elected bishop of the methodist episcopal church of the United States.

Dr. Fisk possessed a clear, vigorous, and well-balanced mind, regular and handsome features, an expressive countenance, a stately figure, and a pleasing address. Perhaps, when unembarrassed, he came as near to the perfection of a Christian pulpit orator as any that can be found among the ministers of the sanctuary.—*Bangs' Hist.*, iv., 313—317.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.



## CHAPTER XIX.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK.—ANNEXATION OF TEXAS  
—THE NORTH-WESTERN BOUNDARY.—DISCOVERY AND HIS-  
TORY OF THE TERRITORY OF OREGON.—VOYAGE OF JUAN  
DE FUCA: DISCOVERY OF THE COLUMBIA: TRADING  
ESTABLISHMENTS: JOURNEY OF LEWIS AND CLARKE:  
ASTORIA: DESTRUCTION OF THE TONQUIN; WAR  
WITH GREAT BRITAIN: BOUNDARY TREATIES:  
SETTLEMENT OF THE COUNTRY.

IN the month of March, 1845, James K. Polk, of Tennessee, succeeded to the presidency, George M. Dallas being vice-president. At the congressional session, commencing December 1st, 1845, various acts were passed, the influence of which upon the future destinies of the country is incalculable. Among the first of these, was the final joint resolution, by virtue of which Texas became one of the United States, and the burden of maintaining her independence was assumed by the confederacy. Hostilities with Mexico followed, connected with which, are most matters of interest occurring throughout this administration. An account of all the material events of the war has been already given, under the title of Mexico.

In the summer of 1846, the vexed question respecting conflicting claims of the United States and Great Britain to jurisdiction in the territory of Oregon was finally set at rest. The forty-ninth parallel was fixed as our northern boundary, extending westward to the channel between Vancouver's island and the main, thence through the straits of Fuca to the Pacific. Free navigation of the channel and straits, and of the north branch of the Columbia to the ocean, was secured to subjects or citizens of either nation.

A brief account of the discovery, settlement, and previous history of this extensive and valuable territory, in the present connection, may not appear unprofitable or out of place.

In early times it was commonly supposed that a free communication existed between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, in latitude no farther north than the northern limits of the territory of Oregon. Vague reports, corroborative of this theory, were given by adventurous mariners, whom chance or the desire of exploration threw

upon the north-western coast. The most remarkable of these early narratives is that of Juan de Fuca, a Cephalonian pilot, who sailed under a commission from the governor of Mexico, upon a northern voyage of discovery, in 1592.

Five years previous, this celebrated navigator, while on a voyage from Manilla to the Spanish provinces in America, was captured near the coast, by the bucaniers under Cavendish. The vessel in which he sailed was fired, but not entirely destroyed, and the crew were set on shore upon the peninsula of Old California. Regaining possession of their abandoned craft, they managed to refit her and to continue their voyage, with the loss of all their effects.

The Mexican governor took Juan de Fuca under his patronage, and availed himself of his experience in nautical affairs, in the prosecution of exploration at the north. The first voyage was unsuccessful, nothing being seen of the reported "straits of Anian," through which it was believed a passage might be effected to the Atlantic. The second expedition is chronicled as follows by Purchas, upon the authority of Michael Lock the elder:

"He followed his course, in that voyage, west and north-west in the *South Sea*, all along the coast of *Nova Spania*, and *California*, and the *Indies*, now called *North America*, (as which voyage he signified to me in a great map, and a sea-card of my own, which I laid before him,) until he came to the latitude of forty-seven degrees; and that there, finding that the land trended north and north-east, with a broad inlet of sea between forty-seven and forty-eight degrees of latitude, he entered thereinto, sailing therein more than twenty days, and found that land trending still sometimes north-west, and north-east, and north, and also east and south-eastward, and very much broader sea than was at the said entrance, and that he passed by divers islands in that sailing; and that, at the entrance of this said strait, there is, on the north-west coast thereof, a great head-land or island, with an exceeding high pinnacle, or spired rock, like a pillar, thereupon.

"Also he said that he went on land in divers places, and that he saw some people on land, clad in beast's skins; and that the land is very fruitful, and rich of gold, silver, pearls, and other things, like *Nova Spania*.

"And also he said that he, being entered thus far into the said strait, and being come into the North Sea already, and finding the sea wide enough every where, and to be about thirty or forty leagues

wide in the mouth of the straits where he entered, he thought he had now well discharged his office; and that, not being armed to resist the force of the savage people that might happen, he therefore set sail, and returned homewards again towards *Nova Spania*, where he arrived at *Acapulco*, Anno 1592, hoping to be rewarded by the viceroy for his service done in the said voyage.\*\*

The true name of this navigator is said to have been *Apostolos Valerianos*, but the inlet, of which, if not the discoverer, he was the first authentic explorer, has ever since borne his more popular appellation. The straits of *Juan de Fuca* were not again entered or noticed for nearly two centuries from the time of the Greek pilot. In 1737, the account above given, which had been long discredited, was in part corroborated, and its errors were pointed out, by the report of *Captain Berkeley*, an Englishman, commanding a vessel in the service of the *Austrian East India Company*.

Twelve years before this period, August 15, 1775, *Bruno Heceta*, commander of an exploring expedition fitted out from *San Blas*, discovered the mouth of the *Columbia river*; but he failed to notice the entrance of the straits. *Captain Cook*, during his last voyage, in the year 1778, just previous to his second and fatal visit to the *Sandwich Islands*, made an unsuccessful examination of the coast, in search after the reported inlet.

Within a few years from this time a valuable traffic in furs, to be used in the *China trade*, was opened with the natives of the north-west coast. Two vessels, the *Felice* and the *Iphigenia*, sailed upon this enterprise from *Macao* in 1783, under *Portuguese* colours, but subject to the general management of *John Meares*, a *British lieutenant*. Before the departure of these vessels from the coast, the *Columbia* and *Washington*, fitted out at *Boston*, in the *United States*, upon similar service, entered *Nootka sound*. In 1792, the first of these, under command of *Captain Gray*, passed up the river discovered by *Heceta*. It has ever since borne the name of the vessel, and to *Gray* must be ascribed the honour of being the first to prove its existence, as this was only conjectured by the first discoverer, from the strong current setting out of the bay.

Conflicting claims respecting exclusive rights upon the north-west coast, by virtue of discovery and occupation, were long maintained by different *European powers*; and after the cession by *Spain* to the *United States* of the immense territory then called *Louisiana*, the

\* *Greenhow's History of Oregon and California.*

latter power became involved in a similar controversy with Great Britain. During the year subsequent to this event, 1804, a party of thirty or forty men, under command of Captains Lewis and Clarke, was despatched by the United States' government upon a journey of overland exploration from the Mississippi to the Pacific.

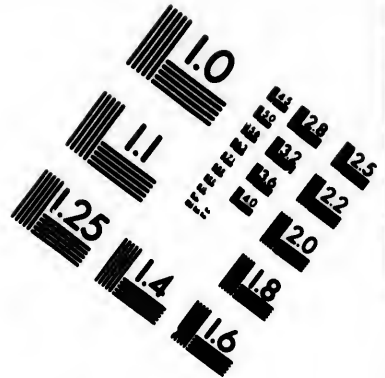
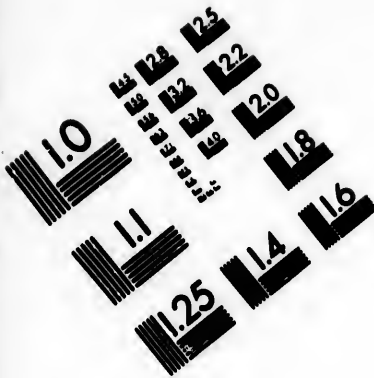
The adventurers passed the winter near the Mandan villages, far up the Missouri, and in the spring of 1805 pursued their voyage up the river in canoes, "perioques." Deriving their principal support from the game obtained by their hunters, they slowly worked their way against the current, and passed the great falls or rapids of the Missouri in the month of July. At this point they were obliged to build light canoes in which to continue their voyage. Entering the Jefferson fork, about the close of the month, they kept on their course until the river, no longer navigable, had dwindled to a brook, and on the 12th of August its utmost source was discovered.

Passing the dividing ridge, the advanced party reached "a handsome bold creek of clear cold water, running to the westward." After enduring the utmost hardships in the dangerous passage of the mountains, the travellers struck the Kookscooskee, and resumed their journey by water. They reached the mouth of the Columbia early in November. Nothing was heard from the expedition until its return to St. Louis on the 23d of September, 1806. The account published by the leaders of the expedition is replete with interest, and marked by an agreeable simplicity of style.

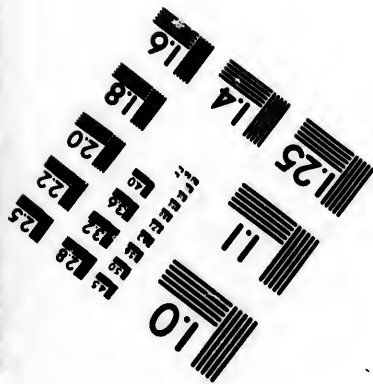
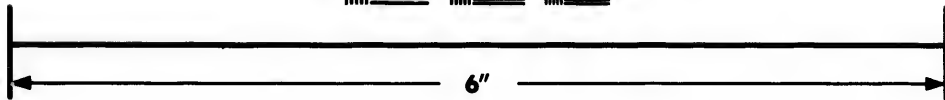
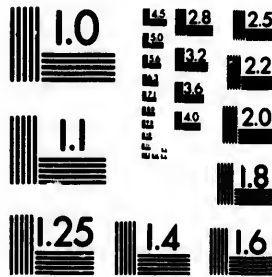
Great interest was excited throughout the United States by the long-expected report, and plans were soon after set on foot for the formation of a permanent establishment, for trading purposes, upon the Pacific coast. A company, styled the Pacific Fur Company, was formed under the auspices of John Jacob Astor, of New York, in 1810, and vessels were at once fitted out upon the enterprise. The settlement of Astoria at Point George, on the south bank of the Columbia, was commenced during the summer of 1811. This undertaking, at first prosperous, resulted in misfortune. The Tonquin, the first vessel sent out, while engaged in trade near the straits of Fuca, was plundered by the Indians, and blown up. All on board perished, with the exception of an Indian interpreter, who, after a captivity of two years, made his way to Astoria, and gave the first intelligence of the disaster.

The war between Great Britain and the United States breaking out at this period, the resident partners of the American Company





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18 20 22 25  
E E E E E

01  
E E E E E

effected a sale of the whole establishment and stores to the British North-west Company. The occupants under this transfer continued to carry on the trade in furs after the reestablishment of the authority of the United States over that portion of the north-west territory.

"By the treaty of 1818, the territories west of the Rocky mountains, claimed by the United States or Great Britain, were to be jointly occupied by citizens of either country, for a period of ten years. Upon the expiration of this term (in 1828), the arrangement was renewed, and indefinitely extended; one year's notice to be given by either government prior to any future assertion of sole sovereignty.

"As the attention of the United States became aroused by the progress of emigration to Oregon, the necessity for some definitive settlement of the boundary question began to be universally felt. Subsequent to the explorations and surveys under Colonel Fremont, elsewhere narrated, great numbers of settlers, during the summers of 1843 and 1844, pursued the overland route, and settled in the Willamet valley. The number of American emigrants in Oregon at the close of the latter year, is computed at more than three thousand, and great sympathy was felt for them throughout the Union, in consideration of the hardships they had endured, and the uncertainty of their position while the right of jurisdiction over the country remained unsettled."\*

After the final settlement of the boundary question, in 1846, as before mentioned, emigration received a new impetus. Although lying in a high latitude, the climate of the territory of Oregon is by no means severe. Owing to its situation upon the western shore of a large continent, like the countries of western Europe, it is subject to no such extremes of temperature as those felt in the New England states. The soil is extremely fertile, and the surface of the country is beautifully diversified with mountains, plains, hills, and streams. The population, as exhibited in the census returns of 1850, numbered thirteen thousand three hundred and twenty-three.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.



## CHAPTER XX.

ALTERATION IN THE TARIFF.—ACQUISITION OF CALIFORNIA:  
EARLY HISTORY OF THAT PROVINCE: THE JESUIT MISSIONS  
IN THE PENINSULA: THE DOMINICANS.—UPPER CALI-  
FORNIA: THE FRANCISCAN MISSIONARY ESTABLISH-  
MENT: THE MEXICAN REVOLUTION: ATTEMPTS  
AT COLONIZATION.

A LITTLE before the close of the session of congress, in the summer of 1846, the views of the political party then in the ascendency, respecting duties on importations, were carried out by revision and alteration of the tariff of 1842. Material reduction was made in the protective duties established by the former bill.

Upon the conclusion of peace with Mexico, the acquisition of California gave a new direction to speculative enterprise throughout the Union—especially at the extreme west and upon the sea-board. The existence of a gold deposit in the bed of the American fork of the Sacramento, was first discovered in the spring of 1848. "From this period every thing connected with the California settlements took a new aspect. The villages which had sprung up since the acquisition of the country by the United States, were mostly deserted; the crops were left ungathered; the crews of the vessels lying in port deserted; labour could be procured only at the most exorbitant prices; in short, nearly the whole male population had hurried to the mines, and, regardless of hardship, fatigue, exposure, and sickness, were engaged in the all-absorbing pursuit of gold."

An unexampled increase of population, within the short period of two years, converted a wilderness, uninhabited save by roving savages and the occupants of a few small towns or trading-posts, into an important and prosperous state. The history of its settlement is more like a tale of romance than a record of realities.

Throughout the continuance of Spanish or Mexican dominion over the Californias, those provinces were looked upon as of little importance, and chiefly interesting as a field for missionary enterprise. The peninsula of Old California was discovered, in 1534, by Grijalva, sailing upon a voyage of discovery under commission from Cortez.

The gulf which separates it from the main was soon after explored, and at different times unsuccessful attempts were made to plant colonies at several locations. The peninsula was barren and mountainous, and nothing was imagined of the undeveloped wealth and resources of the country farther north.

In California, as in many other portions of America, the pioneers of settlement and civilization were the fraternity of Jesuits. These indefatigable propagandists of the faith commenced operations upon either shore of the Gulf of California, towards the close of the seventeenth century. Upon the main, a settlement was founded by the learned and zealous Father Kühn—before his departure for America a professor of mathematics at Ingoldstadt. Father Salvatierra, also a member of the order, at the same time established the missionary station of Loreto at the bay of San Dionisio, upon the peninsula. He took with him six soldiers as a slight protection against attack on the part of the natives.

The Indians had little reason to look with favour upon any further encroachment upon their territory. For a long period the coast had seldom been visited, except by those engaged in the pearl fishery, in the pursuit of which occupation it had been the common custom to compel the service of the natives, great numbers of whom had perished in this dangerous avocation. Salvatierra and his associates in the missionary work made great and finally successful exertions to procure from the home government the enactment of laws for the protection of their adopted people from this species of slavery.

At San Dionisio a chapel was erected to "Our Lady of Loreto," and the good father made use of all means in his power to excite the interest, arouse the curiosity, and conciliate the good-will of his anticipated proselytes. He met at first with very unfavourable returns: the Indians, after plundering him of his horse and goats, finally collected in force, and attempted the destruction of the establishment. They were driven off by the fire-arms of the soldiers.

The efforts of Salvatierra and Kühn were worthily seconded by Fathers Ugarte and Francisco Piccolo. The latter, in the autumn of 1699, two years from the formation of the first Jesuit settlement, founded the mission of San Xavier, on the Pacific coast. From this station, as well as that at San Dionisio, the missionaries extended their operations among the natives by making long journeys on horseback throughout a great extent of the peninsula, acquainting themselves with the resources and geography of the country, preach-

ing  
mea  
U  
with  
south  
stimu  
aid h  
was  
most  
ation  
uncon  
at his  
upon  
quelle  
"T  
to a c  
of the  
broug  
the wo  
contin  
and res  
genera  
sions, g  
the inte  
The  
increase  
them fr  
employ  
how, "  
most in  
were all  
be procu  
being d  
indolent  
shore, in  
for the s  
The g  
picion w  
to perse

ing to the Indians in their own language, and endeavouring by every means to gain their confidence and good-will.

Ugarte came over from Mexico in 1701. "He took up his abode with the Indians, without a single companion, among the mountains south-west of Loreto, and, by the force of example and rewards, stimulated his wild associates to shake off their natural sloth, and aid him in erecting dwellings and a chapel for public worship. He was of a robust frame and hardy constitution, and was always foremost to undertake the labour and drudgery attendant upon the formation of the settlement. His greatest trouble, at first, was from an unconquerable tendency on the part of his auditors to jeer and laugh at his religious exercises, but the infliction of summary chastisement upon the strongest and most contumacious among them, speedily quelled their levity.

"This excellent and energetic ecclesiastic did not confine himself to a care for the souls of his flock; he taught them the cultivation of the soil; he introduced the domestic animals of Europe; and even brought over a weaver to teach the arts of spinning and manufacturing the wool obtained from his sheep. Slowly but steadily the missions continued to prosper; the fickle-minded aborigines were subdued and restrained by force or kindness as occasion required; and the general tenor of the lives of those engaged in the work of the missions, gave evidence that their motives were pure, and that they had the interests of their proselytes at heart."\*

The difficulties encountered by these pioneers of civilization were increased by the conduct of too many of those who accompanied them from Mexico, or who afterwards came over to engage in secular employment at the stations. "The land was so barren," says Greenhow, "that it scarcely yielded the means of sustaining life to the most industrious agriculturalist, for which reason the settlements were all located near the sea, in order that the necessary food might be procured by fishing; and the persons employed in their service, being drawn from the most miserable classes in Mexico, were always indolent and insubordinate, and generally preferred loitering on the shore, in search of pearls, to engaging in the regular labours required for the support of settlers in a new region."

The grand order of the Jesuits having gradually fallen into suspicion with the great powers of Europe, its members were subjected to persecution and banishment in the territories, successively, of

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

Portugal, France, and Spain. In the year 1767, they were expelled from California, and the country becoming a Mexican province, the missionaries were superseded by Franciscans, and the civil authority of Mexico was extended over the settlements. The missionary stations on the peninsula were, at this time, sixteen in number. Dominican friars took the place of the Jesuits, and, pursuing a far different policy towards the natives from that carried out by their predecessors, soon destroyed the confidence of the inhabitants, and frustrated the plans for their improvement, before so promising. The Indians of Old California are, at the present day, few in number, and still in the condition of the savage.

Turning their attention from the barren mountains of the peninsula to the extensive and fertile region of Upper or New California, the Franciscans, with the aid and countenance of the Marquis de Croix, viceroy of Mexico, founded a settlement at San Diego, in 1769. From this station, a party was shortly after sent to explore and take formal possession of the country further north. They proceeded by land as far as the harbour of San Francisco, upon which they bestowed its present appellation, and returned to make report at San Diego, in January of the following year.

This exploring party had been specially commissioned to establish a settlement upon the bay of Monterey, but upon the journey they failed to recognise that locality from its description by early voyagers. A few months subsequent to their return, the service was accomplished by another expedition, under direction of Father Junipero Serra. A portion of the adventurers proceeded by sea, the voyage—from San Diego to Monterey—occupying no less than forty-six days; another party made the journey in a less space of time, by land, and were found by the voyagers, engaged in building and other preparations for a settlement. "On the 31st of May," says Serra, "by the favour of God, after rather a painful voyage of a month and a half, the packet San Antonio, commanded by Don Juan Perez, arrived and anchored in this horrible port of Monterey, which is unaltered in any degree from what it was when visited by the expedition of Don Sebastian Viscayno, in the year 1603."

The missions in Upper California received special patronage from the Spanish crown, and a large fund was raised for their support, in Mexico, by voluntary contributions of the pious. Many valuable legacies were also funded for this purpose, and the temporal affairs of the enterprise were, for a series of years, in a prosperous condi-

tion  
mer  
The  
thro  
Dieg  
ence  
or ci  
to th  
tion  
ians.  
with  
supre  
introc  
The  
during  
contin  
the mi  
time t  
defendi  
large b  
after a  
in occu  
Spanish  
been wo  
afforded  
Upon  
period o  
Californ  
cut off b  
the pries  
of the n  
the mana  
savage li  
time, to  
church i  
monopoli  
dependen  
A mov  
therance  
missionar

tion. The spiritual progress of the Indians was, however, by no means in conformity with the great apparent success of the missions. The influence and authority of the ecclesiastics was established throughout the line of coast—their head-quarters being at San Diego, Monterey, San Francisco, and San Gabriel—but their influence appears to have availed little towards the actual improvement or civilization of the natives. The church acquired extensive titles to the more valuable lands, and, instead of favouring the immigration of whites, threw obstacles in the way of colonization by civilians. The clergy, content with a nominal or outward compliance with the forms of their church, preferred to retain their undivided supremacy over the natives, and feared the consequence of the introduction of free settlers.

They did not attain this commanding position without first enduring great hardships and suffering, and exposing themselves to continual personal danger. Their property, in the early days of the missions, was pilfered by the natives on every occasion, and, from time to time, they were forced to resort to the "secular arm" in defending their lives against hostile attacks. Upon one occasion, a large body of Indians fell upon the settlement at San Diego, and, after a hard struggle, were driven off by the handful of whites there in occupation. They shortly after sued for peace, and begged the Spanish surgeon to visit and assist those of their number who had been wounded in the conflict. This aid was cheerfully and readily afforded.

Upon the general overthrow of the old order of things, at the period of the Mexican revolution, the privileges and powers of the Californian hierarchy were curtailed, and its resources in Mexico cut off by sequestration of the sums appropriated for the salaries of the priesthood. Measures were also taken to effect an emancipation of the natives, but so completely incompetent did they appear to the management of property, and so much disposed to return to the savage life of their forefathers, that it was judged expedient, for the time, to allow matters to continue much in their old position. The church in California was, at this period, so amply endowed by monopolies, and the acquisition of real estate, that it was no longer dependent upon supplies from abroad.

A movement was afterwards set on foot in Mexico, for the furtherance of colonization in California by the entire removal of the missionaries, and a sequestration of their lands and effects. A law

was actually passed for this purpose, in the Mexican congress, and great numbers of emigrants, allured by the favourable offers of government, were soon *en route* for the land of promise. All their expectations failed upon the attainment of Santa Anna to political supremacy. His regard for the interests of the church, or his policy of securing the favour of so powerful a portion of the community, induced him to take immediate steps for the protection of the property and privileges of the Californian priesthood, and, in consequence, to check the progress of immigration.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

EXPLORATION OF NEW CALIFORNIA: COLONEL FREMONT'S SURVEY OF THE SOUTH PASS: OVERLAND EXPEDITION OF 1843-4: THE GREAT SALT LAKE: RETURN ROUTE: TERRIBLE PASSAGE OF THE SIERRA NEVADA: CAPTAIN SUTTER'S SETTLEMENT: SUBSEQUENT EXPEDITIONS OF FREMONT.  
—THE GOLD DISCOVERIES IN CALIFORNIA.

THE adventurous expedition of Lewis and Clarke first gave to the world any satisfactory account of the character of the wilderness intervening between the western settlements of the United States and the Pacific sea-board. Before the accomplishment of their remarkable journey, all that was known of that territory was gathered from the Indians, and from the white traders, or trappers, who had penetrated the country in different directions, and at different times.

A long interval elapsed between this first achievement and the undertaking of any systematic survey of a practicable route for emigrants. In 1842, the services of the Hon. John Charles Fremont, who was at that time commissioned as a lieutenant in the United States' corps of topographical engineers, were called into requisition for this purpose. He had been previously engaged in the prosecution of surveys in the north-western territory, and his instructions, at the time of which we are now speaking, were to make an examination of the country, and to report upon an advisable route from the frontier settlements of Missouri to the Great South Pass—then

consid  
throug  
Wit  
Creole  
familia  
wide c  
a post  
10th o  
mules,  
ments,  
all mou  
The  
Platte,  
ersed in  
the par  
mountain  
ure. T  
and ente  
By accu  
importan  
geologica  
vey of t  
brought  
the pres  
embarkin  
of the Pa  
The ex  
as before  
an accur  
had been  
in Oregon  
the results  
ploration  
sioned by  
The Gr  
from Miss  
might be  
able obstac  
this servic  
shared wit

considered the most practicable, if not the only available passage through the Rocky mountains.

With a company of twenty-five men, principally Canadian or Creole *voyageurs*, under the guidance of Christopher Carson—then familiarly and extensively known at the west, and now of world-wide celebrity, as "Kit Carson"—Fremont took his departure from a post a few miles above the mouth of the Kansas river, on the 10th of June. The party was provided with eight carts, drawn by mules, for the transportation of camp-equipage, surveying instruments, &c., and four oxen were taken for provision. The men were all mounted, and well provided with arms.

The line of march lay north-westerly from the Kansas to the Platte, a distance exceeding three hundred miles, which was traversed in sixteen days. Following the course of the South Fork, the party reached Fort St. Vrain, at the eastern foot of the Rocky mountains, on the 10th of July, one month from the day of departure. They arrived at the South Pass near the middle of August, and entered at once upon the principal business of the expedition. By accurate astronomical observations, the true position of this important passage was laid down; scientific investigations of the geological formation of the country were made; and a correct survey of the whole locality was carefully prepared. The information brought back by the expedition, and widely disseminated through the press, by act of congress, was of inestimable value to those embarking upon the adventure of overland emigration to the shores of the Pacific.

The exploring expedition, under Commander Wilkes, returned, as before mentioned, in the month of June (1842). In addition to an accurate survey of the north-western coast, expeditions inland had been undertaken by those connected with the enterprise, both in Oregon and California; and it was considered desirable to connect the results of these observations with those established by the exploration of the South Pass. Colonel Fremont was again commissioned by government as commander of the expedition proposed.

The Great South Pass lies immediately in the direct line of travel from Missouri to the Columbia river; but it was hoped that a route might be opened further south, which would present less formidable obstacles as a general thoroughfare. The party collected for this service consisted, in all, of forty men, numbers of whom had shared with Fremont the fatigues and hardships of the preceding

gress, and  
of govern-  
their expecta-  
supremacy.  
of securing  
duced him  
ty and priv-  
ce, to check

FREMONT'S  
EDITION OF  
TERRIBLE  
SUTTER'S  
FREMONT.  
NIA.

rst gave to the  
the wilderness  
ited States and  
their remarka-  
gathered from  
who had pene-  
rent times.  
ement and the  
route for emi-  
Charles Fremont,  
s in the United  
nto requisition  
in the prosecu-  
is instructions,  
make an exam-  
ble route from  
uth Pass—then

year. They set out upon their perilous journey on the 29th of May, 1843.

"A detour through the mountains brought them upon the waters of the Bear river, which they followed to its debouchement into the Great Salt Lake. In a frail boat of inflated India-rubber cloth, a partial survey was effected of this remarkable phenomenon of nature, concerning which the only knowledge before obtained had been from the wild reports of the Indians, and hunters who had occasionally visited it. Little did the adventurous explorers dream of the change that a few years would bring about upon those remote and desolate shores. The party left their camp by the lake on the 12th of September, and, proceeding northward, reached the plains of the Columbia on the 18th, 'in sight of the famous Three Buttes, a well-known land-mark in the country, distant about forty-five miles.'

"In the month of November, having reached Fort Vancouver, and fully accomplished the duties assigned him, Colonel Fremont set out on his return by a new and dangerous route. Nothing but a perusal of the journal of the expedition can convey an adequate idea of the dangers and difficulties attendant upon the remainder of this enterprise, in which the complete circuit was made of that immense and unexplored basin lying between the Sierra Nevada and the Wahsatch, or Bear river range of the Rocky mountains; a region thus laid down in Fremont's chart: 'The Great Basin: diameter 11° of latitude: elevation above the sea, between four and five thousand feet: surrounded by lofty mountains: contents almost unknown, but believed to be filled with rivers and lakes which have no communication with the sea, deserts and oases which have never been explored, and savage tribes which no traveller has seen or described.'"

This journey of more than three thousand miles, through a wilderness inhabited only by roving Indians, and in the face of the most appalling natural obstacles, called forth the exercise of heroism, fortitude, and bodily endurance, of which few men would be found capable. The passage of the Sierra Nevada, which occupied several weeks at the close of the winter and in the early spring, was the most dangerous and trying achievement of this unparalleled march. In the midst of snow and ice, pushing their way by an unknown route through stupendous mountains, in uncertainty as to the fortunes of each succeeding day, and suffering the extremes of destitution and exposure, the hardy adventurers pressed forward with



invincible courage and resolution. The flesh of their mules and horses was their only resort for subsistence, and these animals were reduced to a miserable condition from the impossibility of procuring any other food than a little dried and frost-bitten herbage, here and there exposed.

When they had at last successfully passed the mountain range, and, following the course of the Rio de los Americanos, from its southern sources toward the Sacramento, had reached a more hospitable region, it was found that two of the party were labouring under an aberration of mind, from the effects of anxiety and hardship. "One of them, Derosier, who had stayed behind for the purpose of bringing up a favourite horse of Colonel Fremont, on rejoining the party, in the words of the narrative, 'came in, and sitting down by the fire, began to tell us where he had been. He imagined he had been gone several days, and thought we were still at the camp where he had left us; and we were pained to see that his mind was deranged.

\* \* Times were severe when stout men lost their minds from extremity of suffering—when horses died—and when mules and horses, ready to die of starvation, were killed for food. Yet there was no murmuring or hesitation."

On the 6th of March, the advance party arrived at the Indian settlements, a few miles from the confluence of the American fork with the Sacramento, and had the satisfaction of learning their position from an Indian cow-herd in the employment of Captain Sutter. At the establishment of this enterprising pioneer of the American Californian settlements—known as Sutter's fort—the party was hospitably received and entertained.

"Captain Sutter emigrated to this country from the western part of Missouri, in 1838-9, and formed the first settlement in the valley, on a large grant of land which he obtained from the Mexican government. He had, at first, some trouble with the Indians; but, by the occasional exercise of well-timed authority, he has succeeded in converting them into a peaceable and industrious people. The ditches around his extensive wheat-fields; the making of the sundried bricks, of which his fort is constructed; the ploughing, harrowing, and other agricultural operations, are entirely the work of these Indians, for which they receive a very moderate compensation—principally in shirts, blankets, and other articles of clothing."\*

At the fort, was a garrison of forty Indians; and about thirty white

\* Fremont's Narrative.

men, of various trades and occupations, were in Sutter's employment. Immense fields of grain, numerous work-shops, and vessels lying in the river, attested the wealth and enterprise of the proprietor.

Fremont and his company took their departure from this vicinity on the 24th of March, and reached the village of Kansas, on the Missouri, on the 31st of July, 1844.

Upon his second overland expedition to the Pacific, undertaken in 1845, while engaged, in accordance with his instructions, in scientific exploration, Colonel Fremont received intelligence of the existence of war between Mexico and the United States. He immediately enlisted a mounted force, and, commencing active military operations, met with distinguished success. The difficulties in which he became involved, in consequence of conflicting claims of his superiors, have been before alluded to.

At a still later period, his restless spirit of enterprise induced him to undertake a private adventure for the discovery of a southern and more direct land-route to California. For this purpose, he collected a company of about thirty men, and, provided with more than one hundred mules, commenced his journey westward. The inclemency of the season proved disastrous. Upon the Sierra San Juan, being overtaken by snow-storms and severe weather, the party lost their entire stock of mules, and many of their number perished from cold and starvation before their indomitable leader could procure them aid and sustenance. He proceeded on foot to Santa Fe, where he met with ready assistance. With renewed outfit, he perseveringly accomplished the purpose of the expedition, and made his way, by the southern route, to the Californian settlements.

Almost simultaneously with the cession of California to the United States, by virtue of the treaty concluded at Guadalupe Hidalgo, occurred the astonishing developments of unexpected mineral wealth in the new territory. "That these treasures should have remained so long concealed from the occupants of the territory seems unaccountable, when we consider the proverbial keenness of the Spaniard in the search for native gold, and the experience acquired by centuries of practical operations in the mines of Mexico and Peru. The fact only proves how completely the country was neglected by the more enterprising and efficient portion of the community.

"The first discovery of gold in California, in sufficient quantity to excite public attention, was made in the spring of 1848, by Mr. James Marshall, who had been employed by Captain John A. Sut-

ter to  
Amer  
ing fr  
miles  
"O  
progre  
govern  
August  
'As we  
became  
five mi  
above  
occurs,  
"Ca  
in Septe  
place.  
a dam  
wheel, th  
with suff  
directly  
and deep  
gravel wa  
was walk  
glittering  
them, and  
told Capt  
secret unt  
got out, a  
"Rema  
and, in a  
time of m  
discovery,  
were empl  
In this  
and the ne  
vance in t  
first intelli  
the states,  
thither sup  
could reach

ter to erect a saw-mill upon the south branch of the Rio de los Americanos, or American fork, a tributary of the Sacramento, flowing from the eastward. The location of the mill was about fifty miles from New Helvetia, or Sutter's fort.

"One of the earliest authentic reports of the commencement and progress of the mining enterprise, is a letter of Colonel R. B. Mason, governor of California, to the adjutant-general, at Washington, dated August, 1848. In describing his first visit to the diggings, he says: 'As we ascended the south branch of the American fork, the country became more broken and mountainous, and at the saw-mills, twenty-five miles below Sutter's, the hills rise to about a thousand feet above the level of the Sacramento plain. Here a species of pine occurs, which led to the discovery of the gold.

"Captain Sutter, feeling the great want of lumber, contracted, in September last, with a Mr. Marshall, to build a saw-mill at that place. It was erected in the course of the last winter and spring—a dam and race constructed; but when the water was let on the wheel, the tail-race was found too narrow to allow the water to escape with sufficient rapidity. Mr. Marshall, to save labour, let the water directly into the race with a strong current, so as to wash it wider and deeper. He effected his purpose, and a large bed of mud and gravel was carried to the foot of the race. One day, as Mr. Marshall was walking down the race to the deposit of mud, he observed some glittering particles at its upper edge; he gathered a few, examined them, and became satisfied of their value. He then went to the fort, told Captain Sutter of his discovery, and they agreed to keep it secret until a certain grist-mill of Sutter's was finished. It, however, got out, and spread like magic.

"Remarkable success attended the labours of the first explorers, and, in a few weeks, hundreds of men were drawn thither. At the time of my first visit, but little more than three months after its first discovery, it was estimated that upwards of four thousand people were employed."

In this exciting pursuit the utmost improvidence was exhibited, and the necessary consequence was a sudden and unprecedented advance in the prices of all articles of common necessity. Upon the first intelligence of the position of affairs in California, received in the states, speculators entered eagerly into the business of shipping thither supplies of clothing, provisions, &c. Before these stores could reach their place of destination, by the circuitous route of Cape

Horn, much real destitution was felt, and, although the yield of the washings was exceedingly rich, the chief profits of the mining operations were appropriated by those who were enabled to cater, at the most exorbitant and fabulous rates, for the physical wants of the labourers at the mines.

The cargoes which first arrived at San Francisco yielded enormous returns; but in some articles the market was speedily overstocked, and heavy losses were sustained by those whose adventures failed to correspond with the demand. One cause of great embarrassment to ship-owners was the impossibility of obtaining a crew for the return voyage. Previous contracts, forfeiture of wages already earned, and extravagant offers, generally failed to outweigh the strong temptation held out to the able-bodied labourers at the mines.

It is a most satisfactory reflection that other and far more important ends than the collection of gold will be accomplished by the settlement of California. The soil is, in many locations, exceedingly productive; and when, with the increasing population, labour shall have been applied to the development of the agricultural resources of the country, the new state will be entirely self-dependent. Not only as a producing country, but as a great commercial *dépot*, California bids fair to rival the most wealthy and prosperous of the United States. There can be but little doubt concerning the establishment, in the course of a few years, of a railroad line which shall directly unite the Atlantic and Pacific, traversing the whole breadth of the continent. With the accomplishment of this undertaking will commence a new era in commerce, and the wealth of eastern Asia will reach the civilized world by a new mode of transit. Already has a road been more than half completed, by which freight will be transported across the Isthmus, and the necessity for the long and hazardous voyage round the Cape, or the Horn, be obviated: at Tehuantepec facilities offer for a route still more direct; but when the great overland line, carried through in spite of all natural obstacles, shall once be fairly established, it must take the principal share of travel and transportation. When we consider the rapidity with which our western settlements have extended, with no facilities for the conveyance of produce to a market other than the natural advantages of navigable streams, we can scarcely be guilty of extravagance, in whatever terms we may speak of the future growth and development of the region to be traversed by the Atlantic and Pacific railroad.

The  
amou  
but s  
gratic  
new c

THE M  
MILL  
UNI  
PR  
TI

THE Y  
ment wa  
border o  
of the w  
petation  
future of  
peculiarl  
progress.  
Driven  
mons, in  
terwards  
object ap  
allow of  
ficiently  
communi  
The pr  
of so gross  
"Its late  
hare-faced  
and upheld  
agents w  
assumed a

The population of California, as given by the census of 1850, amounted, in round numbers, to two hundred and fourteen thousand; but so shifting was its character, and so constant the influx of emigration, that this estimate was scarcely more than conjectural, and a new census has been accordingly ordered.

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

THE NORMONS.—ADMINISTRATIONS OF ZACHARY TAYLOR AND MILLARD FILLMORE: ADMISSION OF CALIFORNIA INTO THE UNION: DEBATE UPON THE SLAVERY QUESTION: THE COMPROMISE: EXPEDITIONS OF NARCISSO LOPEZ.—STATISTICS.—FRANKLIN PIERCE PRESIDENT: JAPAN: THE NEBRASKA QUESTION.

THE year preceding the discovery of gold in California, a movement was set on foot for the establishment of a settlement upon the border of that region described by Fremont as the "Great Basin" of the west. The character of the expedition, the motives and expectations of those engaged in it, its visible effects, and probable future consequences, stand in strange and striking contrast to the peculiarly mercenary characteristics of Californian emigration and progress.

Driven by persecution from their settlement at Nauvoo, the Mormons, in 1846, established themselves temporarily in Iowa, and afterwards farther westward, upon the bank of the Missouri. Their object appeared to be the attainment of a situation so isolated as to allow of the free development of their peculiar system, and yet sufficiently productive to supply all the necessities of an independent community.

The present age has witnessed no religious or sectarian delusion so gross a character, and yet so ably and enthusiastically supported. "Its late origin presents to the view all that is low and disgusting in bare-faced trickery and imposture; but its present position, attained and upheld by fanaticism and sensuality, two of the most effective agents which can render evil powerful and error contagious, has assumed a character in some sort respectable and undeniably for-

midable. Persecution has had its customary effect, in investing its victims with dignity, in arousing all their powers of resistance, and in awakening the sympathies of all averse to injustice.

"In other ages, this dangerous form of a religious mania would have had its legitimate manifestation in crusades against property, and in the foundation of a new state and church on the ruins of some weaker and less vigorous structure of superstition; at present, its more honourable and profitable mission is to afford a field of harmless action for uneasy spirits, and to build up a new nation in the remotest wilderness.

\* \* \* "It can hardly be doubted that the polygamy allowed by the new religion is, with a certain class of minds, a very powerful incentive for conversion to its tenets, and a strong prompter to fierceness and resolution in defending them. But this of itself is entirely unsatisfactory in explanation of that stern and eager enthusiasm which, beyond any of our times, has distinguished the present manifestation. Men who wish for several wives will do much to obtain them, and to keep them, but hardly what the Mormons have done and are doing. It is an article of faith not exactly suited to the production of heroes or of martyrs; and that the elements of such, in great numbers, may be found in the Mormon ranks, no man conversant with their history will deny. A spirit of deeper and more respectable error—the spirit of faith and fanaticism, almost invariably fierce, vehement, and enduring, in proportion to the folly and puerility of its creed—has been the main-spring of this extraordinary movement, and remains a problem, as insoluble as any of the same class which have preceded it."\*

The progress of the Mormons westward was delayed and embarrassed by a requisition—promptly and honourably complied with—for five hundred of their number, to serve in the Mexican war. After a winter of great destitution and suffering, occasioned by this withdrawal of the most efficient portion of their community, the exiles fitted out an advance party to explore the country and fix upon a location for the future settlement. By the route of the South Pass, these pioneers made their way across the mountains, and directed their course towards the valley of the Great Salt Lake. They reached their place of destination in the month of July, 1847. A settlement was immediately commenced, and the site of a capital was chosen.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America

Before the setting in of winter, several thousands of the sect had emigrated to the valley. The lateness of their arrival, and the impracticability of transporting any considerable store of provisions across the wilderness, rendered the winter of 1847-8 a season of destitution little short of starvation; but nothing could abate the energy or damp the enthusiasm of this singular people. The work of building and agricultural preparation was unintermitted, and an abundant harvest, during the summer following, rewarded their exertions.

From their capital, on the lake, the Mormons have steadily pursued a system of colonization by fitting out expeditions for exploration and settlement. These are particularly extended towards the Pacific coast. According to the Report of Captain Stansbury: "It is the ultimate object of the Mormons, by means of stations, wherever the nature of the country will admit of their settling in numbers sufficient for self-defence, to establish a line of communication with the Pacific, so as to afford aid to their brethren coming from abroad, while on their pilgrimage to the land of promise. These stations will gradually become connected by farms and smaller settlements, wherever practicable, until the greater part of the way will exhibit one long line of cultivated fields, from the Mormon capital to San Diego."

The colony, self-incorporated in 1849 as the state of Deseret, now contains more than twenty thousand inhabitants; missionaries are successfully engaged in various parts of the world in procuring proselytes to the faith; and the community is constantly increasing in power and importance. Their president, Brigham Young, confirmed in authority as governor of the territory by the United States' government, is recognised by his people as invested with power nearly absolute, both spiritual and temporal; and, in the entire administration of civil affairs, the government is a perfect hierarchy. How far these extraordinary regulations may eventually clash with the authority of the federal government is, as yet, uncertain; but the disregard and indignity sustained by the territorial judges and secretary first commissioned by the executive of the United States, are ominous of future contumacy.

One noticeable effect of the war with Mexico, has been to bring forward a host of aspirants to political eminence, the prestige of whose military achievements has too often served to distract attention from their gross incompetency for the management of public affairs. This remark, happily, does not apply to many successful

candidates for popular favour, whose worth and abilities might have remained unappreciated, but for the *éclat* of their services in the war.

The influence of the national fondness for military renown, was brought to bear upon the presidential election of 1848. The candidates of the respective parties were Lewis Cass, of Michigan, and Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana. General Taylor, receiving the electoral majority, was inaugurated on the 5th of March ensuing. Millard Fillmore, of New York, was chosen vice-president.

At the congressional session of 1849-50, the application of California for admission to the Union, in connection with the necessity for organizing a territorial government in Utah and New Mexico, gave rise to the most violent and protracted debate. A proviso, previously introduced by Mr. Wilmot, of Pennsylvania, relative to the exclusion of slavery in the formation of new states, being insisted upon by members from the free states, the whole question was made a theme for angry and extravagant declamation. Several months passed without the accomplishment of any important legislation, the time of congress being taken up by stormy and unprofitable debate—too often by disgraceful personal controversies.

Early in May, a committee of northern and southern members, of which Mr. Clay was chairman, appointed to digest some scheme of mutual concession respecting the vexed question of slavery, and its application to the measures in contemplation, made report. In the compromise thus proposed, very little was conceded to the claims of the members from free states. During its discussion, and before final action upon either of its separate items, a change of administration took place. President Taylor died on the 9th of July, 1850, and was succeeded by the vice-president, Mr. Fillmore.

The compromise measures were separately discussed and adopted, substantially as reported by the committee. Before the close of September, the territories of New Mexico and Utah were organized without anti-slavery restrictions; California was admitted into the Union; the Texan boundary at the north-west was established; a bill was carried containing specific provisions for the recapture of fugitive slaves; and, in the District of Columbia, over which congress exercises exclusive jurisdiction, the slave-trade was formally abolished.

During the summer and autumn of 1851, great excitement was caused throughout the Union, particularly in the southern states by the events connected with an attempt at the overthrow of Swan



ish power in Cuba. General Narcisso Lopez, one of the principal persons implicated in an unsuccessful revolutionary movement in the island, in 1848, upon the failure of that enterprise, escaped to this country, and engaged in the preparation of plans for an expedition, to proceed from the United States, and cooperate with the efforts of the disaffected party in Cuba.

That such an undertaking was on foot soon became generally known, and a proclamation was issued by the president, strongly condemning the illegal movement, and denouncing those engaged in it as liable to severe penalties under the existing laws of the country. The expedition, however, was favoured by a large party in the community, and Lopez, having enlisted and embarked a force of more than six hundred men, sailed for the coast of Yucatan. With the principal portion of his followers, he then proceeded, in the steamer *Creole*, to the port of Cardenas, on the north shore of Cuba, where a landing was effected on the 19th of July, 1850.

After some sharp skirmishing with the Spanish troops posted in that quarter, the invading party obtained complete possession of the town, and the general was fully expectant that the revolutionary party of Creoles would hasten to join his standard. It was, however, soon evident that they were unwilling to share in what appeared a desperate undertaking; and, as large forces from Havana and Matanzas might be momentarily expected upon the scene of action, a reembarkation was effected, and the invaders returned to the United States.

In no wise discouraged by the result of the first expedition, Lopez continued his correspondence with the revolutionists, and, gaining renewed confidence from their representations, again enlisted a small body of adventurers, mostly citizens of the United States, for the purpose of a second invasion.

On the night of August 11th, 1851, with about four hundred followers, he landed at Playitas, some sixty miles westward from Havana. Leaving one hundred and twenty men, under Colonel Crittenden, in charge of the baggage, Lopez marched his forces to Las Pozas, a distance of ten miles. At this place, they were attacked on the day following by a body of eight hundred Spanish troops. The assailants were repulsed with heavy loss, and, on the succeeding day, about forty of Crittenden's party effected a junction with the main body. Most of the others were taken prisoners, and shot.

Victorious against enormous odds in a second battle, but failing

to receive accessions to their force from among the Creoles, Lopez and his followers were soon broken down by fatigue, exposure, and famine. The general voluntarily surrendered himself to the enemy. He could scarce hope for mercy from a government, for the overthrow of which he had so long devoted his whole energies. He was executed on the 1st of September, by the infamous *garotte*—meeting his fate with calmness and dignity, and exclaiming, with his latest breath, "I die for my beloved Cuba!"

No further imminent danger being apprehended, and a sufficient example having been already made by the summary vengeance taken upon the leader and the men of Crittenden's detachment, the other prisoners were leniently dealt with. They received a pardon from the Spanish government, after a short imprisonment.

The Captain-General of Cuba, at this period, was Don José de la Concha; a man who, although of a stern and unyielding disposition, enjoys a far higher reputation for integrity than most of those who have held a similar position in the island. His recent restoration to office, in place of Pezuela, has caused much apparent enthusiasm among the inhabitants.

The few years that have elapsed since the close of the Mexican war, have witnessed a vast change in the aspect and resources of the United States and their territory. A frequent and regular communication with the Old World has been established by lines of ocean steamers, and the tide of immigration pours in unceasingly. The population of the eastern states, notwithstanding the constant and enormous drain occasioned by the opening of a new field for enterprise and exertion at the far west, is steadily on the increase. The influx of gold from California and Australia has added greatly to the nominal value of every species of property, and has given facilities, unfortunately too extensive, for speculations and extravagant undertakings.

The number of states, by the admission of California, was increased to thirty-one. Arkansas became a state in 1835; Michigan, the twenty-sixth, in 1837; Florida, Iowa, and Wisconsin, in 1845, '6, and '7, consecutively. The total population of the United States and territories, judging from the mean ratio of increase for the past sixty years, must, at the present time, (1854,) considerably exceed twenty-five millions. The entire slave population, at the census of 1850, amounted to 3,178,055. The value of domestic products exported during the year ending June 30th, 1853, was \$213,417,697.

that  
\$17,  
this  
Fo  
have  
tonna  
was 4  
Fra  
on th  
remain  
prospe  
relatio  
Japan,  
wealth  
The  
territor  
contrav  
produce  
holding  
It has  
Adams  
fact, ce  
must al  
attache  
A cha  
So great  
a direct  
country  
upon oth  
scarcely  
dangero  
We ca  
a few ye  
viduals of  
public or  
of dispute  
if less obt  
More form  
party feeli  
cause it is  
V

that of foreign commodities exported during the same period, was \$17,558,460, making a total of \$280,976,157. The importations of this year, were valued at \$276,978,647.

For the last ten years, more than 1,400 vessels, upon an average, have been yearly constructed in the states and territories. The total tonnage exhibited by the returns in 1853, in tons, and ninety-fifths, was 4,407,010 48.

Franklin Pierce, president of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1853. Since his accession, the country has remained at peace with other nations, and in a condition of general prosperity. The most noticeable event connected with our foreign relations, at this time, is the successful negotiation of a treaty with Japan, by which the ancient restrictive policy of that populous and wealthy empire has been materially relaxed.

The action of congress, at the session of 1853-4, in organizing the territories of Nebraska and Kansas, upon principles directly in contravention of the provisions of the Missouri Compromise, has produced a degree of excitement, and an alienation between the slaveholding and free states, the result of which yet remains to be seen. It has been said that, at the period of the election of the younger Adams to the presidency, "party differences in America had, in fact, ceased to be founded on principle; and, as such differences must always exist, they came to base themselves upon personal attachments and antipathies, as well as upon territorial divisions."

A change somewhat similar may be observed at the present time. So great has been the assimilation of sentiment upon points formerly a direct controversy between the two great parties into which the country was divided, and so many causes of division have occurred upon other questions, that former lines of political separation are scarcely recognisable. The old party issues are dead; and a more dangerous source of contention has arisen.

We can perceive scarce a semblance of that personal animosity, a few years since so disgracefully prominent, which animated individuals of the opposing parties, and entered into every transaction, public or private, however disconnected with the fancied grounds of dispute. In its place has arisen a spirit of sectional opposition, if less obtrusive and disgusting, yet far more stern and formidable. More formidable, because no longer based upon a mere antagonistic party feeling, but aroused by the direct appeal of interest; and because it is difficult to foresee by what stroke of policy, or what course

of events the mooted point can be finally set at rest, and the demon of discord exorcised.

Our chief, if not our only hope, must lie in the reflection, that a still stronger and more universal tie of interest will preclude such hasty or unreasonable action, by either party for the time in the ascendant, as could lead to open rupture between different sections of the Union. Such a reflection may be less flattering to the national pride, but is far more reasonable, as a ground for favourable anticipation, than any recurrence to feelings of patriotism, or even of political honour.

While none could more earnestly deprecate the madness of secession, or of a voluntary partition of the confederacy, we can but say of the American Union, as Lord Crewe says of the name of De Vere, in his celebrated opinion concerning the earldom of Oxford: "Time hath its revolutions; there must be a period and an end to all temporal things—*finis rerum*; an end of names and dignities, and whatsoever is terrene, and why not of De Vere? \* \* \* And yet let the name and dignity of De Vere stand so long as it pleaseth God."

ADMINI  
TY.—K  
DRED  
—W  
AND  
IC  
VI

JAMES B  
in that sta  
by 174 elec  
8 for Millan  
March, 185  
mont, and 8  
that of the  
which has c  
administrat  
for Hale, in  
gathered st  
stantially g  
probable th  
the "Repub  
The chief  
mention. T  
newed expre  
can" demor  
which appea  
these opinio

## CHAPTER XXIII.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES BUCHANAN.—REPUBLICAN PARTY.—KNOW NOTHINGS.—GROWTH OF SLAVERY QUESTION.—DRED SCOTT DECISION.—KANSAS TROUBLES.—UTAH WAR.—WILLIAM WALKER'S INVASIONS OF CALIFORNIA AND NICARAQUA.—WALKER SHOT.—FINANCIAL PANIC OF 1857.—CALIFORNIA OVERLAND MAIL.—REVIVAL OF 1858.—TREATY WITH PARAGUAY.—CUBA.—SAN JUAN.—PRINCE OF WALES IN AMERICA.—JAPANESE EMBASSY.—JOHN BROWN.—NOMINATING CONVENTIONS. 1860.—ELECTION OF LINCOLN.—SECESSION.—CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA.—GROWTH OF THE UNION.

JAMES BUCHANAN, a Pennsylvanian, and a resident of Lancaster in that state, was elected to the presidency in November, 1856, by 174 electoral votes to 114 for John C. Fremont of California, and 8 for Millard Fillmore of New York, and inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1857. His popular vote was 1,803,029, to 1,342,164 for Fremont, and 874,625 for Fillmore. Upon a comparison of this vote with that of the election of 1852, the growth of that political element which has caused the chief discussions and difficulties of Buchanan's administration is instantly evident. The "Free Soil" vote (so called) for Hale, in 1852, was but 156,149; but so rapidly had that party gathered strength as to increase its vote six-fold in four years, substantially gaining possession of the whole north. It is even not improbable that had it not been for the presence of a third candidate, the "Republican" standard bearer would have been elected.

The chief facts respecting this third candidate deserve a brief mention. The "American" party, which supported him, was a renewed expression of opinions which had caused the "Native American" demonstrations, first known at Philadelphia about 1839, and which appeared again at New York in 1844. During the year 1854, these opinions began again to be earnestly advocated; their central

principles being, that no foreigner or Catholic should hold office in the United States, and that the term of naturalization should be made 21 years. The new party proceeded by a method of secret organization, and "lodges" were formed rapidly all over the country. The name of "Know Nothing" was quickly given to them, from a very general habit of denying any knowledge of their plans or purposes. In 1854 and 1855, they carried many of the state elections, and in 1856 had grown to an extent that almost justified their hopes of succeeding in getting possession of the federal government. But after their failure in doing so, their party soon lost its separate existence, and in a year or two quite disappeared.

The same question which had been so influential in dividing parties for the presidential contest of 1856, has been the most prominent one in the politics of Mr. Buchanan's troubled and unfortunate administration. This is the question of slavery; which having been cautiously and tolerantly treated during the whole previous career of the nation, at last became properly a political question, and the real dividing line between two parties. This line by a natural and unfortunate necessity, coincides nearly with the geographical dividing line between the free and slave states; a fact which has given an exaggerated tinge of bitterness to the political action arising in connection with it, which bitterness however does not exist in the hearts of the mass of citizens toward each other, and must assuredly be only temporary.

March 6, 1857, the "Dred Scott decision" was delivered by Chief Justice Taney. This decision was in fact merely of a suit brought for his freedom by Scott, a negro, in the form of an action for assault and battery, in Missouri. Here he gained the cause, which he however lost on appeal, Judge Taney deciding that the plaintiff, Scott, was not a citizen of Missouri, and could not sue in a United States court. What has, however, made this decision so famous, was the claim that its force was general, and that it established the principle that no person of African blood could be a citizen of the United States.

The whole course of transactions in and concerning the then territory of Kansas, also continued to attract very great and painful attention. These transactions constituted in substance a series of struggles between two parties, one resolved that Kansas should be definitely made a slave territory, and in consequence a slave state; and the other, that it should be free. These contests were conducted

with  
govern  
Shann  
govern  
1850,  
which  
efforts  
the te  
much  
others.  
dition  
decided  
of imm  
and the  
ritoty an  
the terri  
which to  
closed th  
Another  
the "Uta  
some of  
Mormons  
with the  
whether  
them from  
made, or  
port Mr.  
Young.  
but so lat  
Salt Lake  
of Philade  
cient cred  
permit the  
assumed h  
time were  
there can  
ance of it  
must ever  
Not less  
rauding pr

with far too little observance of law or decency on both sides; one governor after another was appointed from Washington; but Reeder, Shannon, Woodson, Geary, Stanton, Walker, Denver, and Medary, governors or acting governors during the short period from 1854 to 1859, had all failed to exert any power over the boisterous elements which were concerned in the contest. While great and successful efforts were made at the east to aid free-state emigrants in settling the territory, others were made in Missouri and the south, not so much to introduce southern emigrants, as to keep out or drive out others. Bands of disorderly persons on both sides maintained a condition of actual war, for years; and the question was at last only decided by natural causes. It gradually became evident that the tide of immigration from the free states was too strong to be resisted; and the efforts of the party in favor of making Kansas a slave territory and state were accordingly discontinued. From the year 1858, the territory was chiefly quiet; and its recent admission as a state, which took place in the last days of the session of 1860-61, has closed the unhappy chapter of its invasions and tumults.

Another singular and unpleasant chapter in this administration was the "Utah war." This arose in consequence of troubles between some of the judicial appointees of the general government and the Mormons of Utah, a sect who have always been involved in broils with their neighbors. It has never been satisfactorily ascertained whether the Mormons did in fact commit the illegal acts ascribed to them from 1850 to 1856; but the government believed the charges made, or some of them, and in 1857 sent out a military force to support Mr. Cumming, appointed governor of Utah in place of Brigham Young. After a long delay in Kansas, the army set out for Utah, but so late that it went into winter-quarters a hundred miles from Salt Lake city. Some trifling hostilities took place, but Col. Kane of Philadelphia, proceeding to Utah with some unknown but sufficient credentials, succeeded in inducing the Mormon leader to permit the troops and Gov. Cumming to enter. The new governor assumed his office without difficulty, the troops after remaining for a time were withdrawn, and the whole difficulty concluded; though there can be no doubt that the Mormon community, from the ignorance of its members and the viciousness of some of its principles, must ever be an unhealthy constituent of the nation.

Not less singular, and not less unpleasant, is the history of the marauding proceedings usually called "fillibustering," during 1857-60.

The master spirit of this series of expeditions was William Walker, who was born at Nashville, Tenn., in 1824, who had studied medicine at Philadelphia and Paris, and was afterwards a lawyer in New Orleans and California. While here he began his career as a "fillibuster," by raising a party of forty-five men, and attempting to establish a republic in Lower California, in the autumn of 1853. He was however driven out by the Mexicans in the ensuing February. In May, 1855, he was invited by one of the political parties of Nicaragua, to come thither and unite in securing control of its government. He did so, landing at Realejo in June, 1855, and succeeded in obtaining temporary authority, and even caused himself to be elected president of Nicaragua. He was however obstinately opposed by nearly all the natives of Nicaragua, and by the other states of the Isthmus; and after a long series of terrible hardships, battles and marches, during which he lost great numbers of men, killed, taken prisoners, and still more by sickness, he was forced to surrender, and was brought to New Orleans in May, 1857, by the American sloop-of-war *St. Mary's*. He instantly organized another expedition, landed again in Nicaragua, in November, and on December 8th, was a second time taken and brought to New York by Capt. Paulding of the United States steamer *Wabash*. A third expedition failed by shipwreck, and the British war-steamer *Basilisk* brought the party to Mobile. A fourth, leaving New Orleans in October, 1859, was stopped at the Balize by the United States Marshal. A fifth, under Walker, at last landed in Honduras again in August, 1860, but was speedily overpowered, taken prisoners, and Walker was summarily shot, the rest being imprisoned at hard labor or sent home. This miserable end has quieted the spirit of "fillibusterism" for a time.

In August, 1857, a tremendous financial crisis was suddenly precipitated upon the country. The credit system had grown to one of its periodical conditions of over-teething; almost every one was too largely both debtor and creditor, and the values for adjusting accounts were not at hand. All at once the Ohio Life and Trust Company, a great money corporation, holding vast trust funds, failed utterly; a panic instantly spread; the banks suspended throughout the country, manufactures ceased, business stopped, failures took place everywhere, vast numbers of operatives were thrown out of employment, and uneasiness and distress pervaded the whole country. During the year ending December 25, 1857, there were 5,123 failures, for a total of \$291,750,000. In December and January the banks began

to r  
perfe  
cove  
Se  
reach  
the r  
have  
the o  
In  
origin  
ate ca  
distre  
remark  
the "u  
interest  
In J  
with C  
manner  
than h  
nations.  
English  
to obtai  
siderabl  
In th  
merce v  
guay.  
a view t  
and per  
evidently  
unless c  
with E  
Juan, a  
Washing  
the Wes  
1859, on  
and some  
were qu  
great dan  
Scott a  
friendly d



to resume payment, but business only revived very slowly and imperfectly. The subsequent political troubles have retarded its recovery; though it has been gaining slowly but steadily.

September 6th, 1857, the first overland mail from California reached San Antonio, Texas, having been nearly two months on the road; being the first of a series of enterprising efforts which have since established a regular and quick communication between the older states and their youthful sister on the Pacific.

In February and March of 1858, a wide-spread revival of religion originated in New York and several other large cities, one immediate cause of which was by many thought to have been the general distress from the business troubles of the previous autumn. It was remarkable for not being confined to any one denomination; and the "union meetings" which were held were maintained with much interest for more than a year.

In June of the same year, was concluded the treaty of Tien-tsin, with China. This negotiation was conducted in the most amicable manner, and secured the United States greater advantages for trade than had ever been extorted by military force by the European nations. The success of this treaty excited some jealousy in the English and French, who were both, at that very time endeavoring to obtain similar ones, and were backed up by the presence of considerable military forces.

In the early part of February, 1859, a treaty of amity and commerce was also concluded with the South American state of Paraguay. Negotiations were more than once attempted with Spain, with a view to obtain possession of Cuba; but that kingdom has uniformly and peremptorily rejected every proposition of the kind; and will evidently never part with so valuable a portion of her dominions unless compelled by force. A slight disagreement also occurred with England, respecting the proprietorship of the island of San Juan, a little island in the strait between Vancouver's Island and Washington Territory. Gen. Harney, the American commander in the Western department, occupied the island with troops in July, 1859, on which Gov. Douglas, of British Columbia, made a protest, and some English men-of-war assembled in the neighborhood, and were quickly followed by some American ones. There seemed great danger of a collision, but the promptness and prudence of Gen. Scott averted it, and the question has been reserved for a subsequent friendly decision. The spot in question is perfectly insignificant;

the only quarrel on the subject would be upon a mere point of honor; and it is to be hoped that the day for such quarrels between nations is gone by.

Any slight feelings on this subject were however effaced by the remarkably friendly feelings shown during the visit of the Prince of Wales to this country, during the fall of 1860. The Prince, after spending two months in the British North American dominions, crossed to Detroit on September 21, 1860, and made a rapid tour by St. Louis, Cincinnati, and Harrisburg, to Washington; thence to Richmond, Baltimore, Philadelphia, New York, Boston and Portland, where he embarked for England, October 20th, having been received with a friendly courtesy and universal demonstrations of pleasure which were highly gratifying both to himself personally, and as testimonies of national good feeling.

In the earlier part of the same summer, the public curiosity had been even more excited by the visit of an embassy from the empire of Japan, so long secluded from the commonwealth of nations. This embassy, of several noblemen of high rank, was a consequence of the treaty so wisely concluded by Commodore Perry, and the judicious subsequent intercourse of Mr. Harris, United States Consul, with the Japanese. The embassy was conveyed to San Francisco, and thence to Hampton Roads in United States vessels; proceeded to Washington, and thence to New York, whence they returned home in the Niagara, richly laden with gifts and apparently favorably impressed with the people and manners of their new ally.

Thus the foreign relations of the country were on the whole amicable and prosperous. The latter part of Buchanan's term of office was however marked by domestic occurrences of a very different character. The unfortunate misunderstandings between the Southern and Northern States on the subject of slavery, were much aggravated at the South by the fanatical proceedings of John Brown, who in October, 1859, entered Virginia with about seventeen men, with the crazy design of an organized liberation of the slaves. Brown had become a monomaniac in consequence of outrages inflicted upon himself and family in Kansas. By a sudden attack, he mastered the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, and the town; but was soon overpowered by United States and Virginia forces, not however without a desperate resistance, in which twelve of his whole force of nineteen were killed. He and all the rest were tried, condemned, and hung, under the laws of Virginia.

point of honor;  
between nations

effaced by the  
of the Prince  
e Prince, after  
an dominions,  
a rapid tour by  
thence to Rich-  
and Portland,  
g been received  
ons of pleasure  
ally, and as tes-

e curiosity had  
from the empire  
alth of nations.  
was a conse-  
odore Perry, and  
s, United States  
onveyed to San  
States vessels;  
rk, whence they  
s and apparently  
f their new ally.  
n the whole ami-  
h's term of office  
a very different  
ween the South-  
, were much ag-  
of John Brown,  
seventeen men,  
a of the slaves.  
e of outrages in-  
a sudden attack,  
s Ferry, and the  
tes and Virginia  
in which twelve  
and all the rest  
f Virginia.



the only object on the subject was to be upon a mere point of honor; and it is to be hoped that the danger of such quarrels between nations is gone.

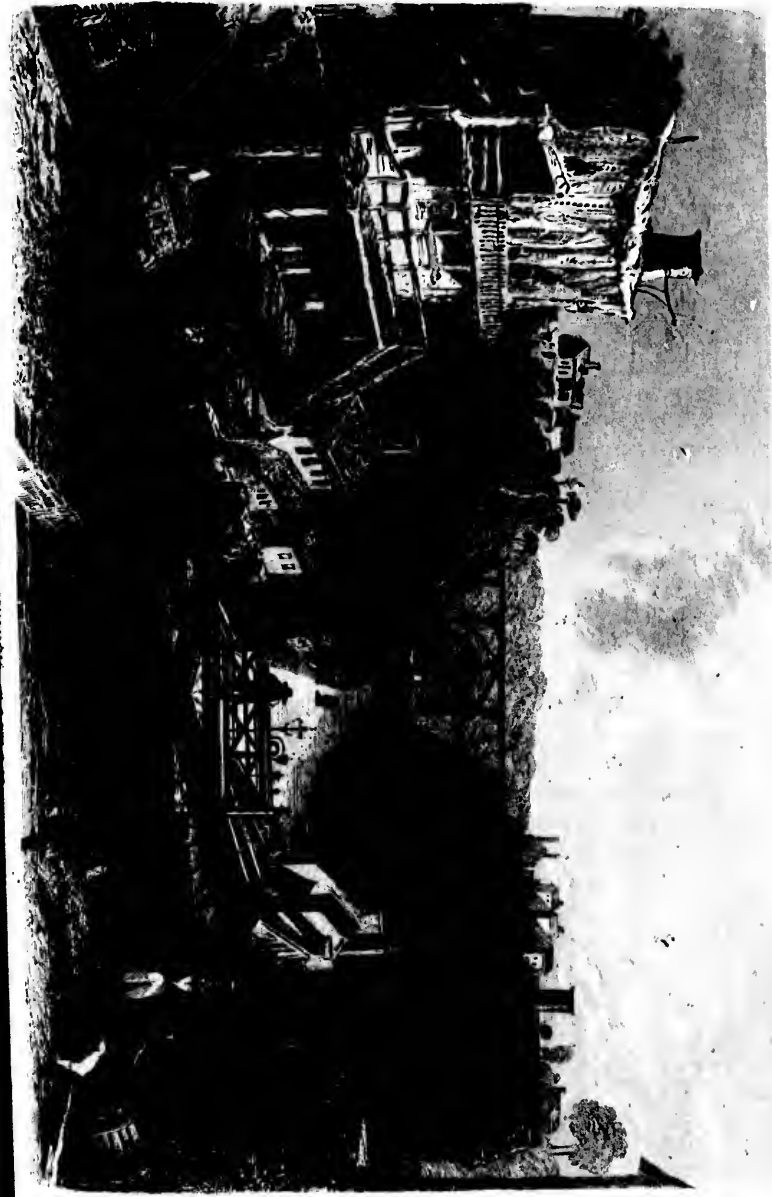
Any ill feelings on this subject were however effaced by the remarkable friendly feelings shown during the visit of the Prince of Wales to this country, during the fall of 1860. The Prince, after spending two months in the British North American colonies, arrived at Detroit on September 21, 1860, and made a rapid tour by St. Louis, Cincinnati, and Harrisburg, to Washington; thence to Richmond, Baltimore, Philadelphia, New York, Boston and Portland, where he embarked for England, October 20th, having been received with a friendly courtesy and universal demonstrations of pleasure which were highly gratifying both to himself personally, and as testimonies of national good feeling.

In the earlier part of the same summer, the public curiosity had been even more excited by the visit of an embassy from the empire of Japan, so long secluded from the commonwealth of nations. This embassy, of several noblemen of high rank, was a consequence of the treaty so wisely concluded by Commodore Perry, and the judicious subsequent intercourse of Mr. Harris, United States Consul, with the Japanese. The embassy was conveyed to San Francisco, and thence to Hampton Roads in United States vessels; proceeded to Washington, and thence to New York, whence they returned home in the Niagara, richly laden with gifts and apparently favorably impressed with the people and manners of their new ally.

Thus the foreign relations of our country were on the whole amicable and prosperous. The same may be said of Buchanan's term of office was marked by the existence of a very different character of relations between the Southern and Northern States. The feelings of slavery, were much aggravated at the time by the proceedings of John Brown, who in October, 1859, sailed for Virginia with about seventeen men with the easy design of an organized liberation of the slaves. Brown had become a national name in consequence of outrages inflicted upon himself and family in Kansas. By a sudden attack he mastered the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, and the town; but was soon overpowered by United States and Virginia forces, not however without a desperate resistance, in which twelve of his whole force of nineteen were killed. He and all the rest were tried, condemned, and hung, under the laws of Virginia.

... of honor;  
... reason;  
... by the  
... the France  
... France, after  
... in common,  
... raged tour by  
... ence to Rich-  
... and Portland,  
... been received  
... ns of pleasure  
... ly, and as tes-

... civility had  
... om the empire  
... th of nations  
... was, a conse-  
... ore Perry, and  
... United States  
... veeyed to San  
... States vessels;  
... , whence they  
... and apparently  
... their new ally,  
... the whole anti-  
... term of office  
... very different  
... en the South-  
... were much ag-  
... of John Brown,  
... seven men  
... of the slaves  
... of outrages in  
... sudden attack  
... Perry, and the  
... es and Virginia  
... n which twelve  
... nd all the rest  
... Virginia.



The  
startling  
feeling  
state-ri  
iticians  
asserted  
moveme  
greatly  
idency  
such ev  
made in  
tion whi  
by the se  
of north  
more, Ju  
ern wing  
of Oregon  
S. A. Do  
withdrew  
meanwhil  
and had n  
Hannibal  
placed in  
Union Co  
John Bell  
candidates  
perate me  
tively sma  
of Lincoln  
vision of  
Breckinrid  
Johnson.  
Douglas an  
Bell and Ev  
tain, meeti  
islature ca  
20th passed  
thereby diss  
Similar cor  
gia, Alabam

Though only the mad scheme of a little knot of fanatical men, this startling occurrence was extensively believed to indicate the settled feelings and intentions of the north. In accordance with the extreme state-rights doctrines which have always characterized Southern politicians, the right of seceding from the Union had constantly been asserted at the South for many years; and when during the political movements of 1860, it became evident that the Republican party had greatly increased, and was likely to elect its candidate for the presidency in November, 1860, South Carolina at once declared that in such event she would at once leave the Union. Similar threats were made in other southern states. The Democratic nominating convention which met at Charleston, S. C., 23d April, 1860, was broken up by the secession of Southern delegations, dissatisfied with the position of northern democrats on the slavery question. It met again at Baltimore, June 18, but again broke up for the same reason, and the southern wing nominated J. C. Breckinridge of Kentucky, and Joseph Lane of Oregon, for president and vice-president, the northern one choosing S. A. Douglas of Illinois, and B. Fitzpatrick of Alabama, who soon withdrew, and H. V. Johnson, of Georgia, was substituted. In the meanwhile the Republican convention had met at Chicago, 16th May, and had nominated Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, for president, and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, for vice-president. A fourth ticket was placed in the field by a convention calling itself the Constitutional and Union Convention, which met at Baltimore, May 9th, and nominated John Bell of Tennessee, and Edward Everett of Massachusetts. These candidates were supported by many of the more conservative and temperate men of all parts of the country. But their number was relatively small; and the result of the vote in November was the election of Lincoln and Hamlin; as indeed was plainly foreseen, upon the division of the Democrats. Their electoral vote was 180, to 75 for Breckinridge and Lane, 39 for Bell and Everett, and 12 for Douglas and Johnson. The popular votes were, for Lincoln and Hamlin 1,857,810; Douglas and Johnson 1,365,976; Breckinridge and Lane, 847,953; Bell and Everett, 590,631. As soon as Lincoln's election became certain, meetings for secession were held in South Carolina, and the Legislature called a convention which met December 11th, and on the 20th passed an ordinance asserting that the Union of the States was thereby dissolved, and South Carolina no longer a member of the same. Similar conventions were soon called, and ordinances passed in Georgia, Alabama, Florida, Mississippi, Louisiana, Texas; and those states

severally took possession of all the United States fortifications, vessels, funds and property within their limits, as far as practicable, the only points retained by the United States authorities being Fort Sumter, in Charleston harbor, Fort Jefferson at the Tortugas, and Fort Pickens at Pensacola. These states then assembled by representatives at Montgomery, Alabama, on the 4th of February, 1861, and proceeded to adopt a constitution and laws for a new confederacy, which took the name of the "Confederate States of America," and to appoint a government for the same, of which Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was voted president, and inaugurated on the 14th of the month. All these states had instantly raised military forces, professing to apprehend warlike measures from the United States government, and a military organization was also formed by the convention at Montgomery. The senators and representatives of the seceding states one after another vacated their places in Congress. Violent efforts were made, but in vain, to draw the northern tier of slave states into the secession movement. The constituted government of the United States, notwithstanding the departure of some of its members, remained in action, and its ordinary business proceeded. Many threats were made, and conspiracy apprehended, to prevent the inauguration of the new president. But the ceremony was duly performed on the usual day and in the usual manner, and the new administration peaceably assumed the reins of government. It enters upon its duties under strange and trying circumstances; finding seven states professedly out of the Union, similar movements threatened and attempted in eight others, the departments at Washington flung by the bad management of their officers into the extremest disorder. In fact, if voting and asserting were sufficient, the government would not be a government, for the nation which it governs would not be existing. But it does exist; and by the blessing of God will continue to do so and to prosper. Against this attempt to maim the fair proportions of our country, it will be well to record some formalities more surely indicative of its increase. The admission of Kansas as a state has already been mentioned. Minnesota had been admitted in May, 1858, and Oregon in February, 1859. Three new territories were erected by an act passed in February, 1861, viz., Colorado, from the neighboring parts of the four governments of Kansas, Nebraska, Utah and New Mexico; Nevada, from the west of Utah and east of California; and Dacotah, between Minnesota and the Missouri River; thus making a total of seven territories.

Tu  
fied s  
North  
346.86  
Bay T  
south  
Gulf o  
ted St  
shire, a  
The  
1791, v  
Lower  
re-unite  
formerl  
embrac  
face oc  
of St.  
cally sit  
the grea  
a large  
The  
between  
Montrea  
of 70,00  
counted  
principle  
to the lo  
To th  
Gaspié  
Brunswi  
The s



## CANADA.

---

THE province of Canada embraces a wide and extremely diversified section of country, extending between latitude 42° and 53° North and longitude 64° and 90° West, and comprising an area of 340,863 square miles. It is bounded on the north by the Hudson's Bay Territory; on the west by Lakes Superior and Huron; on the south by Lakes Erie and Ontario; and on the east by the River and Gulf of St. Lawrence, New Brunswick, and a portion of the United States, viz.: the States of New York, Vermont, New Hampshire, and Maine.

The province of Canada, called the province of Quebec prior to 1791, was in that year divided into the two provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, under distinct governments, but in 1840 they were re-united by an Act of the Imperial Legislature. Lower Canada formerly was comprised between 45° and 52° of North Latitude, embracing an area of 205,853 square miles, exclusive of the surface occupied by the River St. Lawrence, and a portion of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, embracing 52,000 square miles. The romantically situated city of Quebec contains a population of 50,000. It is the great shipping depôt of the Canada lumber trade, and has also a large trade in ship building.

The island of Montreal, thirty-two miles long by ten broad, lies between the Ottawa and St. Lawrence, and contains the city of Montreal, the commercial emporium of Canada, with a population of 70,000. The soil on this island, as well as on Isle Jésus, is accounted good, and many of the farms are conducted on scientific principles, and with great profit, in consequence of their proximity to the local market of the city of Montreal.

To the south of the St. Lawrence are the populous districts of Gaspé and Bonaventure, a tract more properly belonging to New Brunswick than to Lower Canada.

The section of the country known by the name of the Eastern

Townships, and which are properly so called, comprises that great extent of habitable and fertile country between the Chambly and Chaudière Rivers in one direction, and between the frontier lines of Maine, Vermont, and New Hampshire, and the Seigniories of the Districts of Montreal, Saint Francis, Three Rivers, and part of Quebec, in the other. This territory promises to become the richest, the most populous, and the most flourishing part of Lower Canada; not only on account of its climate, milder than that of the shores of the St. Lawrence, of the immense extent of excellent and fertile soil which it includes, and of its abundant streams of water, but also because, while bordering on the territory of the United States, it is traversed by the main lines of communication between the two countries: namely, the railroad from Montreal to Richmond, and from Richmond to Portland, on the Atlantic; and by that from Richmond to Quebec, forming part of the Grand Trunk line. The six great counties of Sherbrooke, Stanstead, Shefford, Missisquoi, Drummond, and Megantic, contain about 4,886,400 acres of land.

Upper Canada is divided into three great natural sections, viz.: the eastern, central, and western—the eastern containing the triangular territory between the St. Lawrence and the Ottawa—the central having nearly a square form, extending from Lake Ontario on the south to Lake Nipissing on the north, and stretching from the latter lake to the Ottawa eastward—and the third, comprising an irregular triangular peninsula, inclosed nearly by Lakes Ontario, Erie, St. Clair, and Huron, and the channels by which these are connected. The counties of Glengary, Stormont, Dundas, Leeds, and Grenville, Prescott, Russell, Lanark, Renfrew, and Carlton, are situated in the eastern section. The counties of Frontenac, Lennox, Addington, Hastings, Prince Edward, Northumberland, Durham, Peterborough, the four Ridings of York and Sincoe, comprise the central section. The western section, which includes the counties of Halton, Wentworth, Lincoln, Welland, Haldimand, Norfolk, Middlesex, Kent, Essex, Huron, Waterloo, and Oxford, is advancing with great rapidity, and attracting the greater share of the emigration, and is, in many respects, the garden of Western Canada. Its surface is remarkably level, containing scarcely a hill, and its interior is traversed by several fine rivers—the Welland, Grand River, Thames, and Sydenham.

The St. Lawrence is the pride of the Canadian people, and the highway down which are poured, to the ocean, their surplus pro-

ducts.  
course  
its wa  
the g  
Lake  
quarte  
The  
viz.: I  
embrac  
largest  
Lake E  
by the  
ship ca  
Lakes S  
interrup  
The L  
seems  
Americ  
of Princ  
and in 1  
salmon  
teeming  
30,000 b  
The fo  
great re  
during t  
large am  
proportio  
that of th  
possesses  
tively fre  
decks of  
Britain in  
the proce  
into heap  
and pearl  
often grea  
Pot and p

ducts. Emerging from Lake Ontario at Kingston, it pursues its course, widening occasionally into expanses of lakes, till it expends its waters, previously swollen near Montreal by the river Ottawa, in the great Gulf of the St. Lawrence. Its extreme course, from Lake Ontario, is over 600 miles, and its width varies from three-quarters of a mile to twenty-five miles.

There are five great lakes intimately connected with each other, viz.: Lakes Superior, Huron, Michigan, Erie, and Ontario, which embrace an area of 100,000 square miles. Lake Superior is the largest inland lake in the world. Lake Ontario is connected with Lake Erie by the Niagara River, 35 miles long, broken in its course by the Falls of Niagara. Its area is about 7,000 square miles. A ship canal has been constructed, on the American side, between Lakes Superior and Huron, at the Sault St. Marie, to overcome an interruption to the navigation of a mile and a half in extent.

The Lakes afford profitable fisheries, and the country of the Lakes seems formed to be one of the richest agricultural regions in America. The fisheries are carried on chiefly in the south-west of Prince Edward County, on Lake Ontario and on Lake Huron, and in 1852 produced 11,884 barrels, principally of white fish and salmon trout. The waters of Lakes Huron and Superior are teeming with life, and on the north shore of Lake Superior alone, 30,000 barrels might be yearly put up for market.

The forests of Canada are extremely valuable and a source of great revenue. In 1852 the products of the forest exported, during that year, were valued at £1,351,713 9s. 7d. and of this large amount the region of the Ottawa furnished a considerable proportion. The timber which is most extensively exported is that of the white pine tree—a species of wood of which Canada possesses inexhaustible quantities. It is easily wrought, comparatively free from knots, and very durable. It is much used for the decks of vessels and also for their lower masts. It is exported to Britain in the shape of masts, deals, laths, and squared timber. In the process of settling, clearings are made, and the wood is thrown into heaps and burned, and from which large quantities of pot and pearl ashes are manufactured and exported, the price of which often greatly assists the settler in meeting the first cost of his land. Pot and pearl ashes to the value of 232,004*l.* were exported in 1852.

es that great  
Chambly and  
frontier lines  
gniorities of the  
, and part of  
come the rich-  
of Lower Can-  
n that of the  
excellent and  
reams of water,  
of the United  
ation between  
al to Richmond,  
nd by that from  
unk line. The  
ord, Missisquoi,  
acres of land.  
l sections, viz.:  
aining the trian-  
ttawa—the cen-  
ake Ontario on  
atching from the  
d, comprising an  
Lakes Ontario,  
which these are  
Dundas, Leeds,  
and Carlton, are  
Frontenac, Len-  
umberland, Dur-  
Sincoe, comprise  
cludes the coun-  
dimand, Norfolk,  
ord, is advancing  
re of the emigra-  
ern Canada. Its  
hill, and its inte-  
nd, Grand River,

n people, and the  
their surplus pro-

The mineral resources of Canada are especially valuable and are being rapidly developed.

The manufactures of the Province are yet in their infancy, but are annually increasing in variety and extent, and rising in importance. Lower Canada, especially, is admirably adapted for the extension of manufactures. "The long winter, in which comparatively few of the departments of out-door agricultural labor can be engaged in, and the peculiarly appropriate character of the industrious French Canadians of the interior, adapting them for such occupations, render it very desirable that the facilities afforded by the abundant water powers and comparative cheapness and plentifulness of labor, capable of becoming skilled, should, to a large extent, be taken advantage of. We shall then see, from one of its fertile valleys to another, a chain of thronging factories extended; and the clang of the heavy hammer, and the jar of the machinery, and the busy hum of human industry will mingle with, and be heard high above the rapid splash and echoing fall of the many streams which, now lavish of power, invite the labor of the artisan. The clog of the Seignorial Tenure, in Lower Canada, has, to some extent, impeded the progress of this branch of industry; but as it may be now regarded among the things that were, it is predicted that the day is not far distant when Canada—and Lower Canada especially—will be largely engaged in various manufactures, and add important contributions in this way to the common wealth." New branches of productive industry are continually arising, and new manufactures are carried on. For instance, the banks of the Lachine Canal at Montreal, are being clustered with busy manufactories. A large sugar refinery has been erected. An India-rubber manufactory is in active operation, and paint mills, axe factories, machine shops, nail and spike factories, &c., have been built. Ship building is a very important trade in and about the city of Quebec, and gives employment to a very large number of hands, while the colonial built vessels, for build and strength, have acquired a high reputation. In the year 1843, there were built at Quebec 48 vessels; tonnage, 13,785; while in 1853, there were 76 vessels; tonnage, 51,637; showing a large and decided increase. The average annual value of vessels built at Quebec, has been estimated at £500,000.

The commerce of Canada is being extended and developed with giant strides. It has passed the period of infancy and attained a magnitude which may, perhaps, at first view seem disproportioned

to the  
1782  
ern C  
The  
was  
import  
Amer  
the re  
the Pr  
351 11  
to the  
can Co  
the im  
3s. 6d.  
145 11  
£3,820  
an imm  
year, an  
cent.  
3s. 9d.;  
597 16s.  
The  
was, in  
total ex  
The pro  
there ha  
255 2s.  
ain, and  
their pro  
tuted the  
£1,219.8  
4s. 8d. to  
Americ  
to which  
say £620  
being £3  
From th  
£2,443.4  
£29,942;  
arrived a

to the youth of the country; for it is to be borne in mind that in 1782, what now constitutes the fertile, wealth, and populous Western Canada, with a population of over a million, was a wilderness. The total value of the imports into Canada in the year 1853, was £7,995,359 1s. 1d. Of this amount £4,022,280 3s. 10d. was imported from Britain, £158,164 19s. 7d. from the British North American Colonies, and £2,945,556 17s. from the United States; the residue from other sources. For the same year the exports of the Province were £5,950,325 15s. 4d. currency, of which £2,800-351 19s. 4d. were exported from Great Britain, £2,081,303 15s. 8d. to the United States, £345,116 7s. 11d. to the other North American Colonies, and £5,045 16s. 11d. to the British West Indies. Of the imports, the total amount of goods paying duty was £7,551,381 3s. 6d. of which £4,550,383 15s. 8d. were from Britain, and £2,004-145 11s. 5d. from the United States. In 1852 the exports were £3,826,901 15s. 5d. and the imports £5,071,023 3s. 11d. showing an immense advance in the commerce of 1853 over the previous year, amounting, taking both imports and exports together, to 57 per cent. In 1849 the nett revenue from Custom duties was £412,737 3s. 9d.; in 1852 it was £705,022 10s. 9d.; but in 1853 it was £086-597 10s. 10d. currency.

The total value of the exported produce of the mines of Canada, was, in 1853, £27,339, of which copper ore furnished £23,020. The total export of the produce of the fisheries was £85,000 13s. 8d. The produce of the forest, which was exported in 1853, is large, there having been exports from that source to the value of £2,355-255 2s. 3d. of which £1,082,125 12s. 1d. found their way to Britain, and £652,534 5s. 4d. to the United States. Of animals and their produce the export was £342,031 7s. Vegetable food constituted the second leading export, viz.: £1,095,005 15s. 9d. of which £1,219,861 14s. 6d. was exported to the United States, £502,160 4s. 8d. to Britain, and £273,068 10s. 7d. to the other British North American Colonies. The export of manufactures was £35,106 9s. to which is to be added for ships built at Quebec during the year, say £620,187 10s. currency; the total value of exports from sea ports being £3,266,716 2s. 11d. and from inland ports £2,236,341 7s. 9d. From the seaward ports there were exported from Quebec, £2,443,457; Montreal, £746,050; Gaspé, £32,067; New Carlisle, £29,942; and from Amherst, £14,597. In the year 1853 there arrived at the port of Quebec 1,351 vessels, with a tonnage of

570,738. In the same year 1,406 vessels departed from this port. In the same year 243 vessels arrived at the inland port of Montreal, at the foot of the canal navigation. In 1817 the first Canadian steamers on Lake Ontario were built. In 1818 there was only one steamer on Lake Erie, and forty sailing vessels above Niagara Falls. Now there are hundreds. The inward tonnage of Lake and river steamers, in 1853, was 2,175,241 British, and 1,102,239 American; in all, 3,277,480. In the same year the tonnage inwards of sailing vessels was 544,509; the outward tonnage of steamers was 3,076,509. Of these 2,070,117 were British, and 1,000,392 American, and of sailing vessels 571,814. The total inward and outward tonnage being 7,470,312. There were built within the Province, in 1853, 136 sailing vessels, with a tonnage of 57,722.

The trade between the Canadas and the United States is very large, and will be immensely stimulated by the Reciprocity Treaty. In 1849 the exports to the United States were \$1,481,082; and the imports from, \$4,243,724. In 1853, the exports to the United States were £2,081,303 15s. 8d. or \$10,726,455, and the imports from ditto were £2,045,536 17s. or \$11,782,147; thus showing a surprising extension of the Reciprocity Treaty trade.

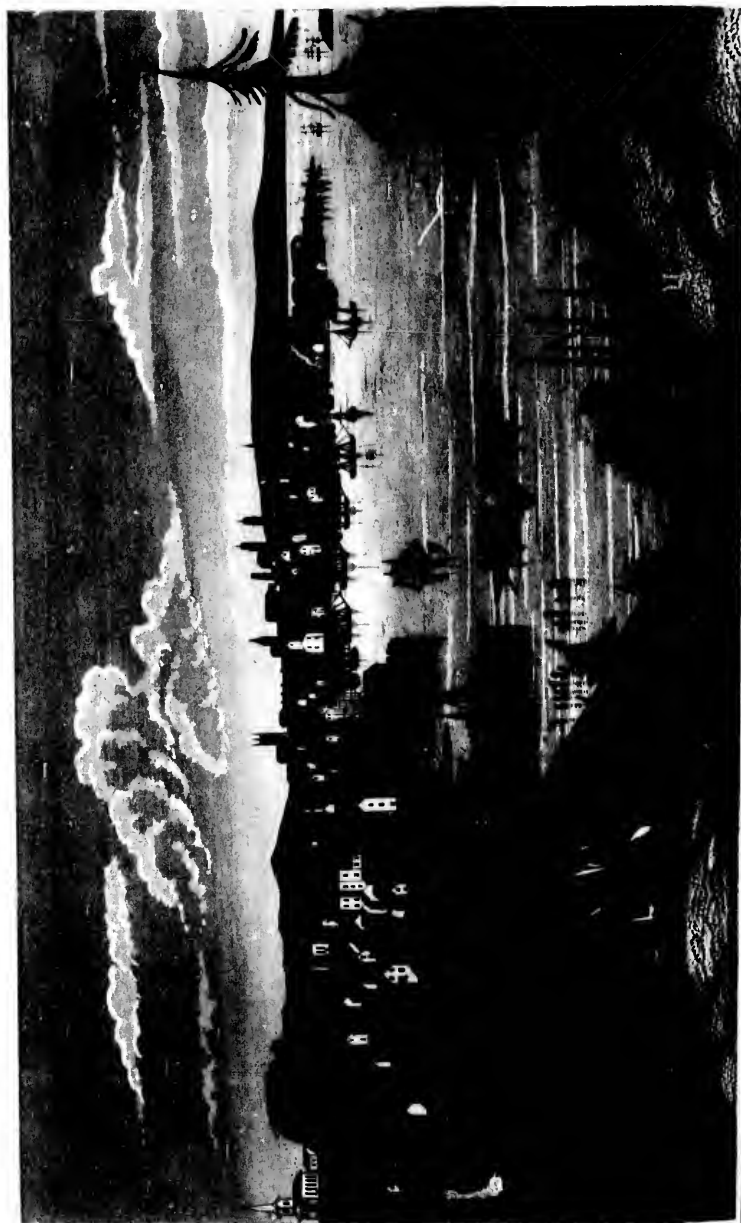
This treaty, in the first place, opens up to the Americans the right to use the sea fisheries in the British waters, the salmon and river fisheries being excluded from its operation. Secondly, it provides that the following articles, the growth and produce of the British Colonies, or of the United States, shall be admitted into each country free of duty,—grain, flour, breadstuffs of all kinds, animals of all kinds, fresh, smoked and salted meats, cotton, wool, seeds and vegetables, undried and dried fruits, fish, products of fish and of all other creatures living in the water, poultry, eggs, hides, furs, skins or tails, undressed; stone or marble in its crude state, slate, butter, cheese, tallow, lard, horns, manures, ores of metal of all kinds, coal, pitch, tar, turpentine, ashes, timber and lumber of all kinds, firewood, plants, shrubs, trees, felts and wools, oil, broom corn, and bark; gypsum, ground or unground; hewn or wrought or unwrought burr or grindstones; dyestuffs, flax, hemp and tow, unmanufactured; unmanufactured tobacco, rags. And thirdly, it throws open the navigation of the St. Lawrence and the canals, during the will of the British government, to American citizens, while it accords to the British and Canadian people the right to navigate Lake Michigan.

It is asserted that no country in the world is possessed of more

his port.  
Montreal,  
Canadian  
was only  
Niagara  
Lake and  
10 Ameri-  
wards of  
mers was  
12 Ameri-  
d outward  
province, in

ates is very  
ity Treaty.  
2; and the  
the United  
the imports  
showing a

ans the right  
on and river  
, it provides  
f the British  
o each coun-  
animals of all  
ds and vege-  
d of all other  
skins or tails,  
utter, cheese,  
s, coal, pitch,  
ds, firewood,  
nd bark; gyp-  
ought burr or  
ured; unman-  
the navigation  
of the British  
to the British  
igan.  
essed of more





important and extensive canals or a more magnificent system of inland navigation, than in Canada. They are the channels of a great sale, and afford large revenues.

As the navigation of the St. Lawrence is ice-locked during the winter season, the means of speedily communicating with the sea-land and with the various parts of the interior, especially important. In Canada, at present, there are no great lines suggested by, and accommodated to, the great commercial interests of the country, to which the others would naturally be directed. The first of these great lines is the one that has been proposed to run through Canada from east to west, from the Gulf of St. Lawrence at Montreal, by the Great Lakes, to the Pacific Ocean.

The second is the Great Western line, traversing the western sections of Canada, and now of steady improvement, and increasing returns of traffic.

The third is the Ottawa Valley line, composed of a line designed to extend, in the first stage, from Montreal to Pembroke, and eventually to Lake Huron. The distance from Montreal to the Georgian Bay, about 400 miles, against 1,000 by the sea.

The growth of the Press of Canada has been rapid. The first newspaper established in Canada was in 1763, at Philadelphia, in 1763. The first newspaper established in both sections of the Province was in 1792. The aggregate sum raised by the sale of newspapers in Canada was, in 1853, the noblest of the year.

The sum on any preceding year was \$1,000,000. The sum raised for the erection and maintenance of the system was \$1,000,000.

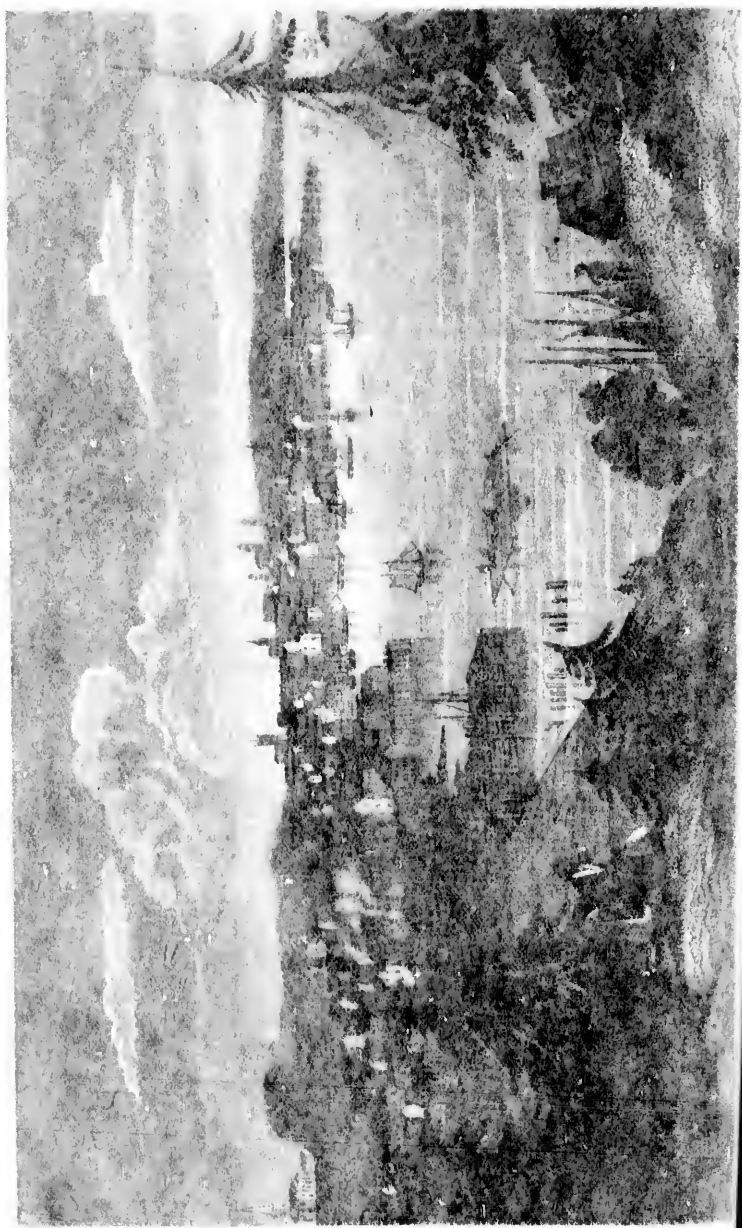
The number of papers published in Canada in 1853 was 194,736; the increase during the year was 10,000. The system is the establishment of a Superintendent, and the issue of 90,000 volumes of books.

The number of volumes issued in 1852 were free. 2,117 volumes were issued in 1853.

The number of schools, on subjects connected with the collegiate institutions of the Province, was 1,000.

The number of schools, on subjects connected with the collegiate institutions of the Province, was 1,000.

The number of schools, on subjects connected with the collegiate institutions of the Province, was 1,000.



import  
land n  
trade,

As  
winter  
board  
tant.

by, and  
country  
first of  
propose  
Lawren

The s  
fertile se  
ing large

The t  
and desig  
treat to P  
Marie; th  
the Ottawa

The gr  
The first  
still existi  
from Phil  
lished in b

The ag  
Canada w  
increase o  
sum raised  
11s. 10d.

gate, 194,7  
feature of t  
by the Sup  
report issue

circulated.  
these 1,052  
year, in sch

The col  
Queen's Co  
Victoria C

important and extensive canals or a more magnificent system of inland navigation, than is Canada. They are the channels of a great trade, and afford large revenues.

As the navigation of the St. Lawrence is ice-locked during the winter season, the means of speedy communication with the sea board and with the various parts of the interior are especially important. In Canada, at present, there are three great lines suggested by, and accommodated to, strongly marked natural divisions of the country, to which the others will prove tributaries or feeders. The first of these great lines is the Grand Trunk Railway, which it is proposed to run through Canada from east to west, spanning the St. Lawrence at Montreal, by the gigantic Victoria Bridge.

The second is the Great Western line, traversing one of the most fertile sections of Canada, and now in steady operation, and showing large and increasing returns of traffic.

The third is the Ottawa Valley line, composed of various links, and designed to extend, in the meantime, from the city of Montreal to Pembroke, and eventually to Lake Huron and the Sault St. Marie; the distance from Montreal to the Georgian Bay being, by the Ottawa, about 400 miles, against 1,000 by the St. Lawrence.

The growth of the Press of Canada has been steady and rapid. The first newspaper established in Canada was the Quebec Gazette, still existing. The founder of it, Mr. Brown, brought his press from Philadelphia, in 1763. The total number of newspapers published in both sections of the Province in 1854 was 157.

The aggregate sum raised for all educational purposes in Western Canada was, in 1853, the noble sum of £199,674 1s. 5d. being an increase on any preceding year of £23,598 2s. 5d. The aggregate sum raised for the erection and repairs of school-houses was £80,730 11s. 10d. The number of pupils in attendance was, in the aggregate, 194,736; the increase during the year being 15,149. A recent feature of the system is the establishment of school libraries, selected by the Superintendent, and the issue of school maps. When the report issued, 90,000 volumes of general information had thus been circulated. The number of schools was, in 1853, 3,127; and of these 1,052 were free. 2,117 lectures were delivered during the year, in schools, on subjects connected with the system.

The collegiate institutions of Canada are, The University of Queen's College, situated at Kingston; Trinity College, Toronto; Victoria College, at Cobourg, on Lake Ontario; The College of

Regispolis is situated at Kingston, and is maintained and carried on under the superintendence of the Roman Catholic Bishop of that city.

Population of Western Canada by origin.—Canadians, not of French origin, 526,093; England and Wales, 82,699; Ireland, 176,267; Scotland, 75,811; Canadian French, 26,417; United States, 43,732; from the countries, 20,995; making a total of 952,004.

Religious Census.—Church of England, 223,190; Rome, 167,695; Methodists, 207,656; Presbyterians, 204,148; Baptists, 43,353; Lutherans, 12,089; other creeds, 91,872. Churches.—Church of England, 226; Rome, 135; Presbyterian, 257; Methodist, 471; Quaker, 18; Lutheran, 22; Congregationalist, 84; Baptist, 116; Bible Christians, 46; other places of worship, 185; total, 1,159.

Population of Lower Canada by origin.—Canadians, not French origin, 669,528; Canadians, of French origin, 125,580; England and Wales, 11,230; Ireland, 51,499; Scotland, 14,565; United States, 12,482; other countries, 5,377; total, 890,261.

Religious Creeds.—Church of Rome, 746,860; England, 45,402; Methodists, 21,183; Presbyterians, 33,535; Baptists, 4,433; other creeds, 38,782. Churches.—Roman Catholic, 340; Church of England, 111; Presbyterian, 57; Methodist, 60; Congregationalist, 20; Jew's Synagogue, 1; or one place of worship for every 1,450 inhabitants, including only those churches returned on the census list.

The revenue of Canada, derived from Custom duties, has been augmenting rapidly, as the annual statements indicate. Gross Revenue in 1849, £444,547 5s. 1d.; in 1850, £615,694 13s. 1d.; in 1851, £737,439 0s. 2d.; in 1852, £739,203 12s. 9d.; and in 1853, £1,029,782 15s. 4d.

AREA.  
TO A  
EU  
SP  
R

New  
being ne  
as the  
acres, o  
an irreg  
Canada,  
Fundy, a  
New  
1784, ha  
name of  
tinguise  
The first  
the Gilbe  
in 1607.  
however  
Fundy w  
and on th  
he name  
was. De

t carried on  
of that city.  
ans, not of  
9; Ireland,  
nited States,  
952,004.  
me, 107,695;  
ists, 43,353;  
—Church of  
ethodist, 471;  
Baptist, 116;  
al, 1,159.  
s, not French  
25,580; Eng-  
14,565; Uni-  
261.  
gland, 45,402,  
4,433; other  
Church of Eng-  
gationalist, 20,  
ry 1,450 inhab-  
e census list.  
uties, has been  
e. Gross Rev-  
3s. 1d.; in 1851,  
and in 1853.

# NEW BRUNSWICK.

## CHAPTER I.

AREA.—ENGLISH SETTLEMENT.—FRENCH DISCOVERY.—GRANT  
TO ALEXANDER.—DE LA TOUR AND CHARNISSE.—BAY CHAL-  
EURS SETTLED.—ENAUD AT BAY CHALEURS.—PIRATES.—  
SPREAD OF FRENCH SETTLEMENTS.—DAVIDSON AT MI-  
RAMICHI.—ST. JOHN SETTLED.—ATTACK ON MIRAM-  
ICHI.—MICMACS.—ATTACK THE VIPER.—  
FEROCITY OF MARTIN.—GOV.  
CARLETON

New Brunswick is a country occupying 27,620 square miles, being nearly as much as the whole of the kingdom of England, or as the states of New England. This area is equal to 17,677,360 acres, of which a very large share is fit for cultivation. It occupies an irregular square, and is bounded north by Bay Chaleurs and Canada, east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence, south by the Bay of Fundy, and west by Canada and the state of Maine.

New Brunswick has existed as a separate province only since 1784, having before that time been a county of Nova Scotia, by the name of Sunbury county; and at a still earlier period was an undistinguished portion of that large extent of territory termed Acadia. The first English settlement within its limits was that attempted by the Gilberts, father and son, on the north side of the Bay of Fundy, in 1607. Jacques Cartier, the celebrated French navigator, had however landed in Bay Chaleurs long before, in 1531. The Bay of Fundy was first discovered by De Monts, in May or June, 1604; and on the 24th of the latter month he entered the St. John, which he named in honor of St. John the Baptist, whose festival day it was. De Monts explored the whole north coast of the bay, entered

and named the St. Croix river, and on a small island at its mouth erected a fort, taking possession of the country for the king of France.

With the remainder of the territory of Acadia, New Brunswick remained for some years in the nominal possession of the French. Grants of American territory were, however, made at that period in a singularly loose manner; and without regard to the French title, Acadia, or as it was named in the grant, Nova Scotia, including all the territory east of a line running north from the St. Croix to the St. Lawrence, was given to Sir William Alexander, afterwards Earl of Stirling, by king James I. in 1621. Sir William had but little success in his endeavors to settle the country. An expedition sent under his orders, commanded by his son and Sir David Kirk, captured the French fort at St. Croix; and a little afterwards, a French gentleman, Claude de la Tour, who owned a large grant on the St. John, endeavored unsuccessfully to establish a colony of Scotch settlers there. In 1629, Sir David Kirk took Cape Breton, and conquered Canada, for the British crown. But Charles I., at the treaty of St. Germain, gave up the whole country again to the French king, who made large grants on the St. Croix to M. Razillai. Much of the northern and eastern part of New Brunswick was also given to M. Denys. Claude de la Tour and his son Etienne erected forts and trading posts on the St. John, and set on foot a profitable trade with the Indians. The governor of the remaining part of Acadia, Daubr  de Charniss , and Etienne de la Tour, soon fell into a ferocious and unscrupulous quarrel, for reasons not distinctly understood, but doubtless consisting chiefly of jealousy respecting trade and politics. This quarrel became an open warfare. The French king prescribed territorial limits for the parties, and then, having heard their mutual accusations, sent out orders to Charniss  to arrest La Tour and send him home for trial. La Tour, however, who had shrewdly cultivated amicable relations with the Puritans at Boston, raised there a force of four armed vessels and eighty men, and returning to his fort, which was at the junction of the Gemsec and the St. John, drove Charniss  back to his own stronghold on the Penobscot river. Charniss  however contrived to induce Gov. Endicott of Massachusetts to become neutral in the affair, and after being once ignominiously driven away from La Tour's fort by the vigorous defence made by Madame La Tour in her husband's absence, he again attacked it when the commander was away on a

trading  
at last  
fully v  
La Tou  
ried off  
soon die  
also die  
La Tou  
of a sta  
became  
friends a  
he resum  
an ungra  
Charniss   
and accor  
tion by fo  
Colonel S  
recover A  
remarkable  
While th  
the south  
been establ  
leurs. In  
had cleared  
shore of th  
served of  
wealthy; a  
the furious  
southward.  
neighborhood  
family quar  
tribe into w  
Mohawk ra  
of Acadia.  
At the tre  
French; for  
as a sort o  
negligent w  
plundered t  
St. John.

trading expedition, and after being repelled in several furious assaults, at last obtained possession of it by a capitulation, which he shamefully violated by hanging the brave garrison, and leading Madame La Tour to the gallows with a halter about her neck. He also carried off all the property at the fort. The brave Madame de la Tour soon died of sorrow at these misfortunes. The villainous Charnissé also died shortly afterwards, and by a singular vicissitude of fortune, La Tour married his widow, and by this marriage and by the bequest of a sister of Charnissé, who died a little afterwards, his possessions became larger than ever. He was aided while in poverty by his friends at Boston, who procured him money and a vessel, with which he resumed his trade with the Indians, but is said to have made only an ungrateful return for the benefit. A creditor of the deceased Charnissé now took judgment in France against La Tour's estates, and according to the practice in those days, set about levying execution by force of arms. His enterprise was, however, forestalled by Colonel Sedgwick, who was sent out by Cromwell, in 1654, to recover Acadia from the French, in which he succeeded with remarkable ease.

While these various fortunes attended the French settlements in the south of the territory of New Brunswick, other emigrants had been establishing themselves at its northern extremity, on Bay Chaleurs. In 1638 or 1639, a native of Gascony, Jean Jacques Enaud, had cleared some land and established an Indian trade on the south shore of that bay. Scarcely any historical accounts have been preserved of Enaud or his transactions. He was, however, quite wealthy; and from his remote location, had little connection with the furious warfare which occupied his fellow-countrymen to the southward. He married the daughter of an eminent chief of the neighborhood; but was murdered by a savage brother-in-law in a family quarrel, and his followers were killed or driven away by the tribe into which he had married, which is said to have been of the Mohawk race, and to have waged successful war with the Micmacs of Acadia.

At the treaty of Breda, in 1677, Acadia was again given up to the French; for it seems to have been passed backwards and forwards as a sort of make-weight, with little or no value of its own. So negligent were its European owners, that piratical vessels repeatedly plundered the country, and even took the forts on the Gemsec and St. John. Tradition asserts that at some po on the New Bruns-

wick coast, as has so often been believed of points further south, Captain Kidd buried some of his ill-gotten treasures.

During the wars after the English Revolution of 1688, the French forts on the St. John were a center of French influence, and were bravely maintained against the expeditions sent from England and from the New England colonies. Villabon, the commander at the Gemsec, in 1691, made prisoner Mr. Nelson, governor of Nova Scotia, and sent him to the French commander at Quebec. He raised a force of French and Indians and took Pemaquid; and maintained his fortress against Church's expedition from Massachusetts. All the European inhabitants of Acadia at this time were French; and throughout the frequent transfers of their sovereignty, they remained always faithfully attached to the French interest. In 1704, Villabon again repelled an attack from Massachusetts. Acadia had been nominally conquered by the English, and held by them, under William and Mary; had been ceded to France at the peace of Ryswick in 1696; was again invaded under Queen Anne, and finally became permanently a portion of the British Empire at the peace of Utrecht, in 1713.

Besides the settlements on the St. John and on Bay Chaleurs, other French emigrants had been gradually establishing themselves along the eastern coast. About 1672 or 1673, a settlement was made at Baie des Vents, in Miramichi Bay, and others were formed at Bay Verte, Nequaak, Canadian Point, &c.; Petite Rochelle, on the Restigouche, was founded and fortified; and at Beaubair's Point and Island, on the Miramichi, quite important settlements were made.

But the French settlers in New Brunswick, except those on the St. John, although stedfast in their adherence to French sentiments, were much less involved in the transactions of the subsequent war, known as the Old French War, than the inhabitants of Nova Scotia. Accordingly, they endured but a small share of the hardships accompanying the removal of the Acadians from their homes, in 1755, during the war. Indeed, many of those unfortunate people, escaping from the power of the English, found shelter among the French settlements on the east coast of New Brunswick, at Miramichi and elsewhere. At the end of the war, these settlers swore allegiance to the English crown; the Micmac chiefs also submitted and made a treaty, and thus the French influence, which had long survived the formal possession of the country by that nation, was finally extinguished, to be replaced by that of the English.

A  
enter  
estab  
He r  
of A  
Scot  
Harb  
John  
fish, fu  
Jam  
in 176  
a small  
then a  
first reg  
in what  
Massac  
ferent p  
The I  
war of t  
made co  
and to st  
attempts  
to extern  
done so  
appeared  
cunning  
and capt  
then attac  
of them,  
he beat o  
ing sever  
made so  
him, the b  
after he h  
in blood fi  
one of his  
strangled  
The att  
1779; and  
compelled



Almost immediately after this event, English settlers began to enter New Brunswick. In 1764, William Davidson, a Scotchman, established himself at Miramichi, being the first British settler there. He received a large grant of land, and in company with a Mr. Cort, of Aberdeen, set on foot a profitable salmon fishery. Another Scotchman, named Walker, settled at Alston Point, in Bathurst Harbor, soon after the capture of Quebec, one of whose associates, John Young, lived until after 1840. The trade of this place was in fish, furs, moose-skins, and walrus hide, oil and teeth.

James Simonds, Esq., endeavored to settle on the River St. John, in 1760, but was driven off by the Indians. Returning in 1764, with a small company, he reached the site of the present city of St. John, then a dense forest, and established a trade with the Indians. The first regular English settlement on the St. John was at Maugerville, in what is now Sunbury county, in 1766. The settlers were from Massachusetts, and other New England families joined them at different periods.

The English population, however, increased but slowly up to the war of the American Revolution. During this war, the Americans made considerable efforts to spread disaffection among the whites and to stir up the Indians to make war upon the English. In these attempts they had some success. A council of Micmacs had resolved to exterminate Davidson's company at Miramichi, and might have done so had not an English man-of-war, the *Viper*, opportunely appeared in the bay. She came in under American colors, but the cunning aborigines saw through the deceit and laid a plan to board and capture her. About thirty of them were admitted, and being then attacked, were killed or taken after a desperate struggle. One of them, named Pierre Martin, fought with so much obstinacy that he beat off two marines, nearly strangled two more, and after receiving several severe wounds, snatched a bayonet from a sailor, and made so desperate a stroke at one of his adversaries, that missing him, the blade passed through one of the vessel's stanchions. Even after he had fallen under his wounds, he sprang up again, all bathed in blood from deep sword-cuts, and leaped furiously at the throat of one of his own men, reproaching him for his cowardice, and nearly strangled him before he was at last killed by one of the crew.

The attempts to excite the Indians to war were not given up until 1779; and the settlers on the St. John suffered great hardships, being compelled for a long time to watch incessantly against the savages,

and repeatedly to retreat into a fort which they had built at Oro-mucto. At the close of the war, a great impulse was given to the prosperity of New Brunswick, by the removal into it of several thousand disbanded troops, and of large numbers of loyalist refugees from the United States. On the 16th of August, 1784, Col. Carleton was appointed governor of the new province of New Brunswick, which was in that year set off from Nova Scotia, and thus entered upon the present era of its history.

Gov. Carleton remained at the head of the government for only about two years; but the beneficent policy which he instituted has been followed so successfully as to have now established the prosperity of the province upon a safe basis: No great political convulsions have marked the history of New Brunswick since 1784, and its history is an almost unbroken story of progress in wealth and happiness. The early settlers, it is true, experienced many hardships; but no more, perhaps, than are felt by the pioneers in any new country. The climate was then more severe than of late years; the huts which they hastily erected near the site of St. John, were not complete when the winter came upon them; and their sufferings from cold and hunger during the first winter were exceedingly severe.

---

## CHAPTER II.

PROGRESS AFTER THE AMERICAN WAR.—COLONIAL SYSTEM OF  
1800-7.—DUTIES ON TIMBER.—GREAT FIRE OF 1825.—LOSS AT  
NEWCASTLE AND DOUGLASTOWN.—DISPUTED AMERICAN  
BOUNDARY.—REFERENCE TO THE KING OF NETH-  
ERLANDS.—FINAL SETTLEMENT.—PRINCE  
OF WALES' VISIT IN 1860.—RECEIVED AT  
ST. JOHN.—JOURNEY TO FREDERIC-  
TON.—RECEPTION AT FREDERIC-  
TON.—RETURN.

From the close of the war with the American colonies to the beginning of the present century, the growth of New Brunswick was slow, much the largest share of the efforts of the inhabitants being devoted to the fisheries. The first important impulse to the timber trade arose in consequence of the judicious regulations of the

benef  
conse  
non-in  
and A  
increa  
compe  
trade  
In 1  
tially a  
mercian  
was ma  
spread  
michi.  
accident  
remarka  
and New  
in the ba  
tember a  
it was ev  
distant fla  
different  
crackle an  
was distin  
that of the  
yellowish  
the forest.  
There was  
population  
sented a b  
within the  
stant succ  
smoky clo  
could reac  
ing and fla  
ful artillery  
of smoke,  
swept thro  
narrow bel  
river. Th  
flourishing

beneficent colonial system adopted by Great Britain in 1800-7, in consequence of the French "continental system," and the American non-intercourse acts. The duties imposed by England on Baltic and American timber, which had been almost nominal, were now increased to an extent which protected the colonial lumber from competition; and their continuance has maintained the vast timber trade of New Brunswick in its present flourishing state.

In 1825, the commercial interests of the province were substantially aided by a grant from the home government of all the commercial privileges possessed by any other colony. The same year was marked by a terrific misfortune, the vast conflagration which spread devastation over a great area of territory on the river Miramichi. The summer had been uncommonly warm and dry, and the accidental fires to which forest districts are always liable had been remarkably frequent and destructive in several parts of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Such a fire had been consuming the forests in the back country of the great county of Northumberland, in September and the first days of October, 1825; and on the 6th October, it was evidently approaching the town of Newcastle. On that day, distant flashes and blazes of fire were seen by various persons in different parts of the woods; trees and branches were heard to crackle and fall, and an incessant rumbling noise like distant thunder was distinctly heard. Next day the heat of the fire so intensified that of the weather, as to become very enervating; at noon, a pale yellowish mist with a purple tinge could be seen rising silently over the forest. This was soon replaced by a heavy dark cloud of smoke. There was not a breath of air; a dreadful lassitude oppressed all the population; the whole horizon about the doomed settlements presented a belt of fire; and the woods trembled and rustled, and from within their depths came strange and boisterous sounds, and a constant succession of loud explosions. Soon a heavy dark canopy of smoky cloud moved over the settlements, extending as far as the eye could reach, while beneath it, in the distance, could be seen the leaping and flashing of the fire, which steadily advanced, with its dreadful artillery of crashing and exploding sounds, and its dark curtain of smoke, until as if with a sudden leap the main body of the fire swept through the nearest skirts of the woods, and burst upon the narrow belt of settlements and clearings that skirted the Miramichi river. This belt, a hundred miles and more in length, including two flourishing towns, Newcastle and Douglastown, thickly settled along

ilt at Oro-  
ven to the  
of several  
st refugees  
l. Carleton  
Brunswick,  
thus entered

ent for only  
stituted has  
ned the pros-  
tical convul-  
1784, and its  
th and happi-  
ny hardships;  
ny new coun-  
ears; the huts  
were not com-  
ufferings from  
ngly severe.

AL SYSTEM OF  
25.—LOSS AT  
AMERICAN  
NETH-  
INCE  
AT

colonies to the  
New Brunswick  
of the inhabitants  
nt impulse to the  
regulations of the

its whole length, and containing several thousand inhabitants, was at nightfall a prosperous, happy, and rich community. When morning came, it was one ghastly and horrible scene of death and destruction. In Newcastle, of 260 buildings, twelve only were left standing; in Douglastown, only six out of seventy; many of the vessels lying at Miramichi were burned, and the rest saved with the utmost difficulty. The whole district was black with ashes; crops, trees, houses, were burned to the ground, and so instantaneous and tremendous had been the assault of the fire, that more than five hundred human beings were suffocated or burned in it, and their unburied remains lay scorched or half burned, scattered here and there amongst the ashes of their dwellings. Thousands and thousands of domestic animals were burned; unknown multitudes of wild beasts and birds; and even the salmon and other fish of the river, poisoned by the lye formed by the enormous quantities of ashes swept into it, floated ashore, dead, in countless numbers. The whole area burned over was estimated at six thousand square miles. The misery and poverty of the survivors, who had lost about a quarter of a million sterling, was somewhat alleviated by a subscription to relieve them, collected on both sides of the Atlantic, to the amount of about £40,000.

After the peace of 1815, between Great Britain and the United States, the Americans began to settle a tract of land since termed the "Disputed Territory," and lying between the undoubted jurisdictions of Maine and New Brunswick. This territory was rendered debatable by the want of precision in the terms by which the treaty of Paris in 1763 had defined the northern boundary of Maine. Its position in the valley of the St. John connects it most naturally with the British province; in 1763 the British government settled a company of Acadians at Madawasca; and indeed the British jurisdiction over it had always been undoubted, except while it had been in the hands of the French.

The Americans, however, soon began to put forward claims to some of the lands south of the St. John, and then, going further, even to others, which reached the highlands limiting the valley of the St. Lawrence. The words in the treaty on which they relied declare that the boundary of Nova Scotia (then including New Brunswick) shall be formed "by a line drawn due north from the source of the St. Croix to the high lands which divide those rivers that empty themselves into the River St. Lawrence, from those

which fi  
Connect  
under th  
to the tr  
within th  
edge of t  
ness. W  
to claim  
Brunswic  
farming a  
the rest of  
they felt e  
claim by  
gained som  
actual entr  
field upon  
topography  
a joint com  
not come t  
Mars Hill, v  
treaty of G  
upon as arb  
gave part of  
obtaining a  
miles. Tha  
and the quee  
the increasir  
the approach  
with full po  
with Daniel  
he agreed on  
the Netherla  
of the lands  
the former de  
New Brunsw  
territory had  
both on polit  
Madawasca s  
had changed  
tion of the u

which fall into the Atlantic Ocean, to the northwesternmost head of Connecticut River." Now these words were probably agreed upon under the impression that they would secure to each of the parties to the treaty, the lands drained by all rivers whose mouths were within their respective jurisdictions; and without sufficient knowledge of the upper valley of the St. John, then an unexplored wilderness. When, therefore, it appeared that the Americans were about to claim a construction of the treaty which would deprive New Brunswick of a part of its territory so extensive, so valuable for farming and lumbering, in such close geographical connection with the rest of the province, and so long considered as belonging to it, they felt entirely justified in preparing if necessary to uphold their claim by any means which might be necessary. The Americans gained some advantage in a practical direction, however, by an actual entry upon the territory in dispute, the erection of Fort Fairfield upon it, and by industrious explorations of its geology and topography. An attempt had been made to agree upon the line by a joint commission under Jay's treaty, but the commissioners could not come to an understanding, further than from the St. Croix to Mars Hill, where they therefore gave up the undertaking. At the treaty of Ghent in 1815, the king of the Netherlands was agreed upon as arbitrator of the question, and decided upon a line which gave part of the lands in dispute to each party, the United States obtaining about three-fourths of the whole area of 12,029 square miles. That government, however, declined to abide by the award, and the question remained an open and vexatious one until in 1842, the increasing excitement in Maine and New Brunswick indicated the approach of a border war. Lord Ashburton was now sent over with full powers to agree upon the boundary; and in conjunction with Daniel Webster, then Secretary of State of the United States, he agreed on a line not very different from that fixed by the king of the Netherlands, and giving the United States about seven-twelfths of the lands in question, being about 900 square miles less than by the former decision. This result has rather been acquiesced in by New Brunswick, than received with satisfaction; as it was felt that territory had been given up which justly belonged to the provinces both on political and geographical principles; that by ceding the Madawasca settlements to the United States, the British government had changed the citizenship of the inhabitants; and that the possession of the upper valley of the St. John afforded a road into the

very heart of the province which ought not to be held by a foreign power.

The visit of His Royal Highness, Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, to New Brunswick, during his progress through the British North American colonies and the United States, was an occasion of much loyal and patriotic rejoicing. The Prince, after visiting Newfoundland and Nova Scotia, reached St. John by the steamer *Styx*, from Windsor, N. S., August 3d, 1860. Here he was received by Governor Sutton, with a royal salute, and a graceful and appropriate address, and escorted for a mile to the residence of the late Mr. Chipman, selected for his lodgings, through streets lined with double ranks of enthusiastic but orderly citizens, who, as the carriage passed, fell into line behind it, forming an immense guard of honor. Triumphant arches, waving flags and playing fountains adorned the streets, and the bells were ringing out a welcome. Within the spacious grounds of the house, two thousand school children, the boys all in black, the girls all in white, were ranged in order, and as the Prince drew near they greeted him with the National Anthem, and by throwing flowers before him. During the levee at the Court House, the city was splendidly illuminated with lamps and transparencies; all the streets were ornamented to prepare for the Prince's passage, by arches, flags and fountains; and when he crossed the river and visited Carleton, the fire companies, in their loyal zeal, unharnessed the horses, and themselves drew his carriage in triumph through the streets.

From St. John the Prince ascended the river to Fredericton, greeted at every place along the stream by the ringing of bells, waving flags, and salutes. At the Capital, the joy and enthusiasm of the occasion were equal to those at St. John; the city being beautifully adorned with triumphal arches, flags and banners, the military being drawn out in honor of the day, and addresses being offered from the various governmental departments, to all of which his Royal Highness replied in the most obliging and appropriate manner. A splendid ball at the Parliament House was given in his honor; and during his visit he inaugurated the new park, which promises to be a very great addition to the beauty of the city. The Prince left Fredericton for Prince Edward's Island on the 7th, gratified and delighted with the spontaneous testimonials of affection towards himself, her Majesty the Queen, and the Imperial Government, which had been so universally and joyfully displayed.

8  
J

At  
the n  
scarc  
and r  
adapt  
marsh  
quite  
and it  
wick,  
hausti  
a belt  
steep  
rock o  
stream  
althou  
Ac  
tains,  
and c  
crosse  
river  
range  
tains  
The  
stream  
vated  
scot, a

## CHAPTER III.

SURFACE.—COAST OF BAY OF FUNDY.—MOUNTAINS.—ST. JOHN RIVER.—GRAND FALLS.—LOWER VALLEY:—WINTER FLOODS.—ST. CROIX RIVER.—PETICODIAC.—MIRAMICHI.—RESTIGOUCHE.—LAKES:—GRAND LAKE.—CHEPUTNECTICOOK LAKES.—INTERNAL NAVIGATION.—SOUTHERN HARBORS.—NORTHEASTERN COAST.—ISLANDS.—BAY OF FUNDY.—HIGH TIDES.—GEOLOGY.—COAL STRATA.

ALL the northern part of the province has a general slope toward the northward and eastward, and most of it is quite level, containing scarcely any hills, and diversified by many marshes and peat bogs, and much meadow land. A large part of this region is excellently adapted for cultivation, though some portions of it, besides the marshy part, are too light and sandy. This level region extends quite across the province, from Bay Chaleur to the River St. John, and it is underlaid by the strata of the great coal field of New Brunswick, some 12,500 miles in extent, whose mines are practically inexhaustible. Along the southern shore, next the Bay of Fundy, extends a belt of land some thirty miles wide, very rough and rocky, full of steep hills and abrupt ravines, and containing many tracts of bare rock or peat bog. It is well watered by numerous small and rapid streams, and contains many rich tracts of intervalle or meadow land, although its principal value at present is as forest.

Across the northern part of the province runs a chain of mountains, not very high, but steep and bold in outline, rocky and wild, and containing much fine scenery. Another range of lower hills crosses the southwestern part of the province, from the St. Croix river to beyond the St. John. The highest peaks of the northern range are over 2,000 feet high; but except these, the province contains no eminences of more than about 800 or 1,000 feet.

The principal river of New Brunswick is the St. John, a noble stream of five hundred miles in length, which rises in the same elevated group of hills and mountains with the Connecticut and Penobscot, and not far from their sources. Its course describes a portion

of a great circle, running northwardly, and gradually sweeping round until before entering the Bay of Fundy, it takes a southwestern course. This magnificent river with its tributaries drains an extensive territory; and from its source to its mouth it is bordered with much fertile land and much wild and beautiful scenery. Two hundred miles from its mouth are the Grand Falls, above which the only navigation is by canoes, boats, or timber rafts. Just above these falls the river expands into a wide basin, a safe and commodious harbor for lumber; but at the lower side of this, the stream turns suddenly, and is compressed within a narrow gorge only 250 feet across, and walled with perpendicular precipices from 100 to 200 feet high. At the entrance to this gorge the river plunges down a single leap of 58 feet, forming a cataract scarcely surpassed in magnificence by any in America, except Niagara. Below this fall, the stream plunges furiously down a narrow rocky chasm, descending within a short space another 58 feet, before reaching another basin at the foot of the fall. The passage of timber down this fall is a striking and exciting scene. Vast pine logs, diving headlong down the upper fall, shoot swiftly down the rapid below, plunging hither and thither, sometimes leaping their whole length out of the water, sometimes caught by scores in some inaccessible eddy under the precipitous bank, and whirled round and round until split or ground quite to pieces against each other or the sharp rocks.

Between the Great Falls and Fredericton are several other dangerous falls and rapids. From Fredericton, 136 miles below the Great Falls, the St. John is navigable for ships down to the sea, 85 miles. Through all its lower course, the river flows with a broad and calm current of from one to three miles wide, almost resembling a great lake. Its tide rises but little, usually but about fifteen inches, and it expands into many bays and inlets. This part of the river's valley is a broad and fertile tract of intervale and upland, containing much fertile cultivated ground, and many flourishing settlements. During the summer, the broad surface of the river is thickly dotted with canoes and boats, with here and there a steamboat or a great raft of timber from the forests of the upper country. In the winter, it becomes a wide and level path of snow, furnishing a convenient and much used road for sleighing and sledding. The strangest of its appearances, however, is that which it presents during the great spring freshets, when its swollen waters cover all the lowlands, sometimes sweeping off houses, barns, haystacks, cattle, and even human

being  
"ice-j  
to hig  
munic  
river v  
a hays  
are gli  
bles so  
crops  
spring,  
has fall  
ation a  
four mi  
within  
which i  
convuls  
with gr  
walls of  
descent  
mendous  
above th  
narrow c  
sage ves  
of an ho  
level.

The c  
the Gran  
below it  
smaller s  
The S  
wick, is  
lands of  
and reac  
divides fo  
enteen m  
vessels.

The Pe  
is near th  
and speed  
mouth of



beings. At such times, particularly if, as sometimes happens, an "ice-jam" below dams up the water, the inhabitants either remove to higher ground or into the upper stories of their houses; all communication must be by means of boats, and the wide expanse of the river valley becomes a great lake, dotted here and there with a tree, a haystack, or a house, amongst which steamboats and sail vessels are gliding to and fro. This alternation of dry land and water enables some of the farmers on the river to gather two very dissimilar crops a year; one of herrings, caught above their flooded farms in spring, and a second of grain or vegetables, planted after the water has fallen. The mouth of the river is not less interesting in its formation and phenomena, than its remaining portions. For the lower four miles of its course, the stream, hitherto so wide, is compressed within a crooked and contracted channel of only 250 feet in width, which is supposed to have been the result of a comparatively modern convulsion of the earth. At the outlet, the river rushes at low water with great fury through a narrow passage between perpendicular walls of limestone, and over a channel studded with rocks, down a descent of 20 feet. But at high tide this fall is reversed, the tremendous rise of high water in the Bay of Fundy coming so far above the river level as to pour the waters of the bay through the narrow channel with an inward fall of 15 feet. Through this passage vessels can pass in and out only during about three quarters of an hour each tide, while the sea and the river are at the same level.

The chief tributaries of the St. John are, above the Grand Falls, the Grand River, Green River, St. Francis and Madawaska; and below it, the Aroostook and the Tobique; besides many other smaller streams.

The St. Croix, the other chief river of the south of New Brunswick, is a large and picturesque stream, which rises in the swampy lands of the interior, pursues a very irregular and crooked channel, and reaches the sea at the western limit of the province, which it divides for some distance from the United States. A fall about seventeen miles from its mouth prevents the further ascent of large vessels.

The Peticodiac, a stream of about sixty miles long, whose mouth is near the upper end of the Bay of Fundy, is remarkable for the fury and speed of the tides at its mouth, which at spring-tide rush into the mouth of the river in a steep wave or wall of water five or six feet

high, and with a noise like thunder. This is the same phenomenon which is seen at the mouth of the Ganges, and which is there called the "bore." Vessels navigating the Peticodiac, if unskillfully handled, are liable to be stranded on the extensive flats or quicksands near its mouth, and capsized, filled with sand, and sunk, by the fury of the current.

The Miramichi, which, except the St. John, is the largest river of New Brunswick, is about 200 miles in length. Its general course is northeast, and it empties into Miramichi Bay, an inlet from the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Its tributaries drain large tracts of valuable timber land, and along its lower course are many prosperous settlements.

The remaining large river of New Brunswick is the Restigouche, a stream of nearly 200 miles in length, and navigable for boats and timber rafts for 170 miles. It rises in the mountains of the district of Gaspé, and with its branches drains the mountainous northern region of the province, emptying into the head of Bay Chaleurs.

The whole territory of the province is also watered by innumerable smaller rivers and streams, some of them branches of the large ones, and others discharging into the Bay of Fundy or the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

The lakes are a feature of the country scarcely less remarkable than its rivers. They are quite too numerous for an enumeration. They are mostly at the heads of streams; though sometimes singly or in chains along the course of a river. One of the most important of them is Grand Lake, about 45 miles up the St. John, separated from it by a belt of intervale about a mile wide, and receiving at its upper extremity the Salmon River. Like all the tributary lakes and streams of the St. John below Fredericton, it rises and falls with the tide, though only about six inches. It is thirty miles long, and from three to six miles wide; is navigable throughout, and connected with the St. John by a deep and narrow channel called the Gemsec. A little further down the St. John is another lake, called Washadamoak, a narrow body of water some thirty miles in length. On the Choptecticook, a branch of the St. Croix, is a long, irregular lake, or rather a chain of lakes, of the same name as the river, forty-five miles long, consisting of a string of narrow channels and wide bays of the most irregular figures, and running up into the land in various directions in deep, narrow inlets and creeks. The scenery of these lakes is very beautiful; their banks are steep and bold, the water

clear  
and  
grani  
almos  
beaut

The  
extens  
canoes  
countr  
point  
canoe,  
are the  
ship, bu  
be four  
alike ar

The  
and safe  
Among  
L'Etang  
Harbor,  
Safe shel  
Passama

The lo  
waters, a  
coast by  
accessibl  
lagoons  
larger on  
at differe  
Buctouch  
mouche,  
Chaleurs  
best; and  
and twen

The m  
are, Shi  
Chaleurs  
of Passa  
Campo E  
five mile

clear and deep; they are navigable for vessels of considerable size, and the views upon them strikingly diversified with large white granite boulders rising above the water, or standing along the shore almost as regularly as walls of white masonry. There are also many beautifully wooded and picturesque islands.

The numerous lakes and rivers of New Brunswick constitute an extensive system of internal navigation. With their light birch-bark canoes, the Indians were accustomed to penetrate every part of the country with surprising speed, by following one river or lake to a point nearest another, making a portage across, and carrying the canoe, then launching it again, and so on. So thoroughly distributed are these water-courses, that not only is there a river in every township, but it is said that no space of half a square mile in extent can be found without some smaller stream. Highlands and lowlands alike are also abundantly supplied with springs.

The southern coast is bold and rocky, but contains many deep and safe harbors, capable of accommodating the largest vessels. Among these are, the mouth of St. Croix River, Chamcook Bay, L'Etang, Beaver Harbor, St. John, the Dipper Harbors, Musquash Harbor, and the mouths of the Peticodiac and Memramcook rivers. Safe shelter for vessels is also found among the numerous islands of Passamaquoddy Bay.

The low and sandy character of the northeastern coast, its shallow waters, and the numerous shoals and sand banks thrown up along the coast by the action of the sea, render a large part of it much less accessible to shipping. Small vessels, however, can navigate the lagoons or channels between these sand banks on the coast, and larger ones can find shelter in a sufficient number of good harbors at different points. Among these are Bay Verte, Shediac, Cocagne, Buctouche, Richibucto, Miramichi, Taboosintac, Tracadie, Pockmouche, Shippegan, Caraquette, Bathurst, and the harbor of Chaleurs. Of these, Shediac, Miramichi and Shippegan are the best; and besides them all, the whole of Bay Chaleurs, eighty miles long and twenty wide, may be considered as one great haven for shipping.

The most important of the islands on the coast of New Brunswick are, Shippegan, Miscou and Poksudie, at the angle between Bay Chaleurs and the Gulf of St. Lawrence, in the north; and the islands of Passamaquoddy Bay on the south, the principal of which are Campo Bello, Deer Island, and the Grand Manan, the latter twenty-five miles long by five wide.

The Bay of Fundy is a peculiar and strongly characteristic sheet of water, bordered on both sides by abrupt, rocky sides, and divided at the upper extremity into two arms or bays, Chignecto Bay and the Basin of Minas. It is by some geologists supposed to have been gradually scooped out by the action of the Gulf Stream, until the waters found themselves restrained by the iron barriers of primitive rock which form its shores. The most celebrated phenomenon of the bay is its remarkably high tides, which reach a perpendicular height from low-water mark of sixty, seventy, and occasionally of even ninety feet, spreading as they rise over the extensive mud flats of the upper part of the bay, with a speed far beyond that of man or beast, and sweeping off any living thing caught within the rush of their waters. Swine often range over the flats and shores below high-water mark, in search of shell-fish, which they devour greedily. Their instincts warn them in some way of the turn of the tide, which comes rushing up in a great wave almost like a wall of water six feet high; and just before that moment the sagacious beasts lift up their heads all at once, stop eating, snort and squeal, and set off for the upland, at the top of their speed. They quite often, however, get caught and drowned by the furious tide.

The principal occupations of the people of New Brunswick are agriculture, lumbering, commerce, fishing and mining. The geological character of the country, which has much influence on the employment of the people, may be stated as follows: Across the middle of the province extends a wide belt of primary rocks, a branch of the Alleghany range, whose granite, gneiss and mica slate formations lie from southwest to northeast, from above Woodstock on the St. John, toward Bathurst on Bay Chaleur, where it disappears. Another similar belt enters the province near the Cheputnecticook lakes, running parallel with the former to a point near the Bellisle, in King's county, where it disappears. These primary regions are mostly stony or rocky, and too barren for cultivation. Associated with these primary rocks, are many veins and beds of trap, felspar, basalt, and other volcanic rocks.

Nearly all the north of New Brunswick belongs to the formation known as the upper Silurian, containing much valuable limestone, and large beds of slates, clays, &c. Much of the soil of this tract is very strong and fertile. A similar belt, but of much less fertile character, skirts the Bay of Fundy.

Another important class of the rocks of New Brunswick is that of

the c  
unde  
from  
treas  
thoug  
Ma  
Fund  
the ri  
deep l  
cially  
of wh  
bear g  
and ve

FORES  
FORK  
SEN  
TUR

THE f  
growth,  
them, th  
and fifty  
which is  
often gro  
of from  
and for s  
tamarac  
the black  
under wa  
canoe bi  
canoes;  
of the m

the coal strata, consisting of various kinds of sandstone. These rocks underlie all that level or undulating district along the Gulf shore from Bay Verte to Bay Chaleurs; and besides their great mineral treasures, they afford much soil which is worked with great facility, though sometimes dry, light and hungry.

Many so-called "tertiary" deposits are found along the Bay of Fundy, being beds of marl, sand, or both together. Lastly, along the rivers are numerous alluvial tracts of very valuable, rich and deep land. At many parts of the coast of the Bay of Fundy, especially near its head, are other marine alluvial deposits, large tracts of which have been dyked to keep the sea from them, and made to bear great crops of clover, wheat, &c. Their fertility is very great, and very enduring.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

FOREST TREES.—LUMBERING BUSINESS.—CAMPING OUT.—  
 FORKING.—RIVER-DRIVING.—CLIMATE.—SEVERITY LES-  
 SENING.—RAPID GROWTH OF VEGETATION.—AGRICUL-  
 TURAL VALUE OF LAND.—CROPS.—FRUIT.—BERRIES.  
 —BITUMINOUS COAL.—IRON ORE.—PLUMBAGO.—  
 GRINDSTONES.—OTHER MINERALS.—COM-  
 MERCE AND SHIPPING MANUFACTURES.

THE forests of New Brunswick still cover with a dense and heavy growth, the largest part of its surface. Of the trees which compose them, the most valuable are the white pine, often found a hundred and fifty feet high, and six feet across at the base; the black spruce, which is said to constitute a third of all the forests of the province, often growing to a height of seventy or eighty feet, and a diameter of from eighteen inches to two feet. It is extensively used for spars, and for sawed lumber. Besides these are the larch, sometimes called tamarack or hackmatack, excellent for ships' knees and planking; the black birch, also used in ship-building, and almost indestructible under water; the yellow birch, much resembling it; white birch and canoe birch, whose bark is used for many purposes besides in making canoes; red and white beech; sugar maple; several other varieties of the maple; red and white elm; hemlock; butternut; white and

black ash; white cedar; basswood; white spruce; balsam fir; and many other less valuable species.

Not less than 8,000 men are annually engaged in the lumbering business. The mode of proceeding is as follows: The timber merchant hires a party of men, who go into the forest in the fall, taking with them teams, provisions, and whatever is needed for a complete outfit. Having selected some tract of forest where trees of the proper size are found, and where the proximity of some stream will enable them to float them down to a market in spring, they build a "camp" or small hut of logs, flooring it with poles, having a roof of bark, and a raised platform for a common bed, which is usually made of soft spruce twigs. There is a rude fireplace, consisting of a hole in the ground, or a few stones, and a hole in the roof serves as a chimney. Another hut is put up for the horses or oxen, the hay secured from the weather, and three gangs organized, one to cut down the trees, another to hew them, and a third to drag them to the next stream. One person is appointed cook, who serves also as a kind of housekeeper, and who is expected, along with the teamster, to keep the fire burning through the night.

The exposures and exertions of the lumbering business are very great; and no class of men can any where be found, more hardy, active, and laborious, than the lumberers. Their work is frequently extremely dangerous. In the mountainous parts of the country, it is often necessary to roll or drag the logs to the brow of some precipice at the edge of a river, and then slide them down endways to the ice or the water. If arrested by lodging against trees or rocks, it is necessary to climb down and free the logs by the axe or lever; an operation requiring great skill and agility, to avoid being struck by the heavy log when set free. This method of getting timber down to the river is termed "forking."

About the end of April, all the streams are full and overflowing with the melting of the snow and ice; and now commences the "river-driving," which is the most laborious, exciting and dangerous part of the lumberer's work. Each log must be navigated down its stream to the river, and down the river to the saw-mill or port of shipment. Sometimes shooting down a rapid on a log, sometimes navigating a canoe or light skiff amongst the most dangerous rocks and currents, sometimes gliding quietly along on their floating charge, they convoy the timber down the stream. It very frequently happens that at some narrow passage in the river, an immense number of logs

are  
this  
and  
tach  
they  
log  
who  
the  
not  
or h  
cata  
Li  
a wa  
wage  
and r  
less c  
and s  
violer  
The  
chang  
twent  
This r  
nent c  
The t  
rior;  
above  
above  
by cl  
length  
cultiv  
partic  
ter us  
about  
the lo  
The s  
for su  
short  
ity of  
and r  
turing

are forced promiscuously together in what is called a "jam." When this is the case, the logs must be loosened and set afloat, one by one, and the greatest strength, judgment, and activity are required in detaching these enormous masses of timber, and escaping unhurt when they begin to move; as it is often impossible to foresee whether each log that is set free may not key up all the rest, in which event the whole vast gathering springs loose in an instant, and leaps down the rapid again, the logs bounding and whirling like straws, and not unfrequently crushing the unlucky river-driver amongst them, or hurling him to certain death in the furious whirlpools of the cataract.

Like all classes of persons who earn their living by severe toil and a wandering life, the lumberers very frequently expend the large wages which their occupation commands in uninterrupted dissipation and riot as long as the money lasts. They are a genial though reckless class of men; hospitable and chatty; and entertaining stories and songs and jokes are constantly relieving the intervals of their violent labor.

The climate of New Brunswick is subject to very great and rapid changes; the thermometer having been known to rise or fall within twenty-four hours, in consequence of a change of wind, sixty degrees. This results from its situation between the cold portion of the continent of North America and the warm waters and winds of the sea. The temperature is also quite different on the coast and in the interior; ranging at St. John, on the coast, from 23° below zero to 88° above; and at Fredericton, in the interior, from 35° below to 95° above. In proportion as the country becomes more and more opened by clearing, the snows of winter will melt earlier, the summer be lengthened, and the average temperature be raised. In the more cultivated parts of the province, a very sensible amelioration in this particular has already been perceived. The severe cold of the winter usually commences about the 1st of January, and lasts until about the 20th of March. By May, the uplands may be planted; the lowlands, being subject to overflows, requiring a delay of a month. The severe season of the winter is used by the farmers in preparing for summer, and is a period of much gaiety and amusement. The shortness of the summer is compensated by the extraordinary rapidity of vegetation; ninety days being sufficient for the whole growth and ripening of grain, and all the common kitchen vegetables maturing in a much shorter time.

The agricultural capabilities of New Brunswick are very much less developed than will hereafter be the case, when the forests shall be exhausted of their lumber, and the population shall have increased. It is estimated that 7,500,000 acres of land fit for cultivation is still left unsold; among which is a very large proportion of excellent quality. There is a monthly sale of crown lands in each county; the land is offered at very reasonable terms, and various inducements are held out to settlers.

The soil of New Brunswick yields larger crops of potatoes, turnips, and other roots, than any other part of North America; and its heavy yield of wheat, barley, oats, buckwheat, rye, and Indian corn, proves its remarkable capabilities as a grain-producing country. With proper care in storing the large amount of fodder which the long winter renders necessary, live-stock of all kinds can be profitably raised, even in the northernmost parts of the province.

Of cultivated fruits, there have been successfully grown, apples, pears, plums, currants, gooseberries, strawberries and cherries. Native varieties, sometimes in excessive profusion, are found growing wild, of the strawberry, raspberry, gooseberry, blackberry, whortleberry, and cherry. Butternuts, hazelnuts and bechnuts are also plentiful.

The mineral treasures of New Brunswick, though important, have thus far remained comparatively untouched, from the heavier capital and longer period required to make them profitable, than in the more adventurous occupations of lumbering and fishing, in which so much of the industry of the province has been occupied. No adequate development of them can be expected for a considerable time; as the lumber must first be exhausted, the country cleared and surveyed, roads laid out, and more capital accumulated. The minerals of the province may thus be considered as a deposit of wealth stored safely away for use at any period when necessary. The following enumeration will sufficiently indicate their character, and the extent to which they have been worked.

Bituminous coal is found in many parts of the province, within the vast area of that coal-field which has already been described. The largest workings hitherto made of this coal are near Grand Lake in Queen's county, where a seam is opened at about 20 feet from the surface, and a considerable quantity is annually raised. In Albert county, near Peticodiac river, a large deposit has been opened, of a fat and very bituminous mineral, between coal and asphaltum

in nat  
ing, &  
Van  
Brun  
hemat  
found  
ores of  
has be  
United  
largest  
used fo  
for iron  
it. Le  
in King  
per exi  
and on  
attempt  
much se  
province  
in King  
and hav  
edifices  
at Hills  
county,  
shipped  
Excelle  
for lime  
south, a  
stone, d  
Albert  
Grindst  
also to  
field. C  
is name  
quette  
form an  
ried on  
michi, a  
places  
iron py



in nature, which affords excellent gas, and oils for burning, lubricating, &c. In 1851, 1,500 tons of this mineral were raised.

Various kinds of iron ore are found in almost every part of New Brunswick. At Woodstock, where there is an inexhaustible bed of hematite, large iron-works are in operation. Other rich ores are found elsewhere, but no other works have yet been established. Of ores of manganese, several sorts are found at Woodstock; grey oxide has been shipped to England from Bathurst, and black oxide to the United States from Quaco. At the falls near St. John is one of the largest beds of plumbago in America, which has been successfully used for manufacturing "British lustre," and for preparing molds for iron castings. In 1853, about 90,000 pounds were exported from it. Lead ore of good quality has been found on Campo Bello island, in King's county, and on the Tobique river. Grey sulphuret of copper exists in Charlotte county, on the shore of the Bay of Fundy, and on the Nepisiquit river near Bathurst. At the latter place an attempt was made to work the deposit, but it was found to be too much scattered. Excellent granite is plentiful in many parts of the province, but has hitherto not been worked except on the St. John, in King's county, where quarries have been for some time opened, and have furnished the materials for many of the public and private edifices of the city of St. John. There are large deposits of gypsum at Hillsborough, near the Peticodiac, in St. John county, in King's county, in Victoria county, and elsewhere. Large quantities are shipped to the United States for building and agricultural purposes. Excellent limestone is found in many places, and much of it is burned for lime. Good marble is found near St. John and Musquash in the south, and on the coast of Bay Chaleurs at the north. Fine sandstone, dark red, grey, and other kinds, are quarried and exported from Albert county; blue flagstones are found in the same county, at Grindstone island, and sandstones of good quality for building are also to be found on the Miramichi, and in other parts of the coal field. Grindstones are made at the island in Albert county, which is named from them, and at Miramichi, at New Bandon and Carquette on Bay Chaleurs, and in Westmoreland county; and they form an extensive and valuable article of export. Oil-stone is quarried on the Grand Manan, and whetstone on a branch of the Miramichi, and on Moosehorn Brook in King's county. At various other places are found roofing slate, which has been quarried and used; iron pyrites, from which may be made copperas and alum; bitumin-

ous shale, from which is manufactured naphtha, kerosene, and paraffine; brick clay, potter's clay, and fire clay. The water of the salt springs at Sussex Vale has for a long time been evaporated, and furnishes excellent salt. Large tracts of peat, affording good fuel, are found in various places, especially in Kent, Queen's and Sunbury counties, and in Miramichi Bay. Sulphate of barytes, felspar, quartz, ochres, jade-stone, chlorite, jasper, soap-stone, and many other useful minerals, have also been found, in more or less profusion.

The commercial, manufacturing and milling interests of New Brunswick are important, prosperous and increasing. The ships and vessels built on its coasts are highly esteemed for strength, speed and durability. The advantages of the country for ship building were very early observed; Jonathan Leavitt built a small schooner named the "Monneguash" in the harbor of St. John, before 1770, and William Davidson, the first British settler on the Miramichi, built a large schooner there, and named it after the place, in 1773. From these small beginnings the business has grown to great importance, and is pursued at many places on the Bay of Fundy, for ninety miles up the St. John, and on its tributaries, the Kennebecasis and Grand Lake, and at many places on the Gulf coast and in Bay Chaleurs. New Brunswick furnishes all the timber for all the parts of the hulls and spars of vessels of all sizes, except that live oak, white oak, and pitch pine are sometimes imported from the United States for ships of a very superior class. In 1853, 122 vessels were built in New Brunswick, of the total capacity of 71,428 tons; and in 1854, 135 vessels, in all of 99,426 tons.

A very large number of saw-mills, running by water or by steam, exists, and is rapidly increasing. From 230 in 1833, the number had grown in 1851 to 564, employing 4,302 hands; and it has much increased since.

There were in the province in 1851, 261 grist-mills, 125 tanneries, 11 foundries, 52 carding and weaving establishments, 5,475 hand-loom, mostly weaving home-made cloth for country use, 8 breweries, and 94 other manufacturing establishments, giving occupation in all to about 2,000 persons, not including the hand-loom weavers. The total value of articles manufactured within the province in the same year, including boots and shoes, leather, candles, wooden ware, cabinet work, soap, hats, and iron castings, was stated at £233,496.

The number of tons of shipping owned in the province in 1855, was 110,451; the number of vessels that entered inwards at its ports

in the  
those t  
reache  
appare  
up by t  
of prov  
their of  
hands

FISHER  
TION.  
FUNI  
—F  
FR

The fish  
of its ind  
used at h  
sent awa  
fish of v  
New Bru  
Bay Cha  
that the  
Fish."

The co  
began to  
of Cabot  
Sir Hum  
eries for  
Scotia in  
dependen  
States in

in the same year was 3,442, in all of 500,707 tons burthen, and of those that cleared, 3,361, of 663,081 tons. The imports of that year reached a total value of £1,431,330, and the exports £826,381. The apparent balance thus left against the province is more than made up by the sale of new ships clearing outward, their freight, earnings of provincial vessels, and excess of prices received for exports over their official estimated value when shipped; so that there is in fact a handsome balance in favor of the province.

---

## CHAPTER V.

FISHERIES.—FIRST USE BY EUROPEANS.—ENGLISH ACQUISITION.—AMERICAN INTERFERENCE.—FISHING IN BAY OF FUNDY.—MODE OF FISHING.—CODFISH.—HERRING.—FISHERY IN GULF OF ST. LAWRENCE.—SALMON.—FRESH WATER FISH.—ANIMALS.—ROADS.—FREDERICTON DESCRIBED.—ST. JOHN.—SETTLEMENT.—PUBLIC BUILDINGS.—TRADE.—OTHER TOWNS.

THE fisheries of New Brunswick are a most important department of its industry; the returns showing that besides the large quantities used at home, and not including much fresh fish and half-cured fish sent away without being reported, there were exported in 1855, cured fish of various kinds, to the amount of £47,193. The seas of the New Brunswick coast are remarkably full of fish during the summer, Bay Chaleurs in particular, fairly swarming with them, inasmuch that the Indians named it "Ecketaun Nemaachu," or "the Sea of Fish."

The cod-fisheries of Canseau, as well as those of Newfoundland, began to be frequented by Europeans very soon after the discoveries of Cabot in 1497, and all nations indiscriminately enjoyed them until Sir Humphrey Gilbert took possession of Newfoundland and its fisheries for Queen Elizabeth, and until the French, by ceding Nova Scotia in 1740, and losing Cape Breton in 1758, gave up the fisheries dependent upon those governments. The treaty with the United States in 1783 granted their citizens unlimited rights of fishing in all

the waters of the sea-coast of British America. These rights have not since been restricted, except by a provision that the Americans shall not fish within three miles of the coast; which provision, however, is constantly evaded; and the active rivalry of the Americans, and of the French who fish on the Grand Banks, both these nations having great advantages over British subjects by their system of bounties, has been a constant and serious injury to the interests of the provinces, whose situation both geographically and politically should naturally give them the exclusive benefit of the fisheries at least of the Bay of Fundy and the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

The fisheries of the Bay of Fundy are for cod, pollock, hake, haddock, herring and mackerel; all which are caught near the Grand Manan and the other islands near Passamaquoddy Bay, and thence along the coast to the River St. John, and sometimes further. Cod, pollock, hake and haddock, are caught with the hook and line, commonly from "pink-sterned" boats, (*i. e.*, boats sharp at each end,) twelve or eighteen feet long, rigged with one mast stepped well forward, and a single sail, on a very long boom, and running to a point at the top. These boats are swift and safe, and will run very near the wind. In the winter, and for the remoter fishing grounds, small schooners are used.

The codfish of the Bay of Fundy are of the best quality, and of large size. They may be taken at almost all times of the year; sometimes close in shore, and sometimes in deep water. The best ones are caught in about sixty fathoms, in the end of winter or beginning of spring, and are very fat and thick, sometimes weighing 70 or 80 pounds, and even more. They are split and dried, or pickled and sold by the barrel; and sometimes sent fresh to market.

Pollock are caught in July and afterwards; in the previous part of the season they are thin and of little value. They are lively and sportive, and are best caught in ripples and rapid currents between tides and amongst the islands. They are cured like cod. Hake are a large fish, sometimes three feet long, and are usually caught at night, over muddy bottoms. Their teeth are so strong and sharp that the line has to be armed with wire for some inches above the hook, as they easily bite off a cod-line. Hake are split and dried like cod, but require much more salt. Haddock are mostly eaten fresh, being too thin for drying.

Herring are caught in the Bay of Fundy during every month in the year; a fact that refutes the common belief of their periodical

migrati  
and con  
weirs o  
in the B  
large fis  
belongs.  
large siz  
firm and  
smoked  
of Fund  
berland  
tremely  
winter.  
who are  
rels of the  
Besides  
ties of sm  
the torsk,  
There are  
shrimps.  
Besides  
the Bay of  
and the W  
68 vessels  
a force of  
The fish  
only from  
ing the res  
are found  
deeper wat  
of the Bay  
jib, and us  
boat also h  
and with ou  
are small, a  
in the Med  
the Gulf, an  
dock and h  
lock. Her  
in spring, w

migration from the Arctic Ocean. They probably live in deep water, and come ashore to spawn. They are caught either in nets or in weirs of brush and twigs. Mackerel are of late years not abundant in the Bay of Fundy, nor of very good quality. The halibut is a large fish of a flat shape, much like a flounder, to which species it belongs. It is often caught by those fishing for cod, and grows to a large size, sometimes weighing 200 pounds and more. Its flesh is firm and white, and liked by many persons, and is often salted and smoked for winter use. One of the most excellent fish of the Bay of Fundy is the "sea-shad," which is principally caught in the Cumberland Basin, by long nets, set during the night. Its flesh is extremely fat and savory, and it is both eaten fresh and pickled for winter. This fishery employs more than 200 boats and 500 men, who are computed to take every year more than four thousand barrels of these fish, worth about £5,000.

Besides these fish, there are also caught in the bay great quantities of smelts; skate; tom-cod, or frost-fish; many excellent eels; the torsk, or cusk; cunners, or sea-perch; and the silver hake. There are also caught lobsters, clams, scallops, periwinkles, and shrimps.

Besides the boats owned by nearly all the settlers on the shores of the Bay of Fundy, the inhabitants of Grand Manan, Campo Bello, and the West Isles, whose chief occupation is fishing, own and work 68 vessels with about 560 men, and 350 boats with 900 men, besides a force of about 200 men in charge of the herring-weirs.

The fishing in the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Bay Chaleurs extends only from April to the end of November, as the ice prohibits it during the rest of the year. Cod are the fish principally caught. They are found near the shore in the early part of the season, and in deeper water as it advances. The boats used are larger than those of the Bay of Fundy, with two masts, two fore-and-aft sails and a jib, and usually managed by two men, or two men and a boy. Each boat also has oars, a rope cable, an anchor, a compass and a stove; and with outfit, commonly costs about £18. The cod of Bay Chaleur are small, and very white and dry; and sell better than any other kind in the Mediterranean and in South America. Hake are found in the Gulf, and are cured and exported by the name of "ling." Haddock and halibut are also found; as is the torsk or cusk; but no pollock. Herrings are plentiful all along the coast, being lean and poor in spring, when they are spawning, but fat when they come upon the

coast for the second time, about August 20th. They are now called "fall-herrings," and if properly cured are equal to any in the world. The Gulf abounds in mackerel, which are, however, almost entirely caught by the American fishermen. Alewives, or gaspereaux, enter all the rivers emptying into the Gulf, in the spring, and are caught in great numbers, and pickled and sent to the Southern United States as food for the slaves. Abundance of striped bass are taken, and extraordinary quantities of smelts, besides salt-water eels and cunners. Shad are not abundant, and are poor. Capelin, a small fish of very delicate flavor, are abundant. They are much used as bait for mackerel and cod. The shell-fish of the Gulf include excellent oysters, lobsters, which are so abundant as sometimes to be used for manure, clams, both large and small, crabs, periwinkles, shrimps, muscles, and "razors," a shell-fish of pleasant flavor, named from the resemblance of its shell to a razor.

Besides these marine fisheries, the numerous lakes and streams of New Brunswick afford a great variety of excellent fish. Enormous quantities of salmon are caught in the rivers of the Gulf; more than 400,000 pounds having been exported from Miramichi in a single season, in hermetically sealed tin cases. Various other species of fish, as the shad, gaspereaux, striped bass, smelt, silver eel, sea trout and sturgeon, also ascend the rivers from the sea, and are caught in them. Of those fish which remain constantly in fresh water, the best is the brook trout, which is found in almost every lake and stream; the large lake or grey trout; the white bass, found in the St. John and other rivers emptying into the Bay of Fundy; perch, roach, dace, and several other common kinds of fish; not to mention eels, which are almost as universal as trout.

The native animals of New Brunswick are, wolves and bears, which are, however, now rapidly becoming unknown except in the wilder parts of the country; foxes, weasels, and some other small animals of prey; the moose, caribou and red deer; beaver, otter, mink, muskrat, marten, pine marten, lynx, raccoon, porcupine, woodchuck, ermine, and hare; wild ducks and geese; partridges, snipe, and woodcock; curlew, plover, and occasionally vast flocks of wild pigeons. The abundance and variety of fish has already been mentioned; besides which the seal and the whale are found in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, but are little hunted by the people of New Brunswick. The walrus also, formerly killed in immense numbers for its teeth and oil, has become comparatively rare upon its shores.

Many settled p  
the harb  
Calais in  
and onw  
Frederic  
as the co  
necting r  
is expend  
everywhe  
toll is lev  
A railro  
another is  
temptation  
United St  
immensely  
afford emp  
laborers.  
Frederic  
or right ba  
Bay of Fu  
streets, on  
and its roc  
ornamenta  
the public  
for the resi  
House; a  
land office,  
a handsom  
a paid up  
few years  
some of its  
have been  
of the St.  
Since 1848  
city has n  
about 5,000  
St. John  
was first se  
1783; was

Many important roads have been laid out through the more thickly settled portions of the country, including the great main road from the harbor of St. John up the valley of the river to Canada; that from Calais in the United States to St. John, and thence to the Peticodiac, and onward along the east coast to the Restigouche; those between Fredericton and the ports of St. Andrews and Miramichi. As fast as the country becomes settled, it is covered with a network of connecting roads, branching off from these chief ones. £30,000 a year is expended by government on roads and bridges, which are free everywhere, except the wire suspension bridge at St. John, where a toll is levied.

A railroad is in operation between St. Andrews and Woodstock; another is constructing, from St. John to Shediac; others are in contemplation, and the system will be put in communication with the United States roads at Calais. These lines of road, besides aiding immensely in the development of the resources of the country, will afford employment for a considerable time to a large number of laborers.

Fredericton, the capital of New Brunswick, stands on the south or right bank of the St. John, in York county, 84 miles from the Bay of Fundy, on a pleasant, level plain. It is laid out with broad streets, on a symmetrical plan, selected in 1785 by Sir Guy Carleton, and its roomy scale affords space for many gardens, which, with ornamental trees, render its appearance very attractive. It contains the public buildings of the government; a substantial stone building for the residence of the lieutenant-governor, and called Government House; a Province Building, for the legislature and the courts; the land office, and other public offices. It contains, also, King's College, a handsome stone edifice, 170 by 60 feet; and the Central Bank, with a paid up capital of £35,000. It was incorporated as a city but a few years since. It is very regularly and handsomely laid out, and some of its streets are a mile in length. Much labor and expense have been incurred in the removal of obstructions to the navigation of the St. John above Fredericton, to the great improvement of it. Since 1848, when it was made a port of entry, the business of the city has much increased, and is still increasing. Its population is about 5,000.

St. John, the largest city in the province, and its business capital, was first settled by loyalists from the revolted American colonies, in 1783; was incorporated by royal charter in 1785, and has now

grown up to a population of about 30,000. Its advantages as a commercial depot are very great, as its harbor never freezes, and vessels can enter and depart on every day of the year. The city is regularly laid out, well built, and strikingly situated on the bold slope of the eastern bank of the St. John river. In 1837, 1839, and 1841, it suffered much from severe fires, but is now rapidly improving by the erection of substantial buildings of brick or stone, and sometimes of iron and glass; wooden ones having been prohibited by law in the business part of the town. It contains many handsome public edifices, among which are the Episcopal and Presbyterian churches, the Marine Hospital, two fine buildings for barracks, a court-house of stone, prison, &c. Among the chief public institutions of St. John are, a grammar school, the free school, known as the "Central Madras School," two public libraries, several banks of discount and issue, a savings bank, several insurance companies, a chamber of commerce, several charitable and religious societies, &c. There are several newspapers, of much intelligence and high character. Of the banks, three in number, two have together a capital of £250,000; and the third is a branch of the Bank of British North America, in London, which has a capital of £1,000,000. The interesting facts connected with the entrance to the port, the tide, &c., have been mentioned in describing the majestic river which forms the harbor. In order to protect the commerce of the city, a fine light-house has been erected on Partridge Island, which commands the river's mouth, and on which there is also a battery; the channel is indicated by conspicuous sea-marks, and a breakwater, on the east side of the channel, below the city, defends vessels from the heavy sea caused by southerly gales. The progress of the city is being still further promoted by the system of railroads now in process of construction, between it and the eastern terminus of those of the United States and the Grand Trunk road on one hand, and Halifax, Bay Verte and Shediac on the other. It is already in communication with the telegraphic systems of the United States and Canada, and has kept up with the march of domestic as well as commercial improvement by means of companies which have secured it the comforts of gas-light and a reservoir which supplies the whole city with water. Its beauty is also much enhanced by several very handsome public squares or parks, tastefully laid out and well planted; among which the King's Gardens and the Queen's Gardens are much resorted to for amusement and promenading. The municipal government of the city

consists  
assistant  
the oppos  
feet in le  
modious  
St. Joh  
one. It  
great ma  
The lum  
100,000 t  
white pine  
15,000,000  
000. The  
£514,026.  
in all of 3  
The proxi  
ship-build  
John in 18  
123 tons.  
94,810 tons  
be added  
extent of th  
the fact tha  
single route  
Of the o  
large quan  
along the b  
business; S  
rapidly by  
Woodstock  
many other  
every part



consists of a mayor, six aldermen, from as many wards, and six assistant aldermen. It is connected with the suburb of Carleton, on the opposite side of the river, by a handsome suspension bridge, 680 feet in length; a well-constructed and very graceful as well as commodious structure.

St. John is a remarkably wealthy city for its size, and a very busy one. It is the business center of a vast territory, productive of a great mass of mineral, agricultural and other commercial values. The lumber floating down the river to St. John in 1852, included 100,000 tons sawed white pine, 10,000 tons hackmatack, 50,000,000 white pine logs, 20,000,000 spruce logs, 50,000,000 feet pine boards, 15,000,000 shingles, 5,000,000 clapboards, to a total value of £389,000. The imports for 1851 amounted to £647,333; the exports to £514,026. In 1852, the whole number of vessels arriving was 1,740, in all of 334,267 tons burthen; and clearing, 1,746, of 362,917 tons. The proximity of the lumbering districts gives great facilities for ship-building; and accordingly, the number of vessels built at St. John in 1851 was 72, in all of 37,607 tons; and in 1852, 87, of 45,123 tons. On Dec. 31, 1851, 518 vessels were owned in the city, of 94,810 tons. To the total of exports given above, ought in fact to be added £160,000, for 21,730 tons shipping sold abroad. The extent of the travel which centers at St. John may be imagined from the fact that in 1851, 50,000 people were carried by steamer on the single route from St. John to Fredericton.

Of the other towns in the province, Dalhousie and Bathurst ship large quantities of timber; Miramichi and the range of villages along the banks of its river are prospering on the lumber and fishing business; Shediac possesses a growing trade; Monckton is growing rapidly by means of its railroad connections; St. Andrews and Woodstock have much transportation and agricultural business; and many other towns and villages are springing up and increasing in every part of the country.

## CHAPTER VI.

RELIGIOUS DENOMINATIONS.—SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.—  
 POPULATION.—ACADIAN FRENCH.—MICMACS.—MELI-  
 CETES.—NEGROES.—CHARACTER OF PEOPLE.—HOSPI-  
 TALITY.—SOCIAL PLEASURES.—POPULATION.—  
 GOVERNMENT.—COURTS, THEIR CONSTITUTION  
 AND SESSIONS.—LIST OF GOVERNORS AND  
 THEIR ACCESSION.—SUMMARY OF CON-  
 DITION OF PROVINCE.—FINAL  
 STATISTICS.

THE moral, religious and educational condition of New Brunswick is good. It contains in all, about 425 places of worship, and about half as many clergymen, of all denominations; the strongest being the Church of England, the Baptists, the Wesleyan Methodists, and the Roman Catholics, in the order in which they are named. There are no tithes nor compulsory taxes for religious purposes, the voluntary principle being universal.

New Brunswick appropriates the very handsome amount of £12,000 a year to educational purposes. The educational institutions of the province consist of King's College at Fredericton, chartered in 1823, a grammar school in each county, a Baptist seminary at Fredericton, a Methodist academy at Sackville in Westmoreland county, several free schools for the poor under a corporation called "The Governor and Trustees of the Madras School," and the system of common or parish schools. These last exist in nearly every town, village and settlement, and are so organized as to afford a respectable English education to all. These schools are under the management of a Provincial Board of Education, consisting of the Lieutenant Governor, the executive Council, and the Superintendent of Schools. The latter officer is appointed by the governor, and is secretary to the Board, which appoints an inspector for each county. There is a model school and a training school for teachers, who are examined, trained, and licensed under the authority of the Board. There are also four Roman Catholic schools, an academy at St. Stephen, an infant school at Fredericton, and an African school and a commercial school at St. John, all receiving aid from government.

TH  
 ants,  
 Th  
 mead  
 coast  
 settler  
 olic, a  
 thought  
 strong  
 and ar  
 frugal,  
 and da  
 days, w  
 the cele  
 ful in m  
 enterpri  
 habits o  
 The l  
 the Meli  
 and are  
 the Meli  
 lished in  
 speak a  
 The gen  
 of the o  
 active w  
 prising  
 time the  
 giance t  
 hopeless  
 the mos  
 and mo  
 steadily  
 6,000 to  
 cetes ar  
 the Mic  
 as lumbe  
 men; e  
 are faith  
 Durin

The population of New Brunswick, besides the English inhabitants, includes French, Indians, and a few negroes.

The French occupy the borders of the great marshes or "salt meadows" of Westmoreland county, various settlements along the coast from Bay Verte to the Restigouche, and there is an isolated settlement of them at Madawasca. Their religion is Roman Catholic, and their language a corrupt *patois* or dialect of the French, though they readily understand the pure French of Paris. They are strongly attached to their hereditary manners, costumes and religion, and are still, as they have always been, a moral, peaceful, industrious, frugal, gay, and social people. They are exceedingly fond of music and dancing, and make great merriment at weddings, and on Sundays, which are with them days of amusement and festivity, after the celebration of divine worship. They are polite and quite graceful in manners, hospitable and generous, though not remarkable for enterprise; and they still adhere to the ancient and incommodious habits of their ancestors, in building, modes of cultivation, tools, &c.

The Indians are the relics of two distinct tribes, the Micmacs and the Melicetes. The former occupied the northern and eastern coasts, and are formed of the ocean and its neighborhood, being called by the Melicetes "salt-water Indians." The Melicetes are mostly established in the valley of the St. John, and thence westward. They speak a Delaware dialect, while that of the Micmacs is Iroquois. The general character and habits of these tribes are similar to those of the other Indians of North America. Both tribes were brave and active warriors, the Micmacs in particular being often men of surprising size, strength and quickness. They were for a very long time the faithful allies of the French, and did not transfer their allegiance to the English crown until after the Canadas and Acadia were hopelessly lost to France. Like nearly all the other Indian tribes, the most persevering efforts to habituate them to civilized feelings and modes of life have almost entirely failed; and they are now steadily decreasing in number, both tribes, formerly counting from 6,000 to 8,000 souls, not now including 1,000 persons. The Melicetes are still bold, active and skillful hunters and woodsmen, and the Micmacs often good fishermen. They are sometimes employed as lumberers, and often as guides or assistants to travelers or sportsmen; employments of which they are very fond, and in which they are faithful and efficient.

During the last war with America, a number of negroes were

brought by the British forces from the Southern States and established in the province. They have, however, always been idle, thriftless and vicious, and an inconvenience and burden to the neighborhood where they live, on whom falls most of the expense of their support. The greater part of them are near St. John. Many of them find employment as servants in white families.

The main body of the settlers in New Brunswick, however, consists of English, Irish, Scotch and Welsh emigrants or their descendants, and of the descendants of the loyalists who took refuge in this country from the dangers to which their principles exposed them in the war of the American Revolution.

The inhabitants of New Brunswick are, as a race, tall, well-formed and handsome, seldom becoming corpulent. They are enterprising and active in disposition, frank and hearty in manners, industrious, kind, humane and generous; and as a class, are in remarkably independent and comfortable circumstances. They usually live in great abundance, and while their manners have not the artificial elegance of cities, their hospitality is frankly and heartily bestowed upon strangers who seem to deserve it. Indeed, a traveler in the province has said that "any person of respectable address and appearance, who can tell a good story, sing a good song, and play the fiddle, can travel through Nova Scotia and New Brunswick free of expense." They are free and plain in expressing their opinions, and loyally attached to the English crown, while they feel a lively interest in the prosperity and privileges of their native province. Their fondness for society and social amusements is especially indulged in the winter, which is the season chosen for visiting, balls, sleigh rides, parties, and pleasure of all kinds. It is also eminently the season for polite attentions to the fair sex, and is usually selected for courtship. In Fredericton and St. Johns, there is much very good society, much gaiety arising from the usual presence of officers and soldiers, and at the former place of the government; and also, a very perceptible tinge of aristocratic feeling in some circles.

The total population of New Brunswick was at various periods as follows: in 1824, 74,176; in 1834, 119,457; in 1840, 154,000; in 1851, 193,800; in 1857, 210,000; and is now estimated at 220,000.

The government of New Brunswick is administered by an executive officer with the title of Lieutenant-governor, who has an executive council of nine, appointed, like himself, by the crown. The legislature consists of two houses, the upper of twenty-one mem-

bers, and  
the lo  
people  
The  
four an  
cases;  
preme  
secretar  
ers on t  
"surrog  
vorce, c  
supreme  
held fou  
justices  
The  
New Br  
of office

Sir Guy

" "

G. G. Lu

E. Winsl

Maj. Gen

Lt. Col. C

Maj. Gen

Maj. Gen

Maj. Gen

Maj. Gen

Maj. Gen

Maj. Gen

Lt. Col. J

Maj. Gen

W. Chip

J. M. Bl

Maj. Gen

W. Blae

Maj. Gen

Maj. Gen

Sir W. M

Sir E. W

J. H. T.

The r

possesse

Very m

lent tim

bers, appointed by the crown and holding office at its pleasure, and the lower of forty-one members, elected every four years by the people.

The courts are, a supreme court, composed of a chief justice and four assistants; a court of vice-admiralty, for maritime and prize cases; a court of piracy, composed of the lieutenant-governor, supreme court, executive council, vice-admiralty judge, and provincial secretary and treasurer, with any flag-officers, captains or commanders on the station; a probate court in each county, whose judge or "surrogate" is appointed by the lieutenant-governor; a court of divorce, consisting of the governor, council, and one or more of the supreme court judges; courts of common pleas and general sessions, held four times a year in each county; and justice's courts, held by justices of the peace, whenever required, at their own residences.

The following is a list of the governors or acting governors of New Brunswick, with their titles and the dates of their assumption of office :—

Sir Guy Carleton,.....	Capt. General and Gov. in ch.	Aug. 16, 1784.
" " " " " " " " " "	Lieut. Governor,	Oct. 30, 1786.
G. G. Ludlow, Esq.,.....	Pres't of Council & Com.-in-ch.	Oct. 5, 1803.
E. Winslow, Esq.,.....	same,	Feb. 20, 1808.
Maj. Gen. M. Hunter,.....	same,	May 24, 1808.
Lt. Col. G. Johnstone,.....	same,	Dec. 17, 1808.
Maj. Gen. Hunter,.....	same,	Apr. 28, 1809.
Maj. Gen. W. Balfour,.....	same,	Sept. 11, 1811.
Maj. Gen. Hunter,.....	same,	Nov. 14, 1811.
Maj. Gen. Sir G. S. Smyth,.....	Pres't and Com.-in-chief,	June 15, 1812.
Maj. Gen. Sir T. Saumarez,.....	same,	Aug. 17, 1813.
Maj. Gen. Smyth,.....	same,	Aug. 14, 1814.
Lt. Col. H. W. Hailes,.....	same,	June 25, 1816.
Maj. Gen. Smyth,.....	Lt. Gov. and Com.-in-chief,	July 1, 1817.
W. Chipman, Esq.,.....	President " "	April 1, 1823.
J. M. Bliss, Esq.,.....	" " "	Feb. 21, 1824.
Maj. Gen. Sir H. Douglas, Bart.,.....	Lt. Gov. " "	Aug. 28, 1824.
W. Black, Esq.,.....	President " "	Mch. 30, 1829.
Maj. Gen. Sir A. Campbell, Bart., G.C.B., Lt. Gov.	" " "	Sept. 9, 1831.
Maj. Gen. Sir J. Harvey, K. C. H., C. B.,	" " "	May 1, 1837.
Sir W. M. G. Colebrooke, K. H.,.....	" " "	Apr. 26, 1841.
Sir E. W. Head,.....	" " "	1851.
J. H. T. M. Sutton, Esq.,.....	" " "	1855.

The natural advantages of New Brunswick are very great. It possesses remarkable capacities for supporting a dense population. Very much of its best land is still unsettled; large ranges of excellent timber are uncut; unknown stores of valuable minerals are

awaiting the miner; the most productive fisheries in the whole world lie along all its coast, around all its islands, in every one of its rivers and lakes. A superabundance of fuel and water-power is at hand everywhere for manufacturing purposes. Numerous safe and convenient harbors afford ample accommodation to commerce, internal communication by water is singularly extensive and easy, and bridges, roads and railroads are yearly perfecting the system. The elements of agricultural, commercial and manufacturing prosperity are unbounded in quantity. Nothing but the judicious employment of capital and labor is required to elevate New Brunswick to a very high place in power and wealth. Those requisites are in fact every year more and more freely supplied; and the future prospects of the Province are bright enough to satisfy the warmest desires.

NOVA S  
—CO  
—I  
S

In tra  
include  
that nar  
with it.  
The p  
after Ca  
however  
an old se  
harbor o  
resort fo  
period, t  
peans, a  
The first  
Roche, i  
of conv  
to have

# NOVA SCOTIA.

## CHAPTER I.

NOVA SCOTIA DISCOVERED.—FIRST OCCUPIED BY THE FRENCH.  
—COLONY OF DE LA ROCHE.—CONVICTS ON SABLE ISLAND.  
—DE MONTS, GOVERNOR OF ACADIA.—CONFISCATES ROS-  
SIGNOL'S GOODS.—POUTRINCOURT SETTLES PORT  
ROYAL.—MAMBERTON, THE INDIAN SACHEM.—  
POUTRINCOURT AND THE JESUITS.—AR-  
GALL INVADES ACADIA.—SIR WIL-  
LIAM ALEXANDER'S SETTLERS.—  
KIRK'S CONQUEST OF CANADA.  
—RAZILLAI.—CHARNISSE.  
—DE LA TOUR.

In tracing the history of Nova Scotia, it will be necessary to include an account of a very large territory formerly known under that name, or under that of Acadia, which was anciently synonymous with it.

The precise period of the discovery of Nova Scotia by Europeans, after Cabot's voyage in 1497, is not ascertained. The French are, however, usually supposed to have been first acquainted with it, and an old sea-captain named Scavalet had made forty voyages to the harbor of Canseau before 1609; that port being already a favorite resort for fishermen. The coast was, however, for a considerable period, the only portion of the peninsula at all occupied by Europeans, and then only temporarily, while engaged in curing their fish. The first actual attempt to colonize it was made by the Marquis de la Roche, in 1598, who took out by the orders of Henry IV., a number of convicts, who were to be made settlers. The Marquis seems not to have possessed much practical common sense, for having landed

on Sable Island, a dreary little sand bank a hundred miles distant from the coast of Nova Scotia, he chose to consider it a good place to make a settlement, left forty of his ship's company upon it, and proceeded to explore the main land. In this pursuit he spent some time, and was then driven back to France by severe storms, without taking off those whom he had left on Sable Island. These unlucky persons were saved from starvation by the wreck of a vessel on the island, from which they obtained some sheep, and plank to make huts. When their provisions were gone they lived on fish, and when their clothes wore out they made others of seal-skins. In this dreadful solitude they remained for seven years, when King Henry sent Chetodel, De la Roche's pilot, to bring them home. Only twelve were left alive, and these the king pardoned, in consideration of their sufferings.

In 1603, M. de Monts received from Henry IV. a commission as Governor General of Acadia, the territory placed under his jurisdiction extending from Virginia to Hudson's Bay. Instead of any salary in this office, he had a monopoly of the fur-trade within his limits, and large powers for the enforcement of his privileges. He was a Protestant, and a man of energy and ability, and succeeded in organizing an association of wealthy merchants, for the purpose of trading under his license. In March, 1604, he sailed from France, and in just two months reached a harbor, now Liverpool harbor, and finding one Rossignol trading with the Indians without a license, confiscated his ship and goods, with no compensation except that of giving his name to the place. Proceeding in the exploration of the coast, De Monts doubled Cape Sable and discovered the Bay of Fundy, which he named La Baye Françoise; and on whose borders he found a vein of iron ore, and another, which he supposed to contain silver. A friend of De Monts, named Poutrincourt, was so much delighted with the country near Annapolis, that he obtained a grant of it from De Monts, determined to establish himself there, and named the place Port Royal. It was during this voyage that De Monts explored the St. John and St. Croix rivers, as has been mentioned in the account of New Brunswick. While making these explorations, a clergyman who had come out from a love of travel, lost himself in the woods, and only by a providential chance was rescued, after sixteen days of wandering and living on berries and roots, by a boat's crew sent in shore to fish.

The island in the St. Croix river, where De Monts at first estab-

lished  
ment  
to Po  
clear  
tradin  
iar ta  
great  
the se  
cured  
to Fra  
able co  
of his  
friend  
king so  
colony.  
ous Ca  
but tre  
ceeded  
poral p  
that the  
lished a  
But h  
soon br  
Virgin  
charter  
settle  
tured P  
others  
Neither  
these d  
consider  
ance at  
Eigh  
Sir W  
and ed  
the St  
Nova S  
of Acad  
applied  
also a



lished himself, was soon found not to be a favorable site for a settlement; and after exploring the coast as far as Cape Cod, he removed to Port Royal. Here the colonists erected a fort and habitations, cleared ground, and set about cultivating crops, raising animals, and trading with the Indians. The French have always shown a peculiar talent for conciliating savages, and accordingly Mamberton, a great sachem of that region, and his tribe, became the fast friends of the settlers at Port Royal. They erected a water-mill, caught and cured several hogsheads of herrings and alewives, which they sent to France, and were in a fair way to become a flourishing and profitable colony. De Monts, however, was after a year or two deprived of his monopoly and his commission by intrigues at home, and his friend Poutrincourt became the leader of the colonists. The French king soon insisted upon the admission of Jesuit missionaries into the colony, much to the disgust of Poutrincourt, although he was a zealous Catholic. He was, however, obliged to permit their presence, but treated them in such a cavalier manner, his son, who soon succeeded him at his return to France, even threatening them with corporal punishment if they attempted to interfere in the government, that they finally went off to Mount Desert Island, where they established a mission.

But both the Mount Desert colony and that at Port Royal were soon broken up by an expedition in 1613, under Capt. Argall, from Virginia, on the ground that the French settlements were within the chartered limits of the English colony. Argall first destroyed the settlement at Mount Desert, and then returning a second time, captured Port Royal, and sent some of its inhabitants to England, while others fled to the Indians, or to the French settlements in Canada. Neither the English nor the French government took any notice of these distant hostilities, and indeed for many years neither of them considered the settlements in Acadia to possess any value or importance at all.

Eight years after Argall's expedition, James I. issued a grant to Sir William Alexander, a Scotch gentleman of talents, enterprise and education, a grant of all the country, east of a line drawn from the St. Croix northward to the St. Lawrence, to which the name Nova Scotia was then given for the first time. This name and that of Acadia were nearly synonymous; the latter—unless indeed it applied to the enormous territory granted to De Monts—including also a part of the state of Maine. Sir William sent out some emi-

grants, who reached Nova Scotia in the spring of 1623, after a long voyage, and a winter's delay at Newfoundland. They however found the country still occupied by the survivors of the French emigrants, and by various other adventurers, who had quietly come in, finding it neglected by the English; and not being strong enough for violent measures, they returned to England. In 1627, four years afterwards, Sir William procured a renewal and enlargement of his grant from Charles I., who also established an order of Knights Barons, whose dignity and territorial possessions in Nova Scotia were to depend upon their aiding the new settlements there. Alexander now secured the services of a French adventurer named Kertk, usually called Sir David Kirk, fitted out a second expedition, and sent it out to reconquer Acadia from the French, and settle it under his own grant. Kirk captured, in 1627, eighteen French transports, containing 135 cannon, intended for Port Royal and Quebec; in the next year he took Port Royal, and entered the St. Lawrence with the intention of conquering the rest of Canada, but the approach of winter delayed him until the next summer, when Champlain, having but a feeble force, surrendered Quebec to him, and he took possession of all French North America for the British crown. De la Tour, one of Kirk's prisoners, of whose feud with Charnissé an account is given under the head of New Brunswick, in the course of his engagements with Sir William Alexander, came to Nova Scotia with two ships, found his son Etienne holding for the French king a fort at Cape Sable, endeavored in vain to gain him over to the English, then made a violent but fruitless attack on the fort, gave up his undertaking, and sent his ships back to England, himself remaining under his son's protection, but on the humiliating condition that he should not enter the fort. Next year he joined some Scotch emigrants, and with them erected a fort at Granville, across the basin from Port Royal, whose remains still exist. But thirty of his company died the first winter, and Alexander, discouraged at the large expenses and small success of his settlements, gave up his whole interest in Nova Scotia, except at Port Royal, to his more enterprising associate La Tour.

In 1632, Charles I., by the treaty of St. Germain's, ceded to Louis XIII. all the English rights to Canada and the provinces, which were collectively termed New France. The French had before this time, and while the English were still in possession of the country, formed in 1627 a large company called the Company of New France, with

great  
other  
and  
the p  
fort  
and  
it, w  
were  
man  
unde  
river  
by th  
carrie  
Ra  
nissé,  
the ri  
nissé  
In  
lish, b  
officer  
else th  
thus p  
cupyin  
ing th  
Eti  
and W  
grant  
the co  
nobsc  
eries,  
and th  
Tour,  
and h  
fisher  
whole  
tried  
Acadi  
that A  
This  
Fonta

great powers and privileges, and including Cardinal Richelieu and other nobles and eminent men, with a view to permanent settlements and the Indian trade. The eighteen transports taken by Kirk were the property of this company, and their first expedition. This misfortune was followed closely by his conquest of the whole country, and a strong force was being fitted out under Razillai to reconquer it, when it was given up by England. Most of the military force were therefore left behind; and Razillai came out merely as commandant of Acadia. He established himself at La Have, and being under orders to keep possession of the country to the Kennebec river, he presently sent an expedition which took the post established by the Plymouth colonists at Pemaquid for trading with the Indians, carried the goods to La Have, and left a garrison to hold the place.

Razillai died soon after, and was succeeded by Daubré de Char-nissé, who removed his head-quarters to Pentagoet or Penobscot, on the river of that name. The history of the troubles between Char-nissé and La Tour belongs to New Brunswick, where it may be found.

In 1654, Nova Scotia fell a third time into the hands of the English, being easily taken by an expedition under Major Sedgwick, an officer sent out by Cromwell. This possession was, however, little else than the armed occupation of Port Royal; the French, though thus prevented from hostilities with the New England men, still occupying all the other posts and the rest of the country, and possessing the entire monopoly of the Indian trade.

Etienne de la Tour now associated with himself Thomas Temple and William Crowne, and on petition to the Protector, obtained a grant of a territory extending from Merliguash or Lunenburg, along the coast of Nova Scotia, the Bay of Fundy, and Maine, to the Penobscot, and three hundred miles inland, with all the islands and fisheries, and reserving to the government only the mines and minerals, and the appointment of governor. Temple shortly bought out La Tour, and expended £10,000 in reestablishing the forts and posts; and had already begun to receive a large income from the furs and fisheries, when his plans were broken up by another cession of the whole country to France at the treaty of Breda, in 1667. Temple tried to keep part of his lands by making a distinction between Acadia, the term used in the treaty, and Nova Scotia, to the effect that Acadia meant only a part of the peninsula of Nova Scotia. This quibble was, however, overruled, and the Chevalier de Grand Fontaine took possession of the country.

## CHAPTER II.

GROWTH OF NOVA SCOTIA UNDER THE FRENCH.—KING WILLIAM'S WAR.—SIR WILLIAM PHIPS TAKES PORT ROYAL.—VILLABON AT GEMSEC.—NOVA SCOTIA SEPARATED FROM MASSACHUSETTS.—PEACE OF RYSWICK.—QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.—FRENCH NEGOTIATIONS WITH PIRATES.—CHURCH'S INVASION OF NOVA SCOTIA,—REPULSE OF THIRD MASSACHUSETTS INVASION.—A FOURTH ONE TAKES PORT ROYAL.—PEACE OF UTRECHT.—RELUCTANCE OF ENGLISH TO SETTLE.—DESTRUCTION OF NORRIDGWOCK.

NOVA SCOTIA now remained in the quiet possession of the French for twenty years, but only increased very slowly, its population not reaching 1,000, and receiving from the mother country little attention and less assistance; for in those days the European governments recognized but one quality of real value in a colony, viz., the production of the precious metals.

When war again broke out between England and France, in 1689, the year after the accession of William and Mary, the French government was still deliberating on plans for strengthening the military condition of its feeble and scattered posts in Acadia. The enthusiastic Protestant loyalty of Massachusetts, however, acting with more promptitude, quickly fitted up a fleet of transports, with three men-of-war and 700 troops, under Sir William Phips, which appeared before Port Royal, May 20, 1690. Manival, the French commander, having but 86 men, his works dilapidated and most of his guns dismounted, after some negotiation surrendered, on terms which, the French writers claim, Phips subsequently violated, plundering indiscriminately the town, the officers, and the priests. Thence he sailed to Chedabucto, where M. Montorgueil the commandant made a brave defense, but was obliged to surrender, obtaining honorable terms.

Villabon, appointed governor by the French king, shortly arrived, and finding the posts on the peninsula dismantled by the English, established his headquarters at the Gemsec within the present limits of New Brunswick, where he annoyed the New Englanders much by his expeditions. After taking the fort at Pemaquid, he was how-

ever  
sent  
about  
The  
sess N  
pointe  
it, the  
was ac  
tion.  
1690, v  
Villa  
the Fr  
inform  
ers of a  
had not  
still ret  
The  
was dec  
edgmen  
entertai  
Acadia.  
projecte  
the gov  
of La  
Englan  
execute  
the pira  
coast of  
the Ne  
and the  
to pay  
that he  
support  
To a  
Nova S  
Penobs  
settleme  
and the  
mous i  
their ex

ever himself taken and carried prisoner to Boston, and an expedition sent from that town under Colonel Church, ravaged the country about Beau Basin, now Cumberland county.

The people of Massachusetts had up to this time claimed to possess Nova Scotia under their charter, and had at various times appointed officers to govern it; but finding themselves unable to hold it, they petitioned the crown to relieve them of the charge, which was accordingly done, and Nova Scotia made a separate jurisdiction. The English maintained their military hold upon Acadia until 1696, when it was again ceded to France by the peace of Ryswick.

Villabon, the French governor, now asserted an exclusive right for the French, to all the fisheries in the waters of those coasts, and informed the governor of Massachusetts that he should make prisoners of all English found fishing or trading east of the Kennebec. He had not, however, force enough to execute his threat, and the English still retained possession of a large share of the fisheries.

The peace concluded at Ryswick only lasted until 1701, when war was declared by England against France on account of the acknowledgment of the pretender by Louis XIV.; and one of the first designs entertained by the French was, to obtain once more possession of Acadia. Extended schemes for emigration and fortification were projected, but were soon laid aside. Orders were, however, sent to the governor, Brouillard, to do all in his power to enlarge the trade of La Have, to strengthen its fortifications, and to keep the New Englanders out of the fishery. Brouillard, receiving no forces to execute these orders, either from France or Canada, had recourse to the pirates who were then quite numerous all along the Atlantic coast of America, and succeeded in inciting them to depredate upon the New England trading vessels. They made La Have their depot, and the money and merchandise they brought in enabled Brouillard to pay the Indians whom he set on to attack the English by land; so that he managed to make both his two branches of warfare self-supporting.

To avenge these hostile acts, Col. Church was again sent to invade Nova Scotia, in 1704, with a fleet and 550 men. He entered the Penobscot and seized the daughter of Baron Castine, destroyed the settlements on the Passamaquoddy, those at Minas, (now Horton,) and those at Cnignecto, and at the latter place inflicted an enormous injury on the French by piercing the dykes and overflowing their extensive reclaimed meadow-lands with the sea. He did not,

NG WIL-  
YAL.—  
FROM  
NNE'S  
S.—  
SE  
H

the French  
ulation not  
le attention  
governments  
the produc-

nce, in 1689,  
French gov-  
the military  
The enthusi-  
g with more  
n three men-  
ch appeared  
commander,  
his guns dis-  
s which, the  
ndering indis-  
nce he sailed  
made a brave  
ble terms.  
ortly arrived,  
y the English,  
present limits  
landers much  
, he was how-

however, venture to attack the fort at Port Royal, although his fleet lay for some time in the harbor there.

Three years later, in 1707, the consent of the English government, and an accompanying promise that Acadia if now taken from the French should not be given up to them again, stimulated the untiring New Englanders to send another expedition to Nova Scotia. A thousand men were therefore sent, who arrived before Port Royal in May. The judicious arrangements and energetic defense of Brouillard's successor, Subercase, however, and the aid of a considerable force of Indians and Acadians under the Baron de Castine, resulted in the repulse of the assailants, and then in their being compelled to reëmbark. Governor Dudley, on their arrival, made them return and try a second experiment, which, however, was a still more decided failure. But both the colonies and the mother country were still determined to conquer Acadia, and accordingly, in 1710, a force of four regiments under Gen. Nicholson, with a fleet of six vessels of war and thirty transports, sailed from Boston, reaching Port Royal in September. Governor Subercase, whose small force was totally unable to contend with this army, and many of whose men were also much disaffected, after sustaining one day's cannonade, capitulated, receiving honorable terms, and stipulating that the French inhabitants of Port Royal who might wish to go to Placentia, or to certain other places, within one and two years. The garrison, 258 in number, and nearly as many of the inhabitants, in all 481 souls were also by the terms sent to Rochelle in France; and Nicholson, leaving a strong garrison at Port Royal, returned in triumph to Boston.

The French seemed to awaken to a clear perception of the value of Acadia, just as they lost it; and efforts were made by Pontchartrain, the minister, and by Vaudreuil, governor of Canada, to procure its recovery, the former by means of a proposed company of merchants, the latter, unable to spare forces from Canada, by appointing the Baron de Castine governor of Acadia, and urging him and the priests to incite the Indians and French to remain faithful to the French, and to retake Port Royal. Castine did in fact lay siege to that post, and a reinforcement from Canada was about setting out to aid them, when Admiral Sir Hovenden Walker's fleet entered the St. Lawrence, and made it necessary to keep all the disposable force to protect Quebec. Hostilities of a desultory kind were however kept up by the Acadians and Indians, until the peace

of Utre  
land, an  
thirty le

The  
name th  
New E  
made to  
and the  
island of  
allegianc  
ber of th  
were nev  
and henc  
French."  
council, v  
the garris  
twenty-fo  
tricts of  
ject to an  
lived in al  
no rent ne

Efforts

in vain; t  
that part  
reluctance  
and relig  
of the wa  
of New I  
tilities we  
command  
began to  
lishments.  
eral of th  
carried of  
including  
vessels, at  
tortured t  
at Louist  
continued  
which oc

of Utrecht, in 1713, when Nova Scotia was formally ceded to England, and France at the same time gave up the right to fish within thirty leagues of its coast.

The English now strengthened the works of Port Royal, whose name they altered to Annapolis, and garrisoned it with a body of New England troops; but still no efforts of any significance were made to introduce English settlers into the country, for a long time; and the French Acadians, though declining to remove to the French island of Cape Breton, still for some time refused to take the oath of allegiance to the English crown. When at last a considerable number of them did so, it was with a decided understanding that they were never to be called upon to bear arms against their countrymen; and hence they now became very generally known as the "neutral French." The English government consisted of a governor and council, which body with one exception was made up of officers of the garrison, as no English families had settled in the province; and twenty-four deputies were chosen annually, each by one of the districts of the peninsula, who acted as a species of arbitrators, subject to an appeal to the governor and council. The French settlers lived in almost entire independence of their English rulers, paying no rent nor taxes, and not being at all restricted in their religion.

Efforts were made to induce emigration from New England, but in vain; the hostile disposition of the Indians, always, throughout that part of the country, more under French than English influence, reluctance to venture among a population so foreign in character and religion as the French Acadians, and a feeling that a renewal of the war was not improbable at any time, deterred the inhabitants of New England from removing. In fact, the apprehensions of hostilities were soon justified; for the Indians, instigated, assisted and commanded by French from Cape Breton or Nova Scotia, soon began to make attacks upon the English fishermen and fishing establishments. Canseau was taken by the Indians in August 1720, several of the English killed, and property to the amount of £20,000 carried off or destroyed. Many other similar attacks were made, including a second one upon Canseau, when seventeen sail of fishing vessels, and fifty or sixty prisoners were taken, nine of whom were tortured to death. Complaints were made to the French governor at Louisbourg, but he answered evasively, and the Indian hostilities continued. That portion of the Indian tribes engaged in these wars which occupied the western part of Nova Scotia, belonged to the

large tribe of the Abenakis, whose chief settlements were at Norridgewock on the Kennebec. Here was the residence of the Baron de Castine, a half-breed, the son of the old Baron de Castine and an Indian woman, a man of large wealth, great abilities, and unbounded influence among the tribe, of whom he was the acknowledged chief sachem. Here was also established the Jesuit Rallé, forty years a missionary to the Indians, and not less idolized by them than was Castine. To the influence of Castine and Rallé was attributed, with good reason, the continued hostility of the eastern Indians; an expedition from Massachusetts entered the Kennebec in August 1724, failed to secure Castine, who had gone to France to take possession of his hereditary estate there, but surprised the Indians at Norridgewock, defeated them with great slaughter, destroyed the village and the church, and killed Rallé, who is said by the French to have advanced unarmed toward the English, but by the latter to have been firing on them from a wigwam. This severe chastisement, and some other similar measures, and the loss of their leaders, for Castine remained in France, humbled the Indians, and kept them quiet for a considerable time.

---

### CHAPTER III.

WAR OF 1744.—DU VIVIER'S EXPEDITION.—DUKE D'ANVILLE'S FLEET.—WRECKS, AND ITS FAILURE.—ANSON AND WARREN'S VICTORY OVER DE LA JONQUIERE.—SLOW INCREASE OF ENGLISH COLONISTS.—SETTLEMENT OF HALIFAX.—FRENCH TAMPER WITH INDIANS.—WAR OF 1755.—COL. WINSLOW'S EXPEDITION FROM MASSACHUSETTS.—PERPLEXITIES AS TO THE ACADIANS.—RESOLVED TO REMOVE THEM.—DISPERSED AMONG THE COLONIES.—FIRST HOUSE OF ASSEMBLY.—  
"CHARTER OF NOVA SCOTIA."

In 1744 France, over-estimating some political troubles in England, and expecting efficient aid from the partizans of the pretender, declared war against England. The news was brought to Cape Breton by a fast sailing vessel, but with orders to De Quesnel, the

govern  
orders.  
surprise  
the latt  
the "ne  
sels and  
Canseau  
works w  
parts, an  
compani  
endeavor  
French o  
which it  
Louisbou  
vincial ex  
which too  
The su  
for the tra  
and Franc  
French fi  
Duke d'A  
and destro  
ton, and in  
on the Atl  
regulars,  
de Ramsa  
coöperate  
remarkabl  
ever, so o  
special pr  
lost more  
which spr  
tribe; on  
final atten  
Annapolis  
France.  
now Hali  
in concert  
command,  
in fact se



governor, to make no movement against Nova Scotia until further orders. That officer, however, unable to resist the temptation to surprise Canseau and Annapolis, and knowing that if he could take the latter port he might depend upon the aid of as many as 4,000 of the "neutral French," equipped an expedition of several small vessels and three or four hundred men under M. Du Vivier, which took Canseau, and laid siege to Annapolis, but failed to take it, though the works were so dilapidated that cattle went in and out over the ramparts, and only eighty men were in garrison. Four New England companies soon reinforced it however; and Du Vivier, having in vain endeavored to bring his forces to a general assault, retreated. The French court severely reprimanded him for this ill-advised attempt, which it had expressly forbidden, as likely to lead to an attack upon Louisbourg. These apprehensions were soon verified by the provincial expedition originated by Governor Shirley of Massachusetts, which took that fortress in the very next year.

The success of this expedition was undoubtedly a principal reason for the transfer of an important part of the war between England and France to the colonies of North America. In 1746, a powerful French fleet of seventy sail, with 3,150 veteran troops, under the Duke d'Anville, was dispatched to America, with orders to retake and destroy Louisbourg, take and garrison Port Royal, destroy Boston, and indeed to devastate the whole range of English settlements on the Atlantic coast and in the West Indies. A strong force of regulars, militia, *coureurs du bois* and Indians, under the chevalier de Ramsay, in all of about 1,700 men, was also sent from Canada to cooperate with the fleet in the reduction of Nova Scotia. A most remarkable series of delays, misunderstandings and misfortunes however, so opportune as to be attributed by the pious colonists to a special providence, broke up the plan of operations; the land forces lost more than two-thirds of their number by an infectious disease, which spread to the Micmac Indians, and destroyed a third of their tribe; one storm after another shattered the fleet, and during a final attempt to cooperate with Ramsay, who had actually invested Annapolis, it was dispersed by another tempest, and driven back to France. Ramsay passed the winter with his forces at Chebucto, now Halifax, intending to recommence operations in the spring, in concert with De la Jonquière, who had succeeded d'Anville in his command, and who promised to return with another fleet. He did in fact set sail with thirty-eight vessels, but was encountered by

D'ANVILLE'S  
WARREN'S  
OF ENG-  
FRENCH  
WINS-  
PER-  
LYED  
THE

oubles in Eng-  
the pretender,  
ought to Cape  
e Quesnel, the

Anson and Warren, the English admirals, on May 3d, 1747, who in the battle which followed, captured one man-of-war, six East India ships in convoy, and between four and five thousand men; inflicting upon the French a loss estimated at a million and a half of pounds sterling. Ramsay, upon learning this misfortune, speedily retreated to Canada; and in October of the same year, the war was concluded by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.

Nova Scotia had now been uninterruptedly in the possession of the English, for nearly fifty years, and no efforts of any importance had been made to colonize it. A garrison had been maintained at Annapolis, but the French settlers had continued to possess the country and the Indian trade, and were constantly aiding the savages in various ways to keep up their desultory warfare with the English. The French government, more and more sensible of the value of the province, supposed from this neglect of it by the English government, that it might by shrewd negotiations be regained, and they made some efforts accordingly. The people of Massachusetts became aware of this, and in great apprehension of the result, they made such urgent applications to the court of England, that the ministry examined the subject with attention, and becoming convinced of the importance of Nova Scotia, arranged a plan for inviting its settlement by soldiers and officers disbanded at the late peace, granting them bounties of land, and considerable other aid in money, tools, &c. So attractive were the inducements thus offered, that within a short time 3,760 adventurers, with their families, were enrolled, and the expedition, with the Hon. E. Cornwallis as governor at its head, sailed in May, 1749, arriving at Chebucto in the end of June. Here a civil government was organized, by the appointment of a council to aid the governor, and a site having been selected, a town was laid out and vigorously pushed to completion, to which the name of Halifax was given, from the title of Earl of Halifax, who had been the most efficient promoter of the scheme.

The French ministry pretended to find authority for denying any English title to territory in Acadia beyond the limits of the peninsula of Nova Scotia. They were also much alarmed and displeased at the establishment of so strong a settlement as Halifax, which numbered, including soldiers and sailors, about 5,000 people; and upon finding that a friendly intercourse and trade was being opened between the English colonists and the Acadians, and that the Indian tribes were also submitting themselves to the English jurisdiction,

5  
7, who in  
ast India  
; inflict-  
a half of  
speedily  
war was

pression of  
importance  
tained at  
possess the  
g the sav-  
e with the  
ble of the  
the Eng-  
e regained,  
Massachu-  
the result,  
gland, that  
oming con-  
an for invi-  
late peace,  
in money,  
ffered, that  
hilies, were  
lis as gov-  
ucto in the  
by the ap-  
having been  
completion,  
e of Earl of  
scheme.  
denying any  
the peninsu-  
d displeas-  
which num-  
; and upon  
g opened be-  
t the Indian  
jurisdiction,



A fleet of 13 vessels, the English admiral on May 3d, 1747, took in the battle of the Clouds captured one man-of-war, six frigates, India ships, transports, and sloops, and five thousand men; capturing upwards of 1000 prisoners. The expedition cost a million and a half of pounds sterling. On the 10th of October of the same year, the war was terminated by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.

Since the peace of 1748, Nova Scotia has been uninterruptedly in the possession of the British, nearly fifty years, and no efforts of any importance have been made to colonize it. A garrison had been maintained at Halifax, but the French settlers had continued to possess the interior, and the Indian trade had been constantly aiding the savages in various wars, so that a common consultary warfare with the English. The French government, and more renible of the views of the province, supported the neglect of it by the English government, that it might, by shrewd negotiations be regained, and they made some offers accordingly. The people of Massachusetts became aware of this, and in great apprehension of the result, they made such urgent applications to the court of England, that the ministry examined the subject with attention, and becoming convinced of the importance of Nova Scotia, arranged a plan for inviting its settlement by soldiers and sailors discharged at the late peace, granting them bounties, and other aids in money, tools &c. So that by the 1st of December thus ordered, that within a short time 1700 soldiers, with their families, were enrolled, and the expedition, under the Earl of Cornwallis as governor, at its head, sailed from England, arriving at Chebucto in the month of June, 1749. The settlement was organized, by the appointment of a council, and a site having been chosen, the buildings were vigorously pushed to completion.

The Earl of Cornwallis, who was created, from the title of Earl of Halifax, was a most efficient promoter of the scheme.

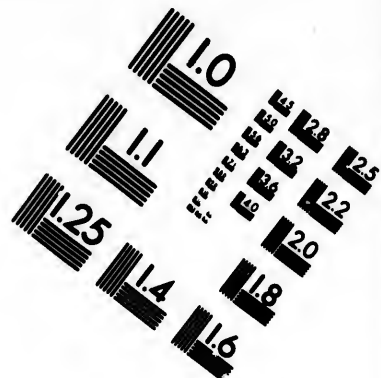
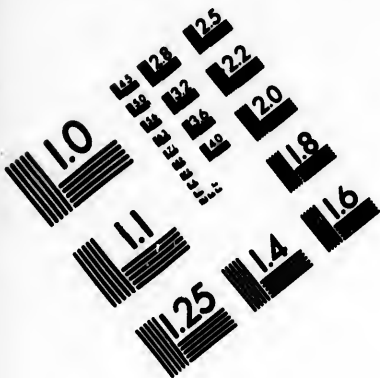
The French government, in order to find a authority for denying admission to the English, and beyond the limits of the peninsula of Nova Scotia, was also much alarmed, and displeased at the establishment of a settlement as Halifax, which numbered about 5,000 people; and upon finding that a trade in furs and skins, and trade was being opened between the English and the Acadians, and that the Indian tribes were also so far from being hostile to the English jurisdiction,

47. In a  
the India  
the milit-  
of a half of  
the expedi-  
the war was

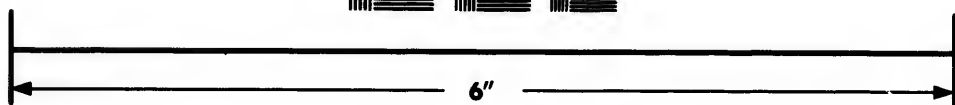
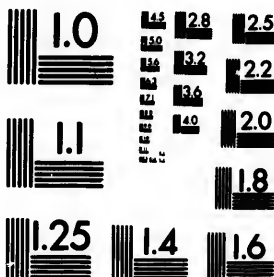
possession of  
importance  
maintained at  
possess the  
ing the say-  
are with the  
ible of the  
by the Eng-  
be regained.  
f Massachu-  
of the result,  
England, that  
becoming con-  
plan for invi-  
the late peace,  
aid in money.  
ffered, that  
amilies, were  
e allies as gov-  
eluctants in the  
ed, by the ap-  
e having been  
to completion  
titled of Bad of  
the scheme.  
of denying an-  
of the permit  
and displeased  
tax, which our  
people; and now  
being opened w  
that the Briti-  
ish jurisdiction







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18  
19  
20  
22  
25

10



they  
state  
clusi  
assoc  
and i  
peril  
the li  
join i  
interc  
state  
count  
Bay V  
whose  
tion v  
refuge

Hos  
dians,  
out age  
until a  
ficient  
pushing  
land fo  
govern  
one ad  
Germa

The  
Aleide  
1755.  
ganized  
from t  
John.  
sisted b  
cer of g  
succee  
fortific  
Gasper  
French  
objects  
loss of  
The

they at once sent out secret orders adapted to put an end to this state of things. Accordingly, a year had not passed after the conclusion of the treaty, when the English began to be constantly harassed by attacks from parties of French and Indians, of so secret and incessant a nature, as to render it possible only at the imminent peril of life, to clear or cultivate land, or to venture at all beyond the limits of the garrison; and those of the Acadians who did not join in the active hostilities of the savages, discontinued all friendly intercourse, and fell into a sullen and obstinate neutrality. This state of affairs at once put a stop to the further settlement of the country; and was made more embarrassing by the establishment at Bay Verte, just without the peninsula, of a strong French garrison, whose situation on the isthmus entirely commanded the communication with the main, and which gave constant encouragement and refuge to the rebellious Acadians and Indians.

Hostilities continued between the English and the French and Indians, with increasing bitterness and violence, until, in 1755, war broke out again between England and France, though not formally declared until a year later. The measures of the French were however sufficient to justify violent opposition, for they were steadily and rapidly pushing forward their chains of forts, and enlarging their sea and land forces in North America. Cornwallis had been succeeded as governor in 1752, by Thomas Hopson, Esq., under whose conduct one additional settlement was established in Nova Scotia, by some Germans, at Lunenburg.

The first act of war was the taking of two French frigates, the *Aleide* and the *Lys*, off Cape Race, by Admiral Boscawen, April 27, 1755. In the same spring, a well appointed expedition was organized at Massachusetts, for the purpose of driving the French from their encroachments at Bay Verte, Chiegnecto and the St. John. This was commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Monkton, assisted by Lieutenant-colonel John Winslow of Massachusetts, an officer of great influence and ability; and reaching Chiegnecto in June, succeeded, after one or two spirited actions, in taking the French fortifications on the Massaguash, at Beau Sejour, and on the river Gaspereaux at Bay Verte. At the same time the fleet dislodged the French from their stronghold at the mouth of the St. John; and the objects of the expedition were thus thoroughly accomplished with a loss of only twenty killed and as many wounded.

The campaign of 1755, however, which opened so successfully

in Nova Scotia, closed with gloom and disaster. The total defeat and destruction of Braddock, and the failure of the expeditions to take Niagara and Crown Point, spread discouragement and apprehension throughout the colonies, and rendered the authorities and colonists of Nova Scotia more than ever fearful of their unfriendly neighbors, the "neutral French" or Acadian settlers. These people, though moral, frugal, social and joyous, were dogged and sullen in adhering to the Roman Catholic religion, and in refusing to take the oath of allegiance to the English crown; and many of them, aside from their well-known constant secret aids to the Indian hostilities, had been found openly bearing arms against the English. So profound were the fears entertained of some attempts from them or with their aid, to take advantage of the feeble and dispirited state of the English, and to destroy all the settlements in Nova Scotia, that Governor Lawrence, his council, and Admirals Boscawen and Moystyn, after mature deliberation, resolved upon a measure calculated to relieve the colony at once and forever of its fears from these disaffected people; and which, however severe it may seem, was countenanced by many considerations which were admitted to be powerful and substantial at that time, though it is difficult to estimate them as such now. This measure was nothing less than the confiscation of the real and most of the personal property of the Acadian or neutral French settlers of Nova Scotia, the removal of all of them from the province, and their thorough dispersion among the other British colonies of America.

This determination was carried into effect by Col. Winslow and the provincial troops, who sent away seven thousand in all of the Acadians, being much the greater part of the whole French population of Nova Scotia. The unhappy Acadians submitted in general to this severe fate with surprising calmness, although suffering all the misery naturally felt by a domestic and home-loving people, suddenly deprived of their all, and thrust forth among strangers in distant lands. Absolute force, or at least the preparation for it, was necessary, before they would go on board the vessels prepared for them; in some parts of the country their houses were burned and their farms devastated before they could be made to give themselves up; and while a detachment was burning a chapel at one of the settlements on the Peticodiac, a number of the French, infuriated at this sacrilege, rushed suddenly from their concealment and attacked and drove off the provincials, killing twenty-three, and wounding

elever  
out th  
two h  
peace  
and af  
tincti  
setts, l  
colony  
faithfu  
bled a  
Scotia.  
driven  
In O  
which  
Louisb  
the first  
tions se  
ment h  
settling  
ments b  
were m  
of a rep  
Simul  
rence is  
of Nova  
shortly  
people,  
it has b  
and assu  
tlers we

eleven more. These involuntary emigrants were distributed throughout the whole vast range of the American colonies, in bodies of from two hundred to a thousand each. In their new homes they were peaceful and harmless, but unhappy, spiritless and unprosperous; and after a generation or two, their individuality became lost by extinction or fusion among the American population. In Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, Georgia, or even in the more friendly French colony of Louisiana, to which some of them fled, they remained faithful to their own northern home, and some of them even assembled and set out on the desperate enterprise of returning to Nova Scotia. They were however stopped by the British authorities, and driven back to their exile.

In October, 1758, after a campaign on the whole prosperous, and which had much relieved Nova Scotia by the second reduction of Louisbourg and Cape Breton, and that of Prince Edward's Island, the first House of Assembly met, having been elected under instructions sent out to Governor Lawrence long before, but whose fulfillment had been postponed by him on account of the war. While settling into a routine of business, there were some trifling disagreements between the Assembly and the Governor's Council, which were mostly soon arranged, and the province thus became possessed of a representative government.

Simultaneously with the meeting of the legislature, Gov. Lawrence issued a proclamation setting forth the agricultural advantages of Nova Scotia, and inviting settlers from the older colonies; and shortly afterwards another, explaining the political privileges of the people, and the policy of the government; a paper so important that it has been called "The Charter of Nova Scotia," and whose views and assurances were so wise and liberal, that a large number of settlers were attracted into the country.

## CHAPTER IV.

TAKING OF QUEBEC.—TREATY WITH THE MONQUASH TRIBE.—  
 CAPE BRETON A SEPARATE GOVERNMENT FOR A TIME.—  
 AMERICAN COLONIES TRY TO DETACH NOVA SCOTIA FROM  
 ENGLAND.—LOYALIST REFUGEES.—AMERICAN PRIVA-  
 TEERS.—LANDSPECULATIONS IN 1781.—MAROONS FROM  
 JAMAICA.—GOV. WENTWORTH.—GOV. SHERBROOKE.  
 —WAR OF 1812.—LORD DALHOUSIE.—SIR JAMES KEMPT.  
 —EARL OF MULGRAVE.—VISIT OF PRINCE OF  
 WALES.—REJOICINGS AT HALIFAX.—ENTHU-  
 SIASM.—JOURNEY TO WINDSOR.

In 1759, the British conquest of Canada, sealed by the taking of Quebec, definitely assured to England the undisturbed possession of the vast territories hitherto held by France in North America, though the French governor held out until another campaign; and powerfully promoted the prosperity of Nova Scotia, by finally relieving it of the dangerous neighborhood of the French power. Great rejoicings were made over the capitulation of Quebec, at Halifax especially.

In 1761, an important treaty was made with Joseph Argimault or Argimooch, and his tribe, the Monguash Indians, and a system of authorized trading houses, with regulated prices for furs and goods, agreed on, which did very much to protect the Indians from the base frauds and abuses inflicted on them by private traders, and to free the colony from the hostilities which were their natural consequence.

The wise policy of Governor Lawrence had secured the invitation of farmers as immigrants, instead of the disbanded soldiers whom the home government had sent to Halifax, and were intending to establish elsewhere; and when the peace of Paris, in 1763, put an end to the war, Nova Scotia was peaceful, free from apprehensions of enemies either at home or abroad, and firmly established in the beginning of a career of prosperity which has continued almost unbroken to the present day.

In 1765, the island of Cape Breton was made a county of Nova Scotia, with the privilege of choosing absentees as representatives in the assembly; and so remained until 1784. In that year it was

made  
 Nova  
 W  
 enlist  
 witho  
 count  
 determ  
 to tak  
 retain  
 and e  
 made  
 and ev  
 Americ  
 exped  
 and a l  
 with th  
 disaffec  
 Disord  
 occasio  
 Onslow  
 were p  
 boats fr  
 were pr  
 fortuna  
 gather  
 lish, bu  
 were he  
 A m  
 ince in  
 quence  
 insomu  
 to abou  
 ber of  
 the larg  
 Oct. 17  
 and Fr  
 In 17  
 govern  
 sular;  
 year th

made a separate government, but was reannexed as a county to Nova Scotia in 1819, and so remains.

When the American revolution broke out, efforts were made to enlist Nova Scotia on the side of the other revolting colonies, but without success. The militia were put in readiness to defend the country if invaded, a declaration of attachment to government and determination to defend it, extensively signed, the inhabitants made to take the oath of allegiance, and other efficient measures taken to retain it under the crown. As loyalist refugees from New England and elsewhere began to come in, government appropriations were made for their support, gratuitous grants of land were given them, and every effort made to fix them in comfortable situations. As the American revolt seemed to be spreading northward by Montgomery's expedition into Canada, martial law was proclaimed in November, and a little afterwards, a bill was passed prohibiting all intercourse with the revolted colonies. Some small troubles were excited by disaffected persons during the war in some parts of the province. Disorders broke out in Cumberland in the spring of 1776; privateers occasionally made descents upon the coast; the inhabitants of Truro, Onslow and Londonderry, refusing to take the oath of allegiance, were prosecuted, and disfranchised; an expedition in two whale-boats from Machias seized an armed merchant ship at Pictou, and were preparing to invade Prince Edward's Island, when they were fortunately captured; in 1779, the Indians on the St. John River gathered in large numbers, and threatened to make war on the English, but were quieted by the promise of some presents. All these were however only temporary difficulties.

A more serious check was given to the prosperity of the province in 1781, by the removal from it of many persons, in consequence of the failure of a great number of land jobbing speculations; insomuch that the total population was reduced from 18,000 or 20,000, to about 12,000, not including the refugee loyalists, the whole number of whom entering Nova Scotia during the war was estimated at the large total of 18,000. More than two thousand more arrived in Oct. 1783; at which time the whole population was 11,300 English and French, and 10,000 refugees.

In 1784, New Brunswick and Cape Breton were made separate governments, which reduced Nova Scotia to the limits of the peninsula; but so rapid had been the influx from abroad, that in the same year the total population was still 20,400. In 1785, about two hun-

IBE.—  
ME.—  
FROM  
VA-  
ROM  
E.  
T.  
?

taking of  
session of  
America,  
sign; and  
finally re-  
ch power.  
Quebec, at

gimault or  
system of  
and goods,  
om the base  
to free the  
equence.

at the invita-  
led soldiers  
re intending  
in 1763, put  
n apprehen-  
established in  
nued almost

nty of Nova  
representatives  
t year it was

dred negroes, freed by the British forces, were brought from St. Augustine, but in a most destitute condition.

A somewhat similar and not more useful accession to the population was a colony of about 600 maroons, or revolted slaves, brought from Jamaica, after having maintained quite a war there-against the whites.

Under Governor Wentworth, who was appointed in 1702, the great western road to Pictou was opened; a laborious but very useful undertaking. Many improvements in the public business, school system, militia, and trade and commerce of the province, were introduced by the able and wise exertions of Governor Prevost, who succeeded Wentworth in 1808. During the war of 1812, Sir John Coape Sherbrooke was governor; an officer of eminent wisdom and ability. The province was doubtless saved from much of the suffering incident to hostilities, by the energy with which a portion of the territory of Maine was occupied, and the governor's proclamation forbidding all persons to molest its inhabitants. During this war, Halifax was the principal station and depot for the British vessels of war on the American coast. The administration of the Earl of Dalhousie extended from 1816 to 1820. His affable manners and amiable character rendered him much beloved by the Nova Scotians. Under his authority a central board of agriculture was formed at Halifax. Dalhousie College was founded at the same place, and endowed with nearly £10,000; a library established there for the use of the army, and many other useful measures originated or continued. Sir James Kempt, Lord Dalhousie's successor, was an excellent administrative officer, and under his vigorous and orderly management, the business interests of the province advanced rapidly in importance. Among the undertakings which signalized his government, may be mentioned the establishment of a bank, a commercial society, and a chamber of commerce, at Halifax; the commencement of the Shubenacadie canal, and the establishment of a line of packets between Halifax and Liverpool, and of a fishery in the South Pacific.

The succession of good governors has been well-maintained by the later chief officers of the province; and the present governor, the Earl of Mulgrave, a popular and able nobleman, has rendered himself much respected and beloved by his earnest and efficient care of the best interests of the province.

The administration of Lord Mulgrave has been signalized by an

even  
Briti  
durin  
land,  
July  
crew  
ping.  
ing th  
the ro  
welco  
Princ  
from t  
Speak  
festivi  
Hous  
troops  
war-d  
Buildi  
with a  
visit w  
regatta  
the bay  
by him  
The  
this vis  
streets  
green,  
future  
stoppe  
his mo  
with  
honor,  
of a h  
given  
From  
barked

event of very uncommon interest and importance in the history of the British colonies in North America, the visit of the Prince of Wales, during the year 1860. The Prince crossed from St. Johns, Newfoundland, in the steamship of the line Hero, and disembarked at Halifax July 30, 1860, amidst the thundering of a royal salute, the cheers of the crews of six men-of-war, and a fine display of flags from all the shipping. He was received by Admiral Sir Alexander Milne, commanding the British fleet, and the Earl of Mulgrave, who attended him to the royal dockyard, where the mayor of the city read an address, welcoming him to Halifax. A long procession then escorted the Prince to the Government House, where a chorus of 3,500 children from the city schools received him with the national anthem, and the Speaker of the House of Representatives read a second address. The festivities of the day were closed by a dinner at the Government House. The next day was devoted to a grand review of the regular troops and volunteers, to the witnessing of some Indian races and war-dances by a Micmac tribe, and a splendid ball at the Province Building, which the Prince opened by a quadrille, which he danced with a niece of the President of the council. The third day of the visit was devoted to a full dress levee at the Government House, a regatta in the harbor, and a visit to the estate at the upper end of the bay, formerly owned by his grandfather the Duke of Kent, and by him laid out with excellent taste and managed with skill.

The enthusiasm and joy which pervaded the city of Halifax during this visit were wonderful; shops were closed, business suspended, the streets decorated with handsome triumphal arches decked with evergreen, and immense crowds attended the young representative and future wearer of the imperial crown of England as he moved or stopped, cheering him or observing him, but still without impeding his motions. On the morning of the fourth day, he took the cars with his suite for Windsor, where he was received by a guard of honor, and a well-written address, and where he delayed to partake of a handsome breakfast, at which loyal and patriotic toasts were given to the Queen, the Prince Consort, and the Prince of Wales. From this place he rode by carriage to Hantsport, where he embarked on the Styx steamer for St. John, N. B.



## CHAPTER V.

HALIFAX.—PUBLIC BUILDINGS.—ROYAL DOCKYARD.—EXCELLENCE OF HARBOR.—BUSINESS ADVANTAGES.—SOCIETY AND AMUSEMENTS.—COMMERCE AND SHIPPING.—PICTOU; ITS COMMERCE.—PICTOU COLLEGE.—LIVERPOOL.—FISHERIES.—SHELburnE.—SINGULAR HISTORY.—ANNAPOLIS.—WINDSOR.—DIGBY; "DIGBY CHICKENS."—LUNENBURG.—SABLE ISLAND.

HALIFAX, the political and business capital of Nova Scotia, stands on the eastern slope of a peninsular extending into the harbor from its western side, and occupies a space about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles long by a mile wide. It is well laid out, with wide straight streets, and presents an attractive spectacle from the water, rising from the wharves, crowded with shipping and thronged with business, up the side of the hill. Many of its buildings are handsome edifices of brick or stone, erected in place of wooden ones burned down. Among the many handsome public buildings which ornament it, one of the finest is the Province Building, which stands in the central part of the city, in a square inclosed with a handsome railing. It is 140 feet long, 70 broad, and 45 high, of the Ionic style, and extremely well built of fine Nova Scotia freestone, finely polished. It contains apartments for the council, the assembly, the supreme court, and the various provincial offices. St. Paul's church is a large and handsome building, with a tall spire; and several others of the churches are edifices of imposing exterior. The royal dockyard, which occupies fourteen acres of ground, is the largest and best equipped naval establishment on the continent. The noble capacity and accessibility of the harbor, caused it to be very early selected as the leading maritime station for the British fleet in North America, and it is amply fitted up with extensive store-houses, and vast supplies for refitting men-of-war. Above it on an eminence commanding a fine view of the yard, the harbor, the telegraphs and the shipping, is a handsome stone edifice used as a residence for the admiral commanding on the American station. Besides the dockyard, there are ordnance and commissariat stores, a military hospital, barracks, and all the accommodations necessary for the force of several regiments

—EX—

OCIE—

R—

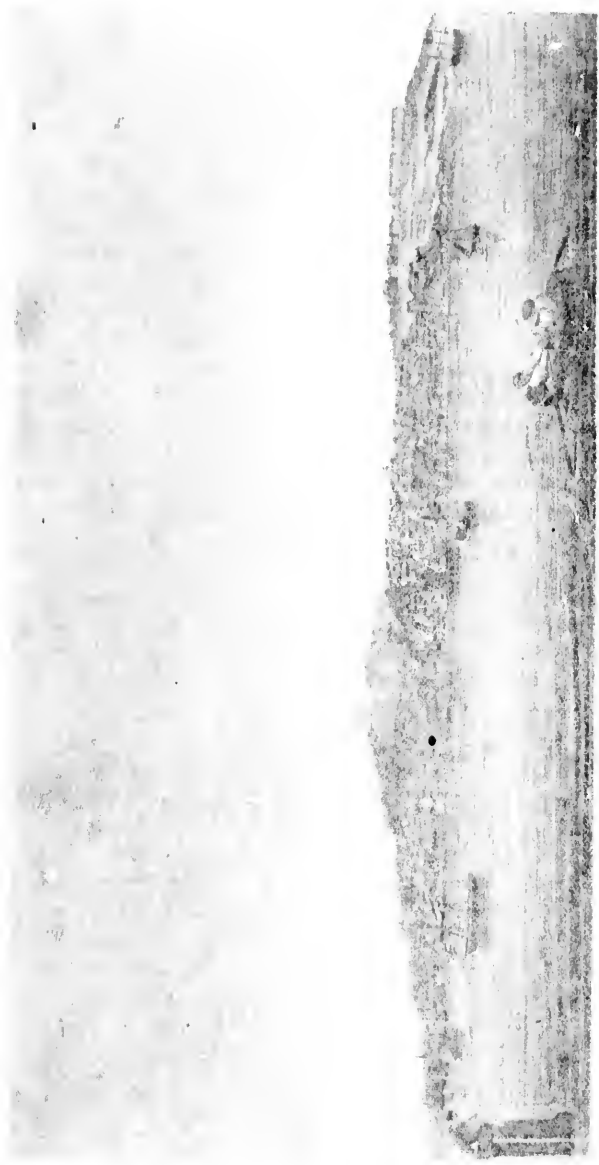
J—

stands on  
from its  
ile wide.  
attractive  
with ship-  
ny of its  
place of  
blic build-  
ng, which  
handsome  
nic style,  
polished.  
supreme  
is a large  
ers of the  
dockyard,  
and best  
e capacity  
selected as  
n America,  
d vast sup-  
ommanding  
shipping, is  
miral com-  
d, there are  
arracks, and  
l regiments



Faint, illegible text visible on the right edge of the page, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side.





usually  
world,  
structe  
front o  
pands i  
miles i  
Great E  
Sambro  
brook T  
portant,  
by vari  
seaport,  
Atlantic  
line with  
from Q  
and with  
civilizati  
voir, and  
of the U  
the cons  
themselv  
ligence ;  
and cult  
ties, ball  
races, ric  
ardently  
The ex  
1851, £  
rigged ve  
craft. T  
26,000 ;  
Pictou  
side of I  
built irre  
healthy s  
nificent  
further o  
southern  
trade, ch  
well-buil

usually kept here. The harbor of Halifax is one of the best in the world, stretching up into the country for 15 miles, being never obstructed except by ice, and that very rarely. It is a mile wide in front of the city, where vessels usually anchor, but further up it expands into Bedford Basin, a broad and majestic sheet of water ten square miles in extent, and amply able to accommodate the entire navy of Great Britain. Its entrance is indicated by two light-houses, one on Sambro Island, 132 feet above the sea, and one further up, on Sherbrook Tower, at Manger's Beach, 58 feet above the sea. As an important, political, military and naval station, Halifax is well defended by various powerful forts and batteries. Its position as a central seaport, and its extensive communication by steam with the whole Atlantic coast of North America and the West Indies, and by the Cunard line with England, and as the Atlantic terminus of the great railway from Quebec, are rapidly increasing its commerce and population, and with them its wealth, and its supply of all the luxuries of city civilization. Its dwellings are now supplied with water from a reservoir, and with gas-light; and it communicates with the telegraph system of the United States and Canada. Society in Halifax is enlivened by the constant presence of military and naval officers; the citizens themselves are of an uncommonly high grade of education and intelligence; and the remarkable beauty of the ladies, and their elegance and culture, render the city an exceedingly pleasant residence. Parties, balls, soirees, theatrical exhibitions, amateur theatricals, regattas, races, riding, shooting, fishing, skating, and driving, are amusements ardently pursued.

The exports of Halifax in 1852-3, were £569,385; and the imports, 1851, £859,080. There are owned in the city, over 100 square-rigged vessels, as many schooners, and an immense number of small craft. The population was, in 1844, 22,000; in 1846, 23,500; in 1852, 26,000; and is now estimated at more than 30,000.

Pictou, an important and flourishing seaport, stands on the north side of Pictou harbor, and about three miles from the sea. It is built irregularly on the slope of a hill, and occupies a pleasant and healthy site. From the summit behind the town, there is a magnificent view of the farming country around, of the wooded lands further off, the Gulf, and the harbor, which is the finest on the whole southern coast of the Gulf. Pictou has an extensive and growing trade, chiefly in the coal and building-stones of the vicinity. It is a well-built place; and contains an excellent grammar school, and a good

academy, commonly called "Pictou College," and open to all denominations of Christians. Pictou was settled in 1790, and has now a population of nearly 3,000, which is increasing.

Liverpool, formerly called Port Rossignol, is situated eighty miles west of Halifax, at the head of a good harbor, which is never frozen over. The town is remarkably well laid out, and the houses large, well-built and comfortable. Many vessels concerned in the fisheries, and in the English and West India trade, are owned here, and considerable quantities of lumber are floated down by the Mersey river, in the spring, from the interior.

The town of Shelburne possesses a certain interest, rather from its past history than its present condition. Its harbor, often called the finest in America, so attracted the attention of the loyalists then entering the province from the United States, that in 1783 twelve thousand of them selected a site, laid out a plan, and as it were instantaneously erected a magnificent town, with public buildings, barracks, &c.; expecting that their elegant buildings, good society, and supposed commercial advantages, would attract inhabitants from all parts of the province, bring in an extensive commerce, and quite extinguish Halifax. It was computed that £500,000 were sunk in the speculation, which failed entirely; the settlers, gaining no additions to their number, either returned to the United States or went to other parts of the province, and the town, inhabited by a comparatively small population, contains many memorials of this unfortunate beginning.

Annapolis, formerly Port Royal, the first metropolis of the province, and one of the oldest European settlements in North America, occupies a point of land between Annapolis River and the small river called Allen's, or Le Quille. It was settled by De Monts in 1604; and was the capital of Nova Scotia until 1750, when Halifax was built. It is compactly built; contains several respectable public buildings, churches, &c., and the mouldering remains of the ancient French fort, which are still occupied by a company of soldiers, furnish an agreeable promenade to the inhabitants.

Windsor, the shire town of Hants county, stands at the confluence of three rivers, the Avon, Windsor and St. Croix, occupying an extremely picturesque situation. It is very neat in appearance, and contains several churches, a court house and jail, and a good hotel. Near the town, on a lofty and beautiful site, stands King's College, and the collegiate school connected with it.

Digby is a flourishing little town at the entrance of Annapolis Basin,

much  
herring  
the odd  
Lun  
miles v  
settled  
the Bri  
rising t  
still talk  
The Inc  
Num  
coast of  
Nova  
subsequ  
largest c  
is a solit  
easternm  
broad, an  
loftiest, is  
tempests  
no shrub  
covered  
in the ho  
Nova Sc  
scene of  
upon it h  
island, w  
persons  
occurs to  
have bee  
provisior  
cabbages  
several h  
latter be  
their fles

much occupied with the fishing business. The peculiar small fat herrings smoked here, have a wide-spread and high reputation under the odd title of "Digby chickens."

Lunenburg, shire town of the county of the same name, about 50 miles west of Halifax, is on the west side of Mahon Bay, and was settled in 1751 by Germans and Swiss, induced by a proclamation of the British Government; an industrious and thriving race, who are rising to wealth by agriculture, and the lumber and fish trade. They still talk German, and retain many of their native manners and customs. The Indian name of the locality was Malaguash or Merliguash.

Numerous other thriving towns and villages dot the surface and coast of Nova Scotia, of which our space allows no particular mention.

Nova Scotia has several insular dependencies of interest. A subsequent separate chapter gives an account of Cape Breton, the largest of them. The most remarkable remaining one, Sable Island, is a solitary sand bank, in the ocean, about 90 miles south-east of the easternmost end of Nova Scotia. It is about 25 miles long and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  broad, and consists entirely of low hills of sand. One of these, the loftiest, is about 100 feet high, and notwithstanding its exposure to the tempests of that stormy region, is increasing. There are no trees, and no shrubs larger than a whortleberry bush; the island being mostly covered with a strong "bent" grass, and having many cranberry vines in the hollows. Lying in the track of vessels between Europe and Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and the United States, it has been the scene of many dreadful shipwrecks, most of the crews cast away upon it having entirely perished. A family is maintained upon the island, whose head is a superintendent, whose duty it is to aid all persons wrecked there, and maintain them until an opportunity occurs to depart. As many as three hundred shipwrecked persons have been on the Island at one time, all supported by the government provisions. There is no harbor; no crop can be raised except a few cabbages; and no animals except the sea-birds and seals, a herd of several hundred wild horses, and vast numbers of rabbits; both the latter being descendants of progenitors placed there for the sake of their flesh.



## CHAPTER VI.

GEOGRAPHY OF NOVA SCOTIA.—SCENERY.—LAKES.—MOUNTAINS.—  
GEOLOGY.—PRIMITIVE ROCKS.—SECONDARY ROCKS.—NATIVE  
ANIMALS.—HEALTHINESS OF CLIMATE.—CHARACTER OF  
SEASONS.—SOIL; ITS DISTRIBUTION.—FRUITS.—AGRI-  
CULTURAL CAPACITY.—CROPS.—STATISTICS.—BOARD  
OF AGRICULTURE.—MANUFACTURES.—COMMERCE.  
—MINING.—FISHERIES.—RAILROADS.

NOVA SCOTIA is connected with New Brunswick by an isthmus only about 15 miles wide; and is bounded on the north to the west of this isthmus by the Bay of Fundy, and to the east of it by Northumberland strait, which separates it from Prince Edward's Island, and by the Gut of Canseau, which separates it from the island of Cape Breton. To the south and south-west it is bounded by the Atlantic ocean. It is about 300 miles long, and from forty to one hundred wide, containing 15,617 square miles, or 9,994,880 acres. Its surface is undulating but not mountainous, there being no hill higher than about 1,000 feet. The ridges of high land, which are sometimes called mountains, usually run north and south, sometimes ending in cliffs on the coast, or falling gradually to the general level of the country. The scenery is pleasant and picturesque, and agreeably diversified by meadows, lakes and streams, or by the bold and rocky character of the coasts and islands, and the numerous harbors and arms of the sea. The southern coast is rough and rocky; much of the northern is comparatively low. So numerous and well distributed are the bays and inlets, and the rivers and lakes of the interior, that scarcely any part of the country is thirty miles distant from navigation. The largest of the numerous lakes of Nova Scotia is Lake Rossignol, near Liverpool, about thirty miles in length. In the single township of Yarmouth there are eighty of these lakes, one of which is nearly as large as Lake Rossignol. In many parts of the country they lie in chains connected by water-courses in such a manner as to afford great facilities for traveling. In the southern part of the province there are many extensive tracts of stony and barren land, without trees, and incapable of cultivation; and here and there are to be found small peat bogs, often in basins among the hills. In these bogs are found many trunks of trees, upright

as they  
mosses  
centuri  
and pr  
growth  
those d

Nova  
the mos  
the road  
'high.\*

others b  
coast of  
are Hor  
the Cobe

The g  
variety o  
Atlantic  
the distar  
granite, q  
of the ro  
&c.; but  
of siluria  
inland al  
county to  
rocks of t  
and porph  
per ore, r  
the primi  
system, a  
through t  
tion in N  
and cong

At the  
plentiful  
been set  
fox, lynx,  
porcupin  
numerou  
eagle, ov

\* Later s  
Cobequid r

as they formerly grew, and preserved from decay by the waters and mosses which killed them, and have accumulated about them for centuries. Some tracts of country have been burnt over by fires, and present a dreary spectacle of ashes and death, until another growth of trees, which are always of a species quite distinct from those destroyed, springs up in their place.

Nova Scotia has no mountains high enough to deserve the name, the most elevated land within it being Ardoise mountain, so called, on the road from Halifax to Windsor, which is no more than 700 feet high.\* A range of hills separates Annapolis basin and Argyll, and two others bound the valley of Annapolis river, running parallel with the coast of the Bay of Fundy. The most important other eminences are Horton Mountain, Aspotogan, Cape Porcupine, Mount Tom, and the Cobequid range.

The geology of Nova Scotia is interesting, from the remarkable variety of its rocks. The primitive rocks occupy the range of Atlantic counties from Yarmouth to Halifax, extending two-thirds of the distance across the peninsula toward the Bay of Fundy; including granite, quartz, clay, slate, and mica slate, sienite and gneiss. Many of the rocks of these formations are valuable for building, millstones, &c.; but have thus far been but little worked. Two irregular beds of silurian rocks extend, one along the Cobequid range, and the other inland along the northern edge of the primary formation, from Digby county to Sydney county, the whole length of the peninsular. The rocks of these formations are slates, shales, grits, limestones, greenstone and porphyry; and at various points in it are found iron, lead and copper ore, roofing slate, &c. That part of the province not occupied by the primitive and silurian rocks, mostly belongs to the carboniferous system, and may be said to lie upon the silurian rocks, which rise through them in the areas they occupy as just described. This formation in Nova Scotia includes red and gray sandstones, various shales and conglomerates, gypsum, limestone and coal.

At the discovery of Nova Scotia, all kinds of wild beasts were plentiful; they have however of course decreased as the country has been settled. The native animals were the moose, caribou, bear, fox, lynx, weasel, martin, otter, mink, fisher, woodchuck, hare, raccoon, porcupine, mouse, bat, mole, beaver, and muskrat. The birds are the numerous varieties belonging to temperate regions; including the eagle, owl, hawk, crow, jay, blackbird, robin, thrush, woodpecker,

\* Later surveys have however given a height of about 1,100 feet to some parts of the Cobequid range.

wren, swallow, whippowil, duck, goose, plover, kingfisher, and too many others to be here enumerated, both of the carnivorous and graminiverous species.

The climate of Nova Scotia is cold but healthy; although its extremes are much modified by the proximity of the ocean. The winter does not usually set in with severity until about the 20th of December, from which time until the beginning of April, the earth is frozen, and the snow deep. In January, however, there is usually a thaw. February is the coldest month. By the end of May or beginning of June, there is pasturage; vegetation is extremely rapid when it has started, and the summer follows fast after the spring. Its heat is usually moderate, the temperature being highest in August, but the nights seldom too hot for comfort. The autumn is a delightful season, the sky and atmosphere being usually clear and unclouded, the days like those of June, and the nights cool and comfortable. Some winters are very mild throughout, and almost without snow. Spring is the most rainy season; and in summer, there is some fog along the southern and south-western coast, but it does not extend far inland. The general salubrity of the climate is strikingly shown by the fact that healthy and active men and women ninety or a hundred years of age are singularly numerous.

Of the soil of Nova Scotia, ten-twelfths are reckoned capable of cultivation, more than half of the whole being of a superior quality. The poor land lies mostly in a belt along the whole southern coast, from Cape Canseau round to Cape Fourchu, in that range of rocky country which borders the sea. The forests which originally covered the country, consisted of birch, elm, ash, hemlock, maple, spruce, pine, beech, poplar, and oak, with other smaller trees. The best land is in the intervalles along the streams, on select parts of upland, and in the wonderfully fertile tracts of marsh on the rivers which empty into the Basin of Minas and in some other places, which after being dyked and drained, produce very heavy crops year after year, without manuring. Of the crops raised, wheat requires very careful culture; while oats, rye, barley and beans, yield abundant and certain crops. Indian corn yields well. All root crops thrive remarkably; and the Nova Scotia potatoes are scarcely equaled in excellence nor surpassed in yield by those of any other country. Cattle and sheep grow well, and are of excellent quality. Horses are hardy and active, but the breed requires to be occasionally crossed with some superior one, or it degenerates.

The  
quinces  
ceed ex

On th  
though  
distribu  
sometim  
is its ne  
dyked l  
40,000 a  
800,000  
els, as fo  
1,384,43  
21,638;  
other ro  
hay, 3,61  
maple su  
is exporte

There  
cultural p  
But the u  
the sudde  
to alter t  
ters by J  
lishment  
the other  
which sig  
the begin  
tant occu  
branch o  
horses.  
cattle-sho  
from En  
the stock  
The m  
extent, th  
ers spin a  
spun clo  
very mar  
with the

The fruits of temperate regions, apples, pears, cherries, plums, quinces, and all the berry tribe, flourish, but the peach will not succeed except in some of the warmest and most sheltered localities.

On the whole, the agricultural capacities of the province are great, though its soils are of very different values, and sometimes singularly distributed, tracts of level land being poor, while the tops of hills are sometimes remarkably productive. The richest part of the province is its north-eastern section, above the coal-bearing rocks, and the dyked lands in Cumberland and Colchester, which are more than 40,000 acres in extent. The whole breadth of farming land is over 800,000 acres. The crops of the year 1851 were estimated in bushels, as follows: Wheat, 297,157; barley, 190,097; rye, 61,438; oats, 1,384,437; buckwheat, 170,301; Indian corn, 37,475; peas and beans, 21,638; grass-seed, 3,686; potatoes, 1,086,780; turnips, 467,127; other root crops, 32,325. To these should be added 287,837 tons hay, 3,613,890 pounds butter, 652,069 pounds cheese, 110,441 pounds maple sugar. The crop of apples is an important one, and this fruit is exported, used abundantly at home, and manufactured into cider.

There formerly prevailed in Nova Scotia a prejudice against agricultural pursuits, and in favor of mercantile or other occupations. But the unfortunate result of many speculations, and the distress from the sudden change in affairs at the end of the war of 1812, did much to alter these sentiments. A well-written and forcible series of letters by John Young, Esq., known as "Agricola's letters," the establishment of a central board of agriculture with branches in 1817, and the other earnest efforts of government and wise private individuals which signalized the administration of the Earl of Dalhousie, were the beginning of a career of industry and improvement in this important occupation, which is still in progress. Grazing is an important branch of farming, and there is much pride in raising cattle and horses. Sheep and swine are also raised with success and profit, and cattle-shows, and the enterprising importation of improved breeds from England, have greatly promoted the excellence and profit of the stock business.

The manufactures of the province are comparatively limited in extent, though steadily growing. Many of the families of the farmers spin and weave much of the goods used at home, including homespun cloth for garments, flannels, linen, blankets and carpets. In very many villages many persons pursue either exclusively or together with the business of farming, the occupations of tanning, making

boots and shoes, saddlery and harnesses, furniture and farming implements. Bonnets of bleached grass or straw are also thus manufactured; and there are similar small concerns in various places near Halifax, which manufacture tobacco, confectionery, paper, hats, &c. Including the saw-mills, ship-yards, &c., the manufacturing statistics of 1851 were as follows: Saw-mills, 1,153; grist-mills, 398; steam mills and factories, 10; tanneries, 237; founderies, 9; weaving and carding concerns, 81; hand-loom, 11,096; yards fulled cloth woven, 119,698; unfulled, 790,104; flannel, 219,352; breweries and distilleries, 17; other factories, 131; bricks made, 2,845,400; value of farming tools, cabinet ware, wooden ware, manufactured, £50,519; soap, £28,277; candles, £21,210; number of vessels built, 486, of 57,776 tons burthen; number of boats built, 2,054.

The situation and natural resources of Nova Scotia, with its 1,200 miles of sea-coast and its numerous excellent harbors, give it remarkable advantages for commerce; and these have been used with no small degree of enterprise and success. In the earlier days of the province, the restrictive policy of England confined the trade of Nova Scotia under strict repressive limits; but the successive removals of parts of these laws, and especially the colonial act which went into operation in 1826, have opened all the avenues of trade to the enterprise of the province. There are 43 free ports; and the number of vessels in the carrying trade of other countries, the home commerce of the province, and the fisheries, increased from 2,583, of 141,093 tons, in 1846, to 2,943, of 189,093 tons, in 1852. The whole amount of imports during the same year was £1,103,019; and of exports £950,560. The chief imports were cordage, cotton goods, codfish, fishing tackle, flour, hardware, iron and steel, crude and manufactured, molasses, sugar, tea; and the chief exports, butter, coal, codfish, cotton and woolen goods, horned cattle, mackerel, molasses, oils, potatoes, turnips, maple sugar, wood, gypsum, grindstones and building stones.

The mining interests of Nova Scotia are of great and increasing importance; the coal mines being the most valuable and most worked. Coal seams are found in Cumberland, Colchester, Pictou and Cape Breton. At the South Joggins in Cumberland, they crop out along the coast, and are extensively worked by the British North American Mining Company, and the Albion mines at Pictou contain ten different strata of coal, the thickest 33 feet through, with 24 feet of good coal. Other profitable seams are found in Cape Breton. Excellent

iron ore  
and else  
and m  
The b  
extensi  
which  
of coal  
smelted  
The  
terest;  
to a gre  
land.  
different  
the histo  
main ap  
were en  
5,161 bo  
same ye  
1,009 ba  
erel; 53  
smoked l  
This a  
be comp  
of travel  
United S  
numerou  
stant op  
waters o  
Shubena  
which fo  
over fift  
draft. I  
and from  
character  
through  
province  
of payin

iron ore is found near Pictou, the Basin of Minas, Annapolis, Digby, and elsewhere; and native copper and silver, rich copper ore, lead, and manganese; but none of these have thus far been much worked. The beds of gypsum near Windsor and elsewhere, have been quite extensively worked; as have various strata of the coal measures, which afford sandstone and grindstones. In 1851, the quantity of coal mined was 114,092 chaldrons; of gypsum, 70,795 tons; iron smelted, 250 tons; grindstones, 37,100 tons.

The fisheries of Nova Scotia may perhaps be called its leading interest; its people having pursued this occupation with more zeal and to a greater extent than those of any other colony except Newfoundland. An account of the fish taken and the modes pursued in the different departments of the fishery business has already been given in the history of New Brunswick; and its statements will be found in the main applicable to the business as followed in Nova Scotia. There were employed in the fisheries, in 1851, 812 vessels of 43,333 tons, 5,161 boats, and 10,374 men; and the produce of their labor for the same year reached the large amount of 196,434 quintals of codfish; 1,069 barrels of salmon; 3,536 barrels shad; 100,047 barrels mackerel; 53,200 barrels herring; 5,343 barrels alewives; 15,400 boxes smoked herring; and 189,250 gallons fish oil.

This account of the material condition of Nova Scotia would not be complete without some allusion to the later improvements in lines of travel. Steam communication by water exists with England, the United States, and the other British North American provinces. The numerous vessels concerned in the commerce or fisheries, offer constant opportunities of reaching almost all parts of the world. The waters of the Atlantic and the Bay of Fundy are connected by the Shubenacadie Canal, between Cobequid Bay and Halifax harbor, which follows the course of the lakes and river of that name, and is over fifty miles long, and capable of receiving vessels of eight feet draft. Railroads have been built from Halifax to Windsor, 40 miles; and from Halifax to Truro, 60 miles; both being executed in the characteristically thorough English style, by the English government, through a difficult country, and at an expense of £8,000 per mile. The province enjoys the advantage of these roads, at the small expense of paying merely the interest on the amount invested.

## CHAPTER VII.

NATIONALITY OF THE PEOPLE.—ENGLISH.—AMERICANS.—FRENCH.—INDIANS.—CHARACTERISTIC TRAITS.—EXCELLENCIES NOT APPRECIATED.—INTELLIGENCE AND TALENT.—JUDGE HALIBURTON AND SIR W. F. WILLIAMS.—CONSTITUTION OF GOVERNMENT.—GOVERNOR.—LIST OF GOVERNORS.—LEGISLATURE.—RELIGIOUS DENOMINATIONS.—EDUCATION AND SCHOOLS.—GENERAL PROSPERITY.—POPULATION.

The people of Nova Scotia are of many nationalities. A large proportion of them of course are of English blood. In Halifax many Irish are found. The eastern counties are largely occupied by those of Scotch descent, and the midland and western ones by the descendants of American refugees. The Swiss and German colony of Lunenburg has already been mentioned. The Acadians or French occupy several settlements. A few hundreds of the Micmac Indians are still remaining, and there are several thousand negroes, who came originally from the West Indies or the United States, and who are thriftless and poverty-stricken in their own villages, though they make very respectable servants.

Their various hereditary traits may still be recognized in all these different nationalities; the steady, deliberate resolution of the Englishman; the cautious shrewdness of the Scotsman, the careless fun of the Irish, the ingenuity, readiness and enterprise of the New Englander, the peaceful, immovable morality, good manners and superstition of the French farmers; but all these qualities join in a harmonious national character belonging to the province at large.

This character has many excellencies, and deserves a much higher reputation than it has commonly enjoyed outside of the province. It has perhaps been most misunderstood among the people of the United States; whose inhabitants, it is true, have mostly been too distant from Nova Scotia to know or care what were the qualities of its people. The Nova Scotians are, as a people, hardy, enterprising and industrious; honest, hospitable, social, and intelligent. They are not without a degree of caution in admitting the advances of strangers;

but  
disin  
are j  
read  
awa  
have  
or di  
grou  
any  
nume  
Judge  
liam  
Cunan  
Nova  
The  
athleti  
and p  
climat  
makes  
The  
entitled  
advised  
nine m  
in offic  
the jud  
of eac  
crown  
power,  
comm  
provin  
a Hou  
and wh  
inate b  
origina  
bers, c  
entire  
provin  
the go  
Scotia  
ularity

but having once contracted a friendship, they are steady, sincere, and disinterested in it. They are remarkably fond of information, and are judicious in selecting books and literary material, and diligent in reading. Outside of the province indeed there are very few who are aware of the surprising number of individuals born within it, who have rendered themselves eminent and useful by remarkable talents or distinguished achievements; and whose reputation, affording just ground for pride to their fellow-countrymen, would be an honor to any country whatever. It is probably true, for instance, that innumerable persons have heard of the eminent literary abilities of Judge Thomas C. Haliburton, of the chivalrous bravery of Sir William Fenwick Williams, and of the business enterprise of Sir Samuel Cunard, without the remotest conception that they are the sons of Nova Scotia.

The Nova Scotians are also fond of company and amusements; athletic games are a frequent diversion in the country; and dances and parties of pleasure are frequent in the cities. The healthy climate, active occupation, comfort and cheerfulness of the population, makes them remarkably long lived.

The government of Nova Scotia consists of a chief executive officer, entitled lieutenant-governor, who is appointed by the crown, and who advises upon governmental measures with the executive council, of nine members, also appointed by the crown, but who are not retained in office contrary to the wishes of the people. The governor appoints the judges of the courts of common law, the custos and magistrates of each county, and temporarily to any office within the gift of the crown, until the action of the latter. He also has the pardoning power, and that of convening the legislature; and may also be commander-in-chief of the militia and regular forces within the province. The legislature consists of a council of 21 members, and a House of Assembly, the former appointed for life by the crown, and which may reject or amend bills sent in by the assembly, and originate bills, which must however pass the assembly; but it can not originate money bills. The House of Assembly consists of 53 members, chosen every four years by the counties and townships. It has entire control of the finances and general administration of the province, but all legislative action must be confirmed or rejected by the government of Great Britain. The present governor of Nova Scotia is the Earl of Mulgrave, of whose excellence, ability, and popularity we have already spoken.



The following table exhibits the names and dates of entrance on official life of all of the English governors and acting governors of Nova Scotia.

AT ANNAPOLIS ROYAL.		
Col. Vetch,.....	Governor,	Oct. 23, 1710.
Francis Nicholson, Esq.,.....	"	1714.
Richard Philips, Esq.,.....	"	1719.
John Doucett, Esq.,.....	Senior Councillor,	1722.
Lawrence Armstrong, Esq.,.....	Lieut. Governor,	1725.
John Adams, Esq.,.....	Senior Councillor,	Dec. 8, 1739.
Paul Mascarene, Esq.,.....	Lieut. Governor,	May 27, 1740.
AT HALIFAX.		
E. Cornwallis, Esq.,.....	Governor,	July 14, 1749.
Peregrine Thom. Hopson, Esq.,.....	"	Aug. 3, 1752.
Charles Lawrence, Esq.,.....	Sen. Councillor,	Nov. 1, 1753.
" "	Lt. Governor,	Oct. 21, 1754.
" "	Governor,	July 23, 1756.
Jonathan Belcher, Esq.,.....	Sen. Councillor,	Oct. 19, 1760.
Mr. Ellis, (never left England).....		
Jona. Belcher, Esq.,.....	Lt. Governor,	Nov. 21, 1761.
Montague Wilmot, Esq.,.....	"	Sept. 26, 1763.
" "	Governor,	May 31, 1764.
Mr. Green,.....	Sen. Councillor,	May 23, 1766.
Michael Francklin, Esq.,.....	Lt. Governor,	Aug. 23, 1766.
Lord William Campbell,.....	Governor,	Nov. 27, 1766.
Benjamin Greene, Esq.,.....	Sen. Councillor,	Oct. 30, 1771.
M. Francklin, Esq.,.....	Lt. Governor,	June 30, 1772.
Lord Wm. Campbell,.....	Governor,	July 13, 1772.
Francis Legge, Esq.,.....	"	Oct. 8, 1773.
Mariot Arbuthnot, Esq.,.....	Lt. Governor,	Apr. 27, 1776.
Richard Hughes, Esq.,.....	"	Aug. 17, 1778.
Sir Andrew Snape Hammond,.....	"	July 31, 1781.
John Parr, Esq.,.....	Governor,	Oct. 9, 1782.
Edward Fanning, Esq.,.....	Lt. Governor,	Sept. 23, 1783.
Richard Bulkley, Esq.,.....	Sen. Councillor,	Nov. 25, 1791.
John Wentworth, Esq.,.....	Lt. Governor,	May 14, 1792.
Gen. George Prevost,.....	"	Apr. 13, 1808.
Alexander Croke, Esq.,.....	Sen. Councillor,	Dec. 17, 1808.
Sir G. Prevost,.....	Lt. Governor,	Apr. 11, 1809.
A. Croke, Esq.,.....	Sen. Councillor,	Aug. 26, 1811.
Sir John Sherbrooke,.....	Lt. Governor,	Oct. 16, 1811.
Maj. Gen. Darroch,.....	Commander-in-chief,	Aug. 26, 1814.
Sir J. Sherbrooke,.....	Lt. Governor,	Sept. 21, 1814.
Maj. Gen. Geo. Stracey Smyth,.....	Commander-in-chief,	June 27, 1816.
Lieut. Gen. George Earl Dalhousie,.....	Lt. Governor,	Oct. 24, 1816.
Michael Wallace, Esq.,.....	Sen. Councillor,	Apr. 3, 1818.
Lord Dalhousie,.....	Lt. Governor,	May 1, 1819.
Sir James Kemp,.....	"	June 2, 1820.
Sir Peregrine Maitland,.....	"	.... 1828.

Sir  
Vis  
Sir  
Sir  
Ear  
T  
peals,  
of ma  
court  
land,  
The  
Churc  
gation  
byteria  
of Sco  
Churc  
Roman  
priests  
ive nun  
rians, 7  
land, 3  
alists, 2  
viduals  
The  
lation c  
provisio  
cludes  
and vil  
cellent  
where;  
fax; bo  
erty, an  
ities for  
The  
ful in a  
to set  
Nothing  
the sim  
was in  
and it i

Sir Colin Campbell, .....	La. Governor,	1835.
Viscount Falkland, .....	"	1841.
Sir John Harvey, .....	"	1842.
Sir J. G. Le Marchant, .....	"	1853.
Earl of Mulgrave, .....	"	1858.

The judicial system includes courts of chancery, errors, and appeals, supreme court, court of vice-admiralty, probate court, court of marriage and divorce, court of general sessions, and justices' courts. The laws in force are the common and statute law of England, and the statutes of Nova Scotia.

The religious denominations of Nova Scotia are, the Established Church of England, the Presbyterians, Baptists, Methodists, Congregationalists, Lutherans, and Roman Catholics. Of these, the Presbyterians are most numerous, and include the Established Church of Scotland, the Free Church of Nova Scotia, and the Presbyterian Church of Nova Scotia. The next largest denominations are, the Roman Catholics, who have an archbishop, a bishop, and about forty priests; Baptists, Church of England, and Methodists. The respective numbers of these connections are nearly as follows: Presbyterians, 72,974; Catholics, 69,634; Baptists, 42,217; Church of England, 36,482; Methodists, 23,596; Lutherans, 4,127; Congregationalists, 2,639. There are also a few other congregations and individuals, belonging to other denominations.

The intelligence and mental cultivation and activity of the population of Nova Scotia are in no small degree owing to the excellent provision for education which has long characterized it. This includes a system of common schools diffused throughout the towns and villages of the province; grammar schools in each county; excellent classical schools of a high grade, at Halifax, Pictou, and elsewhere; King's College, at Windsor, and Dalhousie College at Halifax; both the latter possessing commodious buildings, funded property, and able faculties. Indeed there are few countries where facilities for education are so universally attainable.

The mental and material condition of Nova Scotia are both hopeful in a high degree, and in fact rapidly improving. It is impossible to set limits to the future wealth and prosperity of the province. Nothing can better indicate the steady rapidity of her growth than the simple statement of her population at different periods. This was in 1772, but about 20,000; in 1818, 78,345; in 1828, 123,849; and it is now in the neighborhood of 300,000.

## NEWFOUNDLAND.

---

AREA.—DISCOVERY.—FIRST SETTLEMENT.—CALVERT'S SETTLEMENT.—SETTLERS DRIVEN OFF.—FIRST LOCAL GOVERNMENT.—RECENT PROSPERITY.—ST. JOHN.—ITS HARBOR, BUILDINGS, ETC.—VISIT OF PRINCE OF WALES.—INTERIOR.—CHARACTER OF PEOPLE.—RED INDIANS.—ANIMALS.—PLANTS.—MINERALS.—FISHERIES.—SEALING.—STATISTICS OF TRADE.—GRAND BANK.—MIQUELETS.—MAGDALEN ISLANDS.

NEWFOUNDLAND is nearer to Europe than any other part of America; St. John being only 1,665 miles from Galway, in Ireland. It is in the form of an irregular triangle, deeply indented by numerous bays and inlets on all sides; and contains about 57,000 square miles of area, or more than twice the area of New Brunswick. It was the first discovered of all the British colonies, having been taken possession of by John Cabot, for the English crown in 1497; but is supposed to have been seen by some Northmen as early as the year 1,000 of the Christian era.

The first attempt to establish an English settlement on the island was made in the end of the reign of Henry VIII., on the recommendation of two merchants who had traded there to advantage. The settlement however was an entire failure, in consequence of the inexperience of its managers. The number of English engaged in the fisheries on its coasts increased however, and occupied fifteen ships in 1579. At this time, the island was a sort of common or debatable territory; a place of resort for fishermen and traders of all nations, and even for pirates, who made their rendezvous there with impunity. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, however, came out with a fleet of three or five vessels, and in 1583 took formal possession of Newfoundland for Queen Elizabeth, and caused the crews of all the

thirty-six vessels then in the harbor of St. John, to acknowledge her supremacy. Her claim was again asserted two years afterwards, by Sir Bernard Drake, who destroyed a Portuguese settlement there.

In 1610, James I. granted that part of Newfoundland between Capes St. Mary and Bonavista to a company which included the Earl of Northampton, Lord Chancellor Bacon, Lord Verulan and other noblemen, who established a colony in Conception Bay, which was the first permanent settlement on the island. The settlers however devoted their chief attention to the fisheries. With the rapid increase of the latter business, there was also a great increase of disorders and abuses among the heterogeneous concourse of seafaring men that gathered there, as there was no law nor tribunal to decide any cause. Captain Whitbourne, who went out with an admiralty commission, in 1614, entertained complaints from 170 masters of vessels. Another settlement was made in 1616 by a Welsh gentleman named Vaughan, at Cambriol or Little Britain; and in 1621 a grant—which seems to have conflicted with that to the first Company—was made to that, Sir George Calvert who afterwards, as Lord Baltimore, settled Maryland. Calvert established himself at Ferryland, where he built a handsome residence, a fort, a salt-works, and quickly gathered a prosperous settlement, which he however soon governed by deputy, removing himself to Maryland. By about 1640, as many as fifteen or sixteen settlements were planted on various parts of the coast, including in all about 350 families. But when the home government proposed to establish some authorities to decide disputes amongst them, the merchants and ship-owners in England, fancying that good order would interfere with their gains from the fishery, petitioned against the appointment of a governor, and managed to prevent it. This singular and mistaken policy was presently carried still further, in reply to another application for a governor, in 1674, when the Lords of Trade and Plantations resolved that plantations in Newfoundland should be discouraged, and the settlers should be driven off the island. This foolish and cruel decree was actually executed, houses burned, and many outrages committed during two years, to expel them. At the end of that time these proceedings were stopped, though no government was established. In 1696, the French, who continued to assert their claim to the fisheries, seized upon all the English settlements in Newfoundland except Bonavista and Carbonear.

The island continued without any approach to a competent government, until 1729; having no authorities whatever except the masters of the first fishing vessels each season, who were by law invested with some judicial authority, but were far too ignorant to use it well; or being partly under the governor of Nova Scotia. In fact however there was no real government; and the fishermen and settlers quarreled, fought, barked the scanty trees of the island, wasted their means in rioting, and often bound themselves out by a tenure almost of slavery, substantially at their own pleasure. Sometimes disputes were decided by the naval commander in the station, or an officer deputed by him; and sometimes by an anomalous sort of parliament which met at St. John, and acted by common consent. In 1729, Captain Osborn of the Navy was appointed governor, with power to create justices of the peace, and administer the civil government of the island. It was however a quarter of a century before the turbulent fishermen and traders, long accustomed to their anarchical and irresponsible proceedings, finally submitted to this orderly constitution of government.

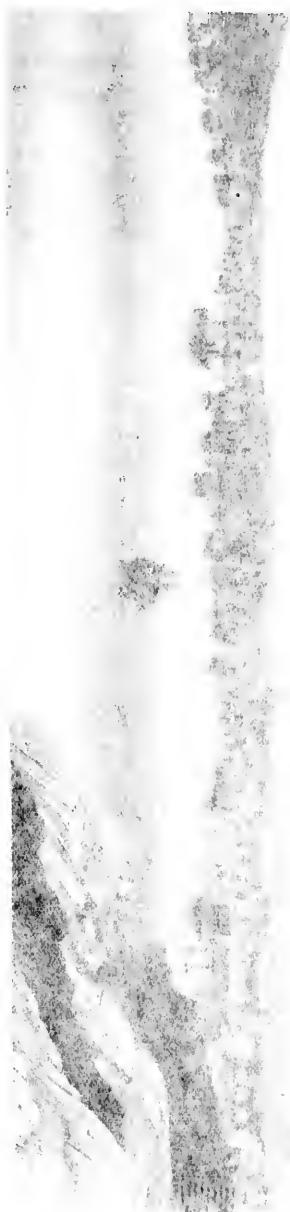
During the war with the American colonies, the trade of Newfoundland was very much injured by the prohibition of the New Englanders from fishing in its waters, and the retaliatory measure of the Americans, who at once ceased furnishing provisions to the English fishermen. These measures entirely broke up one season's fishing, as the English vessels, on arriving out, had to return home at once for stores. In the same year an unprecedentedly furious storm destroyed in those waters, a number of ships, seven hundred fishing vessels, and nearly all their crews; besides vast amounts of property in cured fish, fish-houses, flakes, &c.

The treaty of Paris in 1763, permitted citizens of the United States to fish in the waters of Newfoundland, but not to dry their fish on its coasts; and the fisheries and trade quickly regained their former prosperity. The permanent population and wealth of the island now increased, and the number and importance of lawsuits; in consequence of which a more complete system of courts was erected in 1789, and surrogate courts were appointed in 1792, for several districts of the island. Mr. Reeves was soon after appointed chief justice, an excellent man and sound lawyer; and from this time there has been a more settled and well organized government. The wars with France at the end of the last century and the beginning of the next were of small injury to the colony, as it was well

otent gov-  
except the  
by law in-  
ignorant to  
Scotia. In  
ermen and  
the island,  
es out by a  
re. Some-  
the station,  
malous sort  
on consent.  
ernor, with  
e civil gov-  
century be-  
med to their  
mitted to this

ade of New-  
of the New  
tory measure  
isions to the  
one season's  
turn home at  
furious storm  
undred fishing  
unts of prop-

of the United  
ot to dry their  
regained their  
wealth of the  
e of lawsuits;  
of courts was  
d in 1792, for  
fter appointed  
and from this  
l government.  
y and the be-  
as it was well





VIEW OF THE BAY FROM THE CITY, NEW ORLEANS





guarded  
prosper  
post-offi  
been sta  
Newfou  
the war,  
and in c  
afterwar  
of its in  
recovere  
first per  
Hamilton  
ernors u  
granted  
and a le  
101,600.

The se  
its southe  
to it by B  
Bonavist  
line the s  
the Bay  
western  
more tha  
of the is

St. Jo  
built of  
appearan  
whose er  
acter.  
of lofty  
the deep  
range of  
coast; a  
with sid  
extends  
constitu  
through  
its more  
beyond,

guarded by the vessels of war on the station ; and a career of steady prosperity and rapid gain attended Newfoundland until 1815. A post-office was established at St. John in 1809 ; and a newspaper had been started there two years before, named "The Royal Gazette and Newfoundland Advertiser." The sudden fall of prices at the end of the war, in 1815, however, ruined a number of commercial houses, and in connection with severe losses by fire at St. John a short time afterwards, brought upon the island so much distress that a number of its inhabitants deserted it. Since 1818 however, it has steadily recovered, and has resumed its former prosperity. In that year the first permanently resident governor was appointed, being Sir Charles Hamilton. The administration continued in the hands of royal governors until 1832, when a constitutional provincial government was granted by the crown, to consist of a governor, an executive council, and a legislature of two houses. The population was, in 1851, 101,600. It is now 120,000.

The settlements of Newfoundland are along the coast, chiefly in its southeastern portion, which is often termed Avalon, a name given to it by Lord Baltimore, and also in the districts of Trinity Bay and Bonavista on the east, and Fortune Bay on the south. They thus line the shore of the island, from Twillingate, the most northerly, in the Bay of Exploits, to St. George's, in St. George's Bay, on the western shore, opposite Anticosti. They are however scarcely more than fishing hamlets, with the single exception of the capital of the island, St. John.

St. John, the capital and largest town of Newfoundland, is mostly built of unpainted wooden houses, which give it a somewhat sombre appearance. It stands at the northeastern extremity of the harbor, whose entrance from the sea is of a very striking and majestic character. The coast in that vicinity is bordered by an immense sea-wall of lofty precipices of dark red sandstone, which plunge down into the deep waters of the Atlantic at an angle of 70 degrees. This range of cliffs is the steep outer slope of a ridge of hills bordering the coast ; and which is here and there cut through by narrow valleys, with sides nearly or quite perpendicular. One of these, which extends to a depth of some sixty feet below the surface of the sea, constitutes the entrance to the harbor of St. John's ; and the views through it at entering, of the quiet waters of the harbor within, with its more gently sloping banks, and the town with its busy wharves beyond, are extremely picturesque. The harbor is one of the best in

the world, being sheltered by high lands, and only entered from the sea through the narrow passage just mentioned, which is only about six hundred feet wide, between two steep and lofty cliffs, and strongly fortified. There is no perceptible tide, and ample space for shipping within. The town consists chiefly of one irregular street about a mile long, on which there are many handsome buildings, mostly erected since the great fire of 1846. The city is lighted by gas, and supplied with water from a pond on a hill near by. It contains nine churches, the government house, a large and plain but commodious edifice, said to have cost over £200,000; a handsome granite building for the meetings of the Assembly, a new and elegant Roman Catholic cathedral, a lunatic asylum, hospital, market and custom-house. There are several institutions of charity, literature and science; a library, a botanic garden, &c., &c. There is much good society at St. John, though its population fluctuates excessively and constantly. It is greatly crowded during the fishing season, and in the autumn; and often very empty at other times.

On the occasion of the late visit to America of the Prince of Wales, his first landing was at St. John, where he disembarked on the morning of July 24, 1860, having entered the harbor on the preceding evening. The city had been handsomely decorated with triumphal arches, flags and evergreens, and it seemed as if the whole population of the island had gathered there to welcome their future King. Amidst the thunder of cannon, the ringing of bells, and the cheers of the thousands who were assembled, the prince landed, and was received by the Newfoundland Corps, acting as a guard of honor, and by Gov. Bannerman, with whom he rode to the Government House, escorted by a long and splendid procession. At the Government House addresses were presented by the Episcopal and the Roman Catholic bishops of Newfoundland, the inhabitants of St. John and Harbor Grace, the Council and Assembly, and various societies. After the addresses the Prince held a levee, at which the principal gentlemen of Newfoundland were introduced to him. He then reviewed the Royal Newfoundland and Volunteer Corps, visited Waterford Bridge, Topsail Road, and some other points affording good views, and returned to a state dinner. In the evening the city was brilliantly illuminated, and there was a fine display of fireworks. Next day a noble Newfoundland dog was presented to the Prince by chief justice Sir Francis Brady, on behalf of the people of the colony, which the Prince named Cabot, after the discoverer. The remainder

of the  
ing the  
the pro  
the Col  
departe  
and ent  
all muc

The  
before  
steep hi  
full of f  
stoutest  
an hour  
ing very  
and othe  
briars, v  
stiff, uny  
fifty, six  
the valle  
with a se  
fect deep  
traveling  
southern  
judges, c  
a vessel

The  
industrial  
the exag  
There is  
viz., tha  
to revea  
inhabita  
islands o

The  
so called  
with rec  
were of  
unappr  
have be  
whites,

of the day was spent in examining the scenery of the vicinity, witnessing the regatta, visiting a "fishing-room," as it is called, and observing the processes of curing codfish, and was concluded by a grand ball at the Colonial House. On the morning of the third day the Prince departed for Halifax amidst demonstrations of respect not less marked and enthusiastic than those which had greeted his coming, and leaving all much delighted with his goodness and graceful manners.

The interior of Newfoundland, which was almost totally unknown before Cormack's expedition in 1822, is an unbroken desert, filled with steep hills, ragged ravines, lakes and ponds innumerable, and streams full of falls and rapids. There are very many parts of it where the stoutest pedestrian can not advance, without a road, more than a mile an hour; the difficulties arising from the ruggedness of the country being very much increased by the close stiff growth of stunted pines, firs and other northern trees, or the thickets of scrubby underwood and briars, which cover the rocks with an almost impenetrable mat of stiff, unyielding branches. From the tops of many of the low hills, fifty, sixty, or eighty ponds and lakes may be seen at one time; and the valleys, if they do not contain a pond, frequently are occupied with a sort of marsh, consisting of a great sponge of moss several feet deep and of course constantly wet. Few roads are opened, and traveling between the settlements which fringe the eastern and southern coast, is performed almost wholly by water, even the courts, judges, officers, lawyers and all, being conveyed around the circuit in a vessel fitted up for that purpose.

The people of Newfoundland are simple-hearted, honest, hardy, industrious and good-natured; very fond of news, and often believing the exaggerated reports that are frequently spread through the country. There is one singular exception to their communicative disposition, viz., that it is a point of honor with the hunters of seals and fur, not to reveal the result of their enterprises. A large proportion of the inhabitants are by descent either Irish, or of the Norman race of the islands of Jersey and Guernsey.

The aboriginal inhabitants of Newfoundland were the Red Indians, so called from their habit of painting themselves and their possessions with red ochre. Their own name for themselves is Beothics. They were of the American Indian race; extremely wild, savage, cruel and unapproachable; and all efforts to establish intercourse with them have been entirely futile. They have always been abused by the whites, many of whom have been in the habit of shooting them down

like wild beasts; so that their disposition toward the Europeans is entirely natural. They formerly occupied the whole island; but have gradually been driven by the whites and a colony of Micmaes from the mainland, who came in about A. D. 1700, to the wild interior and north of the island. They are now either quite extinct, or have, as many suppose, emigrated to Labrador, none having been seen, it is believed, since about 1830. Many traces of their presence still remain, among which is a vast range of fencing, extending thirty or forty miles, intended to catch deer; and some of the northern settlers believe that they still haunt the interior of the island.

The wild animals of Newfoundland are the deer, wolf, bear, hare, beaver, martin, dog, wild-cat, rat and mouse. The well known long-haired breed of Newfoundland dogs is very scarce, and almost impossible to obtain in purity. There is another short-haired native breed, a cross with the former, and possessing all its characteristic excellencies. The Newfoundland dogs are perhaps the most intelligent of the dog kind, and best suited to be a companion for man.

There are few parts of Newfoundland capable of cultivation to advantage; the most considerable districts of this nature being in the southwestern angle of the island, about St. George's Bay, where some of the hardier fruits, grains and vegetables may be raised, and good grazing farms have been begun. Elsewhere, it has commonly been found impossible to cultivate the few sheltered patches of arable land, with any profit.

Useful minerals or rocks are singularly rare, and very few trees grow large enough to afford timber, though the stumps and logs found in some of the swamps indicate that a much heavier growth formerly covered the island. The occupations which constitute its sources of wealth are therefore the fur trade, which is however not very extensive, and the fisheries, which are doubtless the most remarkable and important in the world.

The chief fisheries are of cod, and seals. In Newfoundland, "fish" means codfish; other less important varieties are called by their respective names. All the waters of Newfoundland abound with fish; but the fisheries of the northern and western coasts are now mostly left to the French. The principal fisheries of the British are the shore fisheries. These are conducted in boats, managed by from two to four hands, and fishing at various distances, from close in shore to two or three miles out. Each hand has charge of two lines, with two hooks each, baited with herring, mackerel, capelan,

squid or  
cod is pe  
rapidly d  
only to p  
two, and  
boat is fil  
good fish,  
are carri  
division o  
header, sp  
cure, at t  
cate oper  
weather, r  
and dryin  
they are s  
and move

The fish  
early herr  
lan, and th  
ing contin  
fish, when  
as mercha  
first being  
the negro  
at home.  
refuse by  
livers are  
barreled, a  
different  
men to w  
season, the  
to some v  
in making  
wild fowl,  
Some s  
whaling;  
with seal  
carried on  
tons, whic  
about the

squid or clams, sometimes with flesh of birds, or fish's entrails. The cod is perhaps the most fearless and voracious of all fish; and so rapidly do they bite that when plentiful the fisherman frequently has only to pull up one line after another, shake off the fish, sometimes two, and drop the bait over again, as fast as he can work, until his boat is filled. It is not at all uncommon for one person to catch 200 good fish, or about 2,500 pounds, in one day. When caught, the fish are carried ashore as soon as possible, thrown upon a stage, and by a division of labor among four persons respectively termed cut-throat, header, splitter and salter, are opened, cleaned and piled in salt to cure, at the rate of several hundred an hour. The curing is a delicate operation, subject to failure from wrong proportion of salt, hot weather, rain and other casualties; and with the subsequent washing and drying, occupies some weeks. When the fish will not take bait they are sometimes caught with a "jigger," or bare hook set in lead and moved up and down so as to strike into the fish.

The fishing season commences in May, during which month the early herrings first arrive and are netted for bait. In June the capelan, another kind of small fish, come upon the coast; and the fishing continues with them and other bait, until September. The cod-fish, when completely cured, are assorted into several kinds, known as merchantable, Madeira, West India, and broken or dun-fish; the first being prime, the second nearly as good, the third for the use of the negroes, and the fourth incapable of keeping, and therefore used at home. The sounds or bladders, and tongues, are cut from the refuse by the old men, women and children, and pickled in kegs; the livers are exposed to the sun in vats until the oil drains off and is barreled, and then boiled to extract an inferior quality. All these different products of this industry are commonly sold by the fishermen to wholesale merchants, for cash or goods. When the fishing season, the harvest of the year, is over, the settler frequently removes to some wooded neighborhood with his family, and occupies himself in making boats, oars, staves, hoops, &c., in hunting for game or wild fowl, or trapping for furs.

Some salmon are caught; one or two firms have been engaged in whaling; but no other branch of the fisheries is important, compared with sealing. The season for sealing commences in March. It is carried on in vessels, usually brigs and schooners of from 80 to 150 tons, which are fitted out during the winter, and set out for the ice about the first of March, strongly manned with crews of from fifteen

to forty men, who most frequently pay for their own provisions, and receive their wages in such a proportion of the seal skins caught as may be agreed on, the merchant or owner who fits out the vessel retaining the rest. The vessels leave the port through channels cut in the ice, if necessary, and steer straight for those vast fields of ice and bergs that float down from the Arctic ocean. Into the heart of these they penetrate, sailing where possible, making their way by towing, cutting channels, or squeezing between the masses of ice, where necessary, and exposed to the most frightful dangers from the movements of the ice, especially in case of storms. The seals are found sunning themselves on the ice, or asleep on it, grouped together in neighborhoods, which are termed "seal meadows." When such a place is reached, the men arm themselves with spiked clubs, disperse about the ice, and knock the poor creatures in the head. If not instantly killed, the young ones cry out with a most lamentable moan like that of a young child. They are instantly skinned where they lie, and the skins, pelts, scalps, or sculps, as they are called, with the inner coat or blubber on them, carried to the vessel, strowed about the deck until their vital warmth is gone, and then stowed below. They, are on an average, perhaps three feet long by two and a half feet wide, and weigh from 30 to 50 pounds. As many as 800, 1,000, and even 1,500, are sometimes taken in a day. When first put in the hold, the skins of the young seals are white and clean, like lamb skins; but by soaking in their own oil, they become stained of a dirty yellow. The oil and blood spilled and spread about in this business render the vessels employed in it horribly filthy. The seals are of four kinds; the bay seal, found on the coast; the hooded seal, with a strange appendage like a hood which it can draw over its head; the "square-flipper," and the harp seal, so called from a mark on its back. This last is the most valuable, and the one commonly killed.

The following statistics may illustrate the importance of the Newfoundland fisheries. When the population of the island was 101,600, in 1851, all but about 3,000 were occupied in the business of fishing. In 1852, the seal fishery employed 367 vessels, of 35,760 tons, and manned by 13,000 men. They took about 550,000 seals, whose produce in skins, oil, &c., was valued at £417,020. In 1850, the exports of fish were valued at £511,650; of oil, at £297,530. In 1845, were employed in the shore fishery, 10,089 boats, 870 cod seines, and 4,568 sealing nets; the latter used to catch seals in narrow straits along the coast.

The b  
by the F  
Newfour  
of rock,  
accumul  
Stream,  
The Gra  
of water  
island; a  
of Nova  
tination  
of deeper  
by the co  
colder wa  
the south  
along the  
mile or tw  
vail all su  
found on t

On the  
tune Bay  
possession  
American  
or Langl  
a beach of  
through b  
ly anythin  
and a few  
The inhab  
stationed  
mercial r  
name, are  
ductive;  
the seas a

The M  
seventy n  
longer un  
Including  
six miles  
length, bu

The bank fisheries are, as was already observed, mostly prosecuted by the French and Americans. They are pursued on the "Banks of Newfoundland," which are vast submarine plateaus or table lands, of rock, or of fine sand and shells, sometimes supposed to have been accumulated by the deposition of materials brought by the Gulf Stream, and thrown where it meets the Arctic currents from the north. The Grand Bank is about 600 miles long by 200 wide, with a depth of water varying from 25 to 95 fathoms. It lies southwest of the island; and a succession of other banks continue from it to the coast of Nova Scotia. The Outer Bank, or Flemish Cap, is a sort of continuation of the Grand Bank, but is separated from it by about 100 miles of deeper water. These banks are overhung by clouds, caused by the confluence of the warm waters of the Gulf Stream with the colder waters and atmosphere of the north. These fogs often reach the southern coast of Newfoundland, sometimes covering a belt along the shore, sometimes standing like a wall at the distance of a mile or two, leaving the intermediate water quite clear. They prevail all summer unless there is a north or west wind; but are not found on the west and east coasts, nor in the interior.

On the south coast of Newfoundland, at the mouth of Fortune Bay, are three islands, called the Miquelets, the only possessions remaining to France, of all her former vast North American dominions. Their names are Miquelon, Little Miquelon, or Langley, and St. Pierre; the former two being connected by a beach of sand sometimes dry enough to walk across, sometimes cut through by storms. They are rugged and barren, producing scarcely anything except grass for the pasturage of a few sheep and cows, and a few garden vegetables. White partridges are plentiful on them. The inhabitants are occupied in fishing. A French commandant is stationed here, with a small force of 40 or 50 soldiers, and the commercial regulations of the harbor, St. Pierre, on the island of that name, are very strict. The fisheries in the vicinity are very productive; and they are the headquarters of all the French fisheries in the seas and on the coasts of Newfoundland.

The Magdalen Islands, a group within the Gulf of St. Lawrence, seventy miles from the southwest end of Newfoundland, though no longer under its jurisdiction, should properly be mentioned here. Including Biron Island and the Bird Islands, the group is about fifty-six miles long, Coffin's Island, the largest, being twenty-five miles in length, but very narrow. The group belonged to Admiral Sir Isaac



Coffin, having been granted to him by the British government for his eminent naval services; and is strictly entailed in his family. The inhabitants are about 2,000 in number, mostly Acadian French, and employed in fishing. Considerable quantities of fish and gypsum are exported. Enormous quantities of sea-bird's eggs are taken from the Bird Islands.

The soil of the Magdalen Islands is a sandy loam, on a basis of freestone rock. Nearly all that part of it which can be cultivated is occupied in raising potatoes for provisions, and as pasture. A little barley and oats are also grown, and wheat would probably ripen. The uncultivated parts of the islands are partly sandy downs thinly clothed with bent grass, and partly grown over with spruce, birch, and juniper. There is a great abundance of cranberries and various other wild fruits.

The Magdalen Islands are at present by a most inconvenient regulation, under the jurisdiction of Canada, where they are obliged to go to attend court, at a great expense. They are, of course, mostly Catholics, and have a chapel, where divine service is performed by a priest.

ernment for  
n his family.  
dian French,  
sh and gyp-  
gs are taken

on a basis of  
be cultivated  
pasture. A  
ould probably  
sandy downs  
with spruce,  
anberries and

venient regu-  
are obliged to  
course, mostly  
performed by



1. *Canis lupus*. — The wolf is abundant in the  
 hills and mountains of the north-west, and is  
 the most numerous animal found in the  
 region. It kills considerable quantities of elk and  
 deer, and sometimes considerable quantities of sheep and  
 cattle.

2. *Canis latrans*. — The Magdalen Islands is a sandy loam, or a  
 light soil. Nearly all that part of it which can be cul-  
 tivated is sown with potatoes for provisions, and as past-  
 ure. Corn and wheat are also grown, and wheat would pro-  
 duce well. The uncultivated parts of the island are partly sown  
 with clover, and partly covered over with  
 brush and timber. There is a great abundance of cranberries,  
 various other wild fruits.

The Magdalen Islands are governed by a civil conven-  
 tion, under the jurisdiction of the British crown. They are  
 governed by a court of a great respect. They are of course  
 Catholics, and have a clergy, where divine service is performed  
 a priest.

AMERICA ILLUSTRATED.



TOPOG  
SHIR  
—S  
BR  
M  
K

This  
occupied  
America  
Cape  
at the o  
key to C  
except b  
isle. It  
sists of  
much in  
rugged  
what in  
the elbo  
from it  
the two  
ranging  
The spa  
locked  
channel  
the islan

## CAPE BRETON.

---

TOPOGRAPHY.—DISCOVERY.—LOUISBOURG ESTABLISHED.—  
SHIRLEY PLANS ITS REDUCTION.—ACCOUNT OF THE SIEGE.  
—SECOND SIEGE.—DESTRUCTION OF THE PLACE.—CAPE  
BRETON A SEPARATE GOVERNMENT.—ENGLISH SETTLE-  
MENTS.—THE BRAS D'OR.—SYDNEY.—ITS COAL  
MINES.—ISTHMUS AT ST. PETER'S.—OTHER TOWNS.  
CHARACTER OF PEOPLE.—ANIMALS.—LAND.—  
GEOLOGY.—FISHERIES.—SHIPPING.—  
VISIT OF THE PRINCE OF WALES.

This island, though politically incorporated with Nova Scotia, has occupied so distinguished a place in the political history of North America, that it is entitled to a separate account in this work.

Cape Breton, known to the French as l' Isle Royale, is so situated at the opening of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, as to be the military key to Canada, commanding all access to the St. Lawrence River, except by the distant and incommodious route of the Straits of Belleisle. It is about one hundred miles long by eighty wide, and consists of two natural divisions; the southern, comparatively low, and much intersected by bodies of water, and the northern, of high and rugged land, in a more compact form. These two portions lie somewhat in the shape of an arm bent up, their junction, answering to the elbow, pointing southwest toward Nova Scotia, and divided from it by the Gut of Canseau, which is only about a mile wide; and the two extremities, corresponding to the hand and the shoulders, ranging north of east and east of north toward Newfoundland. The space between these divisions is an extensive basin or landlocked bay, into which the waters of the ocean enter through a channel more than forty miles long, divided into two narrow ones by the island of Boularderie, extending great part of its length. The

circuit of the coast measures 275 miles, and its southern part contains many bays and harbors; while in the northern there are few places of safety for shipping. The shores are bold, and generally free from rocks. Its surface contains in all about 3,120 square miles.

The island was first discovered by Cabot, and afterwards by the Italian voyager Verazzani, who named it Isle du Cap. The name of Isle Royale was given it by the French in 1713. In 1714, the first settlements were made upon it, by a few French fishermen from Newfoundland and Acadia, who established themselves in a scattered manner along the coast, as each one found convenient space for drying fish or laying out a garden. No regular establishment was however made until 1720, when the French, in order to secure themselves a depot for their fisheries and the means of commanding the entrance to the St. Lawrence and the commerce of Canada, founded the celebrated military town of Louisbourg, upon a safe and commodious harbor near the southeastern angle of the island, fortified it at an expense of 30,000,000 of livres, raised it quickly to importance as a depot of naval and land forces and commerce, and gathered in it a population of 5,000.

In 1745, in revenge for some ill-judged attacks by the French on the English in Nova Scotia, the famous first siege of Louisbourg was planned and performed. It is said to have been first suggested to Governor Shirley of Massachusetts, by a trader who had been within the town. Shirley sent to England for permission and aid in the autumn of 1744; but laid the scheme before the General Court of Massachusetts under a pledge of secrecy, in the spring, without waiting for an answer from home. It was rejected at first, but was accidentally revealed by a pious member, who at family prayers asked God's blessing on the enterprise. Becoming rapidly known, and everywhere popular, petitions for it came in from all over the colony; it was reconsidered in the general court, resolved on by a majority of one, circulars sent to the other colonies for aid, and the raising of forces commenced at once. More than 3,200 were enlisted in Massachusetts, 500 from Connecticut, and 300 from New Hampshire, together with a naval force of ten vessels, the largest of twenty guns, together with a few armed sloops. All this was done in two months; the command was bestowed on Colonel William Pepperrell of Kittery, Maine, an affable and influential man and shrewd merchant, but no great soldier. Great enthusiasm prevailed;

Geo  
for  
lain  
chur  
Wes  
Grea  
bark  
safet  
were  
from  
proce  
arriv  
appea  
dific  
Vaug  
north  
house  
the ha  
that t  
pying  
upon  
some  
ing ac  
its gu  
sledg  
Frenc  
the a  
erecte  
the ci  
and s  
teries  
with  
Vigila  
of mil  
some  
come  
were  
who h  
dispos  
ca

George Whitefield, the famous preacher, gave the army for a motto for its flag, "Nil desperandum Christo duce;" and one of the chaplains carried a great hatchet, to destroy the images in the French churches. Shirley sent to Commodore Warren, commander on the West India station, for coöperation, but he declined, having no orders. Greatly disappointed, Shirley however concealed this fact, and embarking on the 4th of April, the provincial army reached Canseau in safety, but were detained there by ice for two weeks. Here they were rejoiced by the arrival of Warren, who had received orders from home to assist them, and who after consulting with Pepperrell, proceeded to cruise before Louisbourg. On the 13th, the army arrived near Louisbourg, the first intimation of its coming being the appearance of the transports. The landing was effected without difficulty; and the siege being at once formed, Lieutenant-colonel Vaughan with some New Hampshire troops, marched round to the northeast part of the harbor by night and set fire to some warehouses with naval stores and liquors. The smoke was carried across the harbor into the Grand Battery, whose occupants were so terrified that they spiked their guns and fled into the city, and Vaughan, occupying the battery next morning, drilled the guns and turned them upon the city with effect. During fourteen successive nights, and some foggy days, the hardy New Englanders did oxen's work, drawing across a morass within plain view of the fortress and reach of its guns, the heavy guns for a breaching battery; hauling them on sledges by shoulder-straps through mud knee-deep. Duchambon, the French commandant, was summoned on the 7th of May, in vain; the attack was vigorously pushed, and five breaching batteries erected, which destroyed the western gate of the town, and injured the circular battery. But so well constructed were the fortifications, and so vigorous the defense, that five successive attacks on the batteries of the island at the harbor's mouth were all repulsed, the last with a loss of nearly 200 men. Warren, however, had taken the *Vigilant*, a French seventy-four, with 560 men and a vast quantity of military stores intended for the town, but which seasonably supplied some painful deficiencies in the camp of the besiegers. This unwelcome news was carefully thrown in the enemy's way; preparations were at the same time made for a general assault; and Duchambon, who had not dared to make any sorties, by reason of the very mutinous disposition of his men, found himself under the necessity of offering to capitulate. On the 16th of June, accordingly, the town surrendered



Thus a powerful fortress was reduced on a plan drawn up by a colonial lawyer, and executed by a body of colonial husbandmen and tradesmen. The works, which cost not less than 30,000,000 livres, consisted of a broad stone rampart thirty feet high, with a wide ditch and glacis, having two bastions and two demi-bastions on the land side, and between which and the high ground to the rear were deep morasses and ponds. The mouth of the harbor was defended by a battery of twenty guns on the point of the town; another of thirty-six twenty-four-pounders on the light-house point across the harbor's mouth; two others of forty-eight great guns, on the island in the entrance; another of five guns, in the line of the works; another of fifteen guns on the light-house point, but further in, and lastly, by two batteries at the bottom of the harbor, one of fifteen guns, and the other, called the Grand or Royal Battery, of twenty-eight thirty-six-pounders, and two eighteen pounders. There was also a strong boom within which vessels of war could be taken for defense.

When the provincials entered the town they were confounded at the strength of the works; and it was conceded that the proposed assault must undoubtedly have failed. Indeed, the whole enterprise was a most remarkable series of fortunate chances. Had not Warren coöperated, the attack would have been hopeless; had not the garrison been mutinous, the besieging works could scarcely have been erected; had not the force in the grand battery been so foolishly frightened out of it, the most efficient point of the attack would not have been gained; had not Warren taken the Vigilant, its men and stores would have inspirited the garrison beyond any idea of surrender; had not the whole forty-nine days of the siege been remarkably fine, the works could not have been carried on, nor the troops been preserved in working order. Fifteen hundred of them were ill with dysentery as it was; the very day after the surrender a ten days' rain set in, which would infallibly have broken up the siege.

Three other vessels, valued in all at £600,000, were a few days afterwards decoyed into the harbor and taken. The place was, to the great mortification of the colonists, returned to the French by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748, in exchange for Madras. But ten years afterwards, it was again besieged, in July 1758, by a British army under Generals Amherst, Lawrence and Wolfe, and a fleet under Boscawen, being 16,000 land forces and 157 ships. Against

this  
who  
made  
oblig  
Fran  
5,720  
the 2  
gover  
of th  
exper  
two  
for th  
accor  
with  
now a  
by a  
monu  
Dur  
Louis  
tered  
the pe  
govern  
tive c  
and th  
per un  
to No  
The  
revolu  
it. In  
of Sco  
years.  
Scotc  
in the  
nume  
Canse  
and a  
Arich  
Chetic  
and ty  
grade

this powerful fleet and army, the French under M. de Drucourt, whose wife was constantly on the ramparts animating the soldiers, made a most heroic defense for eighteen days, when they were obliged to capitulate. The combatants were now mostly sent to France, and the sea and land forces of the garrison, to the number of 5,720, carried prisoners to England. The stores and ammunition, and the 227 cannon, constituted a prize of immense value. The British government, fearing that Louisbourg might again fall into the hands of the French, resolved to destroy it, notwithstanding the immense expense and value of its fortifications and buildings, which included two fine churches, a hospital, a number of handsome stone houses for the officers, and various other public buildings. The houses were accordingly burned or torn down, and the fortifications blown up with gunpowder. The site of the town, formerly so flourishing, is now a melancholy and silent scene of deserted ruins, inhabited only by a few obscure fishermen, and pastured by a few sheep; a sad monument of the instability of human fortunes.

During nearly a quarter of a century after the destruction of Louisbourg, Cape Breton remained unoccupied except by a few scattered fishermen, and neglected by its new owners the English. After the peace of Paris in 1738, it was, however, erected into a separate government, under Lieutenant-governor Desbarres and an executive council. The town of Sydney was now laid out for a capital, and the public offices established there. But the island did not prosper under this arrangement; and since 1820 it has been reannexed to Nova Scotia, of which it now forms two counties.

The English settlements scarcely began until after the American revolution, at which time a number of loyalist families removed into it. In 1800 settlers began to come in from the highlands and islands of Scotland; from which regions a steady influx continued for many years. The population, now amounting to more than 60,000 of Scotch, French and Irish descent, is distributed over the island, except in the rugged districts of its northern portion. The Scotch are most numerous; and are found on the shores of the Bras d'Or, on the Gut of Canseau and along the coast to Port Hood or Justaucorps Harbor, and at Cape Mabon and St. Esprit. The Acadians are chiefly at Arichat, Petit de Grat, Ardoise, the little Bras d'Or, Marguerite and Cheticamp. There are also some English, Jerseymen, and Dutch, and two or three hundred Micmac Indians, mostly worthless and degraded vagabonds. They have several reservations of land, and a

burying-ground and chapel at Chapel Island in the Bras d'Or. They are nominally Catholics. The surface of Cape Breton is still mostly covered with woods, which contain much valuable timber. This is a valuable article of export, chiefly from the Bras d'Or; and affords materials for the building of many vessels.

The interior of the island is penetrated by a singular arm of the sea, already mentioned by its name of the Bras d'Or, or Golden Arm, and which is supposed to have been produced by volcanic action at some very remote period. This inlet enters the island a little north of Sydney, by a passage about twenty-five miles long divided into two, from a fourth of a mile to three miles wide, by Boularderie Island, a narrow tract of land twenty miles in length, and from one to two in breadth. The northern entrance is safe for large vessels, the southern for small ones only. Where these singular inlets unite, they open into what is commonly called Great Bras d'Or Lake, about 20 miles by 15; and which branches into various smaller bays, the chief of which are named Whykokomagh Denys, West Bay, Soldier Gulf, and the East Arm. The waters of the Bras d'Or are deep, and have many safe harbors. Codfish are caught in it at all seasons, in winter through holes cut in the ice, and in summer by boats. Boularderie Island, and all the inner shores of the Bras d'Or, are occupied by fishermen and farmers; much of the land being of excellent quality. The whole depth of this great inlet, from the sea to its furthest point, is about 50 miles. Throughout the whole island, more especially in its southern portion, numberless small lakes are found, and very numerous streams of water. The largest lake is Ainslie, or Marguerite Lake, about twelve miles by four, which communicates with the sea by Marguerite river.

Sydney, which was the capital of Cape Breton while a separate government, occupies a beautiful situation on a point of land between Dartmouth River and an arm of Sydney harbor. Its harbor is safe and commodious, and its business extensive and growing, principally in the products of the celebrated Sydney coal mines. The coal beds in this vicinity are computed to extend over 250 square miles, with practicable seams, the main stratum being six feet thick. Fifteen miles distant are the Bridgeport mines, where the bed is nine feet thick. The Sydney coal is carried by a railway three miles, and transferred from the cars on a wharf to the ships. It is principally shipped to the United States.

The coast between Sydney and Louisbourg exhibits exposed strata

of co  
spot  
years  
St.  
north  
point  
about  
and T  
isthm  
which  
great  
Ari  
of Ca  
lation,  
fishing  
consid  
The  
long, a  
and ne  
with v  
shores  
ous ph  
cessive  
Por  
Gut of  
about  
entee  
harbor  
from t  
uninh  
wreck  
of the  
lantic  
found  
Many  
less fr  
of the  
slowe  
Th  
portat

of coal in many places; and at one point masses of cinders mark the spot where it was once set on fire and continued burning for some years.

St. Peter's is a small settlement at the isthmus which connects the northern and southern portions of the island. The distance at this point between the head of St. Peter's Bay and the Bras d'Or, is only about 900 yards. Persons traveling between the shore of Bras d'Or and Nova Scotia, or elsewhere, often draw their boats across the isthmus with oxen; a route for a canal has been surveyed across it, which would cost, as estimated, about £17,000, and would be of very great advantage to the island.

Arichat, on Madame Island, at the southern entrance of the Gut of Canseau, is the most flourishing town of Cape Breton. Its population, which is over 2,000, mostly Acadian French, are employed in fishing and in the coasting trade. It is a port of entry, and exports considerable quantities of cured fish.

The Gut of Canseau is a narrow passage about twenty-one miles long, and in many places only about one mile wide. It is the safest and nearest passage into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is crowded with vessels during the summer and autumn. The scenery along its shores is picturesque and sublime; and its tides present some curious phenomena, sometimes flowing the same way for several successive days.

Port Hood, or Justaucorps Harbor, eighteen miles north of the Gut of the Canseau, has an excellent harbor, good fisheries, and about it is much good pasture land. Cheticamp, a fishing town seventeen miles north of Marguerite River, on the western coast, has a harbor for schooners, and some fishing establishments. The coast from this point to North Cape is iron-bound and precipitous, almost uninhabited, and has been the scene of very many dreadful shipwrecks. Cape North is a rocky point, at the extreme northern end of the island. Between it and Cape Egmont, on the eastern or Atlantic coast, is Aspè Bay, which has a very fine beach, on which is found a fine heavy black sand, consisting almost entirely of iron. Many coins are from time to time thrown up here by the sea, doubtless from some wreck. The soil in its vicinity is fertile, but the fogs of the fishing banks render the climate uncertain for some of the slower crops, such as wheat.

The towns and localities thus enumerated are those of most importance and interest on the island of Cape Breton. Communica-

tion amongst them is to a great extent by water; the roads not being very good, though now increasing in number and improving in quality.

The inhabitants are remarkably tenacious of their various hereditary manners and customs, and of their religious opinions and modes of worship. They are almost universally in circumstances of comfort, but are not remarkably neat nor thorough in household economy or in agriculture. The singular maritime advantages of their situation, and the mineral and natural productions of the island, also frequently draw them away from the quiet and unexciting pursuit of farming.

The animals and fish of Cape Breton are similar to those of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. The moose, formerly plentiful, has become quite scarce, having been indiscriminately slaughtered merely for their skins. The caribou is still found, and very fine salmon and trout may be caught in great abundance.

It is computed that about 500,000 acres of good farming land may be found on the island, all capable of pasturing sheep and cattle, and very much of it of bearing fine crops of barley, rye, buckwheat, potatoes, hemp and flax. The best land is found around the Bras d'Or, on the streams entering it, and along many of the other river valleys. Fogs and rains are quite prevalent on the Atlantic coast, but the climate is on the whole remarkably healthy, and instances are frequent of persons who attain to the age of ninety and even a hundred years.

The rocks of Cape Breton are chiefly granite, limestones, and primitive slate. The coal deposits of Sydney have already been mentioned; and other profitable mines are worked in several parts of the southern district. Excellent iron ore is also found in large quantities. There are some fine salt springs, and large deposits of gypsum.

While the French occupied Louisbourg, it is said that not less than 500,000 quintals of codfish were exported yearly from Cape Breton, and that 600 vessels were occupied in its trade and fishery. The fisheries are still the most important of its interests; and the following statistics, from the latest accessible public returns, describe its present exports and imports. They are, however, known to be very far below the actual amount, partly owing to the difficulty of separating them from the returns of Nova Scotia.

The number of vessels clearing inward at the ports of Cape Bre-

ton  
30,95  
dron  
£67,  
retur  
mack  
rels,  
lowin  
Th  
devel  
or thr  
ber;  
nitely  
Alt  
this p  
It was  
ing, o  
took a  
was r  
haste,  
The  
town,  
curios  
of cou  
tions r  
ants o

ton in 1850, was 508, of 48,061 tons; clearing outward, 505, of 36,024 tons. Coal raised at the Sydney mines in 1851, 53,000 chaldrons. Total value of imports for 1850, £27,405; of exports, £67,802. To illustrate, however, the inadequacy of these official returns, we may add that where the total quantity of the item of mackerel cured in the island, was returned in 1848, as 14,050 barrels, it was calculated that during one of the years immediately following, 100,000 barrels were cured at the single port of Cheticamp.

The material resources of Cape Breton are still but very little developed. The island is capable of supporting a population of two or three hundred thousand, instead of about a quarter of that number; and its mines, fisheries and forests, would furnish wealth infinitely greater than has yet been gathered from them.

Although exceedingly brief, the late visit of the Prince of Wales to this portion of his future colonial dominions should not be omitted. It was found necessary to touch at Sydney for the purpose of coal-ing, on the passage from Newfoundland to Halifax. The Prince took advantage of the delay to land and examine the country. He was received by a company of volunteers summoned together in haste, and by the inhabitants, who testified much delight at the visit. The Prince visited an encampment of Micmac Indians near the town, inspected their tents and household arrangements with much curiosity, and purchased some of their little wares. The visit was of course short and informal, not permitting extensive demonstrations nor great crowds; but was very gratifying to the loyal inhabitants of Sydney.

roads not  
improving

is hered-  
of modes  
of con-  
economy  
their situa-  
, also fre-  
pursuit of

of Nova  
al, has be-  
ed merely  
the salmon

land may  
cattle, and  
uckwheat,  
d the Bras  
other river  
antie coast,  
instances  
and even a

stones, and  
ready been  
veral parts  
and in large  
ge deposits

that not less  
from Cape  
and fishery.  
ists; and the  
rns, describe  
known to be  
difficulty of

of Cape Bre-

## PRINCE EDWARD'S ISLAND.

DISCOVERY.—GRANT TO DOUBLET.—FRENCH POSSESSION.—  
ENGLISH SEIZURE.—EGREMONT'S FEUDAL SCHEME.—ISLAND  
GIVEN AWAY BY LOTTERY.—GOVERNMENT ORGANIZED.—  
LIST OF GOVERNORS.—POPULATION.—TOPOGRAPHY.—  
GEOLOGY.—NATIVE TREES AND ANIMALS.—FISH-  
ERIES, WHY NOT DEVELOPED.—AGRICULTURE.—  
CLIMATE.—COMMERCE.—CHARLOTTE TOWN.—  
CHARACTER OF PEOPLE.—RELIGION.—EDUCA-  
TION.—GOVERNMENT.—WEALTH AND GOOD  
PROSPECTS.—PRINCE OF WALES' VISIT IN  
1860.

In June, 1497, Sebastian Cabot, having discovered Newfoundland just before, sighted the land of Prince Edward's Island, which he named St. John's Island from the day of its discovery. This name was retained until 1799, when it was changed in consequence of the confusion arising from there being so many other localities bearing it, and was called Prince Edward's Island, in honor of the Duke of Kent, the father of her Majesty the Queen.

Cabot's discovery was not made the basis of any claim to ownership by the English; and Verrazani having discovered it again in 1523, it was claimed and taken possession of by the French government, his employers. In 1663 it was granted, together with the Magdalen group and the islands near them, to a certain Sieur Doublet, a captain in the French navy, to be held by him as vassal to a corporation called the company of Miscou. Doublet was associated with two companies concerned in fishing; but they made no other use of the island than to establish a few fishing stations upon it. After the treaty of Utrecht in 1715, the French from the mainland and Cape Breton, finding the soil excellent, began to enter it in such consider-

able numbers, that the French government apprehended the extinction of the fishing establishments at Louisbourg and elsewhere, and according to the rude coercive policy of the times, at once prohibited fishing except at one or two of the harbors. When the English seized Nova Scotia, many of the Acadians fled to the island, which became the headquarters of the desultory warfare kept up by the French and Indians against the English until the latter took possession of it after the second siege of Louisbourg in 1758. Lord Rollo, who was in command of the party, found in the house of the French governor an immense number of English scalps, which the Micmacs had brought in and been paid for. The island had been a principal resort of that tribe from time immemorial; and in some of their usual places of summer encampment, near oyster beds, the shells of the oysters they caught still cover the ground for acres together, to the depth of from one to six feet.

In 1763, the island was ceded to Great Britain with the remainder of the French North American colonies. In the next year a general government survey of the British possessions in North America was commenced by order of government, and that of Prince Edward's Island was finished in 1776. The value of the island was now recognized, and various plans were discussed for settling it, one of which, proposed by Lord Egremont, then first lord of the admiralty, was that he should himself be created lord paramount of the island, and that it should be divided into twelve baronies, to be held by as many barons of him on a feudal tenure, each baron to erect a castle, maintain a military force, and sub-let his property to feudal sub-tenants. It was at last decided to lay off the island into sixty-seven townships of about 20,000 acres, and to give these to a number of persons who had claims on the government. The applicants were so numerous, that this plan was finally followed by a means of a distribution by lot, with tickets for third, half, and whole townships. Each township was to pay from 2s. to 6s. per annum for each hundred acres, and to be settled by one settler to each two hundred acres within ten years, otherwise the grants were to be void. This lottery was drawn, and thus the whole 1,360,000 acres, all except a township or two, given away in one day.

But the plan did not turn out well. Many of the proprietors never intended to settle on the island, but merely to trade in their land, and some of them had not the means to perform the conditions of the gift; so that the mandamuses or warrants for grants quickly became an article



of trade, and many of them were bought up on speculation. The proprietors now petitioned to have the island made a separate government, and governor Walter Patterson and officers were sent out in 1770, there being only five resident proprietors and 150 families on the island. In 1773 the first colonial legislature met. In November 1775, two armed American vessels plundered Charlotte Town, and carried off the governor, surveyor-general, and a number of the council. Upon reaching the American headquarters however, Gen Washington severely reproved the captains, and sent back the prisoners and their property, with great kindness and many expressions of regret.

Governor Patterson's administration extended to 1789. He made some exertions to promote settlements, but most of his term of office was embittered by quarrels with the proprietors about quit-rents due the crown. He was succeeded by General Fanning, a native of the United States, and who was mostly engaged in endeavoring to acquire a large landed estate in the island. In this he succeeded, gaining at the same time the reputation of being the most severe landlord in the colony. Fanning's successor, Gov. Desbarres, though aged, was a man of liberality and talents, and the colony flourished under his administration. He was succeeded, in 1813, by Charles Douglas Smith, Esq., a brother of the celebrated naval commander Sir Sydney Smith; a man of an arbitrary and violent temper, who involved himself in a series of bitter quarrels with the assembly and other colonial officers, which resulted in his removal. Col. Ready was appointed in his place, in 1824. The remaining governors are as follows: Sir Aretas Young, appointed 1831; Sir Charles Augustine Fitzroy, 1837; Capt. H. Vere Huntley, 1840; Sir D. Campbell, 1850; Sir Alexander Bannerman, 1851; Sir Dominic Daley, 1854, and George Dundas, Esq., 1858.

A good measure of the growth and prosperity of the island is afforded by the progress of the population. This was, in 1758, about 6,000; in 1802, 20,671; in 1822, 24,000; in 1825, 28,600; in 1833, 32,292; in 1841, 47,034; in 1848, 62,678; in 1854, 90,000. While the Duke of Kent was commander of the forces in Nova Scotia, he did much for the island, organizing a provincial force of cavalry and infantry, and causing the erection of efficient batteries for the defense of Charlotte Town; so that during the wars with France from 1792 to 1815, it was never molested by any enemy.

A measure which gave a very great impulse to the enterprise and

prosperity of the colony was the final commutation effected during the years 1801-4, for the arrears of government quit-rents, which had been accumulating since 1769. The townships were classed according to circumstances, and assessed at from 4 to 15 years quit-rents as they could bear. The quit-rent system however continued an inconvenient and unpopular mode of raising revenue, and a movement was commenced in 1833, which resulted in its discontinuance, and the substitution of other and more usual modes of raising the necessary income of the province.

Prince Edward's Island lies in a sort of nook or bay of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, embraced as it were between the horns of the deep curve formed by the shore of New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Cape Breton. It is about 140 miles long, fifteen to thirty-four miles broad, and contains a total area of 2,134 square miles, or 1,360,000 acres. It is deeply indented by two large bays, Hillsborough bay on the south and Richmond Bay on the north, which divide it naturally into three sections, connected by comparatively narrow isthmuses. Other bays and deep rivers penetrate it so frequently and far that scarcely any portion of it is more than eight miles from tide-water. The appearance of the island is picturesque and pleasing, though without bold features. Most of its surface is level or gently undulating, there being scarcely any high lands except a chain of not very high hills crossing the island in the middle, from De Sable to Grenville Bay.

No limestone, gypsum, coal, iron, or other merchantable mineral has been discovered on the island. Its rock is almost invariably a red sandstone, an occasional isolated boulder of granite being found, lodged by ice in some previous age of the world. There is, however, abundance of good brick clay, and potter's clay. The soil is usually a light reddish loam, in some places approaching the character of clay, in others sandy, but sandy portions of a dark color are commonly very fertile. The soil is strong and rich to a most uncommonly uniform degree, almost the only exceptions being occasional swamps, usually consisting of a spongy turf, or of black mould or muck, resting on white sand. Some of these swamps produce only shrubs and moss; others, alders and long rank grass. When drained however, they make excellent meadow land. There are also a few tracts termed "barrens," usually of a whitish sand, and producing only a few dried mosses and shrubs; but all such land is probably capable of improvement. Some of the salt marshes are overflowed

by the tide; in which case they produce a strong but nutritious grass, and if dyked, very heavy crops of hay or grain.

The whole of the island was originally covered with a strong growth of forest trees, mostly pine, spruce, hemlock, beech, birch and maple. There are many large poplars, and white cedar is found in the northern districts. Oak, elm, ash, and larch, are not very common, and the wood of the first is poor. There are many other smaller trees. Tremendous fires have raged in the forests at different times, and the tracts laid bare by their fury have not yet always been filled by a second growth. These fires destroyed large quantities of pines, and large quantities more have been used for houses and shipbuilding; so that now there is probably no more than is needed for the island itself. Sarsaparilla, ginseng, and other medicinal plants, abound. Among the fruits which grow wild, are an astonishing profusion of raspberries, strawberries, cranberries, blue berries, and whortleberries.

Among the native quadrupeds are, the bear, loup-cervier, fox, hare, otter, muskrat, mink, weasel, squirrel, &c. Bears and loup-cerviers formerly made much havoc among flocks, but a bounty was given for their destruction by government, and they are now comparatively rare. Otters and martins were formerly plenty, but as well as the muskrat, have been so much hunted as to become scarce. In the early part of the present century, mice were so plentiful and destructive that they have been known to destroy a whole field of wheat in one night. At present they do little injury. In the early days of the colony, the walrus used to frequent its shores in such numbers that a considerable profit was made on their oil, skins and teeth. They have, however, not been seen for forty or fifty years, though still sometimes to be found at the Magdalen Islands and other places to the northward. The harbor seal haunts the shore during summer and autumn; and vast numbers of harp seals sometimes float into the neighborhood on ice from the north.

Birds of all kinds abound; wild geese, brant, wild ducks, wild pigeons, and partridges are all plentiful and excellent in their seasons, the latter being protected from the sportsman by a law of the province prohibiting shooting them between April first and September first.

The fish and shell-fish of the waters of the island are those of all the waters of the gulf of St. Lawrence and its tributary streams. The oysters are esteemed remarkably fine, and were at one time

carri  
sem  
erat  
It  
situ  
atte  
tily  
expe  
fishe  
the c  
case  
fish,  
A  
for v  
lence  
raise  
barle  
and  
grow  
berrie  
prob  
some  
to th  
beari  
and  
are a  
exce  
Nort  
hogs  
breed  
cum  
for s  
leng  
quar  
blac  
are  
hund  
secu  
T  
the

carried off in such quantities to Quebec and Halifax, that the assembly passed an act, in 1828, prohibiting their export for a considerable period.

It is a singular fact that, with almost unrivaled advantages of situation and harbors, the fisheries should have attracted so little attention from the inhabitants of the island. It is true that the fertility of the soil is no less remarkable; but it would naturally be expected that the more adventurous life and more rapid gains of the fisheries would have had as much influence here as they have had in the other neighboring provinces. But so far is this from being the case, that even the Charlotte Town market is but ill supplied with fish, and the exports of it are comparatively trifling.

Agriculture is the principal occupation of the island; and one for which it is most strikingly adapted by the almost uniform excellence of its soil, and the favorable nature of its climate. Wheat is raised in abundance, and a large surplus exported; rye, buckwheat, barley and oats, all produce heavy crops of excellent quality; beans and peas, and all kinds of esculent roots and culinary vegetables, grow in the utmost perfection. Cherries, plums, currants and gooseberries, thrive well. The apples have not commonly been so good, probably from poor management, as careful culture has produced some excellent ones, and the climate can not be reckoned unfavorable to them, since some trees planted by the French before 1758 were bearing well in 1830. Flax and all the grasses grow well; hemp and Indian corn do not seem so well adapted to the soil. Potatoes are a large and staple crop of the island, and are famous for their excellence, not only at home, but throughout large portions of British North America and the United States. Horses, cattle, sheep and hogs, thrive well; the horses, many of which are of the Canadian breed, are remarkably hardy and enduring. There is only one circumstance unfavorable to agricultural pursuits, and this merely calls for somewhat increased providence for the future. This is the length of the winters, which renders it necessary to lay in a large quantity of fodder, viz., not less than a ton of hay per head for black cattle, and in a corresponding proportion for others. Farms are very frequently laid out in long strips, of ten chains front and a hundred chains deep. This is inconvenient on some accounts, but secures each settler a share of road or water frontage.

The soil produces good crops instantly on being redeemed from the forest, and is seldom exhausted even when quite unmanured, by

the longest succession of them. When it is, or where it is deficient in fertility, stable and yard manure are used, or resort is had to the vast stores of sea-weed, "muscle-mud," which is a natural deposit of muscles, shells, decayed vegetable matter, &c., found in the bays and creeks, and even to the ordinary salt mud everywhere found in the creeks, all of which possess much fertilizing power, and the first two a very remarkable degree of it.

The climate is singularly healthful. The winters are long and severe, and the summers warm, vegetation coming forward with wonderful quickness. But the extremes of heat and cold are not so great as in Canada; the fogs of parts of Nova Scotia, Cape Breton and Newfoundland are unknown, and the air is clear, dry, bracing, and peculiarly healthful. No intermittent fevers are known, and those suffering with them soon recover. Invalids and feeble persons very frequently regain health and strength on taking up a residence on the island; and consumption is seldom met with. It is by no means uncommon to meet persons of ninety or one hundred years old still able to labor in the open air, and who have never known a day's sickness.

The commerce of the island has consisted in part of the sale of ships, fishing vessels, &c., to England or the other colonies, and in part of the export of the products of its agriculture and the corresponding import trade. The exhaustion of the forests, however, has decreased the attention paid to ship-building; while the other branch of commerce has grown with the increase of population and of farming. As early as in the days of the French dominion, such large supplies were drawn from Prince Edward's Island for Louisbourg, Quebec and other fortresses and settlements, that it was surnamed the granary of North America; and it is said that individual farmers then frequently exported 1,200 bushels a year of grain. The whole exports of the year 1850 were estimated at a value of £65,198; and of imports, £126,095. In 1851 the exports were to the amount of £72,093, of which about one-third was sent to the United States, including 222,109 bushels oats, 17,929 bushels barley, 45,942 bushels potatoes, 3,090 bushels turnips, 1,700 pounds wool, 1,786 barrels pickled fish, 650 quintals dried fish, sixty cwt. iron, and 2,215 hackmatack knees.

The manufactures of the island are principally of linen and flannel for home use. There were in 1848, twenty-seven carding mills, thirteen breweries and distilleries, 116 grist mills, 139 saw-mills, and 246 threshing machines.

CH  
on or  
comp  
house  
to giv  
rent  
the p  
barra  
kirk,  
£270  
factor  
rons  
towns  
ports  
been a  
Pro  
remain  
Ameri  
are a  
The  
comfo  
morals  
caused  
spirits  
The  
land;  
burgh  
these  
ality  
about  
from  
The  
1848,  
crease  
land,  
dists,  
The  
and a  
Acadi  
the se

Charlotte Town, the capital, is a town of about 5,000 inhabitants, on one of the best harbors in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, well built, competently fortified, and capable of being very strongly so. The houses are mostly of wood, and have so much ground about them as to give the town a very pleasant appearance, and add to its apparent size. The government buildings are the colonial building and the post-office, both handsome stone edifices; the government house, barracks and fort. There are also an Episcopal church, a Scotch kirk, several chapels, an academy, which has an endowment of £270 a year, and a national school. There is an iron foundry, a manufactory of coarse woollen goods, and several ship-yards. The environs of the town contain much delightful scenery. The other towns of the island are agricultural settlements, and sometimes also ports for fishing vessels. Two hundred American schooners have been collected in one of these harbors at one time.

Probably more than half of the people are of Scotch descent, the remainder being descended from Irish, English, Acadian French, American loyalists, and a few Dutch, Germans and Swedes. There are a very small number of families of Micmac Indians.

The inhabitants are almost without exception in independent and comfortable circumstances; hospitable, kind-hearted, and of good morals; though more or less harm has resulted from litigation caused by excessive credits, and from the cheapness of ardent spirits.

The religious denominations of the island are the Church of England; the Kirk of Scotland; the seceders from the latter, or Anti-burghers; Roman Catholics; Methodists; and Baptists. Among all these there prevails an uncommon degree of good feeling and liberality of sentiment, especially since the Roman Catholics were freed, about thirty years since, from an unjust law which prevented them from being members of assembly or voting at elections.

The proportionate number of the different denominations was, in 1848, as follows; the actual numbers of each having however much increased since that time;—Roman Catholics, 27,147; Church of England, 6,530; Church of Scotland, 9,895; Dissenters, 10,507; Methodists, 3,659; Baptists, 2,000; others, 1,710.

The natives of the island are remarkably quick of apprehension and apt to learn; and there are very few of them, except among the Acadians, who can not read and write. Schools exist in nearly all the settlements, and there is an annual appropriation for their sup-

port. The free schools, which have recently been organized, are nearly 200 in number; the appropriation for their support was, in 1853, £6,000.

In 1852, a submarine telegraph cable was laid from Cape Travers to Cape Tormentine in New Brunswick, a distance of nine miles, and the island thus brought into instant communication with the whole vast telegraphic network of the United States and Canada. From Cape Travers the wires extend to Charlotte Town, and thence to the easternmost point of the island; and it is proposed to continue a submarine line to Newfoundland.

The government of the island consists of a lieutenant-governor, appointed by the crown, an executive council of nine, appointed in the same way, and a legislature of two houses, the upper of six members, and the lower of twenty-four. The courts are, justices' courts, special magistrates' courts, and the supreme court of judicature. There is also a court of chancery.

The wealth and prosperity of the island are based upon the most enduring sources, and the limit of their development can only be set by that of the wisdom and industry of its people. It is by nature one of the most perfect and delightful spots on the face of the earth; and it must be added that thus far its history is such as to bring no discredit upon its possessors. Upon many occasions they have shown a decided and steady spirit in asserting their rights when assailed by unworthy officials, but their loyalty to and affection for the British crown has been and is firm and enthusiastic. That such is still the fact, was strongly shown by the demonstrations of pleasure which attended the short visit lately made to Charlotte Town and vicinity by the Prince of Wales during his progress through the British North American possessions.

The Prince arrived at Charlotte Town on the 9th of August, 1860, in the *Hero*, from Pictou. He reached the landing-place at noon, where he was received by the governor, the judges, members of legislature, mayor and corporation of the city, the clergy and heads of departments, the shipping displaying all their flags, and a royal salute being fired from the men-of-war. The wet and gloomy weather interfered with the programme of the festivities, but could not quench the enthusiasm of the people; a strong procession of the volunteer military companies, the masons and other societies, escorted their future sovereign to the Government House, through streets overhung with triumphal arches, and lined with delighted

cro  
for  
was  
dist  
and  
ten  
near  
him  
the  
val,  
and

crowds. Handsome illuminations and fire-works had been prepared for the evening, but the rain prevented their success. Next day was devoted to a levee at the Government House, where the most distinguished gentlemen of the island were presented to the Prince, and to a public ball in the Province Building, which was fully attended, and where the Prince danced with vigor and interest in nearly every set. The time set apart for his journey did not allow him to make any progress through the island; and accordingly, on the morning of the 11th, he was escorted as on the day of his arrival, to the landing-place, where he embarked in the Hero for Gaspee and the St. Lawrence.

Vol. IV.—63.

zed, are  
was, in

Travers  
ne miles,  
with the  
Canada.  
d thence  
continue

governor,  
pointed in  
per of six  
, justices'  
of judica.

n the most  
only be set  
by nature  
the earth;  
to bring no  
they have  
ts when as-  
tion for the  
That such is  
of pleasure  
Town and  
through the

August, 1860.  
place at noon,  
nbers of leg-  
and heads of  
and a royal  
and gloomy  
ies, but could  
cession of the  
societies, es-  
ouse, through  
with delighted



